D. Tserenpil
R. Kullmann

МОНГОЛ ХЭЛНИЙ ХЭЛЗҮЙ

MONGOLIAN GRAMMAR

Four
revise
editio

Price: 25$+ss

D.
R.

A complete grammar

of the Mongolian language,
written with a new, indigenous approach,
featuring

Cyrillic Script
Classical Mongolian Script
English Explanations

Very Detailed Table of Contents, Both in English and Mongolian
Necessary Linguistic Terms Explained Throughout the Book
Literal Translation for Analytical Understanding
Extensive Appendix (Suffix List, Index, etc.)
Many Examples Sentences of Everyday Life
Helpful Comparison and Overview Tables
Insights in Mongolian Cultural Heritage
Hints for Using Colloquial Language
Necessary Rules

This Grammar is relevant and recommended for both learners and researchers of the Mongolian language.

First publishing in Hong Kong, 1996

МОНГОЛ ХЭЛНИЙ ХЭЛЗҮЙ

MONGOLIAN GRAMMAR

Fourth revised edition

D.Tserenpil
R.Kullmann

Mongolian Grammar

R. Kullmann
D. Tserenpil

Under the Auspices of:

School of Mongolian Language and Culture,
National University of Mongolia
and
Institute of Language and Literature,
Academy of Sciences, Mongolia

DDC
494.23'015
II-969

© **Dandii-Yadamyn Tserenpil, 2005, 2008**
All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the author.

Editors

For Mongolian (Cyrillic and Uighuric) texts:
Davaagiin Battuul

For English text:
Ken Kiehm
Molly Deatherage
Lori Younker

Design of Mongolian Fonts: **Jürgen Kullmann**
Cover Design: **Togoobatyn Jamiyansüren**

First edition published in Hong Kong in 1996: 1000 copies (hardback)

Second revised edition published in Hong Kong, China in 2001: 500 copies (paperback)

Third revised edition published in Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia in 2005: 500 copies

Fourth revised edition published in Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia in 2008: 500 copies

Printed by ADMON Co.,Ltd, Mongolia, 2008

ISBN: 99929-0-445-3

Distribution:
Dandii-Yadamyn Tserenpil
Phone: (++976) 99242672 /mobile/
(++976 11) 352105
E-mail: dtserenp@yahoo.com

Preface to the Third and Fourth Editions

The first two editions of this book, published in Hong Kong in 1996 and 2001 in the amount of 1500 copies have been all sold out reasoning to republish the book again in another 500 copies. Most of them were distributed within Mongolia. The buyers were those who came to Mongolia not only with a tourist interest, but also with more serious intentions to be related to Mongolia and its people obtaining their language and culture. Among them, there are hundreds of my students at the Department of Mongolian language for foreigners, School of Mongolian language and culture, National University of Mongolia in Ulaanbaatar for the years since 2001 when I have been lecturing. At least one third of the books were released in abroad, especially in the USA, Germany, Great Britain, Turkey, Japan, Korea and Taiwan. The book has a great demand in the USA where I had been an instructor of Mongolian at the Department of Central Eurasian Studies at Indiana University, USA for the years of 1997-2001. A lot of efforts for the distribution of the book throughout the world are being made by Susie Drost, a treasurer of the Mongolia Society, Inc. at Indiana University in Bloomington, IN, USA. My special thanks and appreciation are addressed to her for it.

The book, especially its theoretical part and basic linguistic principles were formulated during my more than 10 years research work (1984-1996) on the morphological structure and syntactical system of Modern Mongolian conducted at the Institute of Language and Literature, Academy of Sciences, Mongolia. Thereby it has been reanalyzed the main arguments of Mongolian grammar in the light of new advances in modern linguistic theory. Firstly, Rita Kullmann and I started working on a grammar book designed to help foreigners learn Mongolian. Then after lengthy discussions about the book, we both felt that it should be not only an 'ordinary' study book with some traditional grammar explanations and examples but should also be a popular scientific grammar, including the latest achievements in Mongolian linguistics in general, and implementing the structural approach as introduced by Sh. Luvsanvandan, the godfather of the Modern Mongolian linguistics, in particular.

For the last years since the first edition of the Grammar was published in 1996, my grammatical principles and concepts incorporated in the book have been revised during my classes with my students - learners of Mongolian as a second language at the National University of Mongolia in Ulaanbaatar and Indiana University, USA. Also the comparative part of the book covering Mongolian and English grammars, mostly in the aspects of Chomsky's "Universal Grammar", was tested and reanalyzed at my lectures giving to Mongolian students measuring in English at the NUM.

The improvements in the new edition touch the results of the workshop discussions, covering new ideas and suggestions of my Mongolian and foreign colleagues, on number of linguistic problems such as vowel development (e.g. assimilation and the origin of the long vowel and diphthong), word structure, especially word stems and the zero suffix, changes in the case system of Modern Mongolian, 'representative parts of speech' or so-called prowords, focus particles, a new syntactic classification, the form of subjects in subordinate clauses, etc. Also included are some results of my own researches on such problems as the idea of the definite/indefinite category in Modern Mongolian, hierarchies within these categories, case-bound suffixes (in particular the suffix 'хи'), case-bound particles, adwords, a new look at relational suffixes and their structural and functional system, etc.

And finally, all suggestions and corrections are very welcome to be sent to the address: P.O. Box 967, Central Post Office, Ulaanbaatar-13, Mongolia or email: dtserenp@yahoo.com

Dandii-Yadam Tserenpil

Doctor of Linguistics

Department of Mongolian Language for foreigners,
School of Mongolian Language and Culture,
National University of Mongolia

Ulaanbaatar, April 2008

Prefaces to the First and Second Editions

As I began to study Mongolian in **Huhhot, Inner Mongolia** in 1984, I soon fell in love with this language. Its structure and system, which is so totally different from all the European languages that I had learned so far, attracted me. I tried hard to understand and grasp these different ideas at that time. Our Grammar teacher, **Mr. Nolmajav** helped me greatly. However, with no study book available and with Chinese being spoken in the city, it proved difficult to learn Mongolian well.

In **England**, in the years 1986-1988, I met Mongolians from Ulaanbaatar and started to learn the Cyrillic alphabet. **Mr. Vietze**'s grammar book was a big help at that time. **Mr. Damdin,** who taught Mongolian at the Faculty of Oriental Studies in Cambridge, was willing to give me private lessons.

When we came to **Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia**, in 1991, I quickly found out that there were almost no study materials available. Being a person who must understand a language in order to learn it, I had many frustrating experiences asking Mongolian friends about the reasons for saying things this way or that way. All this caused me to start writing down what I found out, not knowing it would become such a large project. In my first year, many of my personal friends like **Uyanga, Naraa, Bat-Erdene** and **Münkh,** helped in contributing example sentences. Later, I was given the privilege to work with **Mr. Sukhbaatar** from the State University. It was with him that I could work more systematically. Communication wasn't easy though, since we could only speak in either French or Mongolian. After having completed about a third of the book, I became acquainted with **Mr. Tserenpil**, who was working in the Institute of Language and Literature at the Academy of Sciences. Without knowing that his major research area was the structural system of the Mongolian language, I approached him to oversee the work on this book and studied with him for over two years, doing nothing other than writing this book, revising it again and again. If this book has scientific significance, it is mainly to his credit. In him, I had finally found the person that would patiently answer my many questions.

My thanks go to **Eva Schubert** and **Dong-Hwan Kim** who helped me make the German version (unpublished) more accurate. After completing the first draft of the German version in February 1995, I started working on the English translation with the help of **Molly Deatherage**. I am very thankful to her, **Lori Younker**, and **Ken Kiehm** for giving some of their precious time to check the English translation. **Mrs. D. Battuul** kindly checked the Classical Mongolian script, for which I'm very grateful.
I want to explicitely express my thanks to my **husband, Jürgen,** and our two boys, **Samuel and Michaja**, for letting me do this big job. It was very often time that had rightly belonged to them, which went into this book. Whithout the help of Jürgen who taught me to work on a computer and advised me in all the lay-out problems, I couldn't have written this book.

But my biggest appreciation is to God. It was His love and concern for the Mongolian people that He put in my heart, and His strength that made me persevere and succeed (I hope) in this task.

Finally, we need to say that this book could be revised forever, as the language is changing and so does its grammar. Moreover, as we read it again, we have ideas of improving different things. However, our aim has been to 'quickly' make something available for others to study this fascinating language, so we have to give up on perfectionism and dare to publish it now the way it is. Hopefully, this book will be a basis for many Mongolian researchers to explore their language more deeply and write other helpful materials with which to study it. And as the students and teachers who work with this book find mistakes and better ways to express things, we hope they'll make their suggestions available to me for possible correction and reprinting:
Rita Kullmann, Post 211051/13, Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia

Ulaanbaatar, September 1996 Rita Kullmann

Before publishing the second edition of this book, Mr. Tserenpil and I have revised it. This edition won't have lay-out problems with **bold** or *italic* styles. Cross-references were made with page numbers. Where space allowed it (we didn't want to change page numbering), we added things that got left out in our first edition. We trust that this edition will be more user-friendly.

Ulaanbaatar, October 2001 Rita Kullmann

General Introduction

We decided to go for the **American way of spelling**, simply because our English editors were exclusively Americans. When it comes to terms that are quite different in American English and British English, we have given **both terms in the index**, referring to each other (e.g. brackets [Br.] -> parentheses [Am.]; full stop [Br.] -> period [Am.]).

Sometimes the Mongolian allows for different English translations, e.g. "дүү" could be 'younger sister'/'younger brother', "тэр" could be 'he/she/it', etc. We always **chose** one of the possible translations, unless this very Mongolian word was the focus of the examples.

As for **Mongolian loan words**, we thought it best to keep as close to the Cyrillic as possible. Therefore, we put such words in quotation marks, using the **following transcription** of Cyrillic, unless words have already been established in English (like Genghis Khan):
а=a, б=b, в=v, г=g, д=d, е=ye, ё=yo, ж=j, з=z, и/й=i, к=k, л=l, м=m, н=n, о=o, ө=ö, п=p, р=r, с=s, т=t, у=u, ү=ü, ф=f, х=kh, ц=ts, ч=ch, ш=sh, ъ=', э=e, ю=yu/yü, я=ya.

Because we have taken an **indigenous approach** to the Mongolian grammar, this book is **not neccessarily user-friendly**. We used terms which might be unfamiliar to an English speaker (e.g. comitative case; reflexive suffix); sometimes we even created new terms (e.g. adword, proword). We have aimed, though, not to use linguistic terms without explaining them, bearing in mind that some readers might not have such a background. We suggest that **readers familiarize themselves with the book**, the appendix, and the abbreviations in order to benefit from the book in the best way possible. Here is what you should pay attention to:

• Very detailed table of contents (first pages of the book)
Even though one might not know the right term for something and therefore not be able to look it up, the **Cyrillic words or suffixes**, that are part of the table of contents will help you find what you are looking for.

• Appendix: Index
We have given an index, trying to list every term we used in English, German, and Mongolian. This enables you to become familiar with the Mongolian terms your teacher is using (although he/she might sometimes use the traditional names rather than the new names given in this book).

• Appendix: List of Inflectional Suffixes
This list will be very important as you read a Mongolian text and come across suffixes you don't know. Next to the suffix are the abbreviations of the name or category of the suffix and on which page it is explained. **You may copy** that list in order to memorize the suffixes.

• Appendix: Table of contents in Mongolian

Our grammar is **not a self-study book**, although a lot could be learned this way. It will be important that students show the Mongolian table of contents to their teachers, that they can refer to paragraphs as they teach.

• Abbreviations

We used the following abbreviations:

e.g.	= for example	III:1.1.2	= Part III, 1.1.2
(ex. a,b,g)	= examples a, b and g	(ex. a-d)	= examples a, b, c and d

In some tables, we could only give the first letter of the **cases** (below in parentheses). But because we used examples throughout the book, confusion (*) is not likely to happen:

Nom. (N.)	= nominative case	Gen. (G.)	= genitive case
Dat. (D.)*	= dative-locative case	Acc. (A.)*	= accusative case
Abl. (A.)*	= ablative case	Instr. (I.)	= instrumental case
Com. (C.)	= comitative case	Dir. (D.)*	= directive case

All **suffix abbreviations** are found in the list of the inflectional suffixes on page 413ff. But here are those we used most often in this book:

CS	= **C**ase **S**uffix	PS	= **P**lural **S**uffix
NDS	= **N**oun **D**etermining **S**uffix	VDS	= **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
PTS	= **P**erson-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix	TTS	= **T**ense-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
RS	= **R**eflexive **S**uffix		

Table of contents

Part I: Introduction ..... *p. 1*

1. THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE AND ITS DEVELOPMENT ..... p. 2

1.1 GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE ..... p. 2

1.2 THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGES AND THEIR DIALECTS ..... P. 2

1.3 THE CLASSICAL WRITTEN AND MODERN LITERARY LANGUAGES ..... P. 3

2. THE MONGOLIAN ALPHABETS ..... p. 4

2.1 THE CLASSICAL ALPHABET ..... p. 4

2.1.1 General Table of the Classical Alphabet ..... p. 4
2.1.2 Polyphonetic Alphabet ..... p. 5
2.1.3 Detailed Table of the Classical Alphabet ..... p. 6
2.1.4 Vowels ..... p. 7
2.1.4.1 Vowel Harmony ..... p. 7
2.1.4.2 Process of Development ..... p. 7
2.1.4.2.1 Assimilation ..... p. 7
2.1.4.2.1.1 Forward Assimilation ..... p. 7
2.1.4.2.1.2 Backward Assimilation ..... p. 8
2.1.4.2.2 Origin of Long Vowels ..... p. 9
2.1.4.2.2.1 Sound Complexes ..... p. 9
2.1.4.2.2.2 Short Vowels ..... p. 10
2.1.4.2.2.3 Compound Vowels ..... p. 10
2.1.4.2.3 Origin of Diphthongs ..... p. 10
2.1.4.2.3.1 Y-Diphthongs ..... p. 11
2.1.4.2.3.2 Final Diphthongs ..... p. 11
2.1.4.2.4 Reduced Vowels ..... p. 12
2.1.4.2.4.1 Vowel Weakness ..... p. 12
2.1.4.2.4.2 Vowel Dropping ..... p. 12
2.1.5 Consonants ..... p. 13
2.1.5.1 Strong and Weak Consonants ..... p. 13
2.1.5.2 Table of Syllable-Final Consonants ..... p. 14
2.1.5.3 Soft Consonants in Strong Words ..... p. 14
2.1.5.4 Changes in Consonants ..... p. 14
2.1.6 Syllables ..... p. 15
2.1.7 Writing Loan Words ..... p. 16
2.1.7.1 Letter Changes in Loan Words ..... p. 16
2.1.7.2 Examples of Loan Words ..... p. 16
2.1.8 Spelling Rules ..... p. 17
2.1.8.1 Suffix Rules ..... p. 17
2.1.8.2 Rules for Inserted Vowel (Epenthesized Vowel) ..... p. 17
2.1.8.2.1 General Rules ..... p. 17
2.1.8.2.2 Exceptions ..... p. 18

2.2. THE CYRILLIC ALPHABET ..... P. 19

2.2.1. Vowels ..... p. 20
2.2.1.1 Classification of Vowels ..... p. 20
2.2.1.2 Vowel Harmony ..... p. 20
2.2.2 Consonants ..... p. 21
2.2.2.1 Hard and Soft Consonants ..... p. 21
2.2.2.2 Classification of Consonants ..... p. 21
2.2.2.2.1 7-Consonants or C^7 (vocalized consonants) ..... p. 21
2.2.2.2.2 9-Consonants or C^9 (non-vocalized consonants) ..... p. 21
2.2.2.3 Consonant Order in a Word ..... p. 21

2.2.3 Signs ..... **p. 21**
2.2.3.1 The Hard Sign "ъ" ..... p. 21
2.2.3.2 The Soft Sign "ь" ..... p. 22
2.2.4 Syllables ..... **p. 22**
2.2.5 Rules ..... **p. 22**
2.2.5.1 Pronunciation Rules ..... p. 22
2.2.5.2 Spelling Rules ..... p. 23
2.2.5.2.1 General Basic Rules ..... p. 23
2.2.5.2.2 Declension Rules ..... p. 23
2.2.5.2.2.1 Basic Rules ..... p. 24
2.2.5.2.2.2 Exception Rules ..... p. 24
2.2.5.2.3 "-ла" Rules ..... p. 25
2.2.5.2.3.1 "-ла" Exception Rule ..... p. 26
2.2.5.2.4 "ь/ и" Rules ..... p. 27
2.2.5.2.5 "-ж/ -ч" Rules ..... p. 28
2.2.5.2.6 Capitalization Rules ..... p. 30
2.2.5.2.7 Abbreviation Rules ..... p. 30
2.2.5.2.8 Division Rules ..... p. 30

2.3 COMPARISON OF BOTH ALPHABETS ..... p. 31

3. MONGOLIAN WORD STRUCTURE ..... p. 33

3.1 ROOTS ..... p. 33
3.1.1 Active or Living Roots ..... p. 33
3.1.2 Passive or Dead Roots ..... p. 35

3.2 STEMS ..... p. 36

3.3 SUFFIXES ..... p. 37
3.3.1 Derivational Suffixes (Word-Building Suffixes) ..... p. 37
3.3.2 Inflectional Suffixes (Word-Changing Suffixes) ..... p. 38
3.3.2.1 Inflectional Suffixes for Nouns ..... p. 39
3.3.2.2 Inflectional Suffixes for Verbs ..... p. 40

Part II: Lexicology ..... p. 41

1. WORD-BUILDING ..... p. 41

1.1 DERIVATIONAL SUFFIXES (WORD BUILDING SUFFIXES) ..... p. 42
1.1.1 Noun-Building ..... p. 42
1.1.1.1 From Nouns and Adjectives ..... p. 42
1.1.1.2 From Verbs ..... p. 44
1.1.2 Adjective-Building ..... p. 49
1.1.2.1 From Nouns and Adjectives ..... p. 49
1.1.2.2 From Verbs ..... p. 52
1.1.3 Verb-Building ..... p. 54

1.2 WORD-BUILDING BY WORD COMBINATIONS ..... p. 57
1.2.1 Coordinate Word Combinations (Compound Words) ..... p. 57
1.2.2 Subordinate Word Combinations ..... p. 58
1.2.2.1 Without Suffixes ..... p. 58
1.2.2.2 With Inflectional Suffixes ..... p. 59
1.2.3 Repetitive Word Combinations ..... p. 59

2. SPECIAL PARTS OF LEXIS ..... p. 60

2.1 IDIOMS ..... p. 60

2.2 HOMONYMS ..... p. 62
2.2.1 Lexical Homonyms ..... p. 62
2.2.1.1 True Lexical Homonyms ..... p. 62
2.2.1.2 False Lexical Homonyms ..... p. 63

2.2.2 Morphological Homonyms ..... p. 63
2.2.2.1 True Morphological Homonyms ..... p. 63
2.2.2.2 False Morphological Homonyms ..... p. 63

2.3 SYNONYMS ..... p. 63
2.3.1 Stylistic Synonyms ..... p. 63
2.3.2 Loan-Word Synonyms ..... p. 64
2.3.3 Dialect Synonyms ..... p. 64
2.3.4 Taboo Synonyms (Euphemisms) ..... p. 65

2.4 INDIGENOUS MONGOLIAN VOCABULARY ..... p. 65

2.5 LOAN WORDS ..... p. 66
2.5.1 Integration of Loan Words ..... p. 66
2.5.2 Loan Words from Different Languages ..... p. 66
2.5.2.1 Sanskrit, Uighur ..... p. 66
2.5.2.2 Persian, Arabic ..... p. 66
2.5.2.3 Chinese, Manchurian ..... p. 67
2.5.2.4 Tibetan ..... p. 67
2.5.2.5 European ..... p. 68

Part III : Morphology ..... p. 70

1. CONCRETE PARTS OF SPEECH ..... p. 72

1.1 REAL PARTS OF SPEECH ..... p. 72

1.1.1 Nouns ..... p. 72
1.1.1.1 Plural ..... p. 72
1.1.1.1.1 Plural Suffixes ..... p. 72
1.1.1.1.1.1 "–ууд[2]" (Most common PS) ..... p. 73
1.1.1.1.1.2 "–чууд[2]/–чуул[2]" (Collective PS) ..... p. 74
1.1.1.1.1.3 "нар" ..... p. 74
1.1.1.1.1.4 "–д" ..... p. 75
1.1.1.1.1.5 "–с" ..... p. 75
1.1.1.1.2 Plural Usage without Suffixes ..... p. 76
1.1.1.1.2.1 Numerals ..... p. 76
1.1.1.1.2.2 Repeated Words ..... p. 76
1.1.1.1.2.3 Verbs that Demand Plural ..... p. 77
1.1.1.1.2.4 Quantitative Words ..... p. 77
1.1.1.1.2.5 Abstract Ideas ..... p. 77
1.1.1.2 Cases ..... p. 78
1.1.1.2.1 The 8 Cases and their Suffixes (CS) ..... p. 78
1.1.1.2.1.1 Nominative Case (–ø) ..... p. 78
1.1.1.2.1.1.1 Question Words ..... p. 78
1.1.1.2.1.2 Genitive Case ..... p. 79
1.1.1.2.1.2.1 Suffixes (–ын, –ийн, –ы, –ий, –н), Rules, Examples ..... p. 79
1.1.1.2.1.2.2 Question Words ..... p. 80
1.1.1.2.1.2.3 Usage ..... p. 80
1.1.1.2.1.3 Dative-Locative Case ..... p. 83
1.1.1.2.1.3.1 Suffixes (–т, –д), Rules, Examples ..... p. 83
1.1.1.2.1.3.2 Question Words ..... p. 84
1.1.1.2.1.3.3 Usage ..... p. 84
1.1.1.2.1.4 Accusative Case ..... p. 86
1.1.1.2.1.4.1 Suffixes (–ыг, –ийг, –г), Rules, Examples ..... p. 86
1.1.1.2.1.4.2 Question Words ..... p. 87
1.1.1.2.1.4.3 Usage ..... p. 87
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.1 Indefinite Noun ..... p. 87
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.2 Definite Noun ..... p. 88
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.3 Hierarchy List ..... p. 89
1.1.1.2.1.5 Ablative Case ..... p. 90
1.1.1.2.1.5.1 Suffixes (–аас[4]), Rules, Examples ..... p. 90

1.1.1.2.1.5.2 Question Words ..... p. 90
1.1.1.2.1.5.3 Usage ..... p. 91
1.1.1.2.1.6 Instrumental Case ..... p. 93
1.1.1.2.1.6.1 Suffixes (−аар⁴), Rules, Examples ..... p. 93
1.1.1.2.1.6.2 Question Words ..... p. 94
1.1.1.2.1.6.3 Usage ..... p. 94
1.1.1.2.1.7 Comitative Case ..... p. 97
1.1.1.2.1.7.1 Suffixes (−тай³), Rules, Examples ..... p. 97
1.1.1.2.1.7.2 Question Words ..... p. 97
1.1.1.2.1.7.3 Usage ..... p. 97
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.1 True Comitative ..... p. 98
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.2 False Comitative ..... p. 98
1.1.1.2.1.8 Directive Case ..... p. 99
1.1.1.2.1.8.1 Suffixes (руу², луу²), Rules, Examples ..... p. 99
1.1.1.2.1.8.2 Question Words ..... p. 99
1.1.1.2.1.8.3 Usage ..... p. 99
1.1.1.2.1.8.4 New Form of Directive Case «еед» ..... p. 100
1.1.1.2.2 Case-bound Suffixes (CbS's) ..... p. 101
1.1.1.2.2.1 Possessive CbS "−х" ..... p. 101
1.1.1.2.2.2 Local CbS "−х" ..... p. 102
1.1.1.2.2.3 Collective CbS "−хан⁴" ..... p. 103
1.1.1.2.2.4 Attributive CbS "−х, −хи" ..... p. 104
1.1.1.2.3 Case-bound Particles (CbP's) ..... p. 106
1.1.1.2.3.1 CbP "минь, чинь, тань, маань, нь", Rules, Examples ..... p. 106
1.1.1.2.3.2 Usage ..... p. 107
1.1.1.3 The Reflexive Suffix "−аа⁴" (RS) ..... p. 108
1.1.1.3.1 Function of RS ..... p. 108
1.1.1.3.2 RS, Rules, Examples ..... p. 109
1.1.1.3.3 Usage ..... p. 110
1.1.1.3.4 Comparison with CbP's ..... p. 112

1.1.2 Verbs ..... p. 113
1.1.2.1 Conjugation of Verbs ..... p. 113
1.1.2.1.1 Voice Suffixes (VoS's) ..... p. 115
1.1.2.1.1.1 Active VoS "−ø" ..... p. 116
1.1.2.1.1.2 Causative Voice ..... p. 117
1.1.2.1.1.2.1 VoS "−уул²" ..... p. 118
1.1.2.1.1.2.2 VoS "−лга⁴" ..... p. 119
1.1.2.1.1.2.3 VoS's "−га⁴, and −аа⁴" ..... p. 120
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.1 VoS "−га⁴" ..... p. 120
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.2 VoS "−аа⁴" ..... p. 121
1.1.2.1.1.2.4 Functions of Causative Voice ..... p. 122
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Intransitive ---> Transitive ..... p. 122
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.2 Transitive ---> Causative ..... p. 123
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.3 Transitive ---> Passive ..... p. 123
1.1.2.1.1.3 Passive VoS's "−гд, −д, −т" ..... p. 124
1.1.2.1.1.4 Communal VoS "−лц" ..... p. 126
1.1.2.1.1.5 Adversative VoS "−лд" ..... p. 127
1.1.2.1.1.6 Comparison of Voice Suffixes ..... p. 128
1.1.2.1.1.7 Combinations of Voice Suffixes ..... p. 130
1.1.2.1.2 Aspect Suffixes (AsS's) ..... p. 131
1.1.2.1.2.1 Synthetically Expressed Aspects (with Aspect Suffixes =AsS's) ..... p. 131
1.1.2.1.2.1.1 AsS "−схий": Quick Action ..... p. 131
1.1.2.1.2.1.1.1 "−схий" in Colloquial Language ..... p. 132
1.1.2.1.2.1.2 AsS "−з(а)на⁴": Temporary Action ..... p. 132
1.1.2.1.2.1.3 AsS "−чих": Completed Action ..... p. 133
1.1.2.1.2.1.4 AsS "−цгаа⁴": Collective Action ..... p. 134
1.1.2.1.2.1.5 AsS "−л": Repetitive Action ..... p. 135
1.1.2.1.2.1.6 AsS's "−лз, балз², валз², галз¹, гана⁴": Other Repetitive Actions ..... p. 135
1.1.2.1.2.2 Analytically expressed Aspects ..... p. 136

1.1.2.1.2.2.1 Progressive Action: "–ж/ч бай–" ..... p. 136
1.1.2.1.2.2.2 Perfect Action: "–(чих)аад⁴ бай–/–(чих)сан⁴ бай–" ..... p. 137
1.1.2.1.2.2.3 Progressive-Perfect Action: "–саар⁴ бай–" ..... p. 137
1.1.2.1.2.3 Combinations of VoS's and AsS's ..... p. 138
1.1.2.1.3 Mood ..... p. 139
1.1.2.1.3.1 Determining Suffixes (DS's) ..... p. 139
1.1.2.1.3.1.1 Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's) ..... p. 139
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 Functions of NDS's ..... p. 139
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.2 Past Tense NDS "–сан⁴" ..... p. 143
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.3 Indefinite Present NDS "–даг⁴" ..... p. 144
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.4 Progressive Present NDS "–аа⁴" ..... p. 145
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.5 Future NDS "–х" ..... p. 147
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.6 "Doer" NDS "–гч" ..... p. 149
1.1.2.1.3.1.2 Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's) ..... p. 151
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Wish-AwDS "–маар⁴" ..... p. 151
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.2 Possibility-AwDS "–хуйц²" ..... p. 153
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.3 Necessity- AwDS "–уушгай²" ..... p. 154
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.4 Other AwDS's "–шгүй, –лтай³, –лтгүй, –м(гүй)" ..... p. 155
1.1.2.1.3.1.3 Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's) ..... p. 156
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Coordinating VDS's (cVDS's) ..... p. 157
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.1 Simultaneous cVDS "–ж/–ч" ..... p. 157
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.2 Associative cVDS "–н" ..... p. 158
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.3 Anterior cVDS "–аад⁴" ..... p. 159
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.4 Comparison of cVDS's ..... p. 160
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2 Subordinating VDS's (sVDS's) ..... p. 161
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.1 Conditional sVDS "–бал⁴, –вал⁴" ..... p. 161
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.2 Concessive sVDS "–вч" ..... p. 162
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.3 Immediately Succeeding sVDS "–магц⁴" ..... p. 164
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.4 Logically Succeeding sVDS "–хлаар⁴" ..... p. 165
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.5 Intending sVDS "–хаар⁴" ..... p. 166
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.6 Limiting sVDS "–тал⁴" ..... p. 167
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.7 Progressive sVDS "–саар⁴" ..... p. 168
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.8 Succeeding sVDS "–нгуут²" ..... p. 170
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.9 Seizing an Opportunity sVDS "–нгаа⁴" ..... p. 171
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.10 Excluding sVDS "–маажин⁴" ..... p. 172
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.11 Use of sVDS's with Reflexive Suffix ..... p. 173
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.12 Comparison of sVDS's ..... p. 174
1.1.2.1.3.2 Terminating Suffixes (TS's) ..... p. 175
1.1.2.1.3.2.1 Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's) ..... p. 175
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.1 PTS of Intention "–я³" (1st Person) ..... p. 175
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.2 PTS of Decision "–сугай²" (1st Person) ..... p. 176
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.3 PTS of Command-PTS "–ø" (2nd Person) ..... p. 177
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.4 PTS of Request "–аач⁴" (2nd Person) ..... p. 178
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.5 PTS of Demand "–аарай⁴" (2nd Person) ..... p. 179
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.6 PTS of Admonition "–уузай²" (2nd Person) ..... p. 180
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.7 PTS of Appeal "–гтун²" (2nd Person) ..... p. 181
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.8 PTS of Permission "–г" (3rd Person) ..... p. 181
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.9 PTS of Hope "–аасай⁴" (3rd Person) ..... p. 182
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.10 PTS of Blessing "–тугай²" (3rd Person) ..... p. 183
1.1.2.1.3.2.2 Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's) ..... p. 184
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.1 NDS "–сан⁴" as TTS (General Past) ..... p. 184
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.2 TTS "–жээ/–чээ" (Past) ..... p. 185
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.3 TTS "–в" (Past) ..... p. 186
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.4 TTS "–лаа⁴" (Past) ..... p. 187
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.5 NDS "–даг⁴" as TTS (Indefinite Present) ..... p. 188
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.6 NDS "–аа⁴" as TTS (Progressive Present) ..... p. 189
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.7 TTS "–на⁴" (Present) ..... p. 190

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.8 TTS "-на⁴" (Future) ..... p. 191
1.1.2.2 Functional Classification of Verbs ..... p. 192
1.1.2.2.1 Full Verbs ..... p. 192
1.1.2.2.1.1 Full Verb "бай-" ..... p. 192
1.1.2.2.1.1.1 In the Function of 'there are' ..... p. 192
1.1.2.2.1.1.2 In the Function of 'to be' ..... p. 193
1.1.2.2.1.2 Full Verb "бол-" ..... p. 193
1.1.2.2.2 Auxiliary Verbs ..... p. 194
1.1.2.2.2.1 The Auxiliary Verb "бай-" ..... p. 194
1.1.2.2.2.1.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives) ..... p. 194
1.1.2.2.2.1.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs) ..... p. 195
1.1.2.2.2.1.3 Building Subjunctive ..... p. 196
1.1.2.2.2.2 The Auxiliary Verb "бол-" ..... p. 197
1.1.2.2.2.2.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives) ..... p. 197
1.1.2.2.2.2.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs) ..... p. 198
1.1.2.2.2.3 Defective Auxiliary Verbs ..... p. 200
1.1.2.2.2.3.1 "ажээ, атал, аваас" ..... p. 200
1.1.2.2.2.3.2 "бий, буй, билээ" ..... p. 200
1.1.2.2.3 Modal Verbs and Modal Constructions ..... p. 201
1.1.2.2.3.1 Modal Verb "чада-" ..... p. 201
1.1.2.2.3.2 Modal Constructions ..... p. 201
1.1.2.2.3.2.1 "-х ...-тай/-гүй" ..... p. 201
1.1.2.2.3.2.2 "... байх(аа)" ..... p. 202
1.1.2.2.3.2.3 "... юм байна" ..... p. 203
1.1.2.2.3.2.4 "... байлтай/байлгүй" ..... p. 204
1.1.2.2.3.2.5 "... -сан бол-" ..... p. 204
1.1.2.2.3.2.6 "... -х гэсэн юм" ..... p. 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.7 "... бололтой" ..... p. 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.8 "... -х юмсан/-хсан" ..... p. 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.9 "... -сан юмсан" ..... p. 205
1.1.2.2.3.2.10 "... -сансан/-дагсан" ..... p. 206
1.1.2.2.3.2.11 "... -хаас даа" ..... p. 206
1.1.2.2.3.2.12 Comparison of Modal Constructions and Modal Suffixes ..... p. 207
1.1.2.2.4 Modifying Verbs ..... p. 208
1.1.2.2.4.1 "-ж/-ч бол-" in the Function of 'to be allowed to' ..... p. 208
1.1.2.2.4.2 Table of Other Modifying Verbs ..... p. 208
1.1.2.2.5 The Conjunction Verb "гэ-" ..... p. 210
1.1.3 Adwords ..... p. 211
1.1.3.1 Adjectives (Adwords to Nouns) ..... p. 212
1.1.3.1.1 Characteristics of Adjectives ..... p. 212
1.1.3.1.2 Placement of Adjectives ..... p. 213
1.1.3.1.2.1 Attributive Adjectives ..... p. 213
1.1.3.1.2.2 Predicative Adjectives (Complements) ..... p. 214
1.1.3.1.3 Order of Adjectives ..... p. 214
1.1.3.1.3.1 Rule ..... p. 214
1.1.3.1.4 Degrees of Adjectives ..... p. 215
1.1.3.1.4.1 Positive Degree ..... p. 215
1.1.3.1.4.2 Comparative Degree ..... p. 215
1.1.3.1.4.2.1 Using Ablative Case and Adjective ..... p. 215
1.1.3.1.4.2.2 Using Repeated Adjective and Ablative Case ..... p. 216
1.1.3.1.4.2.3 Using the Postpositions "адил, шиг, мэт, чинээ" ..... p. 216
1.1.3.1.4.2.4 Using the Adwords "илүү, арай" ..... p. 217
1.1.3.1.4.3 Superlative Degree ..... p. 217
1.1.3.1.4.3.1 Using "хамгийн, туйлын" ..... p. 217
1.1.3.1.4.3.2 Using Genitive Case and Repetition ..... p. 218
1.1.3.1.5 Modification of Adjectives ..... p. 218
1.1.3.1.5.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's) ..... p. 218
1.1.3.1.5.1.1 Diminutive AwS "-хан⁴" ..... p. 218
1.1.3.1.5.1.2 Diminutive AwS's "-втар⁴, -дуу²" ..... p. 218
1.1.3.1.5.1.3 Intensifying AwS "-в" ..... p. 219

1.1.3.1.5.2 Modification with Adwords ..... p. 219
1.1.3.1.5.2.1 Adwords "маш, тун, нэн, даан" Expressing 'very' ..... p. 219
1.1.3.1.5.2.2 Adwords "хэтэрхий, дэндүү, даанч" Expressing 'too' ..... p. 220
1.1.3.1.5.2.3 Different Adwords Expressing 'totally, absolutely' ..... p. 220
1.1.3.2 Adverbs (Adwords to Verbs) ..... p. 221
1.1.3.2.1 Original Adverbs ..... p. 221
1.1.3.2.2 Passive-Root Adverbs ..... p. 221
1.1.3.2.2.1 Overview ..... p. 222
1.1.3.2.2.2 Usage ..... p. 222
1.1.3.2.3 Modification of Adverbs ..... p. 223
1.1.3.2.3.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's) ..... p. 223
1.1.3.2.3.1.1 Direction AwS "-(г)ш" ..... p. 223
1.1.3.2.3.1.2 Movement AwS "-уур^2" ..... p. 224
1.1.3.2.3.2 Modification with Word Combinations ..... p. 226
1.1.3.2.3.3 Modification with Adwords ..... p. 228
1.1.3.2.4 Semantic Classification of Adverbs ..... p. 228
1.1.3.2.4.1 Local Adverbs ..... p. 228
1.1.3.2.4.2 Temporal Adverbs ..... p. 229
1.1.3.2.4.3 Modal Adverbs ..... p. 232
1.1.3.3 Numerals ..... p. 234
1.1.3.3.1 Overview of Numerals and Numeral Suffixes (NuS's) ..... p. 234
1.1.3.3.2 Cardinal Numerals ..... p. 234
1.1.3.3.2.1 Overview ..... p. 234
1.1.3.3.2.2 Usage ..... p. 235
1.1.3.3.2.2.1 Compound Cardinal Numerals ..... p. 235
1.1.3.3.2.2.2 Cardinal Numerals as Attributes ..... p. 236
1.1.3.3.2.2.3 Cardinal Numerals as Conjunctions ..... p. 237
1.1.3.3.2.2.4 Cardinal Numerals in Everyday Life ..... p. 237
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.1 Date ..... p. 237
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.2 Time ..... p. 238
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.3 Telephone ..... p. 238
1.1.3.3.2.3 Declension of Cardinal Numerals ..... p. 239
1.1.3.3.2.3.1 Overview ..... p. 239
1.1.3.3.2.3.2 Usage ..... p. 239
1.1.3.3.3 Ordinal Numerals ..... p. 240
1.1.3.3.3.1 Ordinal NuS's "-дугаар^2, дахь/дэх" ..... p. 241
1.1.3.3.3.2 Usage of Ordinal Numerals ..... p. 241
1.1.3.3.3.2.1 Months "-дугаар^2" ..... p. 241
1.1.3.3.3.2.2 Other uses "-дугаар^2" ..... p. 241
1.1.3.3.3.2.3 Weekdays "-дахь/-дэх" ..... p. 242
1.1.3.3.3.2.4 Other uses "-дахь/-дэх" ..... p. 243
1.1.3.3.3.2.5 Address "-дугаар^2, -дахь/-дэх" ..... p. 243
1.1.3.3.3.2.6 Roman Numerals in Function of "-дугаар^4" ..... p. 244
1.1.3.3.4 Collective Numerals ..... p. 244
1.1.3.3.4.1 Collective NuS "-уул^2" ..... p. 244
1.1.3.3.4.2 Usage of Collective Numerals ..... p. 244
1.1.3.3.4.3 Declension of Collective Numerals ..... p. 245
1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Overview ..... p. 245
1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Usage ..... p. 246
1.1.3.3.5 Approximate Numerals ..... p. 246
1.1.3.3.5.1 Overview ..... p. 246
1.1.3.3.5.2 Usage ..... p. 247
1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Approximate NuS "-аад^4" ..... p. 247
1.1.3.3.5.2.2 Postpositions "гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим" ..... p. 247
1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Repetition ..... p. 248
1.1.3.3.5.3 Declension of Approximate Numerals ..... p. 248
1.1.3.3.6 Multiplying Numerals ..... p. 249
1.1.3.3.6.1 Overview ..... p. 249
1.1.3.3.6.2 Usage of Multiplying Numerals ..... p. 249

1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Multiplying NuS "–таа[4]" ..... p. 249
1.1.3.3.6.2.2 Words "дахин, удаа" ..... p. 250
1.1.3.3.7 Diminutive Numerals ..... p. 250
1.1.3.3.7.1 Diminutive NuS "–хан[4]" ..... p. 250
1.1.3.3.7.2 Usage of Diminutive Numerals ..... p. 250
1.1.3.3.8 Distributive Numerals ..... p. 251
1.1.3.3.8.1 Usage of Distributive Numerals ..... p. 251
1.1.3.3.9 Numerals in Mathematics ..... p. 252
1.1.3.3.9.1 Decimals ..... p. 252
1.1.3.3.9.2 Fractions ..... p. 252
1.1.3.3.9.3 Percentages ..... p. 253
1.1.3.3.9.4 Numerals in Basic Arithmetic Functions ..... p. 253
1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Addition ..... p. 253
1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Subtraction ..... p. 253
1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Multiplication ..... p. 254
1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Division ..... p. 254

1.2 REPRESENTATIVE PARTS OF SPEECH (PROWORDS) ..... p. 255

1.2.1 Systematic Classification ..... p. 255
1.2.1.1 Prowords for Nouns ..... p. 255
1.2.1.2 Prowords for Verbs ..... p. 255
1.2.1.3 Prowords for Adwords ..... p. 255

1.2.2 Semantic Classification ..... p. 256
1.2.2.1 Personal Prowords ..... p. 256
1.2.2.1.1 Overview ..... p. 256
1.2.2.1.2 Declension ..... p. 257
1.2.2.1.3 Usage ..... p. 258
1.2.2.1.3.1 "би" = "I" ..... p. 258
1.2.2.1.3.2 "чи" = "you" ..... p. 258
1.2.2.1.3.3 "та" = "you" (honorary) ..... p. 258
1.2.2.1.3.4 "тэр" = "he/ she/ it" ..... p. 259
1.2.2.1.3.5 "бид (нар)" = "we" ..... p. 259
1.2.2.1.3.6 "та нар" = "you" (plural) ..... p. 260
1.2.2.1.3.7 "тэд (нар)" = "they" ..... p. 260
1.2.2.2 Possessive Prowords ..... p. 260
1.2.2.3 Reflexive Prowords ..... p. 261
1.2.2.3.1 Declension ..... p. 261
1.2.2.3.2 Usage ..... p. 262
1.2.2.3.2.1 Examples in Nominative Case ..... p. 262
1.2.2.3.2.2 Examples in Genitive Case ..... p. 262
1.2.2.3.2.3 Examples in Other Cases ..... p. 263
1.2.2.3.3 Other Reflexive Words ..... p. 263
1.2.2.4 Demonstrative Prowords ..... p. 264
1.2.2.4.1 Overview ..... p. 264
1.2.2.4.2 Usage ..... p. 264
1.2.2.4.2.1 "энэ, тэр, (т)эдгээр, (т)эд нар" = "this, that, these, those" ..... p. 265
1.2.2.4.2.2 "(т)ийм, (т)иймэрхүү" = "such, this/that kind of" ..... p. 265
1.2.2.4.2.3 "өнөө(тэх), нөгөө(тэх), өнөөдүүл, нөгөөдүүл" = "this/that other (one)" ..... p. 266
1.2.2.4.2.4 "(т)өдий, (т)өчнөөн" = "as many/much as this/that" ..... p. 267
1.2.2.4.2.5 "ингэ, тэгэ–" = "to do this/that way" ..... p. 267
1.2.2.5 Interrogative Prowords ..... p. 268
1.2.2.5.1 Overview ..... p. 268
1.2.2.5.2 Comparison ..... p. 269
1.2.2.5.3 Usage ..... p. 270
1.2.2.5.3.1 "хэн" = "who" ..... p. 270
1.2.2.5.3.2 "юу(н)" = "what" ..... p. 271
1.2.2.5.3.3 "ямар" = "what kind of" ..... p. 271
1.2.2.5.3.4 "аль/алин" = "which" ..... p. 271
1.2.2.5.3.5 "хэд(эн)" = "how many" ..... p. 272

1.2.2.5.3.6 "хичнээн" = "how much" ..... p. 272
1.2.2.5.3.7 "хэзээ, хэдийд" = "(about) when" ..... p. 272
1.2.2.5.3.8 "хаа(на)" = "where" ..... p. 273
1.2.2.5.3.9 "хаашаа" = "where to" ..... p. 273
1.2.2.5.3.10 "хаанаас" = "where from" ..... p. 273
1.2.2.5.3.11 "хаагуур" = "which way" ..... p. 273
1.2.2.5.3.12 "хэр" = "how" ..... p. 273
1.2.2.5.3.13 "хэрхэн" = "how" ..... p. 274
1.2.2.5.3.14 "яаж" = "how" ..... p. 274
1.2.2.5.3.15 "яагаад" = "why" ..... p. 275
1.2.2.5.3.16 "хэрхи–" = "to do what/how" ..... p. 275
1.2.2.5.3.17 "яа–" = "to do what/how" ..... p. 275
1.2.2.5.3.18 Repeated Interrogative Prowords expressing Plural ..... p. 276
1.2.2.6 Indefinite Prowords ..... p. 276
1.2.2.6.1 Overview ..... p. 276
1.2.2.6.2 Usage ..... p. 277
1.2.2.6.2.1 "хэн ч" = "who(so)ever, everyone, anyone, no one" ..... p. 277
1.2.2.6.2.2 "юу ч" = "what(so)ever, everything, anything, nothing" ..... p. 278
1.2.2.6.2.3 "ямар ч" = "whatever kind of, any kind, no ... whatsoever" ..... p. 278
1.2.2.6.2.4 "аль ч" = "whichever, none" ..... p. 279
1.2.2.6.2.5 "хэд ч" = "no matter how many" ..... p. 279
1.2.2.6.2.6 "хичнээн ч" = "no matter how much" ..... p. 279
1.2.2.6.2.7 "хэзээ ч" = "whenever, always, never" ..... p. 280
1.2.2.6.2.8 "хаана ч, хаашаа ч, хаанаас ч, хаагуур ч" = "wherever, everywhere, nowhere" ..... p. 280
1.2.2.6.2.9 "яаж ч" = "to do whatever/ in whatever way" ..... p. 281
1.2.2.5.3.10 "яа– ч" = "to do whatever/ in whatever way" ..... p. 281

2. ABSTRACT PARTS OF SPEECH ..... p. 282

2.1 POSTPOSITIONS ..... p. 282

2.1.1 Characteristics ..... p. 282
2.1.2 Systematic Classification ..... p. 282
2.1.2.1 Original Postpositions ..... p. 282
2.1.2.2 Adverbs in Postpositional Function ..... p. 284
2.1.3 Usage ..... p. 285
2.1.3.1 Postpositions with Zero-Suffix ..... p. 285
2.1.3.1.1 "гаруй" = "more than" ..... p. 285
2.1.3.1.2 "шахам" = "almost, nearly" ..... p. 285
2.1.3.1.3 "орчим" = "about, approximate" ..... p. 285
2.1.3.1.4 "гэхэд" = "by" ..... p. 285
2.1.3.1.5 "дээр" = "on" ..... p. 285
2.1.3.1.6 "доор" = "under" ..... p. 286
2.1.3.1.7 "хүртэл" = "until, to" ..... p. 286
2.1.3.1.8 "бүр/ болгон" = "each, every" ..... p. 286
2.1.3.1.9 "тутам" = "each, every" ..... p. 286
2.1.3.1.10 "ёсоор" = "according to, in conformity with" ..... p. 286
2.1.3.1.11 "мэт" = "like, as .... as" ..... p. 287
2.1.3.1.12 "шиг" = "like, as .... as" ..... p. 287
2.1.3.1.13 "адил" = "similar to, like" ..... p. 287
2.1.3.2 Postpositions with Genitive CS ..... p. 287
2.1.3.2.1 "тулд" = "(in order) to" ..... p. 287
2.1.3.2.2 "төлөө" = "for" ..... p. 287
2.1.3.2.3 "турш" = "for" (in regard to time) ..... p. 288
2.1.3.2.4 "дагуу" = "according to, along(side) of" ..... p. 288
2.1.3.2.5 "чинээ" = "as big as, having the size of" ..... p. 288
2.1.3.2.6 "дэргэд" = "at, near" ..... p. 289
2.1.3.2.7 "хооронд" = "between" ..... p. 289
2.1.3.2.8 "хажууд" = "beside, next to" ..... p. 289
2.1.3.2.9 "наана" = "on this side of, situated here" ..... p. 289
2.1.3.2.10 "цаана" = "on the other side of, situated there" ..... p. 289

2.1.3.2.11 "дотор" = "in(side), among" ..... p. 289
2.1.3.2.12 "ард" = "behind" ..... p. 290
2.1.3.2.13 "урд" = "in front of, south of" ..... p. 290
2.1.3.2.14 "уруу" = "down(wards) " ..... p. 290
2.1.3.2.15 "өөд" = "up(wards)" ..... p. 290
2.1.3.2.16 "дараа" = "after" ..... p. 290
2.1.3.2.17 "эсрэг" = "against" ..... p. 291
2.1.3.2.18 "дунд" = "among" ..... p. 291
2.1.3.2.19 "ойролцоо" = "near, in the neighborhood of" ..... p. 291
2.1.3.2.20 Suffix "–уур" = expressing a local movement ..... p. 291
2.1.3.2.21 "тухай" = "about" ..... p. 291
2.1.3.2.22 "талаар" = "on, with regard to" ..... p. 292
2.1.3.2.23 "гадна" = "out(side) of" ..... p. 292
2.1.3.2.24 "хойно" = "after, north of" ..... p. 292
2.1.3.2.25 "өмнө" = "in front of, before" ..... p. 292
2.1.3.2.26 "адил" = "similar to, like" ..... p. 293
2.1.3.3 Postposition with Dative-Locative CS ..... p. 293
2.1.3.3.1 "ойр" = "near, close to" ..... p. 293
2.1.3.4 Postpositions with Ablative CS ..... p. 293
2.1.3.4.1 "бусад" = "other than, except" ..... p. 293
2.1.3.4.2 "өөр" = "beside, other than" ..... p. 293
2.1.3.4.3 "илүү" = "more than" ..... p. 293
2.1.3.4.4 "хол" = "far from" ..... p. 294
2.1.3.4.5 Suffix "–(г)ш" = expressing a direction ..... p. 294
2.1.3.4.6 "гадна" = "apart from" ..... p. 294
2.1.3.4.7 "хойно" = "after" ..... p. 294
2.1.3.4.8 "өмнө" = "before" ..... p. 294
2.1.3.5 Postposition with Comitative CS ..... p. 295
2.1.3.5.1 "адил" = "similar to, like" ..... p. 295
2.1.3.6 Postpositions with NDS's ..... p. 295
2.1.3.6.1 "хүртэл" = "until" ..... p. 295
2.1.3.6.2 "бүр/болгон" = "every time, each time" ..... p. 295
2.1.3.6.3 "тутам" = "each" ..... p. 295
2.1.3.6.4 "ёсоор" = "the way, according to" ..... p. 295
2.1.3.6.5 "мэт" = "like" ..... p. 296
2.1.3.6.6 "шиг" = "like" ..... p. 296
2.1.3.6.7 "тухай" = "about" ..... p. 296
2.1.3.6.8 "талаар" = "on, with regard to" ..... p. 296

2.2 CONJUNCTIONS ..... p. 297

2.2.1 Coordinating Conjunctions ..... p. 297
2.2.1.1 Overview ..... p. 298
2.2.1.2 Usage ..... p. 299
2.2.1.2.1 "ба" = "and" ..... p. 299
2.2.1.2.2 "бөгөөд" = "and" ..... p. 299
2.2.1.2.3 "–гүй" = "and; whether ...or" ..... p. 300
2.2.1.2.4 "болон" = "as well as" ..... p. 300
2.2.1.2.5 "ч...ч" = "both, ...and; although, ...and" ..... p. 301
2.2.1.2.6 "(мөн) түүнчлэн" = "and also" ..... p. 301
2.2.1.2.7 "харин" = "but" ..... p. 301
2.2.1.2.8 "гэвч" = "but; still" ..... p. 302
2.2.1.2.9 "(зөвхөн) төдийгүй, мөн" = "not (only), but also" ..... p. 302
2.2.1.2.10 "төдий бищ, (харин)" = "not only, (but)" ..... p. 303
2.2.1.2.11 "–аар барахгүй, (мөн)/–аар үл барам" = "not only, no, also" ..... p. 303
2.2.1.2.12 "буюу; юм уу" = "respectively; or" ..... p. 304
2.2.1.2.13 "эсвэл; эсхүл" = "or; if not ...then" ..... p. 305
2.2.1.2.14 "эсвэл ... эсвэл" = "either ... or" ..... p. 306
2.2.1.2.15 "байхад, харин" = "whereas" ..... p. 306
2.2.1.2.16 "байтугай/биттий хэл/бүү хэл" = "let alone; not to mention" ..... p. 307
2.2.1.2.17 "гэхдээ" = "but" ..... p. 307

2.2.2 Subordinating Conjunctions ..... **p. 307**
2.2.2.1 Overview ..... p. 308
2.2.2.2 Usage ..... p. 309
2.2.2.2.1 "гэ-" = "that" ..... p. 309
2.2.2.2.2"-г гэж" = "so that" ..... p. 310
2.2.2.2.3 "эсэх" = "whether" ..... p. 310
2.2.2.2.4 "... үү, үгүй юү гэдэг" = "whether or not" ..... p. 310
2.2.2.2.5 "юм шиг л" = "as if" ..... p. 311
2.2.2.2.6 "учир; учраас" / "болохоор" = "because; since" ..... p. 311
2.2.2.2.7 "тул" = "since; because" ..... p. 312
2.2.2.2.8 "-аас болж" = "due to" ..... p. 312
2.2.2.2.9 "-хгүй + -(г)эр" = "without ...-ing" ..... p. 312
2.2.2.2.10 "-х гэж" = "(in order) to" ..... p. 312
2.2.2.2.11 "-х + -ын тулд" = "(in order) to" ..... p. 313
2.2.2.2.12 "-х + -ын өмнө" = "before" ..... p. 313
2.2.2.2.13 "-сан + -ы дараа" = "after" ..... p. 313
2.2.2.2.14 "-сан + -ы дагуу" = "the way; in accordance with" ..... p. 314
2.2.2.2.15 "-сан + -аас хойш" = "since; after" ..... p. 314
2.2.2.2.16 "-х хүртэл" = "until" ..... p. 314
2.2.2.2.17 "байх үед/-хад" = "when, while" ..... p. 315
2.2.2.2.18 "-х бүрд/-х болгонд" = "each time" ..... p. 315
2.2.2.2.19 "-х + -тай зэрэг" = "as soon as; the moment" ..... p. 316
2.2.2.2.20 "(-ж бай)х хооронд" = "while, before" ..... p. 316
2.2.2.2.21 "-х завсар; -х зуур" = "besides; while" ..... p. 317
2.2.2.2.22 "(Хэрэв) ... -бал/-вал" = "if" ..... p. 317
2.2.2.2.23 "(Хэрэв) ... -х тохиолдолд" = "provided that; in case" ..... p. 317
2.2.2.2.24 "(Хэрэв) ... -нөхцөлд" = "provided that; under the condition that" ..... p. 318
2.2.2.2.25 "Хэдийгээр ... боловч" = "although" ..... p. 318
2.2.2.2.26 "-сан + -аар" = "the way; as" ..... p. 318
2.2.2.2.27 "-х/-сан тухай/талаар" ..... p. 318
2.2.3 Proword-Conjunctions ..... **p. 319**
2.2.3.1 Overview ..... p. 319
2.2.3.2 Usage ..... p. 320
2.2.3.2.1 "(Мөн) түүнчлэн" = "Moreover; and also" ..... p. 320
2.2.3.2.2 "Түүнээс гадна" = "Besides; and moreover" ..... p. 320
2.2.3.2.3 "Түүгээр ч барахгүй/Тэр ч байтугай" = "Furthermore" ..... p. 320
2.2.3.2.4 "Тэгээд/Ингээд" = "Then, After this/that" ..... p. 321
2.2.3.2.5 "Тэгэхлээр/Ингэхлээр" = "Consequently" ..... p. 322
2.2.3.2.6 "Тэгснээр/Ингэснээр" = "By doing this/that" ..... p. 322
2.2.3.2.7 "Эс тэгвэл" = "Otherwise, If not" ..... p. 322
2.2.3.2.8 "Тэгэхэд" = "As doing that" ..... p. 322
2.2.3.2.9 "(Т)ийнхүү" = "Thus" ..... p. 323
2.2.3.2.10 "Тийм учраас" = "That's (the reason) why" ..... p. 323
2.2.3.2.11 "Учир нь" = "for; because" ..... p. 323
2.2.3.2.12 "Тийм болохоор" = "Therefore" ..... p. 324
2.2.3.2.13 "Хэдий тийм боловч" = "Nevertheless; Despite that" ..... p. 324
2.2.3.2.14 "Нөгөө талаас" = "On the other hand" ..... p. 325
2.2.3.2.15 "Яагаад гэвэл" = "The reason for this is; for; because" ..... p. 325
2.2.3.2.16 "Тэгсэн чинь" = "But, you know" ..... p. 321

2.3 PARTICLES ..... **p. 326**

2.3.1 Overview of Particles ..... **p. 326**
2.3.2 Semantic Classification ..... **p. 327**
2.3.2.1 Interrogative Particles ..... **p. 327**
2.3.2.1.1 Interrogative Particle "бэ, вэ" ..... p. 327
2.3.2.1.2 Interrogative Particle "уу², юу²" ..... p. 328
2.3.2.2 Negative Particles ..... **p. 328**
2.3.2.2.1 Negative Particle "биш" ..... p. 328
2.3.2.2.2 Negative Particle "бус" ..... p. 330

2.3.2.2.3 Negative Particle "(ү)гүй" ..... p. 330
2.3.2.2.3.1 After Nouns ..... p. 330
2.3.2.2.3.2 After Verbs ..... p. 331
2.3.2.2.3.3 Note to the Word "алга" ..... p. 332
2.3.2.2.4 Negative Particle "үл" ..... p. 332
2.3.2.2.5 Negative Particle "эс" ..... p. 333
2.3.2.2.6 Negative Particle "бүү" ..... p. 334
2.3.2.2.7 Negative Particle "биттий" ..... p. 334
2.3.2.3 Modal Particles ..... p. 335
2.3.2.3.1 Modal Particle "шүү" ..... p. 335
2.3.2.3.2 Modal Particle "даа[4]" ..... p. 335
2.3.2.3.3 Modal Particle "аа[4]" ..... p. 336
2.3.2.3.4 Modal Particle "юм" ..... p. 337
2.3.2.3.5 Modal Particle "мөн" ..... p. 338
2.3.2.3.6 Modal Particle "билээ/ лээ" ..... p. 338
2.3.2.3.7 Modal Particle "-сан[4]" ..... p. 339
2.3.2.3.8 Modal Particle "даг[4]" ..... p. 340
2.3.2.3.9 Modal Particle "биз" ..... p. 340
2.3.2.3.10 Modal Particle "бий/ вий" ..... p. 341
2.3.2.3.11 Modal Particle "шив" ..... p. 341
2.3.2.3.12 Modal Interrogative Particle "бол" ..... p. 342
2.3.2.3.13 Modal Conditional Particle "бол" ..... p. 342
2.3.2.3.14 Comparison of Modal Particles ..... p. 343
2.3.2.4 Focus Particles ..... p. 345
2.3.2.4.1 Neutral Focus Particle "бол" ..... p. 345
2.3.2.4.2 Additive Focus Particle "ч" ..... p. 346
2.3.2.4.2.1 Part of Indefinite Prowords ..... p. 346
2.3.2.4.2.2 Part of Conjunctions ..... p. 346
2.3.2.4.2.3 Part of Modal Constructions ..... p. 346
2.3.2.4.2.4 Expressing "would ('d) better ..." ..... p. 346
2.3.2.4.2.5 Expressing "even / too" ..... p. 347
2.3.2.4.2.6 Comparison of Functions ..... p. 348
2.3.2.4.3 Restrictive Focus Particle "л" ..... p. 348
2.3.2.4.3.1 Functions ..... p. 348
2.3.2.4.3.2 Comparison with Particle "ч" ..... p. 349

2.4 INTERJECTIONS ..... p. 350

2.4.1 Interjections of Emotions ..... p. 350
2.4.1.1 Overview ..... p. 350
2.4.1.2 Usage ..... p. 351
2.4.1.2.1 Understanding, Exclamation: "аа" ..... p. 351
2.4.1.2.2 Agreement, Pleasure: "за, уухай, ай даа, аяа, өөе, тийм дээ, ашгүй дээ" ..... p. 351
2.4.1.2.3 Pity, Affection, Regret: "эвий, ищ, хөөрхий, зайлуул, хай даа, халаг, өө" ..... p. 352
2.4.1.2.4 Calling, Attracting Attention: "хөөе, хүүе, хөөш, эй" ..... p. 353
2.4.1.2.5 Surprise, Astonishment: "ооё, оо-ёо-ё, хөөх, хүүш, үгүй, ер" ..... p. 353
2.4.1.2.6 Difficulty, Despair, Pain: "ёо, ёх, яанаа" ..... p. 354
2.4.1.2.7 Laughter, Happiness: "ха ха, хий хий, гялай, гоё, урай, ай хө, яамай" ..... p. 354
2.4.1.2.8 Disgust, Anger: "паа(х)[4], пий-пай, ишш, түй, пэй, аа-лаа-лаа, ез харлаа" ..... p. 355
2.4.1.2.9 Feelings of Temperature: "халхай, халцгай, тий тий" ..... p. 356
2.4.1.2.10 Displeasure: "чаваас, балар, за, яалаа гэж, үгүй шүү, яачихав аа" ..... p. 356
2.4.1.2.11 Causing an Action: "май, байз, ишш/ чишш, аа, эй дээ" ..... p. 357
2.4.1.2.12 Fear, Terror: "ий, айжий, айжуу" ..... p. 357
2.4.1.2.13 Lullaby: "бүүвэй" ..... p. 357
2.4.2 Interjections of Husbandry ..... p. 358
2.4.2.1 Overview ..... p. 358
2.4.2.1.1 Interjections to Call Animals ..... p. 358
2.4.2.1.2 Interjections to Drive Animals ..... p. 358
2.4.2.1.3 Interjections of Miscellaneous Usage ..... p. 358

Part IV: Syntax ..... *p. 359*

1. KINDS AND TYPES OF SENTENCES ..... p. 360

1.1 KINDS OF SENTENCES ..... **p. 360**
1.1.1 Declarative Sentences ..... p. 360
1.1.2 Interrogative Sentences ..... p. 361
1.1.3 Imperative Sentences ..... p. 361
1.1.4 Exclamatory Sentences ..... p. 362

1.2 TYPES OF SENTENCES ..... **p. 363**
1.2.1 One-Component and Two-Component Sentences ..... **p. 363**
1.2.1.1 One-Component Sentences (Ellipsis) ..... p. 363
1.2.1.1.1 Sentences without Subject Component ..... p. 363
1.2.1.1.1.1 Subject and Predicate are One and the Same ..... p. 363
1.2.1.1.1.2 Generalization ..... p. 363
1.2.1.1.1.3 Context allows Subject to be Omitted ..... p. 364
1.2.1.1.2 Sentences without Predicate Component ..... p. 364
1.2.1.1.3 Word-Sentences ..... p. 364
1.2.1.2 Two-Component Sentences ..... p. 365
1.2.2 Complete and Incomplete Sentences ..... **p. 365**
1.2.2.1 Complete Sentences ..... p. 365
1.2.2.2 Incomplete Sentences ..... p. 365
1.2.3 Short and Extended Sentences ..... **p. 365**
1.2.3.1 Short Sentences ..... p. 365
1.2.3.2 Extended Sentences ..... p. 365
1.2.4 Simple and Combined Sentences ..... **p. 366**
1.2.4.1 Simple Sentences ..... p. 366
1.2.4.2 Combined Sentences ..... p. 366

2. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN WORDS ..... p. 367

2.1 COORDINATE WORDS ..... **p. 367**
2.1.1 Free Coordinate Words ..... **p. 367**
2.1.1.1 Without Conjunction Words ..... p. 367
2.1.1.2 With Conjunction Words ..... p. 367
2.1.2 Bound Coordinate Words ..... **p. 368**

2.2 SUBORDINATE WORDS ..... **p. 368**
2.2.1 Direct Subordinate Words ..... **p. 369**
2.2.2 Indirect Subordinate Words ..... **p. 370**
2.2.2.1 With Suffixes ..... p. 370
2.2.2.2 With Postpositions ..... p. 370

3. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PARTS OF A SENTENCE ..... p. 371

3.1 PARTS OF A SENTENCE ..... **p. 371**
3.1.1 Main Parts of a Sentence ..... **p. 371**
3.1.1.1 Subjects ..... **p. 371**
3.1.1.1.1 Question Words for Subjects ..... p. 371
3.1.1.1.2 Omission of Subjects ..... p. 371
3.1.1.1.3 Parts of Speech as Subjects ..... p. 371
3.1.1.1.4 Subject Indicators/Markers ..... p. 372
3.1.1.1.5 Complements of Subjects ..... p. 372
3.1.1.2 Predicates ..... **p. 373**
3.1.1.2.1 Question Words for Predicates ..... p. 373
3.1.1.2.2 Simple Predicates ..... p. 373
3.1.1.2.2.1 One Full Verb ..... p. 373
3.1.1.2.2.2 Compound Full Verb ..... p. 373
3.1.1.2.3 Compound Predicates ..... p. 374
3.1.1.2.3.1 Full Verbs and Auxiliary Verbs ..... p. 374

3.1.1.2.3.2 Full Verbs and Modal Verbs/Constructions ..... p. 374
3.1.1.2.3.3 Full Verbs and Modifying Verbs ..... p. 375
3.1.2 Assistant Parts of a Sentence ..... p. 375
3.1.2.1 Objects ..... p. 375
3.1.2.1.1 Parts of Speech as Objects ..... p. 376
3.1.2.1.2 Direct Objects ..... p. 376
3.1.2.1.3 Indirect Objects ..... p. 377
3.1.2.2 Attributes ..... p. 377
3.1.2.3 Adverbials ..... p. 378
3.1.2.3.1 Local Adverbials ..... p. 378
3.1.2.3.1.1 Showing Place ..... p. 378
3.1.2.3.1.2 Showing Direction ..... p. 379
3.1.2.3.1.3 Showing Local Movement ..... p. 379
3.1.2.3.2 Temporal Adverbials ..... p. 379
3.1.2.3.2.1 Showing Moment of Action ..... p. 379
3.1.2.3.2.2 Showing Beginning or End of Action ..... p. 380
3.1.2.3.3 Modal Adverbials ..... p. 380
3.1.2.3.4 Causal Adverbials ..... p. 381
3.1.2.3.5 Final Adverbials ..... p. 381
3.1.2.3.6 Conditional Adverbials ..... p. 381
3.1.2.3.7 Concessive Adverbials ..... p. 382
3.1.3 Placement of Parts of a Sentence ..... p. 382
3.2 COORDINATE WORDS AS PARTS OF A SENTENCE ..... p. 384
3.2.1 Characteristics ..... p. 384
3.2.2 Coordinate Subjects ..... p. 385
3.2.3 Coordinate Predicates ..... p. 385
3.2.4 Coordinate Objects ..... p. 385
3.2.5 Coordinate Attributes ..... p. 386
3.2.6 Coordinate Adverbials ..... p. 386
3.3 INDEPENDENT PARTS OF A SENTENCE ..... p. 387
3.3.1 Attention Parts ..... p. 387
3.3.2 Inserted Parts ..... p. 387
3.3.3 Interjections ..... p. 388
3.3.4 Response Parts ..... p. 388
4. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CLAUSES ..... p. 389
4.1 COMPOUND SENTENCES (COORDINATE) ..... p. 389
4.1.1 Compound Sentences with Suffixes ..... p. 389
4.1.2 Compound Sentences with Intonation ..... p. 389
4.1.3 Compound Sentences with Conjunctions ..... p. 390
4.2 COMPLEX SENTENCES (SUBORDINATE) ..... p. 390
4.2.1 Characteristics of Subordinate Clauses ..... p. 391
4.2.1.1 Form and Tense of Predicates ..... p. 391
4.2.1.2 Form of Subjects ..... p. 392
4.2.1.2.1 Common Subjects ..... p. 392
4.2.1.2.2 Different Subjects ..... p. 392
4.2.1.2.2.1 Subjects in Genitive Case ..... p. 392
4.2.1.2.2.2 Subjects in Accusative Case ..... p. 393
4.2.1.2.2.3 Subjects in Accusative or Genitive Case ..... p. 393
4.2.1.2.2.4 Basic Rules ..... p. 394
4.2.2 Classification of Subordinate Clauses ..... p. 395
4.2.2.1 Subject Clauses ..... p. 395
4.2.2.2 Predicate Clauses ..... p. 395
4.2.2.3 Object Clauses ..... p. 396
4.2.2.4 Attribute Clauses ..... p. 396
4.2.2.5 Adverbial Clauses ..... p. 397
4.3 EXTENDED COMBINED SENTENCES ..... p. 398

4.4 SPEECH ..... **p. 398**
4.4.1 Direct Speech ..... p. 398
4.4.2 Indirect Speech ..... p. 399
4.4.3 Transformation of Speech ..... p. 400

5. PUNCTUATION ..... **p. 401**
5.1 PUNCTUATION IN CLASSICAL SCRIPT ..... **p. 401**
5.1.1 Dots ..... p. 401
5.1.2 Marks ..... p. 402
5.2 PUNCTUATION IN CYRILLIC SCRIPT ..... **p. 402**
5.2.1 Period/Full Stop ..... p. 402
5.2.2 Question Mark ..... p. 403
5.2.3 Exclamation Mark ..... p. 403
5.2.4 Comma ..... p. 403
5.2.5 Semi-Colon ..... p. 404
5.2.6 Colon ..... p. 404
5.2.7 Quotation Marks/Inverted Commas ..... p. 405
5.2.8 Omission Dots ..... p. 405
5.2.9 Parentheses/Brackets ..... p. 405
5.2.10 Dash and Hyphen ..... p. 405

Part V: Appendix ..... p. 406

1. List of Passive Roots ..... **p. 407**

2. List of Some Phrasal Verbs ..... **p. 411**

3. List of Inflectional Suffixes ..... **p. 413**

4. Structural and Functional System of Relational Suffixes ... **p. 418**

5. Mongolian Equivalent of English Tenses ..... **p. 422**

6. Table of Contents in Mongolian ..... **p. 423**

7. Index: English-German-Mongolian ..... **p. 438**

Part I:

Introduction to the Mongolian Language

Chapter 1:

The Mongolian Language and its Development

pages 1-3

Chapter 2:

The Mongolian Alphabets

pages 4-32

Chapter 3:

Mongolian Word Structure

pages 33-40

1. THE MONGOLIAN LANGUAGE AND ITS DEVELOPMENT

1.1 General Characteristics of the Mongolian Language

The Mongolian language is classified as **agglutinative** (from Latin 'agglutinare' = 'to stick on'). The most important characteristics of agglutination are:

1.) The word stem doesn't change; instead, grammatical changes are made by adding ('sticking on') suffixes to the word stem (see page 33).
2.) Every suffix expresses only one grammatical meaning.

The Mongolian language belongs to the **Altaic language family**, together with **Turkish, Manchurian-Tungus, Japanese,** and **Korean.**

1.2 The Mongolian Languages and Their Dialects

The Classical Mongolian script originated with the Sogdo-Uighur alphabet. In the 13th century, this alphabet was used as the foundation for the Mongolian alphabet. The oldest known monument with this script is from 1227. In 1247, Tibetan scholars wrote the first Mongolian language grammar book. Since then, the Mongolian language has steadily developed and the script has been revised several times. Today about 8 million people in the world speak Mongolian. The language can be divided into the following languages and dialects:

Overview:

Language	Dialects	Homelands	Population (approx.2000)
1. Monguor	•Minkhe •Khutsu	Qinghai and Gansu Provinces, China	200,000
2. Dongxiang		Linsyan Banner in Gansu Province, China	400,000
3. Baoan		Linsyan Banner in Gansu Province; Qinghai Province, China	12,500
4. Shar-Uigur or East-Uigur		Several areas in Gansu Province, China	12,500
5. Daguur	•Khailar •Tsitsikhar •Bhuta •Khulia	Khölön-Büir Banner in Inner Mongolia; Tarvagatai mountains in the NW of today's Xinjiang Province, China	120,000
6. Kalmuck	•Dörvöd •Torguut •Butsava	The Kalmuck Republic in the Russian Federation	160,000
7. Oirat	•Dörvöd •Bayad •Torguut •Zakhchin •Öölđ •Khoshuut •Uriankhai	Uvs, Khovd and Bayan-Olgii Aimags, Mongolia; Xinjiang Province, China	300,000 Mongolia: 160,000 China: 140,000
8. Buriat	•Aga •Alar •Barga •Bargusin •Sartuul •Bokhan •Ekhirit •Tunkha •Khori •Tsongol	Several areas in Dornod, Khentii, Selenge, Bulgan, and Khövsgöl Aimags in Mongolia; Buriat Republic in the Russian Federation; Buriat aera of the Khölön-Büir Banner, Inner Mongolia,	400,000 Of those, living in the Buriat Republic: 300,000
9. Central Mongolia	•Khalkh •Darkhat •Dariganga •Sartuul	Mongolia	2,500,000
10. Southern Mongolia	•Tümed •Ordos •Baarin •Üzemjin •Khorchin •Gorlos •Kharchin •Darkhat •Khamnigan	Inner Mongolia, NE China	5,000,000

This book focuses on the Central Mongolian language group and **its standard dialect 'Khalkh'**. We use the **modernized** Classical Mongolian script as being used today in Mongolia, but we will give the old forms, where relevant (referred to by the word 'old').

1.3 The Classical Written and Modern Literary Languages

Right from the start, the pronunciation of Classical Mongolian script seems very difficult. For this reason, the Cyrillic script was introduced in the 1940's. The aim was to create a script which would reflect common pronunciation in the twentieth century, making it easier for the average person. The Russian alphabet served as a basis for this new alphabet, bringing with it some foreign letters and rules which resulted in a few inconsistencies in the use of Cyrillic and its 'grammar', which are not necessarily in the character of the Mongolian language. It is important to have some understanding of the most important differences between Classical Mongolian script and Cyrillic script. The following table should be helpful.

Differences between Classical-Mongolian and Modern Literary Language:

	Classical-Mongolian	Modern Literary Language (Cyrillic)
1.	**Polyphonetic alphabet:** **One** letter may symbolize **more than one** sound. (Compare with pages 5 and 31)	**Monophonetic alphabet:** **One** letter symbolizes **one** sound.
ex.	(can be "o" or "u")	2 letters are used: "o" and"y"
	(can be "d" or "t")	2 letters are used: "д" and "т"
2.	**Inflectional suffixes** are **not added** to the word stem and remain **unchanged.** (Compare with p.38ff)	**Inflectional suffixes** are **added directly** to the word stem and are sometimes **changed greatly.**
ex.	(ger tin)	гэрийн
	(mongyol ača)	монголоос
3.	**Sound-complex:** A 'long vowel' is written as a sound-complex. (Comp. with p.9ff)	**Long vowel:** A long vowel is written as a double vowel.
ex.	(qayan)	хаан
	(temege)	тэмээ
	(qasiy-a)	хашаа
4.	**Sound-complex:** A 'diphthong' is written as a sound-complex. (Comp. with p.10)	**Diphthong:** A diphthong is written as a diphthong.
ex.	(ayil)	айл
	(üyile)	үйл
5.	Different vowels in **vowel harmony:** (Compare with p.7)	**Vowel assimilation:** Some vowels dominate others and determine their pronunciation.
ex.	(olan)	олон
	(örgen)	өргөн
	(jirγuγa)	зургаа
	(ebül)	өвөл
6.	**All vowels are written:** (Compare with p.12)	**Vowel weakness:** Short vowels are dropped or are pronounced weakly or differently.
ex.	(aq-a)	ах
	(ulus)	улс
	(nutuγ)	нутаг
	(qoni)	хонь
7.	**Consonants are written without changes:** (Compare with p.14)	**Consonants are written complying with the rules of pronunciation:**
ex.	(sirege)	ширээ
	(abu)	аав

2. THE MONGOLIAN ALPHABETS

2.1 The Classical Alphabet

2.1.1 General Table of the Classical Alphabet

We know that this attempt to compare Mongolian sounds with English sounds doesn't necessarily follow linguistic rules. It is intended as a way to get started for beginners. We assume that Mongolian pronunciation and conversation won't be undertaken as individual study, but with a Mongolian teacher, so we will do without an exact phonetic study.

	Print	Cursive	Transcription	Sound in a Mongolian word	Transcription	Sound in an English word
1.			a		amgalta	father
2.			e		emege	bed
3.			i		ijil	easy
4.			o		oruqu	bought
5.			u		unuqu	similar to 'bone'
6.			ö		ömüdü	similar to 'girl'/'put'
7.			ü		ündüsü	soup
8.			n	( )	nom abuysan	name sing
9.			b		baraqu	bird
10a			q		qabar	loch (Scottish)
10b			k		kelekü	non-existent in Engl.
11a			ɣ		ɣal	get
11b			g		gerel	get
12.			l		lama	lateral fricative "l" (non-existent in Engl.)
13.			m		modu	my
14.			s		samur	song
15.			š		šatu	shot
16.			t		toɣusu	tall
17.			d		degebüri	day
18.			č		činggis	church
19.			j		jürji	joke
20.			y		yabuqu	yacht
21.			r		ɤarqu	rolled "r" (non-existent in Engl.)
22.			v		vaɣar	vase

The following letters don't belong to the original Classical Mongolian alphabet, but were introduced because of the use of loan words.						
23.			p		park	park
24.			f		franci	fine
25.			k		kilo	king
26.			é		gérman	egg
27.			c		canzan	its
28.			z		zandan	seeds
29.			h		himalai	house
30.			ž		žornal	joke

Explanations:

to 2) and 26): some dialects pronounce the "e" closed, some open. In Inner Mongolia the closed "e" is written with letter 2), the open "e" for foreign words with number 26. In Khalkh, letter 2) is pronunced open, similar to 'egg'.

to 5): this **open "u"** (back language) is difficult to pronounce; 'bone' is only similar.

to 6): this **closed "o"** (front language) is pronounced quite differently in each dialect; the British 'girl' follows the western Mongolian dialect; American 'put' reflects Khalkh pronunciation.

to 8): for the two different pronunciations of "n" **see 3rd pronunciation rule** (p.23).

to 10): this sound is absent in English, but the Scottish word 'l**och**' is pronounced like the back language "q"; the front language "k" is even more difficult to pronounce for English speakers (like the German "mi**ch**").

to 12): this Mongolian "l" is **lateral fricative**, not like the English "l" (practice well!)

to 18): this letter allows for **different pronunciations** depending on the dialects. In Inner Mongolia, this sound is "**ch**", in Khalkh it could also be pronounced as "**ts**".

to 19): see 18), in Inner Mongolia "j", in Khalkh it could also be "**ds**".

to 21): the Mongolian "r" must be rolled.

2.1.2 Polyphonetic Alphabet

As we mentioned on page 3, in a polyphonetic alphabet, the same letter can symbolize different sounds. In the Classical Mongolian alphabet, this is true of many letters. In the past, scholars attempted time and again to change the Mongolian alphabet to a monophonetic one:

Pag-pa Script	14th century	
Tod Script	16th century	(Oirat)
Soyombo Script	17th century	(Khalkh)
Vagindra Script	19th century	(Buriat)
Cyrillic Script	20th century	(Khalkh)

These attempts were largely handicapped by the fact that they only reflected the pronunciation of one dialect. It is very difficult to reflect justly all Mongolian dialects with one monophonetic alphabet. For this reason the Classical Mongolian alphabet has the advantage that it gives all the Mongolian dialects one common script.

2.1.3 Detailed Table of the Classical Alphabet

		Alone	Initial	Medial	Medial	Final	Final
1.	a	ᠠ	ᠠ	ᠠ		ᠠ	ᠠ
2.	e	ᠡ	ᠡ	ᠡ		ᠡ	ᠡ
3.	i	ᠢ	ᠢ	ᠠ	ᠢ	ᠢ	
4.	o	ᠣ	ᠣ	ᠣ		ᠣ	
5.	u	ᠤ	ᠤ	ᠤ		ᠤ	
6.	ö	ᠥ	ᠥ	ᠤ		ᠥ	
7.	ü	ᠦ	ᠦ	ᠤ		ᠥ	
		Consonants + a/e					
8.	n	ᠨ	ᠨ	ᠨ		ᠨ	ᠨ
9.	b	ᠪ	ᠪ	ᠪ		ᠪ	ᠪ
10a.	q	ᠺ	ᠺ	ᠺ		ᠺ	
10b.	k	ᠺ	ᠺ	ᠺ		ᠺ	
11a.	γ	ᠭ	ᠭ	ᠭ		ᠭ	ᠭ
11b.	g	ᠭ	ᠭ	ᠭ		ᠭ	
12.	l	ᠯ	ᠯ	ᠯ		ᠯ	ᠯ
13.	m	ᠮ	ᠮ	ᠮ		ᠮ	ᠮ
14.	s	ᠰ	ᠰ	ᠰ		ᠰ	
15.	š	ᠱ	ᠱ	ᠱ		ᠱ	
16.	t	ᠲ	ᠲ	ᠲ		ᠲ	
17.	d	ᠳ	ᠳ	ᠳ		ᠳ	
18.	č	ᠴ	ᠴ	ᠴ		ᠴ	
19.	j	ᠵ	ᠵ	ᠵ		ᠵ	
20.	y	ᠶ	ᠶ	ᠶ		ᠶ	
21.	r	ᠷ	ᠷ	ᠷ		ᠷ	
22.	v	ᠸ	ᠸ	ᠸ		ᠸ	
23.	p	ᠫ	ᠫ	ᠫ		ᠫ	
24.	f	ᠹ	ᠹ	ᠹ		ᠹ	
25.	k	ᠺ	ᠺ	ᠺ		ᠺ	
26.	h	ᠬ	ᠬ	ᠬ		ᠬ	
27.	c	ᠼ	ᠼ	ᠼ		ᠼ	
28.	z	ᠽ	ᠽ	ᠽ		ᠽ	
29.	n	ᠾ	ᠾ	ᠾ		ᠾ	
30.	ž	ᠿ	ᠿ	ᠿ		ᠿ	

Explanations:

1. Some letters have two final forms: one that joins the word, another that is separated. This difference will be accounted for in the transcription:

ᠠᠷᠠᠭ → nara; ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠨ → yabun; ᠮᠠᠨ → man; ᠵᠤᠪᠤᠯᠠᠨ → yabulan

2. see explanation on page 11

3. "na" and "sa" can be written in 2 ways. No. 3 is the modernized form as used in Inner Mongolia. We will use the old form in this book, because it's easier to read, and it's more logical.

	Consonants + i			Consonants + o/u			Consonants + ö/ü		
	Initial	Medial	Final	Initial	Medial	Final	Initial	Medial	Final
8.	ᠨᠢ	ᠨᠢ	ᠨᠢ	ᠨᠤ	ᠨᠤ	ᠨᠤ	ᠨᠦ	ᠨᠦ	ᠨᠦ
9.	ᠪᠢ	ᠪᠢ	ᠪᠢ	ᠪᠤ	ᠪᠤ	ᠪᠤ	ᠪᠦ	ᠪᠦ	ᠪᠦ
10a.	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠤ	ᠺᠤ	ᠺᠤ			
10b.	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ				ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠦ
11a.	ᠭᠢ	ᠭᠢ	ᠭᠢ	ᠭᠤ	ᠭᠤ	ᠭᠤ			
11b.	ᠭᠢ	ᠭᠢ	ᠭᠢ				ᠭᠦ	ᠭᠦ	ᠭᠦ
12.	ᠯᠢ	ᠯᠢ	ᠯᠢ	ᠯᠤ	ᠯᠤ	ᠯᠤ	ᠯᠦ	ᠯᠦ	ᠯᠦ
13.	ᠮᠢ	ᠮᠢ	ᠮᠢ	ᠮᠤ	ᠮᠤ	ᠮᠤ	ᠮᠦ	ᠮᠦ	ᠮᠦ
14.	ᠰᠢ	ᠰᠢ	ᠰᠢ	ᠰᠤ	ᠰᠤ	ᠰᠤ	ᠰᠦ	ᠰᠦ	ᠰᠦ
15.	ᠱᠢ	ᠱᠢ	ᠱᠢ	ᠱᠤ	ᠱᠤ	ᠱᠤ	ᠱᠦ	ᠱᠦ	ᠱᠦ
16.	ᠲᠢ	ᠲᠢ	ᠲᠢ	ᠲᠤ	ᠲᠤ	ᠲᠤ	ᠲᠦ	ᠲᠦ	ᠲᠦ
17.	ᠳᠢ	ᠳᠢ	ᠳᠢ	ᠳᠤ	ᠳᠤ	ᠳᠤ	ᠳᠦ	ᠳᠦ	ᠳᠦ
18.	ᠴᠢ	ᠴᠢ	ᠴᠢ	ᠴᠤ	ᠴᠤ	ᠴᠤ	ᠴᠦ	ᠴᠦ	ᠴᠦ
19.	ᠵᠢ	ᠵᠢ	ᠵᠢ	ᠵᠤ	ᠵᠤ	ᠵᠤ	ᠵᠦ	ᠵᠦ	ᠵᠦ
20.	ᠶᠢ	ᠶᠢ	ᠶᠢ	ᠶᠤ	ᠶᠤ	ᠶᠤ	ᠶᠦ	ᠶᠦ	ᠶᠦ
21.	ᠷᠢ	ᠷᠢ	ᠷᠢ	ᠷᠤ	ᠷᠤ	ᠷᠤ	ᠷᠦ	ᠷᠦ	ᠷᠦ
22.	ᠸᠢ	ᠸᠢ	ᠸᠢ	ᠸᠤ	ᠸᠤ	ᠸᠤ	ᠸᠦ	ᠸᠦ	ᠸᠦ
23.	ᠫᠢ	ᠫᠢ	ᠫᠢ	ᠫᠤ	ᠫᠤ	ᠫᠤ	ᠫᠦ	ᠫᠦ	ᠫᠦ
24.	ᠹᠢ	ᠹᠢ	ᠹᠢ	ᠹᠤ	ᠹᠤ	ᠹᠤ	ᠹᠦ	ᠹᠦ	ᠹᠦ
25.	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠢ	ᠺᠤ	ᠺᠤ	ᠺᠤ	ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠦ	ᠺᠦ
26.									
27.	ᠼᠢ	ᠼᠢ	ᠼᠢ	ᠼᠤ	ᠼᠤ	ᠼᠤ	ᠼᠦ	ᠼᠦ	ᠼᠦ
28.	ᠽᠢ	ᠽᠢ	ᠽᠢ	ᠽᠤ	ᠽᠤ	ᠽᠤ	ᠽᠦ	ᠽᠦ	ᠽᠦ
29.	ᠾᠢ	ᠾᠢ	ᠾᠢ	ᠾᠤ	ᠾᠤ	ᠾᠤ	ᠾᠦ	ᠾᠦ	ᠾᠦ
30.	ᠿᠢ	ᠿᠢ	ᠿᠢ	ᠿᠤ	ᠿᠤ	ᠿᠤ	ᠿᠦ	ᠿᠦ	ᠿᠦ

2.1.4 Vowels

2.1.4.1 VOWEL HARMONY

The Classical Mongolian alphabet has **7 basic vowels**:

ᠠ (a), ᠡ (e), ᠢ (i), ᠣ (o), ᠤ (u), ᠥ (ö), ᠦ (ü)

These 7 vowels divide into **three groups**:

1.) Strong (masculine, back) vowels : a, o, u
2.) Weak (feminine, front) vowels: e, ö, ü
3.) Neuter (neutral) vowel: i

Reflecting the law of **vowel harmony,** each Mongolian word may have only strong vowels or weak vowels. The "i" is neutral and can appear with either set. If a word has only the vowel "i", it is considered a weak word.

strong words: ᠰᠤᠷᠪᠠᠬᠤᠯᠢ (survaxuli), ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ (sayiqan), ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ (qoyin-a), ᠣᠷᠣᠢ (oroi)

weak words: ᠡᠳᠦᠷ (edür), ᠦᠶᠢᠯᠡᠳᠪᠦᠷᠢ (üyiledbüri), ᠥᠴᠦᠭᠡᠳᠦᠷ (öčügedür), ᠡᠪᠦᠯ (ebül)

neutral words: ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ (bičig), ᠵᠢᠵᠢᠭ (jijig), ᠵᠢᠴᠢ (jičі)

2.1.4.2 PROCESS OF DEVELOPMENT

Today, in the modern literary language, there are long vowels, diphthongs, and a list of pronunciation rules. This is a result of many centuries of language development, especially in the area of vowel usage. Originally the Mongolian language had no long vowels or diphthongs, which makes it difficult today to clearly define the border between long vowels and diphthongs. We will focus on the following 4 points of this development:

1.) Assimilation
2.) Origin of long vowels
3.) Origin of diphthongs
4.) Reduced vowels

2.1.4.2.1 Assimilation

We speak of assimilation when a vowel influences the pronunciation of a vowel next to it. Sometimes it doesn't have to be right next to it, simply in the same word. This assimilation process has taken place especially in central Mongolia, and the Khalkh pronunciation is very different from the Classical Mongolian script because of this. These changes happened in consistent ways, though, so if a person knows the rules (see ☛), it is much easier to read the Classical script in today's Khalkh dialect.

There are two basic assimilations:

2.1.4.2.1.1 Forward Assimilation

The vowel in the first syllable dominates, so the pronunciation of the following vowel **moves towards the first one**. For this there is only one rule:

☛	**"o/ö" in the first syllable dominate. All following vowels are pronounced "o/ö".**

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
ᠣᠷᠤᠯᠠᠭᠤ	orulaqu	орлох
ᠣᠯᠠᠨ	olan	олон
ᠣᠮᠤᠭ	omug	омог
ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠡ	dörbe	дөрөв
ᠮᠥᠷᠡᠨ	mören	мөрөн

2.1.4.2.1.2 Backward Assimilation

This is a common form of assimilation. The last vowel dominates and the preceding vowels are influenced. This usually happens when long vowels are formed (p.9f), but not exclusively. For this reason, we provide a complete list with all the possible backward assimilations.

☛ **The last long vowel always dominates and swallows the preceding vowel.**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
iya: → a:		qasiy-a	хашаа
uxa: → a:		jirxux-a	зургаа
axu: → u:		axula	уул
ixu: → u:		nixuča	нууц
ige: → e:		jige	зээ
üge: → e:		bütügel	бүтээл
egü: → ü:		egüle	үүл
igü: →ü:		serigün	сэрүүн

☛ **"i" in the first syllable is swallowed or broken by successive, dominating vowels.**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
i/a → u/a		miq-a	мах
		jixasu	загас
		ilax-a	ялаа
		qilbar	хялбар
i/u → u/u		čisu	цүс
		jiruqu	зурах
		čilaxu	чулуу
i/ü → u/ü		sidü	шүд
		jirüge	зүрх
		nidü	нүд

☛ **"e" in the first syllable + "ü" in the second syllable = ö!**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
e/ü → ö/ö		edür	өдөр
		ebül	өвөл
		emün-e	өмнө

☛ **"e" in the first syllable + "be" in the second syllable = ö!**

Assimilation	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
e/be → ö		ebesü	өвс
		ebedčin	өвчин

2.1.4.2.2 Origin of Long Vowels

When we study the **pronunciation of long vowels**, we find there are **three groups.** The first group is the most important.

2.1.4.2.2.1 Sound-Complexes

Sound-complexes	in 1st syllable	not in 1st syllable		**Explanations:** Table with Classical Mongolian, transcription and Cyrillic in parentheses (= pronunciation). *The "i" cannot be dropped, because it marks a soft consonant.		
		Not o/ö in 1st syll.	o/ö in 1st syll.	**Examples:**		
	A	**B**	**C**	**A**	**B**	**C**
aya	a: (аа)	a: (аа)	o: (оо)	ayasi (аяаш)		jobaxaqu (зовоох)
iya → iya	a: (аа) (иа)*	a: (аа) (иа)*	o: (оо) (ио)*	jiyaqu, (заах) qasiy-a (хашаа)	tariy-a (тариа)*	očiyad (очоод) qoriy-a (хорио) *
oya	o: (оо)			toy–a (тоо)		
uya		a: (аа)	o: (оо)		jiruyan (зургаан)	noyuyan (ноогоо)
ayu	u: (уу)	u: (уу)		ayula (уул)	čilayu (чулуу)	
iyu	u: (уу)	u: (уу) (иу)*		niyuča (нууц)	ariyun (ариун)*	
oyu	o: (оо)			qoyusun (хоосон)		
uyu	u: (уу)	u: (уу)		uuyuqu (уух)	quruyu (хуруу)	
iyi	i: (ий)			čiyiray (чийрэг)		
ege	e: (ээ)	e: (ээ)	ö: (өө)	deger-e (дээр)	temege (тэмээ)	ködege (хөдөө)
ige → iye	e: (ээ)	e: (ээ)	ö: (өө)	jige (зээ)	belčger (бэлчээр)	jöriged (зөрөөд)
öge	ö: (өө)			öger-e (өөр)		
üge		e: (ээ)	ö: (өө)		kürüged (хүрээд)	nögüge (нөгөө)
egü	ü: (үү)			egüle (үүл)		
igü		ü: (үү)			serigün (сэрүүн)	
ögü	ö: (өө)			nögülekü (нөөлөх)		
ügü	ü: (үү)	ü: (үү)		dügüreng (дүүрэн)	kü}ügüü (хүзүү)	
iyi	i: (ий)			čigjg (чийг)		

2.1.4.2.2.2 Short Vowels

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
	abu	аав
	čavan	цагаан
	ĕji	ээж
	ger-ĕ	гэрээ
	önŏ	өнөө
	ŭr	ҮҮр
	sŭ	сҮҮ
	kjkŭ	хийх
	narĭn	нарийн

2.1.4.2.2.3 Compound Vowels

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (Pronunciation)
	noosu	ноос
	sĭidbŭri	шийдвэр
	uul	уул
	teŭke	тҮҮх
	qauli	хууль
	taulai	туулай
	ereŭ	эрҮҮ
	bisĭŭ	бишҮҮ

2.1.4.2.3 Origin of Diphthongs

A Mongolian diphthong is formed when two unlike vowels are written together and **make a new sound** (like in English 'pair', 'hair'). Usually when "i" appears in a diphthong it is very short and is therefore called "half-i". There are five different diphthongs in Classical Mongolian. The pronunciation of these diphthongs is usually a problem for English speakers. These diphthongs shouldn't be pronounced like the English 'fine', 'time', etc. where two separate vowels can be heard. Those who are familiar with the German umlauts "ä, ü, ö" do well in remembering those, as the Mongolian diphthongs are similarly pronounced.

Diph-thong	Cyrillic	Pronunciation in English	Ex. Classical	Ex. Cyrillic	Ex. English (German)
a(y)i	аЙ	"**a**" (see examples)		далаЙ	similar to 'bad, hat' (German: Ähre)
e(y)i	ий	"**ee**" (see ex.) or		ийм	like 'free, bee, see'
	эЙ	"**ai**" (see ex.)		хэрэгтэЙ	similar to 'hair, pair' (German: 'Mädchen')
o(y)i	оЙ	"**oi**" (see ex.)		оЙ	similar to 'joy', if "y" is pro-nounced very weak!
u(y)i	уЙ	similar to "**oi**"		уЙтгар	see above
ü(y)i	ҮЙ	"**ui**" or		ҮЙл	like 'suite', but only if "i" is pronounced very weak!
	ий	"**ee**" (see ex.)		хэдИЙ	like 'free, bee, see'

Note that there is no diphthong for "öi" (ой). Whenever it would be necessary because of vowel harmony, it is written "ei" (эй). The diphthongs are **divided into 2 groups** according to their development.

2.1.4.2.3.1 Y-Diphthongs

Some of today's diphthongs were originally written "vowel + y + i". Then the "y" was dropped and could no longer be recognized in the writing because the small dash was missing. In the transcription we are using the "y" for clarity. Assimilation hasn't developed and therefore we get a combination of two vowels:

First:	Then:
(a**y**i**l**)	(a**y**i**l**)
(te**y**i**m**ü)	(te**y**i**m**ü)

These diphthongs never appear at the end of the word. Instead, they are usually at the beginning. Notice too, that after the weak vowels (ö) and (ü) the usual two "i" dashes do not appear.

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	a**y**i**l**	а**й**л
	sa**y**i**n**	са**й**н
	e**y**i**m**ü	и**й**м
	te**y**i**m**ü	т**и**й**м**
	o**y**i**m**usu	о**й**мс
	qo**y**i**n**-a	хо**й**но
	u**y**i**t**an	у**й**тан
	u**y**i**d**qar	у**й**тгар
	ü**y**i**m**egen	Ү**й**мээн
	ü**y**i**l**edbüri	Ү**й**лдвэр

2.1.4.2.3.2 Final Diphthongs

Such diphthongs appear only in the final syllable of a word.

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	noq**ai**	нохо**й**
	dal**ai**	далa**й**
	k**ei**	хи**й**
	delek**ei**	дэлхи**й**
	oi	о**й**
	or**oi**	оро**й**
	du**ɤui**	дугу**й**
	qara**ŋɤui**	харанху**й**
	ked**üi**	хэдэ**й**
	ed**üi**	одэ**й**

2.1.4.2.4 Reduced Vowels

The stress is normally on the first syllable of a word, usually resulting in a clear pronunciation of the first vowel sound. Other vowels are then unstressed or reduced in their pronunciation or sometimes, in fact, dropped entirely (see spelling rules on p.23ff). There are two main groups of reduced vowels:

1.) Vowels are written, but have changed
2.) Vowels are dropped

2.1.4.2.4.1 Vowel Weakness

Explanations	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
Vowel is **unchanged**		ayima**a**r	аймаг
		xa**a**ar	газар
		tara**a**r	тараг
Vowel **changes**: The stress is on the first syllable, so the next vowel is not stressed.		uru**u**r	ураг
		nutu**u**r	нутаг
		üsü**ü**g	үсэг
		ükü**ü**l	үхэл
Vowel is **reduced:** The "i" cannot be dropped completely, because it marks a soft consonant.		mori	морь
		qoni	хонь
		qani	хань
		quli	хууль
		ami	амь

2.1.4.2.4.2 Vowel Dropping

Explanations	Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
1.) Vowel in **open, final syllable** is dropped.		urtu	урт
		sumu	сум
		köke	хөх
		kündü	хүнд
		qola	хол
		dumda	дунд
		qoŋqu	хонх
		üge	үг
		qar-a	хар
		talq-a	талх
2.) Vowel in **closed syllable** is dropped.		arad	ард
		ulus	улс
		ögeled	өөлд
		jimis	жимс

3.) Combination of 1 and 2:		bügüde	бүгд
		egečj	эгч
		dabusu	давс
		darasu	дарс
		ömüdü	өмд
		kölüsü	хөлс
4.) Vowel in front of a **hidden "n"** is dropped	( )	odu(n)	од(н)
	( )	egüle(n)	үүл(н)
	( )	miq-a(n)	мах(н)
	( )	qonj(n)	хонь(н)
	( )	nara(n)	нар(н)
	( )	kele(n)	хэл(н)

2.1.5 Consonants

2.1.5.1 STRONG AND WEAK CONSONANTS

In Classical Mongolian, there are 9 consonants which can appear at the end of a syllable (not only at the end of a word). These final consonants are divided into two groups which determine which suffixes can be used. Some suffixes are for strong final consonants and others for weak ones.

The 5 strong final consonants: "b, g/x, r, s, d" (code word: '**bagarasada**')

 (abqu), (nutux), (baysi), (bilig), (ir), (arba), (ulus)

 (bosqu), (arad), (jidkül)

The 4 weak final consonants: "n, m, l, ŋ" (code word: '**namilang**')

 (kümün), (manduqu), (nam), (qamtu), (maj), (majčin),

 (begejiŋ), (moŋxol).

2.1.5.2 TABLE OF SYLLABLE-FINAL CONSONANTS

Transcript	b	γ	g	r	s	d	n	m	l	ŋ
medial										
final										
Example words										
Transcription words	ab**q**u a**b**	bay**s**i ü**g**ü nutu**γ** bili**g**	arba ba**r**	bo**s**qu ulu**s**	jid**g**ül ara**d**	ma**n**duqu kümü**n**	qam**t**u na**m**	mal**č**in ma**l**	mo**ŋ**ɣul bege**ljŋ**

2.1.5.3 SOFT CONSONANTS IN STRONG WORDS

All consonants in **strong words are hard** unless an "i" is written after them. The vowel "i" **changes** the preceding hard consonant to a soft one. Soft consonants change the preceding vowel sound, causing it to be pronounced **palatally**. Again, this palatalization comes close to the German umlaut pronunciation.

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic	German (English)
	q**o**n**i**	хонь	"chön" (like 'hoin')
	m**o**r**i**	морь	"mör" (like 'myrrh')
	u**n**i	унь	"ön" (like 'ooin')
	surɣaɣu**l**i	сургууль	(similar to 'sorgooil')
	a**m**i	амь	"äm" like 'Mädchen'
	q**a**n**i**	хань	"chän" like 'Mädchen'
	a**ŋ**x**i**	ангги	"äng"

2.1.5.4 CHANGES IN CONSONANTS

Consonants have changed and developed through the years, though not as much as vowels. The following rules of pronunciation must be followed:

☛ **"b" becomes "v"** when it is **between 2 vowels** or **follows any consonant except b, l, m, n, ng**.

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	a**b**u	аав
	ire**b**el	ирвэл
	e**b**ül	өвөл
	ar**b**a	арав
	jo**b**alaŋ	зовлон

☞ "si" becomes "Ш"

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	sirege	ширээ
	sibaxu	шувуу
	sin-e	шинэ
	sidü	шүд
	siudan	шуудан

☞ "b" becomes "m"

Classical Mongolian	Transcription	Cyrillic (pronunciation)
	nilbusu	нулимс
	sirbüsü	шөрмөс

2.1.6 Syllables

The Mongolian language uses **4 syllabic structures** (1-4). In words from foreign languages (especially loan words from Tibetan and Sanskrit), there are other structures (5-8).

1.) Vowel Syllables (V):

ex.: (oi), - (e-ji), - (a-jil), - (e-ne), - (u-lus)

2.) Vovel-Consonant Syllables (VC):

ex.: (ür), - (al-tan), - (em-Ki)

3.) Consonant-Vowel Syllables (CV):

ex.: (bi), (ta), (sü), - (na-ra), - - (ba-ya-tur)

4.) Consonant-Vowel-Consonant Syllables (CVC):

ex.: (yal), (mal), (yool), - (mal-čin)

5.) Vowel-Consonant-Consonant Syllables (VCC):

ex.: - (ars-lan)

6.) Consonant-Vowel-Consonant-Consonant Syllables (CVCC):

ex.: (bars), (kadr)

7.) Consonant-Consonant-Vowel-Consonant Syllables (CCVC):

ex.: - (hris-tos)

8.) Consonant-Consonant-Vowel-Consonant-Consonant Syllables (CCVCC):

ex.: (front)

2.1.7 Writing Loan Words

Because Classical Mongolian has a polyphonetic alphabet, where one letter can be used to show different sounds, some letters were altered for loan words in order to express the pronunciation better.

2.1.7.1 LETTER CHANGES IN LOAN WORDS

Transcr.	Initial	Medial	Final	Example	Transcript.	English
o/u					kino	film
ö/ü					béyirüt niü york	Beirut New York
n (1)					franci	France
t					hristos front	Christ front
d					dén fond	lantern fund

Explanations:

1.) The "**n**" in its medial or final form equals the "**a**" form. Usually, it is clear which letter is intended, expecially in Mongolian words. In foreign words, a dot is used in the medial form in Mongolia, but not in Inner Mongolia. We use the dot because it's clearer.

2.) The letters "ɤ" and "q" are written the same when appearing in the middle of a foreign word.

3.) There is **no difference between** "v" and "e" in a medial or final position.

2.1.7.2 EXAMPLES OF LOAN WORDS

	Classical M.	Transcription	English		Classical M.	Transcription	English
a		aüstraliy-a	Australia	g		bérlin	Berlin
b		amérika	America	h		bon	Bonn
c		gérman	Germany	i		stokholm	Stockholm
d		aüstriy-a	Austria	j		yérüsalém	Jerusalem
e		éüropa	Europe	k		jénéva	Geneva
f		svis	Switzerland	l		bérné	Bern

2.1.8 Spelling Rules

2.1.8.1 SUFFIX RULES

1. ☞ Suffixes as consonant-vowel pairs

Words ending with a vowel take suffixes which begin with consonants.

Ex.: [illegible]

Words ending with a consonant take suffixes which begin with vowels.

Ex.: [illegible]

2. ☞ Suffixes as vowel-harmony pairs

Most suffixes must be used in compliance with vowel harmony because they have a strong and weak form from which to choose.

Ex.: [illegible]

3. ☞ Suffixes independent of vowel harmony

There are some suffixes which can be used independently of vowel harmony, because they are formed with the vowels "a/e", which look the same in a medial or final position in a word.

Ex.: [illegible]

4. ☞ Suffixes as consonant-harmony pairs

There is something like a 'consonant harmony' (see p.13). This consonant division results in the following rules:

☞ **bagarasada**-consonants need suffixes beginning with "t" or "č":

Ex.: [illegible]

☞ (Vowels and) **namilang** consonants need suffixes beginning with "d" or "j":

Ex.: [illegible]

5. ☞ Suffixes and final consonants "s" and "d"

If a suffix beginning with "x" is added to a word with the **final consonants "s" or "d"**, the "x" generally changes to a "q":

Ex.: [illegible]

2.1.8.2 RULES FOR INSERTED VOWEL (EPENTHESIZED VOWEL)

2.1.8.2.1 General Rules

Mongolian word stems can either end with vowels or consonants. All suffixes which are added directly, though, **begin with consonants**. When these suffixes are added to a **word stem which ends with a consonant, there are special rules** for vowel insertion (epenthesis). Usually the inserted vowel is "**u/ü**", complying with vowel harmony. On a rare occasion (only for noun-building suffixes) "**a/e**" are used.

[illegible]

Rules that say when an inserted vowel **is necessary**:

1.☛ Suffix beginning with a double consonant
Single consonant suffix

Ex.1: [illegible]

Ex.2: [illegible]

2.☛ Consonant-vowel suffix

Ex.: [illegible]

Exception: the [illegible] verb suffix doesn't need the inserted vowel: [illegible]

3.☛ Sound-complex suffix

When the suffix and the inserted vowel form a sound-complex:

Ex.: [illegible]

4.☛ "m"-suffix

When adding a suffix which begins with "m" the inserted vowel is usually necessary. Other old suffixes* take also the inserted vowel.

-mar, -mavča, -manjin, -moi, -mal, -maiči, (-nam*, -si*, -yu*, -luva*, -run*)

Ex.: [illegible]

2.1.8.2.2 Exceptions

There are a few verbs which need special connections.

1.☛ Verb [illegible] = "to give"

With the verb "ŏg-" the connection is not only "ü" but "gü".

Ex.: [illegible]

2.☛ Verb [illegible] ="to take"

Suffixes beginning with "b" require also the inserted vowel:

Ex.: [illegible]

3.☛ Verbs [illegible] = "to drift (to sink)"

With the above three verbs, all of which end with a "b", "**bü**" is the connector, even when the suffix begins with "b".

Ex.: [illegible]

2.2 The Cyrillic Alphabet (see text on page 4)

	Printed letters	Cursive	Mongolian name	English sound	Letter in Mongolian words	Approximate sound in English word
1.	А а	*А а*	а	u (in a closed syll.)	ах	father
2.	Б б	*Б б*	бэ	b	барс	bird
3.	В в	*В в*	вэ	v (b)	авах (авбал)	vase (bad)
4.	Г г	*Г г*	гэ	g (ck)	гал (багa) (огт)	get (back) (---)
5.	Д д	*Д д*	дэ	d	дээвэр	day
6.	Е е	*Е е*	е	ye (yi)	ёзвэн (ер)	yeah (ye)
7.	Ё ё	*Ё ё*	ё	yo	ёотон	yawn
8.	Ж ж	*Ж ж*	жэ	j	жаргал	joke
9.	З з	*З з*	зэ	ds	зураг	seeds
10.	И и	*И и*	и	"ee" (but not long)	ишиг	easy
11.	й	*й*	хагас и	no sound on its own, but changes preceding vowel	найм, ойлгох	like "i" in 'said' (compare: 'sad')
12.	К к	*К к*	ка	k	кило	kilo
13.	Л л	*Л л*	эл	l (dental)	лам	-------
14.	М м	*М м*	эм	m	мол	modern
15.	Н н	*Н н*	эн	n (ng)	ном (авсан)	name (sing)
16.	О о	*О о*	о	o (open)	олон	bought
17.	Ө ө	*Ө ө*	ө	o (closed)	өдөр	girl (Br.); put (Am.)
18.	П п	*П п*	пэ	p	парк	park
19.	Р р	*Р р*	эр	r (rolled)	орох	rolled "r"
20.	С с	*С с*	эс	s	самар	sing
21.	Т т	*Т т*	тэ	t	тоос	tall
22.	У у	*У у*	у	u (open)	уул	similar to 'bone'
23.	Ү ү	*Ү ү*	ү	u (closed)	үүл	soup
24.	Ф ф	*Ф ф*	фэ	f	фото	photo
25.	Х х	*Х х*	хэ	not standard English	хамар/ хэл	loch (Scottish)/---
26.	Ц ц	*Ц ц*	цэ	ts	цас	its
27.	Ч ч	*Ч ч*	чэ	ch	чих	cheese
28.	Ш ш	*Ш ш*	иш	sh	шөл	short
29.	Щ щ	*Щ щ*	шч	shch		English Channel
30.	ъ	*ъ*	хатуугийн тэмдэг	Hard sign	явъя	--------
31.	ы	*ы*	ы	ii	таны	city
32.	ь	-	зөөлний тэмдэг	Soft sign	ирье	--------
33.	Э э	*Э э*	э	e	эмч	get
34.	Ю ю	*Ю ю*	ю	yu (open) yu (closed)	юм юү	------- you
35.	Я я	*Я я*	я	ya	явах	yacht

Explanations: (see also page 5)
1.) 12, 24, and 29 only appear in foreign words.
2.) The following sounds are difficult and must be practiced well: 4, 7, 13, 16, 17, 19, 22, 23, 25

2.2.1 Vowels

2.2.1.1 CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS

Basic vowels (short vowels)	Further vowels based on basic vowels: **Double vowels** (long vowels)	**Diphthongs** (*4)	so called **Y- vowels** (*1)	**Auxiliary vowels** (*2)
а	аа	ай	я	ы
о	оо	ой	ё	
у	уу	уй	ю(у)	
э	ээ	эй	е	ий
ө	өө	non existing		
ү	үү	үй	ю(ү)	
и (й) (*3)		ий (*5)		

Explanations:

*1) The so-called 'Y-vowels' come from using the Russian Cyrillic alphabet and are nothing more than a combination of "y" and a basic vowel (see p.31f), so it is perhaps incorrect to speak of a separate vowel here.

*2) Both auxiliary vowels represent long vowel sounds in their pronunciation. The "ы" comes from Cyrillic. Please note that auxiliary vowels are found as such only in suffixes and follow the rules of vowel harmony: "ы" for strong words and "ий" for weak words.

*3) The **vowel** "и" has 2 forms. As "й", it is used in diphthongs.

*4) "ya, уай, иа, иу" look like **diphthongs**, but are not.
"ya" appears in loan words, but only rarely
"уай" (as in "гуай") may be a modern short form of "авгай". Further words with this syllable are unknown.
"иа, иу" are diphthongs which appeared in the Mongolian language through the use of Cyrillic. It is actually a combination sound of a soft consonant and long vowel (see table on page 9).

*5) This diphthong looks like an auxiliary vowel in Cyrillic, but, in fact, they are actually two different phonemes which is clearly evident from the Classical Mongolian Script.

Comparison with English vowels:
Mongolian short vowels are shorter than English short vowels. **Mongolian long vowels** are shorter than English long vowels. **Mongolian diphthongs** are pronounced more united than English diphthongs.

2.2.1.2 VOWEL HARMONY

Mongolian vowels are divided into three groups:

1.) Strong (masculine or back) vowels:

a) Basic vowels	а	о	у	ex.:	ав–	очи–	ул
b) Double vowels	аа	оо	уу (юу)	ex.:	аав	ооч и–	уул (юу)
c) Diphthongs	ай	ой	уй	ex.:	айв	ойчи–	уйл–
d) Y-vowels	я	ё	ю(у)	ex.:	ява–	ёс	юм
e) Auxiliary vowels	ы			ex.:	таны		

2.) Weak (feminine or front) vowels:

a) Basic vowels	э	ө	ү	ex.:	эр	өр	үр
b) Double vowels	ээ	өө	үү (юү)	ex.:	ээр	өөр	үүр (юүлэн)
c) Diphthongs	эй		үй (юй)	ex.:	эмэгтэй		үйрэх (юйрэх)
d) Y-vowels	е		ю(ү)	ex.:	ер		юндэн
e) Auxiliary vowels	ий			ex.:	миний		

3.) Neutral (neuter) vowel:

a) Basic vowel	и	ex.:	бичи–	сонин	эрин

In compliance with the rules of vowel harmony, only strong vowels or only weak vowels can appear in one Mongolian word. The vowel "и" is neutral and can occur with either set of vowels. If only the neutral vowel "и" appears, the word is treated like a word with weak vowels (e.g. бичих, тийм, жимс).
Rules of vowel harmony do not apply to loan words.

2.2.2 Consonants

2.2.2.1 HARD AND SOFT CONSONANTS

The Mongolian language has hard and soft consonants. The consonants in a strong word are hard, the consonants in a weak word are soft.
In a strong word, the vowel "i" **changes** the preceding hard consonant into a soft one. The **soft sign** "ь" **shows** that the preceding consonant is soft. Soft consonants **change** the preceding vowel sound to a **palatal** pronunciation.

2.2.2.2 CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS

Many spelling rules (see p.23ff) are based upon this classification of the consonants. It is therefore advisable to memorize the code-word that stands for the first group:

2.2.2.2.1 "7-Consonants" or C^7 (vocalized consonants)

☞ м, н, г, л, б, в, р

They are easily remembered with the code-word монгол баавар ('mongol baavar' = silver decoration on a saddle). Before or after such a consonant there needs to be a **vowel**! Therefore they are called, in Mongolian, "эгшигт гийгүүлэгч" (= 'consonants with vowels').
монгол, баавгай, ном, гал, мөнгөн, мал, лаалгавар, нэмэх, намар, нар

2.2.2.2.2 "9-Consonants" or C^9 (non-vocalized consonants)

☞ д, ж, з, с, т, х, ц, ч, ш

These 9-consonants can appear without a vowel. Therefore, their Mongolian name is "заримдаг гийгүүлэгч" (= 'incomplete consonants').
сард, Дорж, харз, жимс, галт, талх, орц, товч, багш

2.2.2.3 CONSONANT ORDER IN A WORD

1.) In genuine Mongolian words double consonants never appear at the beginning of a word.
2.) In genuine Mongolian words "л" und "п" never appear at the beginning of a word.
3.) After "ж", "ч", and "ш" in a second syllable, there is always an "и". Exceptions are due to inconsistencies in the Cyrillic (e.g. "хичээл" = actually "хичиел")

2.2.3 Signs

There are two signs which have been borrowed from the Russian Cyrillic alphabet in order to express a special characteristic of Mongolian pronunciation. They are the hard sign and the soft sign.

2.2.3.1 THE HARD SIGN "ъ"

The hard sign has only one function:
1. It **separates** the **PTS** "-я" (see page 175) from strong verb stems ending with a consonant.
Verb stems that end with a vowel or soft sign, don't need this sign.
ex.: явъя, оръё, авъя, очъё, but: ярья, болъё, сольё, болгоё, буцаъя

2.2.3.2 THE SOFT SIGN "ь"

The soft sign has two functions:

1.) It **separates** the **PTS** "-е" from weak verb stems ending with a consonant. Verb stems that end with a vowel don't need this sign.

ex.: ирье, эрье, өгье — but: хүйе, нээе, бүтээе

2.) It serves as a sign of softness **to mark** the preceding hard consonant as a soft consonant.

ex.: минь, чинь, энь, хонь, морь, сургууль,

The soft consonant influences the preceding vowel, causing it to be pronounced ***palatally***.

ex.: хамь, (compare with "хан/ хана") онь (он), амь (ам), ууль (уул)

Please note that in Classical Mongolian these words always end with the vowel "i" which causes the preceding consonants to become soft. Therefore the ***palatal*** pronunciation also applies where the vowel "и" is used in a strong word.

ex.: ангии, солих, олонхи

Because this **palatal** function is very important, the soft sign (or the vowel "и") should not be dropped accidentally (see spelling rules on page 27).

2.2.4 Syllables

(C=consonant, V=vowel)

Genuine Mongolian words use the following syllable structures:

1.) V-syllables: улаан, аймаг, оосор, ахуй, ашиг, амар, ойтой, олон, овоо
2.) VC-syllables: алдар, амжих, эдлэх, үсрэх, устах, орлох, овчин, өмнө
3.) CV-syllables: та, чи, буудах, ширээ, бороо, тараг, шийдэх, зурах, тэгэх
4.) CVC-syllables: мэдрэх, тосгон, тэмдэг, халдах, сүүлдэх, чанга, шалгах

Through the Cyrillic script, the following **artificial** syllables came into usage:

5.) VCC-syllables: эмч, эгч, илт, амт, урт, эрт, ёст, өмч, үйлт, үст
These are actually two syllables where the last vowel was simply dropped (see page 12).
6.) CVCC-syllables: хамтрал, товчлох, мэндлэх, жимс, талх, цамц, тэрс, тэгш
These are also words where vowels (and therefore whole syllables) have been dropped.
7.) VCCC-syllables: эрхтнээ
Such syllables are a product of the vowel dropping (see page 24f).
8.) CVCCC-syllables: идэвхтнээр, төрөлхтний, шархтныг

2.2.5 Rules

Rules in Cyrillic are not as simple as in Classical Mongolian, because the transcription of Mongolian into the Cyrillic Script was done too quickly without paying close enough attention to traditional Mongolian lingusitic and word formation. Therefore it's not surprising that there are a lot of inconsistencies. We will try to provide some of the basic rules which have been developed for the Cyrillic Script.

2.2.5.1 PRONUNCIATION RULES

1.☛ "...н + б..." = "...м + б..."

If "н" appears before "б", it is pronounced as "м".

ex.: Сайн байна уу? = Сайм байна уу?
Энэ хэн бэ? = Энэ хэм бэ?

2.☛ "вб" = "бб"

If "в" appears before "б", it is pronounced as "б".

ex.: авбал = аббал

3.☛ "н" + vowel = "n" "н" without vowel = "ng"

If "н" is followed by a vowel, it is pronounced as "**n**".
ex.: шинэ, энэ, сонгино
If there is no vowel following "н", it is pronounced as "**ng**".
ex.: хүн, авсан, хэдэн

4.☛ "г" + vowel = "ck" "г" without vowel = "g"

In a strong word, if "г" is followed by a vowel, it is pronounced like "**ck**".
ex.: багa, зорилго
If there is no vowel, it is pronounced as "**g**".
ex.: баг, тараг

2.2.5.2 SPELLING RULES

Spelling rules could be divided into the following sub-groups:

1.) General basic rules
2.) Declension rules
3.) "–ла4" rules
4.) "ы/и" rules
5.) "–ж/–ч" rules
6.) Capitalization rules
7.) Abbreviation rules
8.) Division rules

2.2.5.2.1 General Basic Rules

According to what we have said about **assimilation** (see page 7) we can come up with the following rule about the vowel order in a word:

1.☛ "о/ө" can never be in combination with "а/э"!

Only exception:
• Lack of the suffix "–төй": өөдтэй, өнгөтэй,

Examples:
о/у: оруул–, оюутан, сонгууль, соггүү, тосгуур, etc.
ө/ү: өвлүүл– , өгүүлэ–, өгсүүр, өнгөрүү, өглөөгүүр, өвчүү, өчүүхэн, etc.
а/у: ааруул, ариун, даруу, etc.
у/а: улаан, урам, булан, etc.
э/ү: зрүүл, зрүү, зерүү, etc.
ү/э: үнээ, үнэг, үнэ, etc.

For foreign students who mix up "о" **and** "у" the following rule should be very helpful. "О" and "а" do not appear together in the same genuine Mongolian word. Therefore the letter that can't be made out ("о" or "у"?) must be "у".
ex. : урам, зуслан, хулалда–, сурагч, туула–, уулза–, гурав, үзэм, үзэг, хүүхэд

2.☛ C[7] consonants ("монгол баавар") + vowel

As mentioned before, the C[7] consonants need a vowel before or after them.

2.2.5.2.2 Declension Rules

If a suffix is added to a word stem, the pronunciation is changed because of the new syllable structure. The vowel in a first syllable is always stressed, the other short vowels are not. These unstressed vowels are called 'unstressed vowels'. There are rules that determine whether or not such an unstressed vowel (it can hardly be heard) must be written or not. If they can be dropped, they are called 'dropping vowels', if they need to be written, they are called 'functional vowels' because they have to carry out a function (see exception rules on next pages).

2.2.5.2.2.1 Basic Rules

1.☛ Strong word stem ending with "г" + *weak suffixes!*

ex. зургийг, байшингийн, нутгийг, сангийн

2.☛ "ж, ч, ш, к" + *weak suffixes!*

ex.: Доржийн, сурагчийг, багшийг, католикийн

3.☛ Adding a suffix beginning with a vowel causes the unstressed vowel to drop!

If the **unstressed vowel** has no function it can drop. For exceptions, see the next paragraph.

C? + C?	C? + C?
одоо + ы → одоогы	дусал + аас → дуслаас
гэрэл + ийг → гэрлийг	ажил + ыг → ажлыг
аймаг + ийг → аймгийг	модон + оос → модноос
болор + ыг → болрыг	үхэр + ийн → үхрийн
гэлэг + ийн → гэлгийн	нусан + ийг → нуснийг
C?-C? + C?	
сургаал + аар → сургаар	дархан + ы → дархны
орчин + ы → орчны	малчин + ы → малчны
дэлхэр + уу → дэлхэрээ	нэгдэл + ийг → нэгдлийг
алхам + аас → алхмаас	өндөр + ийн → өндрийн
гомдол + оор → гомдлоор	сансар + ын → санрын
хайрлаг + аас → хайрлгаас	алдар + аа → алдраа
C?-C?-C? + C?	
төрөлтөн + ий → төрөлтний	эрхтэн + уу → эрхтнээ
шархтан + ыг → шархтныг	идэвхтэн + ээр → идэвхтнээр
(Here are exceptions to the exception rule 4)	

2.2.5.2.2.2 Exception Rules

The 3rd basic rule does not apply if one of the following conditions becomes true. Then, the unstressed vowel has a function to fulfil and may not be dropped.

1.☛ C?

If a C? consonant would be without a vowel, dropping of the unstressed vowel is forbidden!

салбар	→ салбарын	хөдөлмөр	→ хөдөлмөрийн
иттэл	→ иттэлийг	бичлэг	→ бичлэгийг
нислэг	→ нислэгээс	амраг	→ амрагаа
засвар	→ засвараас	төгсгөл	→ төгсгөлийн

2.☛ г/н

Because the pronunciation changes, whether there is a vowel after "г"/"н" or not (see p.22-23) the vowel that follows those two consonants may not be dropped. It has the function of differentiation.

чанар	→ чанарыг	үнэн	→ үнэнээр
тэнэг	→ тэнэгээс	мянган	→ мянганы
санал	→ саналын	шагнал	→ шагналаас

For "г" this rule only applies in strong words:

онгоц	→ онгоцооос	амьсгал	→ амьсгалыг
жаргал	→ жаргалын	шуга́м	→ шуга́маас
хонгор	→ хонгорын	онгон	→ онгоноо

If a word that ends with one of those 2 consonants is declined, the **vowel may not be dropped** if either "г" or "н" becomes the third consonant in a serie:

жингэнэ	→ жингэнээр	хатга	→ хатгаас
эргэн	→ эргэний	зуслан	→ зуслангыг

3. NDS "-х"

If another suffix is added to the NDS "-х" (see page 147), the vowel that precedes this suffix may not be dropped. It has the function of differentiation.

эсэх	→ эсэхээр	илэрхийлэх	→ илэрхийлэхийг
өнгөрөх	→ өнгөрөхөд	унших	→ уншихаар
уулзах	→ уулзахаас	алхах	→ алхахыг
орох	→ орохын	дэмжих	→ дэмжихээр

4. $C^9 + C^9$

If two C^9 consonants appear one after the other, a vowel must follow the second C^9 and may not be dropped.

дуссан	→ дуссанаар	үндсэн	→ үндсэний
мэдсэн	→ мэдсэнийг	төгсөөн	→ төгсөөнөөс
чадваг	→ чадвагаас	ганцаан	→ ганцаныг
ачтан	→ ачтаны	өвчтөн	→ өвчтөнийг
модон	→ модоныг	цавчдас	→ цавчдасын
нөхөд	→ нөхөдөө	хурцаан	→ хурцаны
бусдад	→ бусдадаар	далавчтан	→ далавчтанаар

5. Proper names & loan words

In proper names likes "Улаанбаатар, Дархан, Төмөр, Баатар, Ертөнцийн Эзэн" or in loan words, the unstressed vowel may not be dropped:

Улаанбаатараар, Дарханыг, Төмөрийн, Баатарынх, Ертөнцийн Эзэнээ
арифметикийн, атомаас, контороос, физикийн, трактороыг

2.2.5.2.3 "-ла" Rules

If the derivational suffix "-ла", which makes a verb from a noun, is added to a word stem, the following rules need to be observed:

1. Word stem ending with C^1, -ла[4]

Word stem	Infinitive*	Imperative	With suffixes
төлөө	төлөөлө-	төлөөлө!	төлөөлөсөн, төлөөлөдөг, төлөөлөгөө
мал	малла-	малла!	маллаасан,маллаадаг,маллагаа
тавag	тавагла-	тавагла!	тавагласан,тавагладаг,таваглана
баяр	баярла-	баярла!	баярласан,баярладаг,баярлалаа
ном	номло-	номло!	номлосон,номлодог,номлол

2. ☛ Word stem ending with C^9, -ал^5

Word stem	Infinitive*	Imperative	With suffixes
тус	тусла-	тусал!	тусалсан,тусалдаг,тусална, тусалж
зүрх	зүрхлэ-	зүрхэл!	зүрхэлсэн,зүрхэлдэг,зүрхэлнэ, зүрхэлж
цээж	цээжлэ-	цээжил!	цээжилсэн,цээжилдэг,цээжилнэ, цээжилж
зарц	зарцла-	зарцал!	зарцалсан,зарцалдаг,зарцална, зарцалж
баримт	баримтла-	баримтал!	баримталсан, баримталдаг, баримтална
багш	багшла-	багшил!	багшилсан, багшилдаг, багшилна, багшилж
эмч	эмчлэ-	эмчил!	эмчилсэн, эмчилдэг, эмчилнэ, эмчилж
шүүх	шүүхлэ-	шүүхэл!	шүүхэлсэн, шүүхэлдэг, шүүхэлнэ, шүүхэлж
янз	янзла-	янзал!	янзалсан, янзалдаг, янзална, янзалж

***Explanation:**
Many traditional grammars give the infinitive as follows: "тусал-", "зүрхэл-". In keeping with our system, we will only drop the vowel from the infinitive stem if there is no vowel in Classical Mongolian.
If another suffix is joined to a word stem with the "-ла" suffix, the usual rules about dropping of vowels apply. To make that more clear we have shown some examples of how sometimes the ***unstressed vowel*** is dropped and how sometimes an inserted vowel is needed.

no need for an inserted vowel:		**need for an inserted vowel:**		
тусалаач	→ туслаач	тусалгтүн	→ туслагтүн	(not тусалгтүн)
тусалуузай	→ туслуузай	тусалмж	→ туслмж	(not тусалмж)
тусалаагүй	→ туслаагүй	тусалн	→ туслн	(not тусалн)

3. ☛ Word stem ending with vowel , -ла^4

Word stem	Infinitive	Imperative	With suffixes (Note, that the ***unstressed vowel*** of the "-ла" suffix is dropped)
үнэ	үнэлэ-	үнэл!	үнэлсэн, үнэлдэг, үнэлнэ,
урхи	урхила-	урхил!	урхилсан, урхилдаг, урхилна
тоо	тооло-	тоол!	тоолсон, тоолдог, тоолно

2.2.4.2.3.1 Exception Rule to "-ла" Suffix

☛ Word stem with two C^9 consonants , -ла^4

According to the basic rules, the vowel between two C^9 consonants is not dropped. That's why the suffix is used in its original form "-ла" with such word stems.

Word stem	Infinitive*	Imperative	With suffixes
хавтас	хавтасла-	хавтасла!	хавтаслаасан, хавтаслаадаг, хавтаслана
эцэс	эцэслэ-	эцэслэ!	эцэслэсэн, эцэслэдэг, эцэслэнэ
идээш	идээшлэ-	идээшлэ!	идээшлэсэн, идээшлэдэг, идээшлэнэ

These "-ла" rules apply also for other derivational suffixes like "-ра^4", "-да^4".

2.2.5.2.4 "ь/и" Rules

The vowel "и" has a special task: it causes the preceding **consonant to be soft** which in turn causes a **palatal pronunciation** of the preceding vowel. The soft sign in Cyrillic stands for this vowel and carries out the same function. Therefore the vowel "и" or the soft sign may not be dropped carelessly. The following rules apply:

1. ☛ 1C . "ь" 2C . "и"

A single consonant is always followed by the soft sign "ь", a double consonant is always followed by the vowel "и", thus indicating double softness:
толь, хонь, хань, сургууль, морь аяки, тамхи, анги, ангаи, гори, сахи.

2. ☛ After C^7 . "ь/и"

Infinitive	Imperative	$C^7 + C^9$. "ь"	$C^7 + C^7$ / Vowel . "и"
тани–	тань!	таньж, таньсан,таньдаг, таних*	танина, таниг, танилаа
соли–	соль!	сольж, сольсон, сольсог, солих*	солино, солиг, солилоо
тави–	тавь!	тавьж, тавьсан, тавьдаг, тавих*	тавина, тавиг, тавилаа
яри–	яръ!	ярьж, ярьсан, ярьдаг, ярих*	яриna, яриг, ярилаа
*The vowel before a "–х" suffix may not be dropped or reduced (for explanation see page 25).			
Nouns:			
хонь	хоньчин	хонио, хониид	
морь	морьтон	мориг, мориид	
амь	амьдрал, амьтан, амьтай	амиг,амиаас	
сургууль	сургууль,	сургуулиг, сургуулиар	

3. ☛ After C^9 , always "и"

Infinitive	Imperative (Exception!)	$C^9 + C^9$, "и"	$C^9 + C^7$ / Vowel , "и"
зохи–	зохь!	зохидог, зохисон зохижээ	зохиго, зохигоо,зохиг
сахи–	сахь!	сахидаг, сахисан сахижээ	сахина, сахилаа, сахилга
ахи–	ахь!	ахидаг, ахисан ахижээ	ахина, ахилаа, ахимаг
захи–	захь!	захидаг, захисан, захижээ	захина, захилаа, захиа
Nouns (rare)			
боть		ботид,	ботиос,

4. ☛ Word stem with "ь/и" influences suffix!

1. Noun suffixes

	–уул[1]	–ын	–ыг	–аас[4]	–аар[4]	–аа[4]
анги	ангиуд	ангийн	ангийг	ангиас	ангиар	ангиа
тамхи	*	*	тамхийг	*	тамхиар	тамхиа
хонь	*	*	хонийг	*	хониор	хонио
морь	*	*	мориг	*	мориор	мориo

* These suffixes are not relevant to this rule.

2. Verb-suffixes: Word changing (inflectional)

	-уул[2]	-аад[4]	-аа[4] (-гүй)	-ууштай[2]	-аач[4]	-аарай[4] -аасай[4]	-уузай[2]
тани-	танилцул-	танилцад	танилца-гүй	танилцуштай	танилцач	танилцарай танилцасай	танилцузай
яри-	ярилцул-	ярилцад	ярилца-гүй	ярилцуштай	ярилцач	ярилцарай ярилцасай	ярилцузай
боли-	болилцул-	болилцод	болило-гүй	болилцуштай	болилоч	болилорой болилосой	болилцузай

Also derivational suffixes (word-building) are influenced according to this rule:
ex. : барилцул, ярилца, хорило, барилцу,

5. ☛ Only after "ж, ч, ш, к" in 2nd syllable: dropping allowed

ажлиг	→ ажлагаас	ажил	→ ажлаар
эгшиг	→ эгшигийг	манжин	→ манжныг
хүчин	→ хүчнээр	хөнжил	→ хөнжлийн
учир	→ учраас	бичиг	→ бичгийн

2.2.5.2.5 "-ж/-ч" Rules

In the **Classical Mongolian script** these two letters and their suffixes are no problem. There is a straight forward rule:

☛ **"Bagaraşada" consonants need "-ч"**
☛ **Vowels and "namilang" consonants need "-ж"**

Some scholars have tried correctly to base the Cyrillic "-ж/-ч" rules on the Classical script. We will pay attention to this attempt in little "note" notes, but in general we have kept to the official spelling rules that have been in use until now. These rules have been worked out **according to the pronunciation** of the Mongolian language.

Please notice that our **infinitive forms** (in parentheses) vary sometimes from the official ones. We think it's important to see whether the Classical script verb stem contains a vowel or not.

Note:
1.) From all the examples of rule No. 1 only "бос-", "нис-", "өвд-" and "бэлэд-" are contrary to the Classical Mongolian rule. According to pronunciation rules, "-ч" cannot be directly joined to -д", but can to "-с". Therefore forms like "босч", "нисч" are also widely used. In our book we treat verb stems that end with "-с" and consist of either a CVC or VC syllable structure (see page 22) as exceptions to rule No. 1 (exceptions of C[9]) and use the following spellings:
CVC examples: босч, босчээ, нисч, нисчээ, хүсч, хүсчээ, луусч, луусчээ
VC examples: өсч, өсчээ

2.) Notice that all spellings in group 5 on the next page (exceptions to rule 2) can be explained with the Classical Mongolian rule.

Here now the **official Cyrillic spelling rules:**

1. ☛ In general, "-ж" suffix is used

- After vowels, C[9] consonants, "л" and "м", "-ж" **always** follows.
- After "г" and "в", "-ж" **almost always** follows (exceptions see under rule 2).
- After "р", "-ж" only follows if the word stem consists of ***one*** **syllable with *short* vowels** (= exception to rule 2)

1.) Verb stem ending with vowel

хаа-	хаажж	хаажээ
нээ-	нээж	нээжээ
суу-	суужж	суужээ
орхи-	орхиж	орхижээ
нэрлэ-	нэрлэж	нэрлэжээ

хийг-	хийж	хийжээ
бөө-	бөөж	бөөжээ
нөө-	нөөж	нөөжээ
мана-	манаж	манажээ
бөглө-	бөглөж	бөглөжээ

2.) Verb stem ending with C[9]

бод(о)-	бодож	богжээ
бүд(а)-	бүдаж	бүджээ
гад(а)-	гадаж	гаджээ
нис- *	нисэж *	нисээ *
өвд-	өвдөж	өвджээ

хат(а)-	хатаж	хатжээ
орш(и)-	оршиж	оршжээ
бялх(а)-	бялхаж	бялхжээ
бос- *	босож *	босжээ *
бэлэд-	бэлдэж	бэлджээ

* see explanation on previous page under "Note 1".

3.) Verb stem ending with "л" or "м"

ол-	олж	олжээ
нэм(э)-	нэмж	нэмжээ

нийл(э)-	нийлж	нийлжээ
хам(а)-	хамж	хамжээ

4.) Verb stem ending with "в" or "г" (exceptions to rule 2)

яв(а)-	явж	явжээ
эг(э)-	эгж	эгжээ

сэв(э)-	сэвж	сэвжээ
бүг(э)-	бүгж	бүгжээ

5.) Verb stem ending with "р" (exceptions to rule 2)

зур(а)-	зурж	зуржээ
ор(о)-	орж	оржээ
таръ-	таръж	таръжээ

ир(э)-	ирж	иржээ
хар(а)-	харж	харжээ
хөр(ө)-	хөрж	хөржээ

2. After "р" and exceptions to rule 1, "-ч" suffix is used

• After "-р" usually follows the "-ч" suffux (exception see rule 1)
Note: Exceptions 3 and 4 are explained very easily with the Classical Mongolian rule.

1.) One-syllable verb stem with *long vowel* ending with "р"

таар(а)-	таарч	таарчээ
хайр(а)-	хайрч	хайрчээ

хуур-	хуурч	хуурчээ
хөөр-	хөөрч	хөөрчээ

2.) Verb stem of more syllables ending with "р"

авар- (авра-)	аварч	аварчээ
амьдар- (амьдра-)	амьдарч	амьдарчээ
бишир- (бишрэ-)	биширч	биширчээ

амар- (амра-)	амарч	амарчээ
анхаар-	анхаарч	анхаарчээ
захир-	захирч	захирчээ

3.) One-syllable verb stem with short vowel ending with "р" (exceptions to rule 1)

сур-	сурч	сурчээ
хүр-	хүрч	хүрчээ

гар-	гарч	гарчээ

4.) One-syllable verb stem ending with "в" or "г" (exceptions to rule 1)

ав-	авч	авчээ

өг-	өгч	өгчээ

2.2.5.2.6 Capitalization Rules

In the following cases, the first letter is **capitalized**:

1. First letters of a sentence

Гадаа цас орлоо. Өнөөдөр их хүйтэн байна.

2.☞ Initials

Д.Н. / Э. Баатар / Ц. Ганболд

3.☞ Geographic names

Бид нар 1991 онд Япон явсан. Энэ жил Туул гол их устай байна. 5-р сард Францын ерөнхийлөгч Монголд ирнэ.

4.☞ Proper names

Болд, Сараа, Дорж бид дөрөв дэлгүүр явсан. Нааш ир, Банхар минь!
Холбооны Бүгд Найрамдах Герман Улс, Шинжлэх Ухаан, Боловсролын Яам

5.☞ Quotations

Та "Ардын эрх" сонин уншдаг уу? Есүс "Би бол хорвоогийн гэрэл" гэж хэлэв.

6.☞ Politeness: "Та, Таны, Танд"

Хүндэт Таны амрыг эрье. Есүс Та Аврагч Эзэн.

2.2.5.2.7 Abbreviation Rules

There are two ways to make abbreviations:

1.) **By syllables:**
няр-бо (book keeper) → нягтлан бодогч,
МОНЦАМЭ (name of the Mongolian news agency) → Монголын Цахилгаан Мэдээ
Such abbreviations can be written with capital letters only or with capital letters for each syllable (МонЦаМэ).

2.) **By letters:**

ШУА	= Шинжлэх Ухааны Академи	(Academy of Sciences)
ДОХ	= Дархлалын Олдмол Хам шинж	(AIDS)
МАХН	= Монгол Ардын Хувьсгалт Нам	(Mongolian People's Revolutionary Party)

2.2.5.2.8 Division Rules

There are only two very simple division rules:

1.☞ Division by syllables! New line starts with a consonant!

мон-гол, ар-дын, амь-дар-сан, явс-ны, амьд-рал, ээ-жийн, эг-лээс, төрөлхтөөрөө

2.☞ No division after single letters!

элим (not э-лим), үсэг (not ү-сэг), элаа-ны (not эл-лаа-ны)

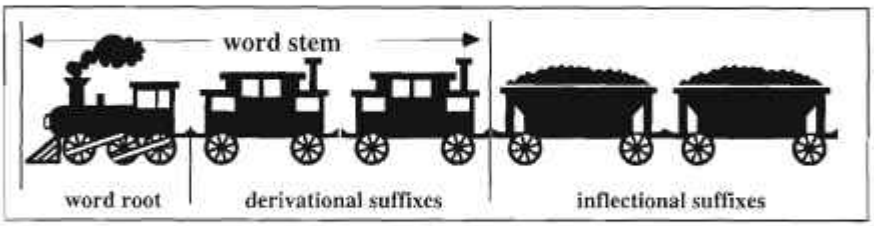
2.3 Comparison of both Alphabets

	Printed Classical Mongolian	Cursive Classical M.	Printed Cyrillic	Cursive Cyrillic	Notes (see also 2.1.2 on p.5)
1.			Аа	*Аа*	
2.			Ээ	*Ээ*	
3.			Ии (й)	*Ии (й)*	ᠢ for diphthongs
4.			Оо	*Оо*	In Classical Mongolian script there is no difference between these 2 vowels.
5.			Уу	*Уу*	
6.			Өө	*Өө*	In Classical Mongolian script there is no difference between these 2 vowels.
7.			Үү	*Үү*	
8.			Нн	*Нн*	
9.			Бб	*Бб*	
10a			Хх	*Хх*	Cyrillic uses only one letter for these consonants.
10b			Хх	*Хх*	
11a			Гг	*Гг*	Cyrillic uses only one letter for these consonants.
11b			Гг	*Гг*	
12.			Лл	*Лл*	
13.			Мм	*Мм*	
14.			Сс/ Шш	*Сс (Шш)*	Note: "s"+"i" in Classical Mongolian gives "sh".
15.			Ш ш	*Ш ш*	
16.			Тт	*Тт*	In Classical Mongolian script there is no difference between these 2 consonants.
17.			Дд	*Дд*	
18.			Ш/ Ч	*Ш/ Ч*	In some dialects (e.g. Khalkh) these 2 Classical letters are pronounced differently in different words.
19.			З/ Ж	*З/ Ж*	
20.			(Яя/ Ее/ Ёё/ Юю)	(*Яя Ее/ Ёё/ Юю*)	Cyrillic developed the so- called Y-vowels.
21.			Рр	*Рр*	
22.			Вв	*Вв*	

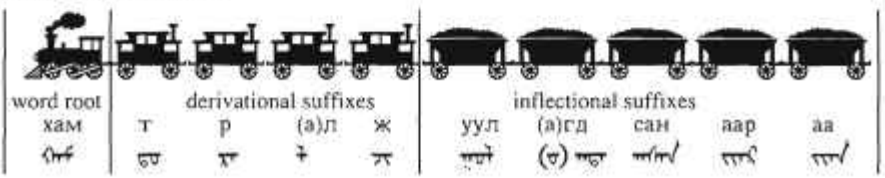
23.			Пп	*Пп*	
24.			Фф	*Фф*	
25.			Кк	*Кк*	
26.			Ее	*Ее*	
27.			Цц	*Цц*	These 2 loan-word letters aren't needed in Cyrillic;
28.			Зз	*Зз*	there are already two forms for 18 and 19 each.
29.			Хх	*Хх*	Cyrillic has no "h", "x" or "r" are used instead.
30.			Жж	*Жж*	This loan-word letter is similar to a cyrillic "ж".
31.			Ёё	*Ёё*	Y-vowel (y + "o")
32.			Шш	*ш Щ*	Russian loan-word letter
33.			ь	-	Soft sign, in Classical Mongolian always "i".
34.			ъ	*ъ*	Hard sign, only relevant in Cyrillic.
35.			ы	*ы*	Pronounced as long vowel "ii".
36.			Юю	*Юю*	Y-vowel (y + "y/Y")
37.			Яя	*Яя*	Y-vowel (y + "a")

3. MONGOLIAN WORD STRUCTURE

The Mongolian language belongs to the so-called **agglutinated languages** (latin 'agglutinare' = 'to glue to'). This is because Mongolian words are constructed **by sticking one morpheme** (a meaningful unit) **to another** to form a longer word. This type of word-building can be understood easily with the **example of a train.**



Every train needs a locomotive (word root), but the number of derivational suffixes (passenger cars) and inflectional suffixes (freight cars) varies. One of the **longest Mongolian words** shows this construction clearly:



Тосгоныхон хамтралцуулагдсанаараа илүү сайн амьдрах болов.
Village people, in that they were caused to be organised into collective farms, improved their lives ("lived better").

It is impressive that an idea which takes 11 English words to say can be expressed with 3 Classical Mongolian words or 1 Cyrillic word.

3.1 Roots

The Mongolian language has two different kinds of roots:

3.1.1 Active or Living Roots

The morpheme at the beginning of a word, which **carries the original meaning of a word,** is called an active root. **An active root is always the word stem,** so both derivational and inflectional suffixes can be directly added to it.

Example 1:

Active word root			Active root + derivational suffix		
Classical	Cyril.	English	Classical	Cyrillic	English
	Үзэ–	to watch		үзвэр	cultural sights (e.g. circus, film)
				үзлэг	investigation, examination
+inflectional suffix				үзмэр	exhibit
	Үзэв	watched		үзэл	(pol.) views
	Үзээрэй	please watch		үзэсгэлэн	exhibition
	Үзсэн	watched		үзүүл–	to show to
	Үзнэ	will watch		үзүүлэн	visual aid
				үзэгдэ–	to be seen
				үзэгч	"audience" (singular)

Example 2:

	их	great, big		ихэд	a great deal, many
				ихэнх	greatest part, majority
+inflectional suffix				ихээхэн	pretty big
	ихээс	from the great (one)		ихэвчлэн	mostly
	ихийг	the Great (Acc.)		ихэрхэ–	to be arrogant, proud
	ихийн	of the Great		ихэмсэг	majestic, arrogant

Example 3:

	мал	animal		малч	gifted with animals
				малчин	herdsman
+ inflectional suffix				малсаг	'animal lover', loves to take care of animals
	малын	animal's		малла–	to take care of animals
	малууд	animals		малжи–	to expand the flocks
	малаас	from the animal		маллагч	animal trainer, tamer

Example 4:

	үйл	deed		үйлд–	to do
				үйлдвэр	plant, factory
+ inflectional suffix				үйлдвэрлэ–	to produce, to make
	үйлэ э	my/his/ your deed		үйлдвэрлэл	production
	үй–л ээр	through the deed		үйлдвэрчин	(factory) worker
	үй–	the deed's		үйлчлэ–	to serve, to wait on
				үйлчлэгч	server, waiter

Example 5:

	сур–	to learn		сурагч	pupil
				сурлага	learning
+ inflectional suffix				сурга–	to instruct, to teach
	сурсан	learned		сургаал	teaching, doctrine
	сурна	will learn		сургалт	training, study situation
	сураач	please learn		сургамж	lesson*, admonition (*"that'll be a lesson to you")
				сургууль	school

3.1.2 Passive or Dead Roots

If we compare words beginning with the same morpheme, we can often discover the passive root of these words. The passive root has **a very general and often abstract meaning**. This meaning usually cannot be determined by analyzing one single word, but comes by comparing many. Not every word has a passive root. A passive root **cannot be a word stem**.

Example 1:

Passive word root			**Passive root in many words**		
Classical M.	Cyrillic	English (general meaning)	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
	ца–	**"white"**		цас	snow
				цаас	paper
				цагаан	white
				цагаала–	to celebrate New Year (White Month)
				цайлган	innocent, good-hearted

Example 2:

	хо–	**"two"**		хоёр	two
				хос	pair
				холбоо	relationship, association, connection
				холбогдо–	to be connected, to have a relationship
				хорши–	to do together, to work together
				хорь	twenty
				хошой	twice, two-time, double (e.g. gold medal winner)
				хооронд	between
				холи–	to mix
				хоч	nickname ("2nd name")

Example 3:

	сай–	"good"		сайн	good
				сайхан	pretty, beautiful
				сайд	minister, dignitary
				сайтар	well, nicely, carefully
				сайтай	have a good ...
				сайцаа–	to praise, to consider as good

Example 4:

	га–	"outside"		гадна	outside (of)
				гадаа	outdoors, outside, open air
				гадаад	outer, foreign, alien
				гадуур	outside, exterior, external

Example 5:

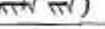
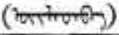
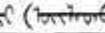
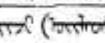
	бая–	"rich"		баян	rich
				баялаг	riches, wealth
				баяжи–	to become rich
				баячууд	the rich, the wealthy
				баярха–	to show off
				баяс–	to rejoice, to be happy
				баяр	happiness
				баяртай	joyful, happy (good bye)
				баярла–	to be happy

There are not many passive roots in the Mongolian language, so it is worth it to learn them thoroughly. In the **Appendix** (p. 407ff), you will find a list of most of them.

3.2 Stems

The word stem is the part of the word to which **inflectional suffixes are added**. In other words, the stem can always be **declined**. An active root is the shortest word stem, but a root with one or more derivational suffixes can also be a stem. Here are several examples of word stems with their declensions (added inflectional suffixes) in parentheses. It should be clear from the examples that stems can vary in length depending on how many derivational suffixes are used.

Example 1:

	үйл (үйлийн)	act, deed (the act's)
	үйлд– (үйлдэв)	to produce (produced)
	үйлдвэр (үйлдвэрийн)	factory (the factory's)
	үйлдвэржи– (үйлдвэржлээ)	to become industrialized (was industrialized)
	үйлдвэржилт (үйлдвэржилтийг)	industrialization (the industrialization; Acc.)

Example 2:

[illegible]	хам (хамаар)	colleague, fellow member (by the colleague)
[illegible]	хамт (хамтын)	together (communally)
[illegible]	хамтра- (хамтраач)	to participate (please take part)
[illegible]	хамтрал (хамтралаас)	collective (from the collective)
[illegible]	хамтралжи- (хамтралжсан)	to be in the collective (was in the collective)

Example 3:

[illegible]	хөдөл- (хөдөлсөн)	to move (moved)
[illegible]	хөдөлмөр (хөдөлмөрөөр)	work (by working)
[illegible]	хөдөлмөрчид (хөдөлмөрчдийн)	worker (the worker's)

3.3 Suffixes

The word "suffix" comes from the latin 'suffigere' = 'to fasten behind or underneath'. There are other kinds of affixes (e.g. 'prefixes' attached to the front or 'infixes' in the middle), but the Mongolian language does not use them.

There are **2 kinds of suffixes**:

3.3.1 Derivational Suffixes (Word-Building Suffixes)

When a suffix is added to an active or passive root or develops the word stem further **giving the original word a new meaning**, it is called a derivational suffix. In the Mongolian language, there are **a great many of these suffixes**. We will talk more thoroughly about word-building and derivation in Part II (Lexicology) on p. 41ff. For that reason, we only give a few examples here.

Example 1:

Derivational Suffix			**New Words**			
Classical	Cyrillic	Function	Classical	Cyrillic	English	
[illegible]	-ч	**noun** ⇓ **noun** **(profession)**	[illegible]	эмч	medicine	→ doctor
			[illegible]	хулгайч	theft	→ thief
			[illegible]	сэтгүүлч	magazine	→ journalist
			[illegible]	жолооч	steering wheel	→ driver
			[illegible]	тогооч	wok	→ cook

Example 2:

[illegible]	-г	**verb** ⇓ **noun**	[illegible]	зураг	to draw	→ picture
			[illegible]	бичиг	to write	→ script
			[illegible]	будаг	to paint	→ color
			[illegible]	зориг	to intend	→ courage
			[illegible]	гуниг	to grieve	→ grief, sorrow
			[illegible]	сураг	to inquire	→ news
			[illegible]	бүжиг	to dance	→ dance

Example 3:

	−ра[4]	adjective ⇓ verb		хөхрө−	blue	→ to become blue
				чангара−	strong	→ to grow strong
				томро−	large	→ to become large
				өтгөрө−	thick	→ to thicken

Example 4:

	−ла[4]	noun ⇓ verb		амла−	mouth	→ to promise
				цэвэрлэ−	clean	→ to clean
				гэрлэ−	yurt	→ to marry
				тэмдэглэ−	sign celebrate	→ to make a note, to
				номло−	book	→ to teach, preach
				ашиглa−	profit	→ to exploit

Example 5:

	−мал[4]	verb ⇓ adjective		нэгдмэл	to unify	→ united
				хиймэл	to do, to make	→ artificial
				нэхмэл	to knit	→ knitted
				тарималл	to plant	→ planted

Example 6: (inserted vowel)

	−рхуу[2]	noun ⇓ adjective		хүүхэдэрхүү	child	→ childish
				бороорхуу	rain	→ rainy
				ёсорхуу	law	→ legalistic
				ноёрхуу	lord	→ lordly
				атаархуу	jealousy	→ jealous

Example 7:

	−мсаг[4]	adjective ⇓ adjective		ихэмсэг	great	→ majestic, haughty
				торгомсог	silken	→ silky
				хөнгөмсөг	light	→ careless, promiscuous
				гоёмсог	beautiful	→ elegant

3.3.2 Inflectional Suffixes (Word-Changing Suffixes)

When a suffix is added to a word stem and only gives the original word **a grammatical meaning** (no lexical meaning), it is called an **inflectional suffix.** These suffixes serve to **integrate a word into the sentence.** They **decline** word stems. We can divide these suffixes into **three groups** according to what kind of **relationship** they express. Please compare with Chapter 4 of the Appendix on page 418ff.

1.) Non-relational suffixes (only grammatical function):
- Plural suffix (PS)
- Voice suffix (VoS)
- Aspect suffix (AsS)

2.) Subordinating relational suffixes (syntagma building between two words):
- Case suffix (CS)
- Determining suffix (DS)

3.) **Possessive relational suffixes** (sentence building between two parts):
- Terminating suffix (TS): for subject-predicate relationship
- Reflexive suffix (RS): for subject-syntagma relationship

In this book, however, we will follow a **morphological structure** which is more relevant for learners. In **Part III (Morphology)** on page 70ff, we will consider the different parts of speech and their possible suffixes. Here is a short overview:

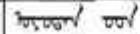
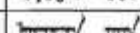
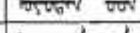
According to the traditional morphological structure, there are **6 groups** of inflectional suffixes:

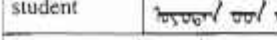
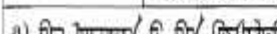
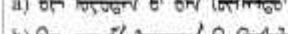
for nouns:		**for verbs:**	
Plural	PS's (Plural suffixes)	Voice	VoS's (Voice suffixes)
Case	CS's (Case suffixes)	Aspect	AsS's (Aspect suffixes)
Reflexive	RS (Reflexive suffix)	Mood	MS's (Mood suffixes)

3.3.2.1 INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES FOR NOUNS

The following three groups of suffixes can be added to nouns in the **prescribed order**, although it is not necessary for a suffix from each group to be present. However, **every noun must have a case suffix** but they are **not always expressed** (e.g. accusative). In such a case, we talk about a zero-suffix and mark it with "-ø".

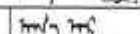
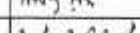
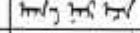
☞ Noun + PS + CS + RS

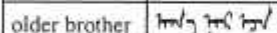
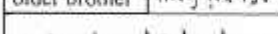
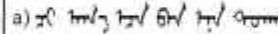
Noun	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
оюутнууд		оюутнууд	students
оюутан		оюутнуудын	the students'
student		оюутнуудынхаа	my/your/his/her students'

a) 
b) 
c) 

a) Би оюутныхаа хүсэлтийг сонсдог. (noun stem + *case* + reflexive)
b) Би зарим оюутны хүсэлтийг сонсдог. (noun stem + *case*)
c) Би оюутнуудынхаа хүсэлтийг сонсдог. (noun stem + plural + *case* + reflexive)

a) I listen to the requests *of* my student.
b) I listen to the requests *of* some students.
c) I listen to the requests *of* my students.

ах		ах нар	older brothers
ах		ах нараас	from the older brothers
older brother		ах нараасаа	from my/your/his older brother

a) 
b) 
c) 

a) Чи ахаасаа энэ тухай асуугаарай! (noun stem + *case* + reflexive)
b) Чи түүний ахаас энэ тухай асуугаарай!. (noun stem + *case*)
c) Чи ах нараасаа энэ тухай асуугаарай! (noun stem + plural + *case* + reflexive)

a) Please ask your older brother about it.
b) Please ask his older brother about it.
c) Please ask your older brothers about it.

3.3.2.2 INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES FOR VERBS

The following three groups of suffixes can be added to verbs in the **prescribed order**, although it is not necessary for a suffix from each group to be present. However, **every verb needs a mood.** If no suffix is expressed, we're talking about the **active** voice and the **simple** aspect. Each group is explained thoroughly on page 113ff.

☛ **Verb** + VoS + *AsS* + MS

Verb	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
бари-		барив	built
to build		барьчихав	had (it) built, let be built
		барьчихав	have built
		барьчихав	have had (it) built

a)
b)
c)
d)

a) Би байшин барив. (verb stem + **mood**)
b) Би байшин барьчав. (verb stem + voice + **mood**)
c) Би байшин барьчихав. (verb stem + ***aspect*** + **mood**)
d) Би байшин барьчихав. (verb stem + voice + ***aspect*** + **mood**)

a) I built the house.
b) I had the house built.
c) I ***have built*** the house.
d) I have had the house built.

		гүйсэн	ran
гүй-		гүйлгэсэн	had (him/her) run
to run		гүйцгээсэн	ran ***together***
		гүйлгэцгээсэн	we ***together*** had (him) run

a)
b)
c)
d)

a) Би дэлгүүр луу гүйсэн. (verb stem + **mood**)
b) Би хүүгээ дэлгүүр луу гүйлгэсэн. (verb stem + voice + **mood**)
c) Бид дэлгүүр луу гүйцгээсэн. (verb stem + ***aspect*** + **mood**)
d) Бид хүүгээ дэлгүүр луу гүйлгэцгээсэн. (verb stem + voice + ***aspect*** + **mood**)

a) I ran to the store.
b) I had my son run to the store.
c) We ran to the store ***together***.
d) We (***together***) had our sons run to the store.

Part II:

Lexicology

Chapter 1:

Word-Building

pages 41-60

Chapter 2:

Special Parts of Lexis

pages 60-69

1. Word-Building

1.1 Derivational Suffixes (Word-Building Suffixes)

As we already mentioned on page 37, derivational suffixes (the proper term for the word-building suffixes) give a word a **new lexical meaning.** This method of building words is very important in the Mongolian language. Here is a list of derivational suffixes with examples.

Explanation of the tables:

1) In the English translation, the **original word**, to which the suffix is added, is in parentheses.
2) "–тан[4]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following four vowels: "а, э, о, ө" → "тан, тэн, тон, төн"
3) "–тай[3]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following three vowels: "а, э, о" → "тай, тэй, той"
4) "–мгай[3]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following three vowels: "а, о, и" → "мгай, мгой, мгий"
5) "–уур[2]" means that this suffix varies in compliance with **vowel harmony** with the following two vowels: "у, ү" → "уур, үүр"
6) If a suffix is added to a strong word ending with "и" or "ь", the "и" **appears in the suffix.** (see rule on page 27)
7) It isn't always possible to clearly define the function of a derivational suffix. If it isn't clear, we've omitted naming the function.
8) It would go beyond the limitations of this book to give all the possible examples of all the suffixes. It is very important to know, however, which suffixes are used to build the most words, i.e. which are the most productive. For this reason the suffixes are listed here in the **order of their productivity**.
9) To add a suffix, sometimes an **inserted vowel** must be used. Some rules for these vowels - although they are not so strictly followed with derivational suffixes as for inflectional suffixes - are listed on pages 17-18.

1.1.1 Noun-Building

1.1.1.1 FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	Translation and function if defined
	(ex. a-e)	–ч (ex. a-e)	changes a noun to an **activity** or **profession**
	(ex. f-j)	–чин (ex. f-j)	
Example words			
a		эмч	doctor (medicine)
b		хулгайч	thief (theft)
c		монголч	Mongolist (Mongolia)
d		сэтгүүлч	journalist (journal, magazine)
e		жолооч	driver (steering wheel, reins)
f		малчин	herdsman (livestock)
g		модчин	carpenter (wood)
h		нүүдэлчин	nomad (movement from place to place)
i		үсчин	hairdresser/barber (hair)
j		гуйлгачин	beggar (begging)

2		-тан[4]	**with "..." (usually a person)**
a		амьтан	animal, creature (life)
b	()	оюутан (оюун)	student (mind)
c		буруутан	wrongdoer, guilty one (wrong, guilt)
d		эрдэмтэн	scholar (knowledge, wisdom)
e		үндэстэн	nationality (root, base)
f		холбоотон	ally (tie, bond, connection)
g	()	өвчтөн (өвчин)	patient (sickness)
h		хөрөнгөтөн	capitalist (capital)

3		-вч *(inserted vowel)*	the "..."-**covering**
a		чихэвч	earmuff (ear)
b		хөхөвч	bra, (breast)
c		улавч	inner sole (sole of foot)
d		хүзүүвч	collar (neck)
e		салхивч	small window, ventilator (wind)
f		цээживч	vest (chest)

4		-лан[4]	
a		тариалан	plantation (grain, crop)
b		дугуйлан	club, course, circle (wheel, circle)
c		хүрээлэн	institute (border, fence, something enclosed)

5	•	-лаг[4]	
a		нийгэмлэг	association, club, union (society, community)
b		төмөрлөг	iron-like metal (iron, metal)
c		баялаг * (баян)	wealth, riches (rich, abundant)

Seldom used suffixes:

6	•	-с(ан)[4]	7	•	-ж(ин)
8	•	-цаг[4]	9		-м
10		-мж	11		-мад[4]
12		-нцар[4]	13	•	-гай[3]
14	•	-гтай[3]	15	•	-лаг[4]
16	•	-гана[4]	17		-л
18	•	-цаа[4]			

1.1.1.2 FROM VERBS NOM

1	-л	-л	
a		санал	idea, opinion, suggestion (to remember)
b		танил	acquaintance (to recognize, to know)
c		аврал	rescue, salvation (to rescue, to save)
d		амьдрал	life (to live)
e		хүсэл	wish, desire (to want, to wish)
f		хэвлэл	publication, press, printing (to print)
g		итгэл	faith, believe (to believe)
h		номлол	doctrine, teaching (to teach, to preach)
i		тоолол	counting, calendar (to count, to calculate)
j		сонирхол	interest (to be interested)
k		өргөл	offering, donation (to lift up, to offer)
l		ерөөл	blessing (to bless)

2		-гч	Changes the verb to a **profession or activity**. This is an **NDS** (see page 149ff). Actually *another noun* should accompany these words (e.g. сурагч хүн), but over the years the noun was dropped, so this "-гч" suffix became a derivational suffix. *(inserted vowel)*
a		сурагч	pupil (to learn)
b		баригч [эх баригч]	someone who holds or builds [midwife] (to hold, to build)
c		ялагч	winner, conqueror (to win)
d		аврагч	savior, rescuer (to save, to rescue)
e		эрхлэгч	manager (to be in charge, to manage)
f		нисэгч	pilot (to fly)
g		орчуулагч	translator (to translate)
h		сонсогч	listener, audience (to listen)
i		ерөнхийлөгч	president (to preside)
j		төлөөлөгч	representative, delegate (to represent)

3	( ) () (ex. a-k, o-x) ( ) (*ex. l-n)	-аа(н)[4] (ex. a-n) -гаа(н)[4] (ex. o-t) -га[2] (ex.u-x)	This suffix is in most cases built with a **long vowel**. The **hidden** "**n**" returns when other suffixes are added. Sometimes the hidden "n" is part of the Cyrillic word stem (ex. h-k). The y-form (*) grew from assimilation and usually appears after sibilants (ex. l-n). In ex. u-x, the suffix doesn't result in a long vowel, so there is no "n" and a different pronunciation.
a	( )	санаа	idea, thought (to remember, to think)
b	()	хараа	sight (to see)
c	( )	идээ	food (to eat)

d	[illegible]	мэдээ	news (to know)
e	[illegible]	холбоо	connection, communication (to contact)
f	[illegible]	тооцоо	calculation, bill (to calculate, to work out)
g	[illegible]	өргөө	palace (to lift up, to offer)
h	[illegible]	зөрөлдөөн	conflict (to argue, to disagree)
i	[illegible]	цуглаан	meeting, assembly (to gather)
j	[illegible]	хөдөлгөөн	movement (to move)
k	[illegible]	уралдаан	competition, race (to compete)
l	[illegible]	ачаа	load, cargo, burden (to load)
m	[illegible]	хэмжээ	size, measurement (to measure)
n	[illegible]	хөшөө	monument (to harden)
o	[illegible]	ажиллагаа	work, activity (to work)
p	[illegible]	баталгаа	guarantee, confirmation (to confirm)
q	[illegible]	төлөвлөгөө	plan (to plan)
r	[illegible]	шинжилгээ	research, study (to examine)
s	[illegible]	үйлчилгээ	service (to serve)
t	[illegible]	эмчилгээ	medical treatment, health care (to cure)
u	[illegible]	орчуулга	translation (to translate)
v	[illegible]	цуглуулга	collection (to collect)
w	[illegible]	таниулга	elucidation, introduction (to introduce)
x	[illegible]	босго	threshold (to raise)

4	[illegible]	-бар[4], вар[4] (-мар[4])	"-мар" ([illegible]) is rare
a	[illegible]	дагавар	suffix (to follow)
b	[illegible]	чадвар	ability (to be able to)
c	[illegible]	найдвар	hope (to trust, to hope)
d	[illegible]	шийдвэр	decision (to decide)
e	[illegible]	татвар	tax (to pull)
f	[illegible]	өгүүлбэр	sentence (to tell)
g	[illegible]	үйлдвэр	factory (to do, to produce)
h	[illegible]	хонжвор	winning, lottery prize (to win in lottery)
i	[illegible]	хөдөлмөр	labor (to move)

5		−лэг, −лөг (ex.a-d) −лга, −лго (ex.e-i) −лага,−лого (ex. j-l)	The different Cyrillic suffixes are a result of some pronunciation rules. (see p. 23ff) Ex. e is an exception.
a		мэдлэг	knowledge (to know)
b		үзлэг	inspection (to see)
c		эмнэлэг	hospital (to cure)
d		цөллөг	exile (to exile, to banish)
e		гэрчилгээ	certificate (to testify)
f		урилга	invitation (to invite)
g		угаалга	laundry (to wash)
h		сахилга	discipline (to observe, to keep)
i		зорилго	longterm aim, goal (to intend, to aim at)
j		уншлага	reading (to read)
k		бодлого	math problem, policy (to think)
l		бослого	rebellion, revolt (to rebel, to rise)

6		−лт	
a		ялалт	victory (to win)
b		хамгаалалт	defense, protection (to defend, to protect)
c		амжилт	success (to achieve in the required time)
d		эхлэлт	start, beginning (to start, to begin)
e		биелэлт	realization, accomplishment (to be realized)
f		боолт	bandage, wrapper (to wrap, to bind)
g		зорилт	immediate goal, aim (to purpose, to intend)
h		өсөлт	growth (to grow up)
i		хөгжилт	development (to develop)

7		−мж	
a		санамж	user's manual, lesson* (to remember) [*event that reminds me of something]
b		тусламж	help (to help)
c		үзэмж	appearance (to look)
d		нийлэмж	agreement, harmony (to unite, to correspond)
e		ойлгомж	understanding (to understand)
f		болгоомж	caution, heed (to be careful)

8	[illegible]	-ц	
a	[illegible]	ургац	harvest (for plants to grow)
b	[illegible]	явц	process (to go)
c	[illegible]	сууц	residence, living quarters (to sit, to live)
d	[illegible]	нууц	secret (to hide)
e	[illegible]	орц	entrance (to enter)
f	[illegible]	зарц	servant (to employ as a servant)

9	[illegible]	-уул[2]	
a	[illegible]	харуул	guard (to see)
b	[illegible]	бариул	handle (to hold)
c	[illegible]	эргүүл	patrol (to turn or move around)
d	[illegible]	бүрхүүл	lamp shade, cover (to cover)

10	[illegible]	-уур[2]	
a	[illegible]	ташуур	whip (to beat, to hit)
b	[illegible]	алчуур (арчи-)	scarf, kerchief (to wipe, to cleanse)
c	[illegible]	зодуур	beating staff (to beat)
d	[illegible]	түлхүүр	key (to push)
e	[illegible]	дэлгүүр	shop (to spread, to uncover)
f	[illegible]	өлгүүр	hanger, coat rack (to hang)

11	[illegible]	-дал[4]	
a	[illegible]	буудал	staying place, landing stage, stop (to settle down)
b	[illegible]	суудал	seat (to sit down)
c	[illegible]	захидал	letter (to ask someone to do something)
d	[illegible]	нүүдэл	move, nomadic movement (to move)
e	[illegible]	оёдол	seam, sewing (to sew)
f	[illegible]	өргөдөл	petition (to offer, to lift up)

12	[illegible]	-г	
a	[illegible]	зураг	picture (to draw)
b	[illegible]	сураг	news (to inquire)
c	[illegible]	будаг	paint (to paint)
d	[illegible]	зориг	courage (to intend, to aim at)
e	[illegible]	бичиг	script (to write)
f	[illegible]	бүжиг	dance (to dance)

13	[illegible]	−хуун[2]	
a	[illegible]	тусаглахуун	object (to be hit, to be reflected)
b	[illegible]	шатахуун	fuel (to burn)
c	[illegible]	хэрэглэгдэхүүн	necessary material (to be used)
d	[illegible]	өгүүлэхүүн	predicate (to speak / lit.)
e	[illegible]	өгүүлэгдэхүүн	subject (to be spoken)

14	[illegible]	−аас (н)[4]	
a	[illegible]	хадаас	nail (to nail, to drive)
b	[illegible]	бичээс	inscription (to write)
c	[illegible]	холбоос	link, hyphen (to connect)
d	[illegible]	төлөөс	compensation (to pay)
e	[illegible]	хуниас	folds (to fold)
f	[illegible]	бүрээс	yurt covering, cover (to cover)

15	[illegible]	−аач[4]	
a	[illegible]	зураач	painter (to draw)
b	[illegible]	удирдаач	conductor (to lead, to guide)
c	[illegible]	маһаач	watchman, guard (to guard)
d	[illegible]	бичээч	typist, clerk (to write)

16	[illegible]	−аар[4]	
a	[illegible]	хавчаар	clip (to oppress, to squeeze)
b	[illegible]	тэвчээр	self-control, patience (to abstain from)
c	[illegible]	үдээр	leather tie used in a yurt wall, fastening thong (to fasten, to bind)

17	[illegible]	−аар[4]	
a	[illegible]	хазаар	bridle (to bite)
b	[illegible]	бэлчээр	pasture (to pasture)
c	[illegible]	хэлэлцээр	agreement (to discuss)

18	[illegible] (−[illegible])	−уурь[2] (−уульь[2])	
a	[illegible]	сургуульь	school (to teach)
b	[illegible]	сонгуульь	election (to choose, to elect)
c	[illegible]	зовуурь	pain (to suffer)

19		-р, -рь	
a		суурь	foundation (to sit)
b		байр	place, apartment (to be)
c		нэмэр	contribution (to add)
d		хэвтэр	place for animals to lie down (to lie down)

20		-р	
a		хавдар	swelling, tumor (to swell, to puff up)
b		цайр	zinc (to become white, to turn pale)
c		шүүр	broom, filter (to filter)
d		бэлчир	confluence, nice pasture area (to be in a pasture)

Seldom used suffixes:

21		-з	22		-мт
23		-д	24		-с(н)
25		-ш	26		-м
27		-дас(н)[4]	28		-ль/-л
29		-мь	30		-в
31		-хай[5]	32		-мсар[4]
33		-маг[4]	34		-лан(г)[4]/н(г)
35		-галан(г)[4]	36		-хуй[2]
37		-аал[4]	38		-мшиг
39		-нтаг[4]			

1.1.2 Adjective-Building

1.1.2.1 FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English translation or explanation		
1		-н	There is a disagreement whether or not this "n" is a derivational suffix. Some argue that it is as **hidden "n"** part of the classical stem (which in fact is true) and therefore can't be considered as a derivational suffix. **Ex. d** would then be an exception. Others say, this "n" gives certain nouns adjective characteristics and is used - like in English - to build **compound words.**		
a			махан	meat --- [e.g. soup]	(meat)
b			арьсан	leather --- [e.g. jacket]	(leather)
c			усан	water --- [e.g. bed]	(water)
d			шилэн	glass --- [e.g. door]	(glass)
e			чулуун	stone --- [e.g. age]	(stone)
f			даавуун	cotton --- [e.g. gloves]	(cotton)

g		салхиН	wind --- [e.g. mill]	(wind)
h		тарган	fat, corpulent	(fatness, corpulence)
i		ноосоН	woolen	(wool)
j		модоН	wooden	(wood)

2		-тай[3]	This suffix is actually the **comitative CS**, which has become a derivational suffix. Note the opposite form of "тай" which is the negative particle "-гүй". It isn't added directly in the Classical script. In English, the translations of "гүй" would vary from "in---", "un---", "not ---" or even new words.	
a		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	аюултай (-гүй)	dangerous (danger)
b		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	авьяастай (-гүй)	talented (talent)
c		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	ухаантай (-гүй)	intelligent, clever (wisdom, intellect)
d		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	сахалтай (-гүй)	bearded (beard)
e		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	гэрэлтэй (-гүй)	bright (light)
f		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	гэр бүлтэй (-гүй)	married (family)
g		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	болгоомжтой (-гүй)	careful (caution)
h		(... ᠤᠶᠤᠨ)	ойлгомжтой (-гүй)	clear, comprehensible (understanding)

3		-т	This suffix is originally a short form of the CS "тай".
a		баримтаТ	documentary (fact, proof)
b		уянгаТ	melodious (melody)
c		зурагТ	illustrated, television = "with picture" (picture)
d		зоригТ	courageous (courage)
e		гунигТ	sad (sorrow, sadness)
f		нэрТ	famous, well-known (name)
g		эрдэнэТ	precious (treasure)
h		хүндэТ	dear, honored (respect)

4		-лаг[4]	
a		махлаг	corpulent, fleshy, fat (meat)
b		баатарлаг	heroic, courageous (hero)
c		яслаг	bony (bone)
d		ноёлог (ноён)	lordly, haughty, domunant (lord, chief)
e		тослог	oily (oil)
f		эвлэг	harmonious, polite, courteous (harmony)
g		үслэг	hairy (hair)
h		хөрөнгөлөг	wealthy (wealth)

5	[illegible]	−рхаг[4] (−лхаг[4]) (inserted vowel)	
a	[illegible]	уулархаг	hilly, mountainous (mountain)
b	[illegible]	баярхаг (баян)	boastful of one's wealth, quite rich (joy, gladness)
c	[illegible]	ёсорхог	ceremonious, formalistic (law, custom)
d	[illegible]	элсэрхэг	sandy, sand-like (sand)
e	[illegible]	эзэрхэг (эзэн)	despotic, aggressive (lord, ruler)
f	[illegible]	хөөрэлхөг	boastful, swaggering (cheer, joy)

6	[illegible]	−рхуу[2] (inserted vowel)	* compare with suffix 4
a	[illegible]	баярхуу (баян)	behaving like a rich person (wealth)
b	[illegible]	махэрхуу	fleshy, meaty (meat)
c	[illegible]	ноёрхуу (ноён)	behaving like a lord (lord, ruler)
d	[illegible]	ёсорхуу	formalistic, ceremonious (law)
e	[illegible]	хүүхдэрхүү	childish (child)
f	[illegible]	бөхэрхүү	behaving like a wrestler (wrestler)

7	[illegible]	−саг[4]	This suffix expresses a light form of dependancy
a	[illegible]	махсаг	fond of meat (meat)
b	[illegible]	ажилсаг	hard-working, workaholic (work)
c	[illegible]	унаасаг	fond of transportation means = too lazy to walk (transportation)
d	[illegible]	хадамсаг	affectionate to one's in-laws (in-laws)
e	[illegible]	эмсэг	fond of women, womanizing (female)
f	[illegible]	элэгсэг	friendly, loving, affectionate (liver)
g	[illegible]	нөхөрсөг	friendly (friend, comrade)

8	[illegible]	−мсаг[4] (inserted vowel)	
a	[illegible]	нялхэмсаг	babyish, baby-like (new-born baby)
b	[illegible]	хүүхэмсэг (хүүхэн)	womanizing, girlish, lady-like (lady, woman)
c	[illegible]	их?мсэг	proud, majestic (big, much)
d	[illegible]	өөриймсөг (өөрийн)	like oneself (self, own)

Seldom used suffixes:

9	[illegible]	−саг[4]	**10**	[illegible]	−хан[4]

1.1.2.2 FROM VERBS

1	[illegible]	−мал[4]	
a	[illegible]	баримал	sculptural (to build)
b	[illegible]	тарималь	planted (to plant)
c	[illegible]	нэхмэл	knitted, woven (to knit, to weave)
d	[illegible]	бичмэл	handwritten (to write)
e	[illegible]	хиймэл	artificial (to make)
f	[illegible]	оёмол	(hand-)sewn (to sew)
g	[illegible]	өргөмөл	adopted, step--- [e.g. brother] (to lift up)
h	[illegible]	өнжмөл	last year's, yesterday's (to pass over, to skip a day, to stay one day or one year)

2	[illegible]	−уу[2]	
a	[illegible]	хатуу	hard, stiff (to dry up, to harden)
b	[illegible]	гаргуу	unusual, outstanding (to go out)
c	[illegible]	согтуу	drunken (to get/be drunk)
d	[illegible]	эргүү	foolish (to spin, to turn around)
e	[illegible]	хөлдүү	frozen (to freeze)
f	[illegible]	зүдүү	poor, suffering (to suffer)
g	[illegible]	бариу	tight (to hold)

3	[illegible]	−мгай[3]	Similar in meaning to suffix 10 Ex. e is an **exception** (noun--->adjective)
a	[illegible]	чадамгай	competent, capable, skillful (to be able to)
b	[illegible]	сурамгай	trained, experienced (to learn)
c	[illegible]	гарамгай	outstanding (to go out)
d	[illegible]	түрэмгий	aggressive, brutal (to force, to press)
e	[illegible]	нүүрэмгий	shameless, brazen (face)
f	[illegible]	хэлэмгий	eloquent, voluble (to tell)

4	[illegible]	−мхай[3]	Suffix 4/5 are **similar** and **often interchangeable** (ex.a, d) and in their **meanings similar to suffix 8**. Adjectives with suffixes 4/5 express the character traits not as strongly as adjectives with suffix 8.
a	[illegible]	аймхай/ аймтгай	timid (to be afraid)
b	[illegible]	идэмхий	gluttonous (to eat)
c	[illegible]	мэдэмхий	know-it-all (to know)
d	[illegible]	ичимхий/ ичимтгий	shy, embarrassed (to be embarrassed)

5	[illegible]	-мтгай[3]	see suffix 4
a	[illegible]	дасамтгай/ дасамхай	familiar (to get used to)
b	[illegible]	муулямтгай/ муулямхай	gossipy (to slander)
c	[illegible]	мартамтгай/ мартамхай	forgetful (to forget)
d	[illegible]	тоглоомтгой/ тоглоомхой	fun-loving (to play, to make fun of)
e	[illegible]	цочимтгой/ цочимхой	easily frightened (to be startled)
f	[illegible]	зочломтгой/ зочломхой	hospitable (to visit, to receive visitors)

6	[illegible]	-уун[2]	
a	[illegible]	халуун	hot (to warm up)
b	[illegible]	нялуун	extremely sweet (to smear)
c	[illegible]	хөшүүн	stiff, rigid (to stiffen)
d	[illegible]	өрнүүн	abundant, thriving (to spread, to grow)

7	[illegible]	-нгуй[2]	This suffix adds the meaning "quite ---, rather ---" to the adjectives. * Ex. d is an exception: adverb ---> adjective
a	[illegible]	ядрангуй	weak (to be tired)
b	[illegible]	боловсронгуй	developed, refined (to mature, to develop)
c	[illegible]	хоцронгуй	underdeveloped (to be late)
d	[illegible]	дээрэнгүй *	arrogant, haughty (above)
e	[illegible]	хичээнгүй	diligent, enthusiastic (to strive)
f	[illegible]	өршөөнгүй	merciful (to pardon)

8	[illegible]	-аа[4]	Compare with the note to suffix 4
a	[illegible]	уймраа	nervous, agitated (to feel/be uneasy)
b	[illegible]	чалчаа	idle talk (to chatter, to talk nonsense)
c	[illegible]	мохоо	blunt, dull, crooked (to become blunt/dull)
d	[illegible]	үглээ	grumbling, scolding (to grumble, to scold)

9	[illegible]	-хай[3]	Ex. c is mostly used together with other adjectives.
a	[illegible]	шунахай	greedy (to be greedy)
b	[illegible]	тодорхой	clear, direct (to become clear)
c	[illegible]	хэтэрхий	extremely, too --- (to go over the limit)
d	[illegible]	нэвтэрхий	thoroughly, perfectly (to penetrate, to pass through)

10	[illegible]	-маг[4]	compare with suffix 3
a	[illegible]	чадмаг	skillful, competent (to be able to)
b	[illegible]	сурмаг	trained (to learn)
c	[illegible]	холимог	mixed (to mix)

d	[illegible]	шийлмэг	decisive (to decide)

11	[illegible]	-г	
a	[illegible]	тухлаг	comfortable (to relax)
b	[illegible]	бүрхэг	gloomy, dark (to cover up)
c	[illegible]	сийрэг	scattered, not thick (to scatter, to become thin)

Seldom used suffixes:

12	[illegible]	-уур[2]	13	[illegible]	-хай[3]
14	[illegible]	-нхай[3]	15	[illegible]	-н(г)
16	[illegible]	-гай[3]			

1.1.3 Verb-Building

1	[illegible]	-ла-[4]	Usually added to a **noun**. However, it could be joined to an adjective (ex. i), an interjection (ex. h), an adverb (ex.j).
a	[illegible]	хайрла-	to love (love)
b	[illegible]	найзла-	to be friends (friend)
c	[illegible]	уурла-	to be angry (anger)
d	[illegible]	бэлэглэ-	to give a present (gift)
e	[illegible]	зоригло-	to intend (aim, courage)
f	[illegible]	өндөглө-	to lay eggs (egg)
g	[illegible]	бүүвэйлэ-	to soothe a child with a lullaby (lullaby)
h	[illegible]	еолө-	to groan (ouch!)
i	[illegible]	цэвэрлэ-	to clean (clean, neat)
j	[illegible]	тасла-	to interrupt, to cut (completely)

2	[illegible] (ex. a-k) [illegible] (ex. l-o)	-да-[4], (ex. a-k) -д-, -т- (ex. l-o)	Can be added to the negative particle "-гүй" (ex.j-k).
a	[illegible]	эртдэ-	to be early (early)
b	[illegible]	намда-	to be (too) low, to subside (low)
c	[illegible]	томдо-	to be (too) big (big, large)
d	[illegible]	мууда-	to worsen, to decline (bad)
e	[illegible]	илүүдэ-	to exceed, to be unnecessary (more)
f	[illegible]	зөвдө-	to be right (correct)
g	[illegible]	айрагда-	to be placed among the first 5 in a horse race ('airag') [expl.:the winners' horses are crowned with 'airag']
h	[illegible]	утасда-	to call, to phone (wire, thread = telephone)
i	[illegible]	хөгжимдө-	to play a musical instrument (music)
j	[illegible]	ажилгүйдэ-	to be jobless (without work)

k	[illegible]	азгүйдэ-	to be unlucky (without luck)
l	[illegible]	багад-	to be/become small/insufficient (small, little)
m	[illegible]	сайд- (сайн)	to reconcile, to be friends again (good)
n	[illegible]	буруут-/бурууд-	to be wrong, to be at fault (wrong)
o	[illegible]	илүүт-	to be or to have too much, to exceed (more)

3		-та-[1]	
a	[illegible]	уста-	to perish, to become annihilated (water)
b	[illegible]	гэрэлтэ-	to shine (light)
c	[illegible]	гэмтэ-	to be hurt, damaged or wounded (sin, damage)
d	[illegible]	сэвтэ-	to be/become flawed/rough (defect, flaw)
e	[illegible]	хорхойто-	for decay to set in, to crave for (worms, insects)

4		-чла-[4]	
a	[illegible]	санаачла-	to suggest (idea, suggestion)
b	[illegible]	айлчла-	to visit (household, family)
c	[illegible]	үгчлэ-	to act according to instructions (word)
d	[illegible]	эзгүйчлэ-	to take advantage of someone's absence ("without lord"=absent, deserted)
e	[illegible]	монголчло-	to translate into Mongolian, to mongolize (Mongolia)
f	[illegible]	өнгөчлө-	to select the best things for oneself (color)

5		-ши-	
a	[illegible]	амтши-	to develop a taste or liking for (taste)
b	[illegible]	гарши-	to be experienced at doing something (hand)
c	[illegible]	гэмши-	to repent, to regret (sin, damage)
d	[illegible]	үүлши-	to become cloudy (cloud)
e	[illegible]	бороошши-	to be/become rainy (rain)
f	[illegible]	зөвши-	to discuss, to consider (correct, right)

6		-жи-[3]	
a	[illegible]	малжи-	to acquire/enlarge livestock (animal, livestock)
b	[illegible]	амаржи-	to give birth (peace, rest)
c	[illegible]	зүлэгжи-	to be turned into a meadow (green meadow, grass)
d	[illegible]	өнөржи-	to become a large family (abounding in relatives)
e	[illegible]	өвөлжи-	to pass the winter season (winter)
f	[illegible]	хаваржи-	to pass the spring season (spring)

7		-ра-[4]	
a		амьдра-	to live, to exist (alive)
b		томро-	to become big (big, large)
c		ногоорo- (ногоон)	to become green (green)
d		хөгшрө- (хөгшин)	to become old (old)

8		-рха-[4] (inserted vowels)	
a		найзарха-	to behave like a friend (friend)
b		атаарха-	to envy (envy, jealousy)
c		ихэрхэ-	to be arrogant (much, very)
d		сонирхо-	to be interested (interest, news)

9		-шаа-[4]	general meaning : "to **consider as** ---"
a		муушаа-	to blame, to gossip, to disapprove (bad)
b		зүрхшээ-	to lose heart, to consider as too difficult (heart)
c		ойшоо-	to pay attention, to heed (mind, intellect)
d		зөвшөө-	to approve, to agree (right, correct)

10		-на-[4]	
a		замна-	to follow a road [abstract meaning] (road)
b		эмнэ-	to treat (medicine)
c		жигнэ-	to steam (compress)
d		зөгнө-	to foretell, to prophesy (presentiment, foreboding)

11		-с- (inserted vowels)	This suffix is used for comparison and its meaning is: "to become ---er".
a		багасс-	to become smaller (small)
b		ихэс-	to become bigger, to increase (many, a lot)
c		түргэс- (түргэн)	to become quicker, to accelerate (quick)
d		өргөс- (өргөн)	to become wider (wide, broad)

Seldom used suffixes:

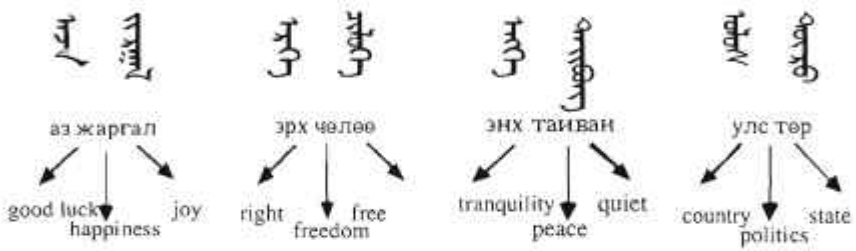
12		-шира-[4]	13		-жира-[4]
14		-ша-[4]	15		-са-[4]
16		-вчла-[4]	17		-гана-[4]
18		-гна-[4]	19		-гна-[4]
20		-жигна-[4]	21		-хира-[4]

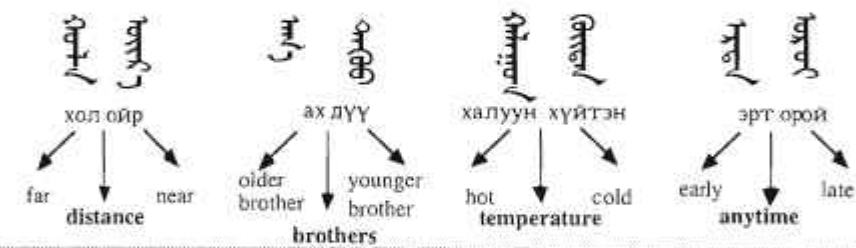
1.2 Word-Building by Word Combinations

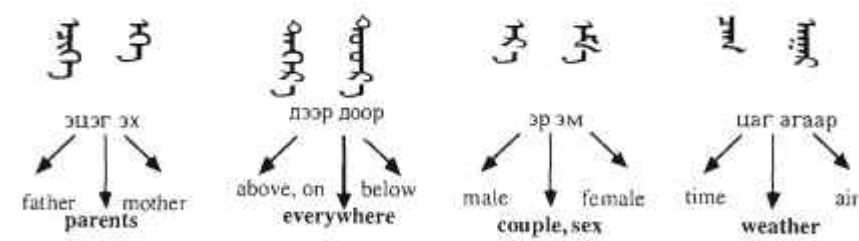
The Mongolian language is enriched by many word combinations which express ideas. These can be divided into three groups.

1.2.1 Coordinate Word Combinations (Compound Words)

In such compound words **neither of the two words is more important than the other.** These combinations do not use one word to describe or clarify the other. Note that the word pairs may be similar (land/state) or opposite (man/woman).





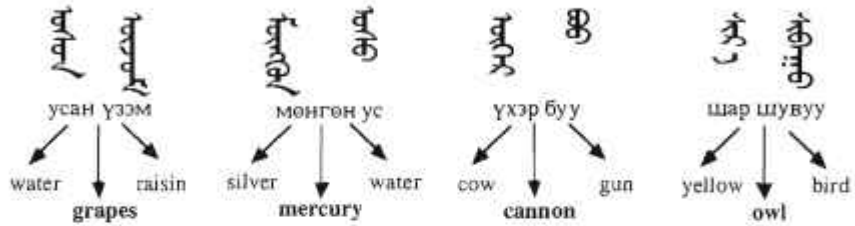


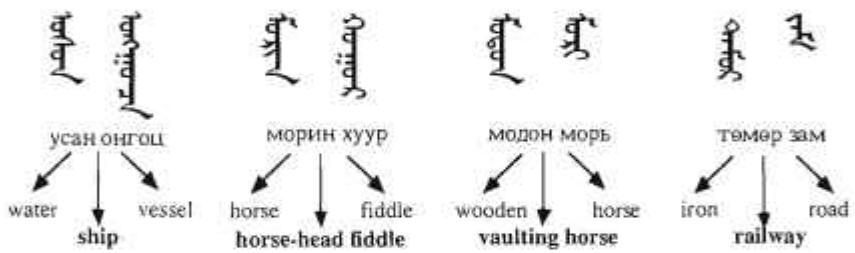
1.2.2 Subordinate Word Combinations

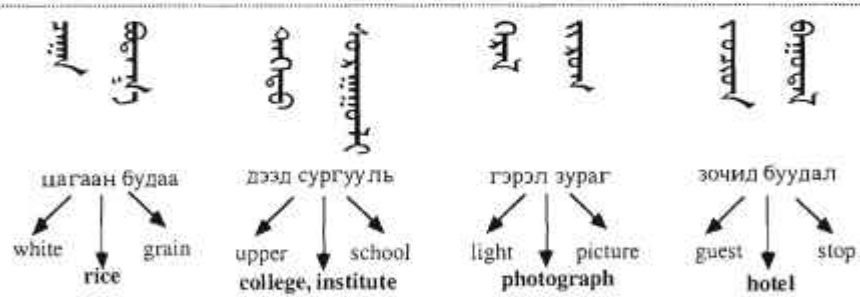
As the name expresses, this combination has a main word and an assistant word which attributively clarifies the main word. We have subordinate combinations in English as well (e.g. wind + mill = windmill). In the Mongolian language, these can be added with or without the help of a suffix.

1.2.2.1 SUBORDINATE WORD COMBINATIONS WITHOUT SUFFIXES

Usually the subordinated word is an **adjective** or a **noun used as an adjective.**

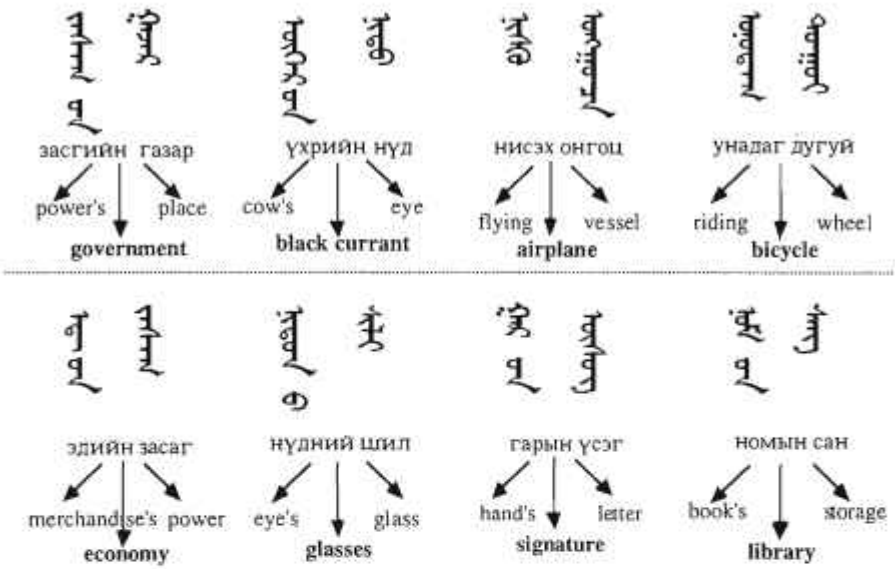






1.2.2.2 SUBORDINATE WORD COMBINATIONS WITH INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES

Here the subordinated word is seldom an adjective, but a verb with an NDS or a noun with a CS.



Notice that sometimes the second or even the third word in a longer combination is dropped and the subordinated word is used alone as the idea. It can be confusing if the student doesn't know the origin of the idea.

Examples:

лавлах (товчоо) information office

нягтлан (бодох хүн) book-keeper, accountant

үзүүлэн (таниулах материал) visual aid

1.2.3 Repetitive Word Combinations

The same word is repeated, similar to the English 'sing-song' or 'hurly-burly'. The meaning is more similar to word combinations in English with '---ware' (silverware) or '--- goods' (leather goods). The meaning could be **very wide** or **very narrow** depending on the idea which the speaker has in mind:

"талх малх" could be translated as 'bakery things', 'basic food stuff' or even only 'foodstuff', depending on the situation and the speaker. In the same way,

"ном зом" could refer to 'books in general', 'stationery items' or even 'knowledge'.

Such repetitive combinations are used only in the **colloquial language** and therefore have no Classical Mongolian writing. The **general rule** is:

If a word begins with a vowel, **"m" is usually added** to the second word. If the word begins with any consonant other than "m", that consonant is **replaced with an "m"** in the repeated word. If the word starts with an "m", the "m" is **replaced with** "c" **or** "з" in the repeated word:

Ex.: адуу мадуу, үзэг мүзэг, талх малх, аар саар, мах сах, ном зом (сом)

2. SPECIAL PARTS OF LEXIS

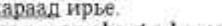
2.1 Idioms

The Mongolian language is full of idioms. Two or more words can form an idiom. The individual words lose their own meanings, and the combination creates a new meaning.

Examples:

1. [illegible] хөл алда– "to lose one's foot"	something like **'to walk on air'; 'to be over the moon'** is used for situations that are not common, every day situations. Usually linked to some happy feeling, though not necessarily.
[illegible] Түүний ээж хөдөөнөөс ирсэнд хөл алдан баярлав. He **walked on air** (and rejoiced) when his mother came from the countryside.	
[illegible] Найзаа үзээд тэр хөл алдаж байна. He sees his friend and **walks on air.**	
2. [illegible] ам бузарла– "to defile one's mouth"	something like **'to put one's foot in one's mouth'** a negative expression: it would have been better not to have asked or made the suggestion
[illegible] Миний хүсэлт ам бузарласан хэрэг болов. I **put my foot in my mouth** with my suggestion.	
[illegible] Түүнээс мөнгө гуйж дэмий ам бузарлав. By asking him for money **I put my foot in my mouth.**	
3. [illegible] сүнс зайла– "to have one's spirit leave"	something like **'one's heart leaps into one's throat'** to be very afraid of something
[illegible] Би аянга буухаас сүнсээ зайлтал айдаг. I am so afraid of lightning that **my heart leaps into my throat.**	
[illegible] Би гэнэт чоно үзээд сүнс зайлав. I suddenly saw the wolf and **my heart leapt into my throat.**	
4. [illegible] магнай хагара– "to break one's forehead"	like **'to be in seventh heaven'; 'to be on cloud 9'** to be overjoyed
[illegible] Шалгалт өгөөд онц аваад магнай хагартлаа баярлав. I received the best grade on the test I had taken and **was in seventh heaven.**	
[illegible] Би энэ зун эцэг эхтэйгээ уулзвал магнай хагартлаа баярлана. When I see my parents this summer, **I'll be on cloud 9.**	

5. [illegible] алтан гартай хүн "person with golden hands"	like **'to be good with one's hands'** a person who has a natural ability to fix things or do things not formally learned
[illegible] Манай ээж алтан гартай хүн. My mother is **good with her hands**.	
6. [illegible] арван хуруу тэгш хүн "a person equal to ten fingers"	like **'well-rounded person'** a person of many gifts
[illegible] Би бүх талаараа сайн сайхан арван хуруу тэгш хүн байхыг хүсдэг. I wish I were a more **well-rounded person**.	
7. [illegible] амыг тагла– "to cork the mouth"	like **'to cork the mouth'**
[illegible] Дорж тэдний амыг таглаад буцаажээ. Dorj sent them home **having made them cork their mouths.**	
[illegible] Би нэг удаа амаа таглуулснаас хойш энэ тухай ярихаа больсон. After **my mouth had been corked** on that topic, I've stopped talking about it.	
8. [illegible] гар хумхи– "to fold one's hands/arms"	like **'lazy bones'; 'to slack[en] off'; 'to laze around'**
[illegible] Зах зээлийн үед гар хумхих аргагүй. In the days of a market economy, you can't afford **to laze around**.	
[illegible] Чи хийх ёстой ажлаа хий, битгий гар хумхиж суу. Do the work you need to do and **don't slacken off!**	
9. [illegible] ам өг– "to give one's mouth"	like **'to give one's word'** to make a promise
[illegible] Би архи уухгүй гэж ээждээ ам өгсөн. **I gave my mother my word** not to drink alcohol.	
10. [illegible] хүний сэтгэл үймүүл– "to disturb someone's soul"	like **'to disturb someone's feelings'; 'to play with someone's affections'; 'to send mixed messages'** to confuse someone by something you say
[illegible] Энэ хүн надад дэмий юм ярьж сэтгэл үймүүлчихлээ. This person had me totally **confused** by the useless thing he said.	
[illegible] Түүнтэй суухгүй бол сэтгэлийг нь бүү үймүүл! **Don't play with her emotions**, if you don't have good intensions!	

11. хошуу дүрэ– "to stick one's beak into something"	like '**to put one's nose in someone else's business**'
 Бусдын хэрэгт бүү хошуу дүр! **Don't stick your nose into other people's business!**	
12. эцгээ өвчи– "to skin one's father"	like '**a chip off the old block**'
 Энэ хүүхэд яг л эцгээ өвчжээ. This child is a **chip off the old block.**	
13. морь хара– "to look after the horse"	like '**I've got to go**'; '**to powder one's nose**' (for women), '**to see a man about a horse**'(for men) to need a restroom/toilet
 Би морь хараад ирье. **I need to see a man about a horse.**	 Би морь хармаар байна. **I've got to go**, be right back.
14.  олон оймс элэ– "to wear out many socks"	something like '**to have been around the block**' to have more experience than someone else
 Би чамайг бодвол олон оймс элээсэн хүн. In comparison to you, **I have more experience.**	

For further idioms, we refer to the book by Г.Аким: "Монгол өвөрмөц хэлцийн товч тайлбар толь", Улсын хэвлэлийн газар, Улаанбаатар, 1982

2.2 Homonyms

Homonyms ('homo' = 'same' and 'nym' = 'name') are words which have the same **pronunciation and spelling** but have different meanings. In English, the word 'mail' would be an example:
mail: a) postal matter b) a form of armor using metal links or plates.
If we look at Classical Mongolian, there are not so many homonyms (**true homonyms**). However in the Cyrillic Script, there are many (**false homonyms**) because of the phonetic influences on the Cyrillic (e.g. long vowels, diphthongs, the assimilation process).

2.2.1 Lexical Homonyms

These homonyms are formed with words from the same parts of speech: all nouns, all verbs, etc.

2.2.1.1 TRUE LEXICAL HOMONYMS

a		ач	1) grandchild	2) favor, benefit, result, help		
b		тал	1) field, steppe	2) side	3) favor	4) half
c		ой	1) anniversary	2) forest	3) mind, intellect	
d		хөрөнгө	1) yeast, seed	2) capital, property		
e		нэхэ–	1) to demand	2) to weave, to knit		

2.2.1.2 FALSE LEXICAL HOMONYMS

a		өтөг	bear	(manure, dung)	
b		сар	month	(moon)	
c		үүр	nest	(daybreak)	
d		уул	mountain	(original)	
e		өвөг	ancestor	(bird's crest)	
f		бөх	wrestler, strong	(camel's hump)	
g		дал	70	(livestock barn)	(shoulder blade)

2.2.2 Morphological Homonyms

These homonyms are made up of **different parts of speech**, usually a noun/verb pair. Also here, you can tell from the Classical Mongolian Script which ones are true homonyms.

2.2.2.1 TRUE MORPHOLOGICAL HOMONYMS

a			ор	(ор!)	bed	(come in!)
b			гар	(гар!)	hand	(go out!)
c			нүд	(нүд!)	eye	(smash!/crush!)

2.2.2.2 FALSE MORPHOLOGICAL HOMONYMS

a			долоо	(долоо!)	seven	(lick!)
b			буу	(буу!)	gun	(get down!)
c			бод	(бод!)	the 3 large livestock: horse, camel, cow (think!)	

2.3 Synonyms

Synonyms have the **same or similar meaning**, but are spelled completely different. We can catagorize the synonyms of the Mongolian language in the following four groups:

2.3.1 Stylistic Synonyms

Literary words are not only used in literature, but they are most commonly used there. In comparison, words from colloquial usage are never really written. Also, polite forms or terms of respect can never be used for oneself, but always refer to those of a higher class or rank.

	Term of Respect:		Literary Language:		Colloquial Language:	
wife		гэргий		эхнэр		авгай
hand		мутар		гар	_____	_____
meal		зоог		хоол	_____	_____
stomach		хэвлий		гэдэс	_____	_____
husband	_____	_____		нөхөр		хар хүн
money	_____	_____		төгрөг		цаас

2.3.2 Loan - Word Synonyms

During various epochs of Mongolian history, many **foreign words became fashionable** in the Mongolian language, even though there were already Mongolian words for these ideas. After the communist revolution, for example, **many Russian words** were used. These loan words, albeit with Mongolian pronunciation, are still common in colloquial usage, while the Mongolian equivalent is used in the written language.

English:	Loan word:		Pronunciation:	Cyrillic:	Classical:
table	стол	(Russian)	stol	ширээ	
wardrobe	шкаф	(Russian)	shkaf	шүүгээ	
cake	торт	(Italian)	tort	бялуу	
skirt	юбка	(French)	upick	банзал	
ice-cream	мороженое	(Russian)	maroojeng	мөхөөлдөс	

The following words were used in the written language for a long time, because there was no equivalent in Mongolian. But for different reasons, modern scholars **created Mongolian words**.

	Loan Words:		Created Mongolian Words:		
Korea	Гуулин (Chinese)		Солонгос		
Sunday	ням (Tibetan)		бүтэн сайн өдөр		full good day
Saturday	бямба (Tibetan)		хагас сайн өдөр		half good day
telephone	телефон (English)		утас		thread, wire
officer	офицер (German)		цэргийн дарга		soldier's chief
furniture	мебель (German)		тавилга		things to put down

2.3.3 Dialect Synonyms

Words from various Mongolian dialects are also used in common Mongolian language. These words have become acceptable in literary Mongolian and are widely known, but can still be traced back to their dialect origin.

English:	Khalkh-Dialect:		Oirat-Dialect:		Buriat-Dialect:	
girl	охин		сэвгэр		басган	
whip	ташуур		малиа			
white	цагаан		гялаан			

2.3.4 Taboo Synonyms (Euphemisms)

Some people (mostly **rural people**) don't like to use certain words like 'wolf', 'snake', 'to die', etc. Such words are taboo for them. Therefore, certain synonyms have developed:

Common word (which is avoided)			Taboo-synonym (which is used instead)		
чоно		wolf	боохой, гайхал		'wolf', strange
могой		snake	хайрхан		merciful
сувд		pearl	шижир шүр		pure coral
үхрийн мялзан		cattle plague	цагаан өвгөн		earth god (represented in the 'Tsam' dance)
үхэ-		to die	нас бара-		to finish one's age
			бурхан бол-		to become a Buddha
all possible words which have become taboo			хэцүү нэрт		to have a difficult name

2.4 Indigenous Mongolian Vocabulary

Every language has **original words** which are difficult to translate into other languages because the concept or the object is not present elsewhere. Most special vocabulary is a **window into that culture**. For this reason, it is very helpful for students of the Mongolian language to know these words. This is a very **limited selection**. For a more complete list we refer the readers to the supplement of the book by Ц. Дашдондов "Англи хэлний хураангуй үгсийн толь" (Dictionary of English abbreviations), Ulan Bator, 1983.

Classical	Cyrillic	Translation and Explanation
	хорхог	a kind of Irish Stew prepared with hot stones in a pot (often a milk can) over an open fire
	боодог	meal of goat or marmot (hot stones are put into the gutted-out belly of the animal and it cooks from the inside out)
	ааруул	dried, very hard curds
	бантан	meat soup with lumps of flour (often eaten after a hangover)
	банш	meat dumplings cooked in water or soup
	бууз	large, steamed meat dumplings (eaten at the festival meal on Tsagaan Sar = lunar New Year celebration)
	хуушуур	fried meat dumplings
	өрөм	creamy milk skin, eaten on bread
	айраг	kumiss (fermented mare's milk)
	дээж	the part of the meal offered to the gods
	араг	loosely woven basket for collecting dung
	домбо	decorated copper jug used like a thermos
	дээл	traditional Mongolian tunic/dress/coat which is buttoned on the side
	баавар	round metal (silver) decoration on a horse's saddle
	овоо	pile of rocks on a mountain top where travelers appease the spirits
	наадам	festival of the 3 manly sports: horse racing, archery, and wrestling (always on July 11/12th)
	оторло-	to take one's herd and belongings to a better pasture, often far away

2.5 Loan Words

As with all other languages, Mongolian has borrowed many foreign words. Many came in hundreds of years ago, have changed and look now like Mongolian words.

2.5.1 Integration of Loan Words

The pronunciation of foreign words changed considerably after coming into Mongolian:

грва-чань	(Tibetan)	дацан		temple
цуан-хү	(Chinese)	цонх		window
ноомос	(Greek)	ном		book
дифтэра	(Greek)	дэвтэр		notebook

Sometimes the meaning also changed after time. "Чамин", for example, was a market in Beijing where Mongolians used to buy luxury items. Today, "чамин" means 'luxury' or 'exquisite'.

Before the revolution, most of the foreign words came from other Asian languages. After the revolution, many European words entered the language through Russian.

2.5.2 Loan Words from Different Languages

2.5.2.1 SANSKRIT, UIGHUR

Religious vocabulary was introduced together with the introduction of Buddhism.

words from Sanskrit:			words from Uighur:		
	сударь	Sutra		хувраг	monk
	шашин	religion		суврага	stupa, pagoda
	тив	continent		лавай	conch trumpet
	махбод	body (element)		титэм	crown
	шүлэг	poem		хутагт	religious title
	боть	volume (of books)		хөрш	neighbor

2.5.2.2 PERSIAN, ARABIC

These are words that have to do mainly with **goods and wares**.

words from Persian:			words from Arabic:		
	болд	steel		архи	alcohol
	чихэр	candy, sweets		цув	raincoat
	дарь	gunpowder		алмас	diamond
	тарвас	watermelon		саван	soap
	тоть	parrot			
	байшин	building, house			
	дарга	boss, leader, chief			

2.5.2.3 CHINESE, MANCHURIAN

Mongolia had very close contact with China and Manchuria, resulting in the absorption of many words into the Mongolian language. These words usually have to do with **household items, handicrafts, construction**, etc. From Manchurian came **administrative titles and concepts**.

words from Chinese:			words from Manchurian:		
	байцаа	cabbage		хаван	officer
	хуушуур	khuushuur (dish)		бэйл	administrative title
	гоймон	noodles		бэйс	administrative title
	даавуу	(cotton) material		амбан	governor
	лийр	pear		фүжин	lady
	банз	board, plank			
	мужаан	carpenter			
	шохой	chalk			
	ваар	vase, tile			
	лууван	carrot			
	яндан	stove pipe			

2.5.2.4 TIBETAN

Many **Buddhist concepts** came from Tibet and are expressed with Tibetan words, including names for the **days of the week.** Almost all foreign given names come from the Tibetan language.

	баг	mask		маяг	style, manner
	бунхан	tomb, grave		дэглэм	rule, order
	тэг	zero		диваажин	paradise
	сая	million		хонзон	revenge, grudge
	бум	100,000		мадаг	fault, error, mistake
	гарчиг	table of contents		гомбо	patron of the Mongolians
	луйвар	cheat, swindle		найз	friend
	луу	dragon		бурам	cane sugar

2.5.2.5 EUROPEAN

Most **technological words** come from Europe. Many 'international' words which we know from English, came originally from Greek or Latin. One example is 'television', a combination of a Greek prefix and a Latin word.

words from Russian:			words from English:		
[illegible]	станц	station	[illegible]	клуб	club
[illegible]	размер	size (of clothing)	[illegible]	спорт	sport
[illegible]	район	district	[illegible]	бокс	boxing
[illegible]	винтов	rifle	[illegible]	театр	theatre
[illegible]	вокзал	train station	[illegible]	телевиз	television
[illegible]	печень	cookie/biscuit			
[illegible]	щит	electrical box			
[illegible]	пропуск	identity card			
[illegible]	расписани	schedule			

words from German and Italian:			words from French and Dutch:		
[illegible]	цемент (Ger.)	cement	[illegible]	билет (French)	ticket
[illegible]	контор (Ger.)	office	[illegible]	такси (French)	taxi
[illegible]	рам (Ger.)	frame	[illegible]	прокурор (French)	prosecutor
[illegible]	лозунг (Ger.)	slogan, password	[illegible]	фронт (French)	front
[illegible]	лагерь (Ger.)	camp	[illegible]	плакат (French)	poster
[illegible]	опер (Ital.)	opera	[illegible]	талон (French)	coupon, voucher
[illegible]	концерт (Ital.)	concert	[illegible]	банк (French)	bank
[illegible]	бензин (Ital.)	petrol, gasoline	[illegible]	руль (Dutch)	steering wheel

words from Latin:					
[illegible]	машин	car, machine	[illegible]	архив	archives, files
[illegible]	радио	radio	[illegible]	трактор	tractor
[illegible]	комбинат	group of enterprises	[illegible]	доктор	doctor
[illegible]	колони	colony	[illegible]	материал	material
[illegible]	агент	agent	[illegible]	градус	degree
[illegible]	облигац	debenture, bond	[illegible]	арми	army
[illegible]	фабрик	factory	[illegible]	компас	compass
[illegible]	хими	chemistry	[illegible]	экспорт	export
[illegible]	акт	file	[illegible]	аспирант	graduate student

words from Greek:					
	телефон	telephone		атом	atom
	систем	system		геометр	geometry
	музей	museum		практик	practice
	бактер	bacteria		техник	technique
	фото	photograph		килограмм	kilogram
	стадион	stadium		километр	kilometer
	физик	physics			

Part III:

Morphology

Chapter 1:

Concrete Parts of Speech

pages 72 - 281

Real Parts of Speech
Nouns
Verbs
Adwords

Representative Parts of Speech
Prowords

Chapter 2:

Abstract Parts of Speech

pages 282 - 358

Postpositions
Conjunctions
Particles
Interjections

In Part III of this book, called Morphology (from Greek 'morphe' = 'form'), we will study **morphemes**. They can be divided into **2 groups**:

1.) **Lexical morphemes** (also called **'derivational suffixes'**) which are used to form the words that enter a dictionary. (In English like 'work**er**', 'legal**istic**', 'pleas**ure**'.)

2.) **Grammatical morphemes** which give lexical morphemes a new grammatical meaning. (In English like 'workers', 'legalistic**ally**', 'pleasures'.)

In Part II (Lexicology) we studied the different lexical or derivational morphemes and how they are used to build words. In this part we will mainly deal with the different **grammatical morphemes and their rules of application**. We will also look at some analytical forms when necessary.

Notice that the rules of the Cyrillic and the Classical script often do not agree. We might say that there are two grammars. For further explanation see Part I of the book.

For the Classical Mongolian script we stick in this book to the **revised forms**, which have been used in Inner Mongolia for some time. Where these forms differ from the old traditional forms, which appear in old historical works or some newly published books, we try to give also these old forms under the note 'old forms'.

The **parts of speech**, which actually are the subject of morphology, can be divided into **2 groups.** We will consider each group and its members with their appropriate grammatical morphemes (= inflectional suffixes):

1. Concrete parts of speech:

1.1 Real parts of speech:
- **1.1.1 Noun** (person, place or thing; has a name)
- **1.1.2 Verb** (words of action, state of being)
- **1.1.3 Adword*** (adjective, adverb, numeral/number)

1.2 Representative parts of speech:
- **1.2.1 Proword*** (Pronoun)

(* these are two new terms that we created to express Mongolian grammatical ideas)

2. Abstract parts of speech:
- **2.1 Postposition** (following word)
- **2.2 Conjunction** (joining word)
- **2.3 Particle** (piece of word)
- **2.4 Interjection** (exclamations, onomatopoetic word)

Concrete parts of speech make up the **language structure**. In Chapter 4 of the **Appendix** (p.418ff) the reader will find the '**structural and functional system of relational suffixes**' which shows this structure clearly.
Abstract parts of speech are used to **express speech**.

1. CONCRETE PARTS OF SPEECH

1.1 Real Parts of Speech

1.1.1 Nouns

Words which describe people, animals, objects, bodies, ideas and appearances, and answer the question **'who?' or 'what?'** are called nouns.
As mentioned at the end of Part I, three different kinds of inflectional suffixes can be added to nouns. Their grammatical meaning and subsequent order is as follows:

1. Plural **2. Case** **3. Reflexivization**

In order to understand better the following suffixes and their rules, we must mention again that Cyrillic and Classical Mongolian suffix rules sometimes disagree. This becomes especially clear with nouns with a **hidden "n"/"g"**. It's important to be able to discern whether the "n"/"g" belongs to the suffix or the word stem. ('Hidden' means that the letter belongs to the Classical Mongolian word stem, but doesn't always appear.)

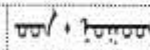
1.1.1.1 PLURAL

In contrast to English, the plural form has **no great meaning**. Originally, there were very strict rules for plural usage, but through the centuries they have been lost, and we could almost say that you can get by without the plural. Basically, **the plural form is never used if it is already clear from the context that the noun is plural**. In English, this basic rule would lead to the following impossible sentences:
I bought three **apple** yesterday. Did you see all these **child**? How many **book** do you need? **Horse** and **cow** are grazing in the meadow.

There are **five different plural suffixes**. Although it was probably pretty clear earlier which suffix was used where, **we cannot draw those parameters today**. So the rule that the "нар" suffix is for intelligent beings is still valid, but it would be dangerous to apply it strictly, otherwise students would be thought to have no intellect! It makes more sense to memorize the plural suffixes for the most important nouns.

1.1.1.1.1 Plural Suffixes (PS's)

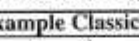
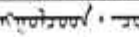
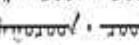
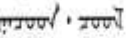
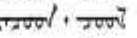
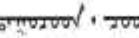
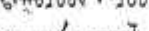
Overview:

1.		−уул², −нуул²	**Most common** PS
2.		−чуул², −чуул²	**Collective** PS
3.		нар	Usually for **intelligent beings**
4.		−д	mainly used for the suffixes "−ч(ид)" and "−гч(ид)"
5.		−с	**rare**, only for certain words

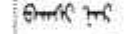
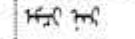
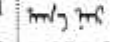
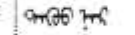
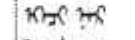
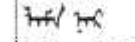
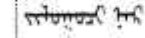
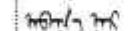
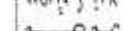
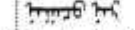
1.1.1.1.1.1 Plural Suffix "-УУД" (Most Common PS)

Suffix	Rules: for nouns, ending with р	Examples in Cyrillic and Classical Script	English translation
-нар (uud/üüd)	☛ **consonants except "n"**	ном нар	books
		баатар нар	heroes
		ger нар	yurts
		хүүхэд нар	children
-нууд (nuGud)	☛ **vowels or "n"**	оюутан нууд	students
-нууд (nügüd)	(Notice that the form -нүүд is written without the usual ü-letter-stroke in order to keep it from being confused with -нөхөд (= comrades).	далай нууд	seas
		шувуу нууд	birds
		ширээ нүүд	tables
-УУД -ҮҮД	☛ **all consonants and vowels**	номУУД	books
		гарУУД	hands
		баатарУУД	heroes
		оюутнУУД	students
		гэрҮҮД	yurts
		хүүхдҮҮД	children
	Pay attention:		
	• Short vowels are dropped	бугУУД (бугэ)	deer
		ханУУД (ханэ)	walls
		хулганУУД (хулгана)	mice
	• "-и, -ы" stay in suffix	ангиУД (ангиИ)	classes
		тарниУД (тарниЙ)	mantras
		сургуулиУД (сургуульЬ)	schools
	• The hidden "н" appears	шувуунУУД	birds
		тэмээнҮҮД	camels
		ширээнҮҮД	tables
		өрөөнҮҮД	rooms
		талхнУУД	loaves of bread
	• The hidden "г" appears	байшингУУД	houses
		сангУУД	treasures
		хүрээлэнгҮҮД	institutes
	• Inserted vowel "н" is needed for long vowels and diphthongs.	гэрээнҮҮД	contracts
		харандаанУУД	pencils
		бөөнҮҮД	shamans
		дэгдээхийнҮҮД	chicks
		далайнУУД	seas
		туулайнУУД	hares

1.1.1.1.1.2 Plural Suffix "– чууд, – чуул" (Collective PS)

Suffix	Example Classical M.	Example Cyrillic	English translation
(–Kuud/–Küüd) – чууд, –чҮҮд (–Kuul/–Küül) –чуул, –чҮҮл		монголчууд/ –чуул	Mongolians
		англичууд/ –чуул	the British
		Дарханчууд/ –чуул	residents of Darhan
		залуучууд/ –чуул	youths
		багачууд/ -чуул	little ones
		баячууд/ –чуул	the wealthy
		ядуучууд/ –чуул	the poor
The first suffix is the most common although the second can also always be used.		сайчууд/ –чуул	the good
		эхчҮҮд/ –чҮҮл	mothers
		эмэгтэйчҮҮд/ –чҮҮл	women
		бүсгүйчҮҮд/ –чҮҮл	young women
		эрэгтэйчҮҮд/ –чҮҮл	men
		ажилгүйчҮҮд/ –чҮҮл	the unemployed

1.1.1.1.1.3 Plural Suffix "нар"

Suffix	Ex. Classical M.	Ex. Cyrillic	English translation
(nar) нар This suffix is the only PS which is not added directly to the Cyrillic word stem. * Note, that this suffix, when added to the 1st and 3rd person plural, strengthens the plural meaning.		багш нар	teachers
		тогооч нар	cooks
		эмч нар	doctors
		ах нар	older brothers
		дүү нар	younger siblings
		эгч нар	older sisters
		лам нар	Lamas
		жолооч нар	drivers
		авга нар	paternal relatives
		нагац нар	maternal relatives
		ажилтан нар	employees
		сүсэгтэн нар	believers
		дарга нар	leaders, bosses
	 *	бид нар	we (all)
	 *	тэд нар	they (all)

1.1.1.1.1.4 Plural Suffix "– д"

This suffix is used mainly when the noun ends with the derivational suffixes "–ч(ин)"/ "–гч". The final "н" is dropped and the PS "д" is written instead. Note that the hidden "и" reappears. This suffix is also used with a few other nouns in which one of the following **final letters** is dropped when the PS is added: "н, р, л, й,(ь)".

Suffix	Example Classical	Example Cyrillic	English transl.
ᠳᠤ (–d)	ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠴᠢᠳ (ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠴᠢᠳ)	ажилчид	workers
– д	ᠬᠣᠯᠴᠢᠳ (ᠬᠣᠯᠴᠢᠳ)	малчид	herdsmen
☛ derivational suffixes:	ᠵᠤᠬᠢᠶᠠᠯᠴᠢᠳ (ᠵᠤᠬᠢᠶᠠᠯᠴᠢ)	зохиолчид	writers
	ᠰᠡᠲᠭᠦᠭᠯᠴᠢᠳ (ᠰᠡᠲᠭᠦᠭᠯᠴᠢ)	сэтгүүлчид	journalists
• –ч(ин)	ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠭᠴᠢᠳ (ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠭᠴᠢ)	сурагчид	pupils
• –гч	ᠬᠤᠳᠠᠯᠳᠠᠭᠴᠢᠳ (ᠬᠤᠳᠠᠯᠳᠠᠭᠴᠢ)	худалдагчид	salesclerks
☛ final letters н, р, л, й (ь)	ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ (ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠨ)	охид (охин)	daughters, girls
	ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠳ (ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ)	хаад (хаан)	kings
	ᠥᠪᠥᠭᠳ (ᠥᠪᠥᠭᠡᠨ)	өвгөд (өвгөн)	old men
	ᠨᠥᠬᠡᠳ (ᠨᠥᠬᠡᠷ)	нөхөд (нөхөр)	comrades
	ᠲᠥᠰᠢᠮᠡᠳ (ᠲᠥᠰᠢᠮᠡᠯ)	түшмэд (түшмэл)	officials
	ᠨᠣᠬᠣᠳ (ᠨᠣᠬᠣᠢ)	ноход (нохой)	dogs
	ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠳ (ᠮᠣᠷᠢ · ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠨ)	морьд (морь / морин)	horses

1.1.1.1.1.5 Plural Suffix "– с"

Suffix	Example Classical	Ex. Cyrillic	English translation
ᠰ (–s)	ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠰ	үйлс	deeds
– с	ᠡᠷᠡᠰ	эрс	men
	ᠨᠡᠷᠡᠰ	нэрс	names
This suffix is **not exchanged**	ᠵᠠᠯᠤᠤᠴᠤᠰ	залуус	youths
with another vowel, but	ᠦᠷᠡᠨ	үрс	descendants
added to the final letter.	ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠳᠰ	дээдэс	ancestors, upper class
	ᠳᠤᠤᠳᠤᠰ	доодос	lower class
Note, that some words have a	ᠶᠤᠮᠰ (ᠶᠤᠮᠠᠨ)	юмс (юман)	things
hidden "n" which is dropped	ᠦᠭᠰ (ᠦᠭᠡᠨ)	үгс (үгэн)	words
when the suffix is added.	ᠤᠤᠯᠰ (ᠤᠤᠯᠠᠨ)	уулс (уулан)	mountains

1.1.1.1.2 Plural Usage Without Suffixes

Mongolian PS's, as already mentioned, are only used when it is not already clear from the **overall context** that the plural is intended. Below we have described the circumstances when **plural usage is unnecessary**.

1.1.1.1.2.1 Numerals

a) Надад гурван хуурцаг бий.
I have **three** tapes.

b) Би таван найзтайгаа кино үзэв.
I saw a film together with my **five** friends.

c) Би дэлгүүрээс олон ном авлаа.
I bought **many** books at the store.

d) Өнөөдөр зарим оюутан ирсэнгүй.
Some students didn't come today.

e) Манай хүү цөөн алдаа хийсэн.
Our son made **few** mistakes.

f) Ангид хэдэн сандал байна вэ?
How many chairs are in the classroom?

1.1.1.1.2.2 Repeated Words

a) Орон орны төлөөлөгч иржээ.
Delegates came from different **countries.**

b) Гэр гэртээ харьцгаа!
Go back to your **homes**!

c) Энд хэн хэн байна вэ?
Who (all) is here?

d) Та дэлгүүрээс юу юу авсан бэ?
What (all) did you get at the store?

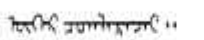
e) Тэр хөдөөнөөс ирээд хүн хүнтэй уулзсаар явна.
He came from the countryside and has been meeting with many **people**.

f) Би Берлинд байхдаа сайхан сайхан юм иддэг байсан.
When I was in Berlin, I ate many good **things**.

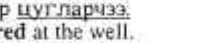
g) Манай хүү байх байхгүй юм дандаа нэхдэг.
My son constantly demands extraordinary **things.**
("... being and not being things.")

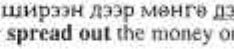
h) Тэр олон жил чадах чадахгүй ажил хийж байна.
For many years he has been going about doing all **kinds of work**.
("...things he can and things he can't do.")

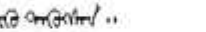
1.1.1.1.2.3 Verbs that Demand Plural

a) 
Хулаг дээр үхэр цугларчээ.
The cattle **gathered** at the well.

b)
Баяр ширээн дээр мөнгө дэлгэжээ.
Bayar **spread out** the money on the table.

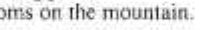
c) 
Би уулаад мөөг түүсэн.
I **picked** mushrooms on the mountain.

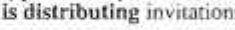
d) 
Сараа урилга тараажбайна.
Saraa **is distributing** invitations.

e) 
Талд хонь бэлчиж байна.
The sheep are **grazing** on the steppe.

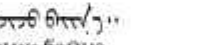
f)
Бид намар хүнсний ногоо хураадаг.
We always **harvest** vegetables in the fall.

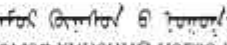
1.1.1.1.2.4 Quantitative Words

a) 
сүрэг чоно
a **pack** of wolves

b) 
хайрцаг янжуур
a **pack** of cigarettes

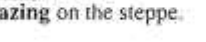
c)
боодол цаас
a **packet** of paper

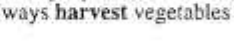
d) 
багц мод
a **bundle** of wood

e) 
атга чихэр
a **handful** of candies

f)
хэсэг ном
a **pile/stack** of books

1.1.1.1.2.5 Abstract Ideas

a) 
санаа
idea

b) 
хайр
love

c)
мөрөөдөл
longing

d)
бодол
thought

1.1.1.2 CASES

The Mongolian language has **8 cases** (7 traditional and 1 new). A lot of English prepositions are expressed in Mongolian with a case (see pages 90-100). We will study the 8 cases with their suffixes and applications.

When adding a Cyrillic suffix, some vowels are dropped. We refer to the **spelling rules** (p. 23-25) which contain many helpful hints for the usage of the case suffixes. **Genitive, dative-locative and ablative cases** require the **hidden "n"** in the Classical Mongolian word stem. In some cases, the **hidden "g"** appears.

We can find out which case a word belongs to by **asking certain questions**. For this reason the appropriate question and answer sentences are given.

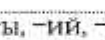
Example in English:

My **mother** sat at the table in *Dad's* bathrobe, and gave me *my* plate.

a) **Who** sat at the table?	→ my **mother**	**nominative** (subject)
b) *Whose* mother sat at the table?	→ *my* mother	*genitive* (possessive)
c) *Whose* plate did my mother give?	→ *my* plate	*genitive* (possessive)
d) In *whose* bathrobe?	→ *Dad's* bathrobe	*genitive* (possessive)
e) (To) whom did she give the plate?	→ (to) me	dative (indirect object)
f) Whom or what did she give me?	→ the plate	accusative (direct object)

1.1.1.2.1 The 8 Cases and Their Suffixes (CS's)

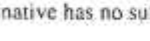
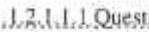
Overview:

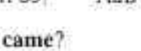
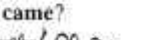
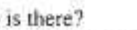
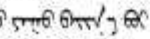
Cases:	Questions:	Cyrillic Suffixes:	Classical Suffixes:
Nominative	**who?**		
Genitive	**whose?**	−ын, −ийн, −ы, −ий, −н	
Dative-Locative	**(to) whom?**	−д, −т	
Accusative	**whom?**	−ыг, −ийг, −г , −ø	
Ablative	**from whom?**	−аас[4]	
Instrumental	**by whom?**	−аар[4]	
Comitative	**with whom?**	−тай[3]	
Directive	**towards whom?**	руу[2] (луу[2])	

1.1.1.2.1.1 Nominative Case

The nominative has no suffixes. **The subject of a sentence stands in the nominative case.**

1.1.1.2.1.1.1 Question Words

Who went?	**Father** went.	**What**'s this?	**This** is a table.
			
Хэн явсан бэ?	Аав явсан.	Энэ юу вэ?	Энэ – ширээ.

Who (all) came?	**Dorj, Baatar, and Naraa** came.
	
Хэн хэн ирсэн бэ?	Дорж, Баатар, Нараа гурав ирсэн.
What (all) is there?	There are **books, notebooks, and bags** there.
	
Тэнд юу юу байна вэ?	Тэнд ном, дэвтэр, цүнх байна.

1.1.1.2.1.2 Genitive Case

1.1.1.2.1.2.1 Genitive CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	Rules: For words ending with ᠭ	Examples		English ("---'s" or "of the ---")
ᠤᠨ (yin)	☛ **vowels**	ᠡᠮᠴᠢ ᠤᠨ		the doctor's
		ᠨᠣᠬᠠᠢ ᠤᠨ		the dog's
		ᠨᠡᠷ᠎ᠡ ᠤᠨ		the name's
		ᠡᠵᠢ ᠤᠨ		Mother's
ᠤ (un/ün)	☛ **consonants except "n"**	ᠠᠮᠢᠲᠠᠨ ᠤ		the animal's
		ᠨᠣᠮ ᠤ		the book's
		ᠲᠡᠮᠳᠡᠭᠯᠡᠯ ᠤ		the notebook's
ᠦ (u/ü)	☛ **"n"**	ᠰᠠᠷ᠎ᠠ ᠦ		the moon's
		ᠨᠠᠷᠠᠨ ᠦ		the sun's
		ᠰᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡ ᠦ		the table's
		ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠦ		their
-ын	**strong words:**			
	☛ **short vowels** (which are then dropped)	зорилго	зорилгын	the goal's
		буга	бугын	the deer's
		хана	ханын	the wall's
	☛ **consonants except "n"**	найз	найзын	the friend's
		ном	номын	the book's
		хурал	хурлын	the meeting's
		аав	аавын	Father's
		улс	улсын	the country's
		ах	ахын	the older brother's
		сар	сарын	the month's
(ийн)	**Note the exceptions :**	анги	ангийн	the class's
	- и, -ь (are dropped)	технологи	технологийн	technology's
		Ази	Азийн	Asia's
		сургууль	сургуулийн	the school's
		говь	говийн	the Gobi Desert's
	- ж, -ч, -ш, -ж (have "i" in the Classical Mongolian word stem)	Доржж	Доржийн	Dorj's
		сурагч	сурагчийн	the pupil's
		багш	багшийн	the teacher's
		католиж	католикийн	catholic
	- г (final consonant) (hidden "g" appears)	зураг	зургийн	the picture's
		байшин(г)	байшингийн	the house's
		сан(г)	сангийн	the treasury's
	(inserted consonant "g" is needed for *long vowels*)	залуу	залуугийн	the youth's
		бөө	бөөгийн	the shaman's
		дараа	дараагийн	(**of the**) next

−ы	**strong words:**	оюутан	оюутны	the student's
	☛ **"n"**	олон	олны	**of** many
		малчин	малчны	the herdsman's
	Note:	хаан	хааны	the king's
(−ны)	◦ hidden "n"	морь(инь)	морины	the horse's
	(some list this as a suffix, but	сар(аҥ)	сарны	the moon's
	the "н" is part of the noun stem)	нар(аҥ)	нарны	the sun's
		талх(аҥ)	талхны	the bread's
	* exception	харандаа(*!)	харандааны	the pencil's
−ийн	**weak words:**	шөнө	шөнийн	the night's
	☛ **short vowels**	эрдэнэ	эрдэнийн	the jewel's
	(which are then dropped)	бие	биеийн	the body's
	☛ **consonants**	гэр	гэрийн	the yurt's
	except "n"	эм	эмийн	the medicine's
		билет	билетийн	the ticket's
	(see exceptions to −ын)	эх	эхийн	Mother's
−ий	**weak words:**	хэн	хэний	whose
	☛ **"n"**	үнэн	үнэний	the truth's
		хүн	хүний	the person's
		мөрөн	мөрний	the river's
	Note:	эзэн	эзэний	the lord's
(−ний)	◦ hidden "n"	ширээ(ҥ)	ширээний	the table's
	(some list this as a suffix, but	жимс(эҥ)	жимсний	the fruit's
	the "н" is part of the noun stem)	гүү(ҥ)	гүүний	the mare's
	*exception	гэрээ (*!)	гэрээний	the contract's
−н	☛ **diphthongs**	далай	далайн	the sea's
		орой	оройн	the evening's
		дэлхий	дэлхийн	the world's

1.1.1.2.1.2.2 Question Words

Whose mother is this?

Энэ хэний ээж вэ?

What kind of meat did you buy? ("**Whose** meat...")

Чи юуны мах авсан бэ?

This is **Baatar's** mother.

Энэ Баатарын ээж.

I bought **beef**. ("... cow's meat.")

Би үхрийн мах авлаа.

1.1.1.2.1.2.3 Usage

1.) Postpositions which demand genitive case:

a		жилийн дараа	**after** a year
b		хүүхдийн төлөө	**for** the children
c		уулзахын тулд	**in order to** meet ...
d		номын тухай	**about** the book
e		хичээлийн өмнө	**before** the lesson
f		таван жилийн турш	**during** five years

2.) Nouns used as modifiers:
a) Noun + **material** from which it's made
b) noun + **part** of the noun
c) **place** where the noun appears
d) noun + its **container**

a	[illegible]	талхны гурил	bread **flour**
	[illegible]	гутлын савхи	boot **leather**
	[illegible]	эмийн ургамал	medicinal **plant**
	[illegible]	гэрийн мод	yurt's **wood**
	[illegible]	дэрний өд	pillow **feathers**
b	[illegible]	номын хавтас	book **cover**
	[illegible]	ширээний хөл	table **leg**
	[illegible]	орны даавуу	bed **sheet**
	[illegible]	уулын орой	mountain **peak**
c	[illegible]	хотын музей	**city** museum
	[illegible]	усны шувуу	**water** bird
	[illegible]	говийн ургамал	**desert** plant
d	[illegible]	бичгийн сав	letter **case**
	[illegible]	гурилын шуудай	flour **sack**
	[illegible]	захианы дугтуй	envelope (**letter** wrapping)

3.) Possession:

a	[illegible]	миний сандал	**my** chair
b	[illegible]	чиний ах	**your** brother
c	[illegible]	тэдний ээж	**their** mother
d	[illegible]	монголын нутаг	**Mongolian** territory
e	[illegible]	Баатарын эхнэр	**Baatar's** wife
f	[illegible]	эмчийн үзлэг	**the doctor's** examination
g	[illegible]	малын тэжээл	(**animal**) fodder

4.) Time:

a	[illegible]	1984 оны 9-р сар	September (**of the year**) **1984**
b	[illegible]	маргаашийн хурал	**tomorrow's** meeting
c	[illegible]	намрын бороо	**autumn** rain
d	[illegible]	өнөөдрийн сонин	**today's** newspaper
e	[illegible]	оройн хоол	**evening** meal, supper

5.) Geographical names:

a	[illegible]	Алтайн нуруу	**Altai** Mountain Range -
b	[illegible]	Туулын хөндий	**Tuul** Valley
c	[illegible]	Улиастайн гол	**Uliastai** River
d	[illegible]	Хуйсийн говь	**Khuis** Desert
e	[illegible]	Улаанбаатарын орчим	**Ulaanbaatar's** surroundings

6.) Intensifying adjectives:

a	[illegible]	муугийн муу	**very** worst ("**bad of** bad")
b	[illegible]	холын хол	**very** furthest ("**far of** far")
c	[illegible]	дээдийн дээд	**very** highest, **very** best ("**high of** high")

7.) Together with an *NDS*:

a	[illegible]	мэддэгийн шинж	**well-known** appearance
b	[illegible]	ялсны баяр	joy **of victory** ("**having-won** joy")

8.) Subject of an *attribute clause* (see page 392):

a	[illegible]	Миний тарьсан цэцгийг хамгаалж байгаарай!	Please take care of the flowers *that* ***I*** *planted.*
b	[illegible]	Доржийн худалдаж авсан машиныг би үзсэн.	I saw the car *that* ***Dorj*** *bought.*

1.1.1.2.1.3 Dative-Locative Case

1.1.1.2.1.3.1 Dative-Locative CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	Rules: For words ending with р	Examples		English translation
ᠳᠤ (du/dü)	☛ vowels	ᠳᠠᠷᠭᠠᠳ ᠳᠤ	даргад	to the leader
–д		ᠠᠩᠭᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	ангид	in the class
(ᠳᠤᠷ • ᠳ)		ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠤᠤᠯᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	сургуульд	in the school
(old forms)		ᠨᠣᠬᠣᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	нохойд	for the dog
		ᠳᠡᠯᠬᠢᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	дэлхийд	in the world
	note:	ᠳᠠᠯᠠᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	далайд	in the sea
	◦ final vowel can't	ᠠᠠ᠋ᠪᠳ ᠳᠤ	аавд *	to the father
	be seen in Cyrillic	ᠰᠠᠷ᠋ᠳ ᠳᠤ	сард *	in the month
	☛ n, m, l, ng	ᠨᠣᠮ᠋ᠳ ᠳᠤ	номд (номонд)	in the book
	code word: namilang	ᠮᠠᠯ᠋ᠳ ᠳᠤ	малд	for the animal
		ᠰᠠᠨᠳ ᠳᠤ	санд	in storage
	note:	ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠰᠢᠨᠳ ᠳᠤ	байшинд	in the house
	◦ hidden "n"	ᠤᠰᠠᠨ᠋ᠳ ᠳᠤ	усанд	in the water
		ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠨ᠋ᠳ ᠳᠤ	моринд	to the horse
		ᠮᠣᠳᠣᠨ᠋ᠳ ᠳᠤ	модонд	in the tree
	◦ inserted vowel	ᠪᠠᠲᠠᠳ ᠳᠤ	Батад	to Baatar
	is necessary after	ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠵᠠᠳ ᠳᠤ	найзад	to the friend
	д, з, т, х, ц, ш, ж, ч	ᠠᠬᠠᠳ ᠳᠤ	ахад	to the older brother
	in Cyrillic script	ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	багшид	to the teacher
		ᠡᠮᠴᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	эмчид	to the doctor
		ᠮᠤᠵᠢᠳ ᠳᠤ	мужид	in the district
		ᠨᠥᠥᠴᠠᠳ ᠳᠤ	нөөцад	to the stock
ᠲᠤ (tu/tü)	☛ (b*),g,r,s,(d*)	ᠰᠡᠳᠪᠡᠲ ᠲᠤ	сэдвэт	in the title
–т	code word: bagarasada	ᠲᠥᠰᠥᠪᠲ ᠲᠤ	төсөвт	in the budget
(ᠲᠤᠷ • ᠲ)		ᠠᠶᠮᠠᠭᠲ ᠲᠤ	аймагт	in the 'aimag'
(old forms)		ᠴᠠᠭ᠋ᠲ ᠲᠤ	цагт	at --- o'clock
		ᠭᠠᠷ᠋ᠲ ᠲᠤ	гарт	in the hand
		ᠭᠡᠷ᠋ᠲ ᠲᠤ	гэрт	in the yurt
		ᠡᠴᠡᠰ᠋ᠲ ᠲᠤ	эцэст	at the end
	Cyrillic exceptions*	ᠲᠢᠪᠳ ᠲᠤ	тивд	on the continent
	* Note: in Cyrillic, an inserted vowel follows after final –д	ᠠᠷᠳᠳ᠋ ᠲᠤ	ардад	for the people
		ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠳᠳ᠋ ᠲᠤ	хүүхдэд	for the child

1.1.1.2.1.3.2 Question Words

(To) whom did the teacher give the book?
Багш хэнд ном өгсөн бэ?

What do you love?
Чи юунд хайртай вэ?

Where is Baatar?
Баатар хаана байна вэ?

When are you coming?
Чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?

The teacher gave the book **to the pupil**.
Багш сурагчид ном өгсөн.

I love **birds**.
Би шувуунд хайртай.

Baatar is **in the street.**
Баатар гудамжинд байна.

I'll come **at 5 o'clock**.
Би таван цагт ирнэ.

1.1.1.2.1.3.3 Usage

1.) Indirect object:

a		Дулмаад цай өг!	Give **Dulmaa** some tea!
b		Би та нарт хичээл заана.	I will teach **you**.
c		Бид тэмээнд ачаа ачив.	We loaded the pack **on the camel**.
d		Сараа Батад тэр номын тухай ярив.	Saraa told **Bat** about that book.

2.) Location (locative):
Notice that with some words, dative-locative **is not necessary** (e.g. "хөдөө").

a		Тэд гэрт суудаг.	They live **in a yurt**.
b		Тэр Монголд ирсэн.	He came to **Mongolia**.
c		Би хөлөө усанд угаалаа.	I washed my feet **in water.**
d		Би Дарханд амьдарч байна.	I live **in Darkhan**.
e		Тэр өчигдөр манайд ирсэн.	Yesterday he came **to** my home.
f		Бид ууланд гарсан.	We hiked **on the mountain.**
g		Бат адуунд, Нараа түлээнд явав.	Bat went **for the horses**, and Naraa for fire wood.
h		Миний аав ажилд орсон.	My father got a job. ("My father entered **into work**.")

3.) Time (temporal locative):
Notice that words like "орой, өглөө, шөнө, өдөр, үдээс хойш", etc. need **no CS**.

a		Өнөөдөр 6 цагт хичээл эхлэнэ.	Today the lesson starts **at 6 o'clock**.
b		Дараа долоо хоногт тэр ирнэ.	He will come **next week.**

c	[illegible]	Би 1960 онд төрсөн.	I was born **in 1960.**
d	[illegible]	7-р сард хамгийн халуун болдог.	It is warmest **in July.**

4.) Possession:

a	[illegible]	Надад ном бий.	**I have** a book.
b	[illegible]	Баатарт олон хурдан морь бий.	**Baatar has** many fast horses.
c	[illegible]	Чамд талх бий юу?	**Do you have** any bread?

5.) Causative structures:

a	[illegible]	Нэг хонь чононд идүүлжээ.	A sheep **was eaten** by a wolf.
b	[illegible]	Муур нохойнд баригдав	A cat **was caught** by a dog.

6.) Like an English prepositional object:

a	[illegible]	Гараа алчуурт үр!	Rub your hands **on the towel**.
b	[illegible]	Бид хөлдөө гутал өмсдөг, гартаа бээлий хийдэг.	We wear boots **on our feet**, and gloves **on our hands.**

7.) Like the English preposition 'for':
Ex. c and d are used similarly, but notice that ex. e is used the other way round. If one translates хэрэгтэй with "...is needed.", then confusion is not likely to happen.

a	[illegible]	Тэр бүсгүй хүүдээ дээл хийв.	That young woman made a 'deel' **for her son**.
b	[illegible]	Би эхнэрдээ үнэртэй ус авав.	I bought perfume **for my wife.**
c	[illegible]	Би чамд хайртай.	I love you. ("I am with love **for you**.")
d	[illegible]	Би өөхөнд дургүй.	I don't like fat. ("I am without liking **for fat**.")
e	[illegible]	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй. *and not:* Би мөнгөнд хэрэгтэй.	I need money. ("**For me** money is needed.")

8.) Expressing quality of action:

a	[illegible]	Дорж англи хэлэнд сайн.	Dorj is **good at** English.
b	[illegible]	Монголчууд моринд гаргуу.	The Mongolians are **excellent at** horseback riding.
c	[illegible]	Тэр хоолонд муу.	He is a picky eater. ("He is **bad at** eating.")

9.) Listing similar things:

a	[illegible]	Араатанд арслан, бар, чоно гэх мэт амьтад ордог.	Lions, tigers, wolves, etc. **belong to** the wild animal category.

1.1.1.2.1.4 Accusative Case

1.1.1.2.1.4.1 Accusative CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffix	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples		English translation
ᠶᠢ (i)	☛ **consonants**	ᠭᠠᠷ ᠶᠢ		the hand
		ᠠᠷᠠᠳ ᠶᠢ		the people
		ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠯ ᠶᠢ		the light
ᠶᠢ (yi)	☛ **vowels**	ᠰᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡ ᠶᠢ		the mirror
		ᠪᠤᠤᠴᠠᠢ ᠶᠢ		the loaf of bread
		ᠠᠪᠤᠭᠠ ᠶᠢ		the father
⁻ыг	**strong words:**	дарга	даргыг	the leader
	☛ **short vowels**	чоно	чоныг	the wolf
	(which are then dropped)	зорилго	зорилгыг	the aim
	☛ **consonants**	уул	уулыг	the mountain
		ард	ардыг	the people
		ном	номыг	the book
		давс	давсыг	the salt
		гар	гарыг	the hand
(ийг)	**Note the exceptions:**	салхи	салхийг	the wind
	◦ и, ⁻ь (are dropped)	анги	ангийг	the class
		хонь	хонийг	the sheep
		сургуул	сургуулийг	the school
	◦ ж, ⁻ц, ⁻шт, ⁻ж	ээж	ээжийг	the mother
	(have "i" in the Classical Mongolian word stem)	ачи	ачийг	the favor
		багш	багшийг	the teacher
		католик	католикийг	the Catholic
	◦ г (final consonant)	зураг	зургийг	the picture
		нутаг	нутгийг	the homeland
⁻ийг	**weak words:**	мөнгө	мөнгийг	the money
	☛ **short vowels**	өнгө	өнгийг	the color
	(which are then dropped)	эрдэнэ	эрдэнийг	the treasure
		шөнө	шөнийг	the night
	☛ **consonants**	гэрэл	гэрлийг	the light
		хүн	хүнийг	the person
		эх	эхийг	the mother
		үнэг	үнэгийг	the fox

᠊ᠷ	☛ **diphthongs**	дэлхий	дэлхийг	the world
		шохой	шохойг	the chalk
		бээлий	бээлийг	the glove
		нохой	нохойг	the dog
	☛ **long vowels**	ширээ	ширээг	the table
		дүү	дүүг	the younger sibling
		гэрээ	гэрээг	the contract
		өрөө	өрөөг	the room
	☛ **hidden "g"** The hidden "g" of the Classical Mongolian stem builds the accusative CS.	ан	анг	the hunt
		дэн	дэнг	the lantern
		амгалан	амгаланг	the peace

1.1.1.2.1.4.2 Question Words

Whom did you see?
ᠴᠢ ᠴᠠ᠂ ᠪᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ᠂ ᠪᠡ᠃
Чи хэнийг харсан бэ?

I saw **the teacher.**
ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ᠂ ᠵᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ᠂ ᠃᠃
Би багшийг харсан.

What did Saraa read?
ᠰᠠᠷᠠ᠂ ᠶᠤᠤ᠂ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂ ᠪᠡ᠃
Сараа юу уншсан бэ?

Saraa read **a book.**
ᠰᠠᠷᠠ᠂ ᠨᠣᠮ᠂ ᠤᠩᠰᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂ ᠃᠃
Сараа ном уншсан.

What did Baatar read from this book?
ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ᠂ ᠡᠨᠡ᠂ ᠨᠣᠮ᠂ ᠡᠴᠡ᠂ ᠶᠤᠤ᠂ ᠤᠩᠰᠢᠪ᠎ᠠ᠃
Баатар энэ номоос юу уншив ?

Baatar **the 2nd chapter** from this book.
ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ᠂ ᠡᠨᠡ᠂ ᠨᠣᠮ᠂ ᠡᠴᠡ᠂ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠢ ᠤᠩᠰᠢᠪ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
Баатар энэ номоос 2-р бүлгийг уншив.

1.1.1.2.1.4.3 Usage

Until recently, Mongolian scholars believed that the Mongolian language didn't distinguish between definite and indefinite nouns because the articles which western European languages have are not present in the Mongolian language. However, linguists have now discovered how to **determine definite and indefinite nouns** in Mongolian; they are clarified **with the help of accusative case suffixes**, as we explain below.

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.1 Indefinite Noun

If a noun is indefinite (as expressed in English with an indefinite article), then **the zero-suffix of the accusative** is needed (-ø).

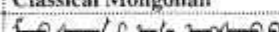
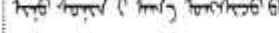
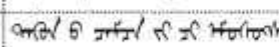
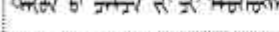
a	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠣᠮ᠂ ᠠᠪᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃	Би ном авлаа.	I bought **a book.**
b	ᠣᠶᠤᠲᠠᠨ᠂ ᠰᠣᠨᠢᠨ᠂ ᠤᠩᠰᠢᠵ᠂ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃	Оюутан сонин уншиж байна.	The student is reading **a newspaper.**
c	ᠳᠣᠷᠵ᠂ ᠺᠢᠨᠣ᠂ ᠦᠵᠡᠪ᠃᠃	Дорж кино үзэв.	Dorj saw **a film.**
d	ᠪᠢ ᠡᠴᠢᠭᠳᠡᠷ᠂ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ᠂ ᠬᠦᠨ᠂ ᠦᠵᠡᠰᠡᠨ᠂ ᠃᠃	Би өчигдөр олон хүн үзсэн.	I saw **many people** yesterday.
e	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠂ ᠬᠥᠪᠦᠨ᠂ ᠮᠠᠯ᠂ ᠮᠠᠯᠯᠠᠵᠤ᠂ ᠃᠃	Миний хүү цөөн мал малладаг.	My son herds **a few animals.**
f	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠭᠠᠱ᠂ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ᠂ ᠳᠠᠭᠤ᠂ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠯᠶ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃	Би маргааш хоёр дуу дуулна.	I'll sing **two songs** tomorrow.

g		Би хоёр цагаан цамц авья.	I want to buy **two white shirts.**
h		Тэмүүжин 5 метр өндөр мод харсан.	Temüüjin saw **a tree 5 meters tall.**
i		Надад том талх аваарай!	Please buy me **a big loaf of bread.**

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.2 Definite Noun

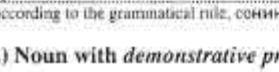
Following are some of the conditions when the noun is definite and therefore the **accusative CS is needed**.

1.) Noun with *possessive pronoun*:

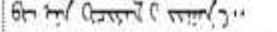
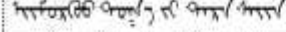
	Classical Mongolian	Cyrillic	English
a		Миний сонин(ы)г* ах уншиж байна.	The older brother is reading *my* **newspaper.**
b		Түүний цамцыг чи өмссөн үү?	Did you wear *his* **sweater**?
c		Таны морийг унаж болох уу?	May (I) ride *your* **horse**?
d		Бид Баатарын байшинг барив.	We built *Baatar's* **house**.

*according to the grammatical rule, сонинығ is correct, but сонинг has become an acceptable form.

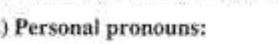
2.) Noun with *demonstrative pronoun*:

a		Би энэ номыг авлаа.	I took *this* **book.**
b		Би энэ хичээлийг заана.	I will teach *this* **lesson.**
c		Иймэрхүү тоог тэр сайн боддог.	*Such* **numbers** *as these* he calculates well.
d		Тэр юмсыг хаанаас авч чадах вэ?	Where can we buy *those* **things?**

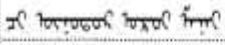
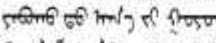
3.) Personal pronouns:

a		Чи намайг харсан уу?	Did you see **me**?
b		Би түүнийг явуулна.	I will send **him.**
c		Бид тэднийг санана.	We will miss **them.**
d		Би чамайг хайрладаг.	I love**you**.

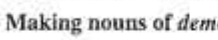
4.) Proper names:

a		Бид маргааш Хэрлэнг туулна.	We will cross **the Kherlen** tomorrow.
b		Би Сүрэнг олон удаа дуудсан.	I called **Süren** many times.
c		Жаргалыг гэр лүү нь явуулсан уу?	Did someone send **Jargal** home?

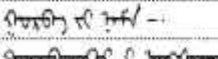
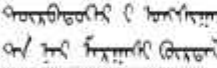
5.) Relatives:

a		Чи өнөөдөр орой манай хүүг харж чадах уу?	Could you look after **my son** tonight?
b		Бид машин байхгүй тул хөдөө явахад ахыг гуйсан.	Because we didn't have a car, we asked **my brother** to take us to the countryside.
c		Энэ цуглаанд ааваа урья!	Let's invite **Dad** to this meeting.

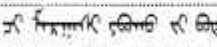
6.) Making nouns of *demonstrative pronouns* and *numerals*:

a		Үүнийг ав!	Take ***this***!
b		Гурвыг нэм!	Add ***three*** to it.
c		Та нар маргааш хүртэл дөрөвдүгээрийг уншаач!	Please read ***the 4th*** by tomorrow. (e.g. chapter)

7.) Verbs with an *NDS*:

a		Чи маргааш явахыг бодоорой!	Please think about **going tomorrow.**
b		Би түүний ирснийг мэдээгүй.	I didn't know **that he *had* come.**
c		Зөвшөөрөлгүй явдгийг зогсоох хэрэгтэй.	One has to stop **the illegal crossings**. (e.g. over the border)

8.) *Subject* of a clause (see page 393):

a		Цэцгийг гэртээ харьж явахад гэнэт Баатар дайралджээ.	**As *Tsetseg* was going home**, Baatar suddenly ran into her.
b		Түүнийг гэртээ харихад бусад нь яриагаа үргэлжлүүлжээ.	**As *he* went home**, the others continued talking.

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.3 Hierarchy List

There's something similar to a **hierarchy which clarifies when the accusative CS is necessary or when it can be dropped.** This list is especially important for syntax (subordinate clauses). It is based on the possibility of different grammatical categories being definite **without using** an attribute which would make them definite.

	Category of word	Accusative CS ... necessary	Examples:
1.	Personal Pronoun	always	Би түүнийг таньсан.
2.	Demonstrative Pronoun	always	Чи үүнийг чадах уу?
3.	Names	almost always	Баатарыг дууд!
4.	Relatives	usually	Би эх(ийг)ээ дуудсан.
5.	Professional titles	half of the time	Багш(ийг) ирвэл би уулзана.
6.	Animals	almost never	Би морь унах дуртай.
7.	Things	never	Би цонх угаасан.

Using the plural reduces the chance that an accusative CS is written.

1.1.1.2.1.5 Ablative Case

1.1.1.2.1.5.1 Ablative CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples		English translation
ᠠᠴ᠎/ (eKe)	☞ **all vowels and consonants**	ᠡᠷᠳᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠴ᠎	эрдэнээс	**from** the treasure
		ᠬᠠᠨ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	ханаас	**from** the wall
−аас		ᠳᠠᠷᠭᠠ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	даргаас	**from** the leader
−ээс		ᠠᠬᠠ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	ахаас	**from** (my) older brother
−оос		ᠡᠵᠢ ᠠᠴ᠎	эхээс	**from** (my) mother
−өөс		ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	номоос	**from** the book
	Note:	ᠲᠥᠷᠥ ᠠᠴ᠎	төрөөс	**from** the state
	◦ "е" in 'бие' already has an "э".	ᠪᠢᠶᠡ ᠠᠴ᠎	биеэс	**from** the body
	◦ hidden "г"	ᠲᠠᠯᠬᠢᠮᠠ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	талхгаас	**from** the bread
		ᠮᠣᠳᠣ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	модноос	**from** the tree
		ᠬᠣᠨᠢ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	хонингоос	**from** the sheep
	exceptions*	ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠨᠳᠠᠭ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	харандаангаас*	**from** the pencil
		ᠭᠡᠷᠡᠭ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	гэрээнээс*	**from** the contract
	◦ hidden "g"	ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠰᠢᠨᠭ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	байшингаас	**from** the house
		ᠴᠢᠳᠡᠨᠭ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎	чийдэнгээс	**from** the lamp
	◦ −ᠰ/−ᠱ	ᠠᠩᠵᠢ ᠠᠴ᠎	ангиас (анги)	**from** the class
		ᠬᠠᠨᠢ ᠠᠴ᠎	ханиас (хань)	**from** the friend
	◦ inserted vowel "ᠠ" for *long vowels* and *diphthongs*	ᠬᠦᠦ ᠠᠴ᠎	хүүгээс	**from** (my) son
		ᠪᠥᠭᠡ ᠠᠴ᠎	бөөгөөс	**from** the shaman
		ᠳᠠᠯᠠᠢ ᠠᠴ᠎	далайгаас	**from** the sea

1.1.1.2.1.5.2 Question Words

From whom did you get this book?
ᠡᠨᠡ᠎ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠢ ᠪᠠ ᠠ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎ ᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠤᠤ ᠪᠡ ᠃
Энэ номыг хэнээс авсан бэ?

I got this book **from my teacher.**
ᠪᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ᠎ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ᠎ᠶᠠ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃᠃
Би энэ номыг багшаасаа авсан.

Where did/do you come **from**?
ᠴᠢ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠪᠡ ᠃
Чи хаанаас ирсэн бэ?

I came/come **from Germany.**
ᠪᠢ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠃᠃
Би Германаас ирсэн.

When does your brother's vacation begin?
("**From when on** does your brother rest?")
ᠳᠠᠭᠤ᠎ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠠᠶᠠᠭ᠎ᠤᠨ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠮᠠᠷᠠᠯ᠎ᠲ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠡ ᠃
Дүү чинь хэзээнээс амрах вэ?

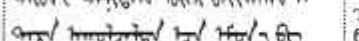
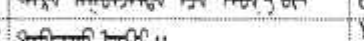
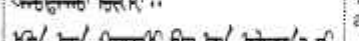
His vacation begins on June 1st.
("He rests **from June 1st on.**")
ᠲᠡᠷ᠎ ᠪ ᠰᠠᠷ᠎ᠠ᠎ᠨ ᠭᠡᠳᠡ᠎ᠨ᠎ ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠮᠠᠷᠨᠠ᠎ᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃᠃
Тэр 6 сарын нэгнээс амарна.

What are you afraid **of**?
ᠴᠢ ᠶᠤᠨ᠎ᠠᠠᠴ᠎ ᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠎ ᠪᠡ ᠃
Чи юунаас айдаг вэ?

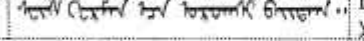
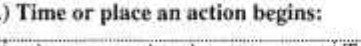
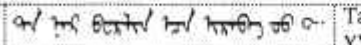
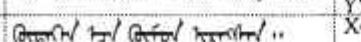
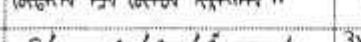
I'm afraid **of snakes.**
ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠭᠣᠢ᠎ᠨᠣᠣᠰ᠎ ᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠎ ᠃᠃
Би могойноос айдаг.

1.1.1.2.1.5.3 Usage

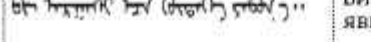
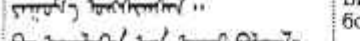
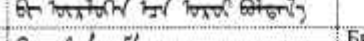
1.) Postpositions and adverbs in postpositional function which require ablative case:
Notice that "–ын өмнө" means 'directly before ...' and "–аас өмнө" mean 'a longer period of time before...'.

a		Тэр уулзалтаас өмнө би түүнийг таньдаггүй байсан.	***Before* that meeting** I didn't know him.
b		Үүнээс хойш би энэ алдааг давтахгүй.	**From now *on***, I won't make this mistake again.
c		Швейцарь Германаас урагш байдаг.	Switzerland is ***south* of** Germany.
d		Би түүнээс доош явж чадахгүй.	I can't go **further *down* than that.**

2.) Time or place an action begins:

a		Та нар Берлинээс ирэв үү?	Did you come **from *Berlin*?**
b		Хөдөөнөөс хүн ирсэн.	Someone came **from the *countryside*.**
c		Зүүн зүгээс нар манддаг.	The sun rises **in the *East*.**
d		Германаас тусламж ирсэн.	Aid came **from *Germany*.**
e		Би маргаашаас хөдөө явна.	I'm going to the country-side ***tomorrow*** or soon after.
f		Би өглөөнөөс орой болтол юм уншсан.	I read **from *morning*** until evening.
g		Би багаасаа хонь хариулж байсан юм.	I've herded sheep **since *my childhood*.**
h		Би өнгөрсөн зунаас Монголд амьдарч байна.	I've been living in Mongolia **since *last summer*.**

3.) Like the English prepositions 'from/of':

a		Би чамаас нэг ном авмаар байна.	I want to get a book **from you.**
b		Энэ цайнаас ууж, хоолноос идээрэй!	Please drink **some of this tea** and eat **some of this food.**
c		Надад махнаасаа 2 кило өгөөч.	Would you give me 2 kg **of the meat**, please.
d		Биднээс нэг нь багштай уулзъя.	Let one **of us** meet with the teacher.
e		Арваас тавыг хас!	Subtract 5 **from 10**!
f		Тэднээс 4 нь ирсэнгүй.	Four **of them** didn't come.

g	ᠬᠣᠨᠢ ᠪᠣᠣᠮᠤ᠋ᠰ᠎ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠲᠡᠮᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃	Хонь, тэмээнээс ноос авдаг.	We get wool **from sheep and camels.**
h	ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠴᠣ ᠳᠤᠭᠤ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠬᠤᠪᠢᠯᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ᠃	Надад ахаас захидал ирсэн.	I got a letter **from my older brother.** ("A letter arrived to me ...")
i	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠰᠠᠳ᠎ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠪᠠ᠋ᠷᠢᠮᠳᠠᠯᠠᠪ᠃	Би найзаасаа мөнгө зээлэв.	I borrowed money **from my friend.**
j	ᠦᠭᠡᠮᠦᠯ᠎ᠡ᠋ᠨ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠠᠭᠤᠷᠢᠭ ᠭᠠᠷᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠃	Ургамлаас тос гардаг.	Oil comes **from plants.**

4.) Like the English preposition 'out of':

a	ᠠᠪᠲᠤ᠍ᠷ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠭᠠᠷᠴᠤ᠍ᠷ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠪᠤᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠ᠃	Тэр машинаас буув.	He got **out of the car.**
b	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠳ᠋ᠤ ᠠᠪᠴᠤ᠍ᠷ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠠᠪᠪᠠᠭ᠃	Би номын сангаас ном авав.	I took a book **out of the library.**
c	ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠵᠢᠨᠢᠷᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠢ ᠪᠤᠯ᠋ᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠠᠶᠠᠭᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠴᠢ ᠤᠰ ᠤᠭᠤᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠤᠭᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠴᠢ᠃	Амьд явбал алтан аяганаас ус ууна.	When you keep on living you'll drink water **out of a golden bowl.**
d	ᠭᠡᠨᠡᠲ᠃ ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠩᠬᠤᠢ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠠᠴᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠭᠠᠷᠯᠠᠠ᠃	Гэнэт тэр харанхуйгаас гарлаа.	Suddenly he came **out of the darkness.**

5.) Comparative constructions:

a	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠥᠷᠥᠭᠡ᠎ᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ᠴᠡ ᠲᠠᠨᠢ ᠥᠷᠥᠭᠡ᠎ᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ᠴᠡ ᠲᠣᠮ᠃	Миний өрөө чиний өрөөнөөс том.	My room is **bigger than your room.**
b	ᠳᠤᠷᠵ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠨᠢ ᠪᠠᠲ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠡᠴᠡ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠥᠨ ᠨᠠᠰᠲᠠᠢ᠃	Дорж нь Батаас дөрөв ах.	Dorj is **4 years older than Bat.**
c	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ᠴᠡ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ᠃	Энэ хүн тэр хүнээс өндөр.	This person is **taller than that person.**
d	ᠴᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠬᠣᠨᠢ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠣᠨᠢᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ᠴ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ᠃	Танай хонь манай хониноос олон.	You have more sheep than I do. ("...are **more numerous than** ...")
e	ᠡᠵᠢ ᠬᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ᠋ ᠵᠦᠷᠬᠡ᠎ᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ ᠴᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠃	Эхийн сэтгэл сүүнээс цагаан.	A mother's heart is **whiter than milk.**
f	ᠪᠢᠯᠢᠮᠡᠭ ᠤᠨᠳᠠᠷ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠲᠣᠷᠣᠭ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠴᠠ᠃	Бялуу талхнаас үнэтэй.	Cake is **more expensive than bread.**
g	ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠴᠢ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ	сайхнаас сайхан	breathtakingly beautiful ("**more beautiful than beautiful**")

6.) Useful constructions with the ablative case:

a	ᠪᠢᠳ᠋ᠡ ᠪᠣᠷᠣᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠴᠠ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭ᠃ ᠪᠢᠳ᠋ᠡ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠳᠤᠷ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠮᠥᠨᠭᠥᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ᠴᠡ᠃	Бид бороноос болоод ууланд явж чадсангүй.	**Because of the rain** we couldn't go to the mountain.
b	ᠠᠪᠲᠤ᠍ᠷ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠨᠠᠳ᠋ᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠴᠠ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠵᠤ ᠮᠤᠭᠤᠢᠷᠠᠯᠠᠪ᠃	Тэр надаас болж уурласан.	He was angry **because of me.**
c	ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠰᠤ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠨ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠨ᠃ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠴᠣ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠷᠭᠡ᠎ᠨ᠎ᠡ᠋ᠴᠡ ᠥᠭᠥᠷ ᠮᠥᠨᠭᠥ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠭᠦᠢ᠃	Надад зуун төгрөгнөөс өөр мөнгө байхгүй.	I don't have **any money other than 100 tögrögs.**
d	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠢ᠎ᠤ᠋ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠷ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠴᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠬᠦᠯᠢᠶᠡᠭᠡᠷᠡᠢ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠢ᠎ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠷ ᠴᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ᠋ᠴᠠ᠎ᠠ᠋ ᠬᠦᠯᠢᠶᠡᠭᠡᠷᠡᠢ᠃	Би таныг 2 цагаас 2 цаг хагас хүртэл хүлээе.	I'll wait for you **from 2:00** to 2:30. ("Let me wait...")

1.1.1.2.1.6 Instrumental Case

Hardly any other case is translated in as many different ways as is the instrumental case. **Many different English prepositions express it:** 'through, by, with, from, as, of, in,' etc.

1.1.1.2.1.6.1 Instrumental CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffixes	**Rules:** For words ending with р	**Examples**		**English translation** (only in context clear)
өр (bar/ber)	☛ **vowels**	цонхоо өр		**through** the window
		модоо өр		**from** wood
		эдлэлээ өр		**with** jewels
		ой өр		**through** the forest
		торгоны өр		**of** silk
ээр (iyar/iyer)	☛ **consonants**	галаар ээр		**through** the fire
		гар ээр		**by** hand
		нутгаар ээр		**through** the country
		ардаар ээр		**by** the people
		аймгаар ээр		**through** the aimag
−аар −оор −ээр −өөр	☛ **all vowels and consonants** **Note:** ◦ short vowels are dropped	эрдэнэ	эрдэнээр	**with** jewels (e.g. to decorate)
		торго	торгоор	**of** silk (e.g. to make)
		дарга	даргаар	**by** the leader (e.g. to send)
		мөнгө	мөнгөөр	**with/for** money (e.g. to play)
		мал	малаар	(e.g. rich) **in** livestock
		сэтгэл	сэтгэлээр	**with** (e.g. my whole) heart
		мод	модоор	**from** wood (e.g. to make)
	◦ "ө/ү" contain already an "э/а"	би	биеэр	(e.g. great) **of** figure
		аяа	аяар	**along** the melody (e.g.to sing)
	◦ hidden "г" appears	сан(г)	сангаар	**about** the library (e.g.to brag)
		ан(г)	ангаар	(e.g. rich) **in** game
	◦ −ж/ −ь	анги	ангиар	**as** a class (e.g. to participate)
		амь	амиар	**with** one's life (e.g.to defend)
	◦ inserted vowel "г" is necessary after *long vowels* and *diphthongs*	дэлхий	дэлхийгээр	**through** the world (eg.to travel)
		хүү	хүүгээр	**with** the son (e.g. to send)
		далай	далайгаар	**by** sea (e.g. to travel)
		ой	ойгоор	**through** the forest (e.g.to walk)

1.1.1.2.1.6.2 Question Words

With whom did you send the letter?	I sent the letter **with Baatar.**
Чи хэнээр захиа явуулсан бэ?	Би Баатараар захиа явуулсан.
With what did you make this meal?	I made this meal **with meat, flour and vegetables.**
Та энэ хоолыг юугаар хийсэн бэ?	Би энэ хоолыг мах, гурил, ногоогоор хийсэн.
As what did (the people) elect Dorj?	(They) elected Dorj **as class president.**
Доржийг юугаар сонгосон бэ?	Доржийг ангийн ахлагчаар сонгов.
About when will you come?	I'll come **at the end of the month.**
Та хэдийгээр ирэх вэ?	Би энэ сарын сүүлчээр ирнэ.

1.1.1.2.1.6.3 Usage

1.) Different Means: a) transportation; b) object; c) material; d) people

a		Би онгоцоор ирэв.	I flew. ("I came **by plane.**")
		Тэр дугуйгаар явдаг.	He always goes **by bike.**
		Тэр галт тэргээр явна.	She'll leave **by train.**
b		Би дараа утсаар ярина.	I'll call afterwards. ("I'll speak **by wire**....")
		Хутгаар юм огтолдог.	You cut things **with a knife.**
		Шатаар гар!	Go **up the stairs.**
		Аав өндөр дуугаар хүүхдүүдийг дуудсан.	Father called the children **with a loud voice.**
		Би биеэр ирнэ.	I'll come **in person.** ("I'll come **in the flesh.**")
c		Би хөх торгоор дээл хийв.	I made a 'deel' **out of blue silk.**
		Миний аав модоор ширээ хийв.	My father made a table **out of wood.**
		Үүнийг халуун усаар угаа!	Wash this **with hot water!**
		Монголчуул гүүний сүүгээр айраг хийдэг.	Mongolians make 'airag' **from mare's milk.**
		Арьсаар гутал хийдэг.	(We) make boots **from leather.**
d		Багшийн ачаар бид эрдэм ном сурчээ.	**Thanks to the teacher** we have received an education.
		Бат таны дэмжлэгээр сургуульд оров.	**Thanks to you,** Bat entered school. ("Through your help...")

2.) With logical subject in *causative voice:*

a	[illegible]	Би Баатараар захиа явуулав.	I *sent* a letter **with Baatar.**
b	[illegible]	Та эгчээр дээл хийлгэх үү?	Will you *have* **the older sister** *make* you a 'deel'?
c	[illegible]	Би ахаараа орос хэл заалгадаг.	I *have* **my older brother** *teach* me Russian.

3.) Like English prepositions:

a	[illegible]	Танай хонь голоор гарлаа.	Your sheep went **through the river.**
b	[illegible]	Багшийг үүдээр орж ирэхэд сурагчид огт яриагүй байсан.	As the teacher came in **through the door** the pupils were not talking at all.
c	[illegible]	Шил цонхоор битгий шид!	Don't throw glass **out of the window.**
d	[illegible]	Чи энэ шилээр юм харж чадах уу?	Can you see anything **through this glass?**

4.) Indefinite time or place:

a	[illegible]	Та монголд ямар хугацаагаар ирсэн бэ?	**For how long** have you come to Mongolia?
b	[illegible]	Би Монголд 3 жилээр ирсэн.	I have come to Mongolia **for about three years.**
c	[illegible]	Тэр энэ сарын эхээр Германаас ирсэн.	She came from Germany **at the beginning of this month.**
d	[illegible]	Миний ээж үүрээр явдаг.	My mother leaves **at daybreak.**
e	[illegible]	Гудамжаар олон хүн явж байна.	Many people are walking **along the streets.**
f	[illegible]	Бид хөдөөгөөр явах санаатай.	We intend to travel **through the countryside.**
g	[illegible]	Ойгоор зугаалах сайхан.	Walking **through the forest** is wonderful.

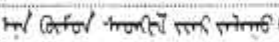
5.) Explaining activities and work:

a	[illegible]	Би эрдэм шинжилгээний ажилтнаар ажилладаг.	I work **as a research worker.**
b	[illegible]	Тэр 1986 онд Их сургуульд оюутнаар элсэв.	He registered **as a student** at the university in 1986.
c	[illegible]	Монголын ард түмэн П. Очирбатыг ерөнхийлөгчөөр сонгов.	The Mongolian people elected P. Ochirbat **as president.**
d	[illegible]	Би Монголд хувийн ажлаар ирэв.	I came to Mongolia **for private reasons.**

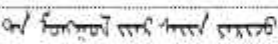
6.) Money and prices:

a		Монголд нэг доллараар юу авч болох вэ?	What can you buy in Mongolia **for one dollar?**
b		Би мянган төгрөгөөр хэдэн марк авлаа.	I bought several stamps **for 1000 'tögrögs'.**
c		Малчид малаар эд бараа худалдаж авдаг.	The herdsmen buy goods **in exchange for livestock.** ("... trade **through** livestock.")

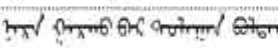
7.) Together with adjectives:

a		Монгол орон малаар баян.	Mongolia is **rich in livestock.**
b		Энэ хүн сэтгэлээр залуу байдаг.	This person is **young at heart.**
c		Миний ээж сэтгэлээр өндөр хүн.	My mother is **good** ("high") **at heart.**
d		Миний эхнэр надаас насаар залуу.	My wife is **younger (in age)** than I.

8.) Languages:

a		Та монголоор сайн ярьж байна.	You speak Mongolian well. ("... **by means of** Mongolian")
b		Та германаар ярьдаг уу?	Do you speak German? ("... **by means of** German")

9.) Explaining causes:
Compare with pages 165-166.

a		Нар гарахаар дулаан болдог.	When the sun rises it becomes warm. ("**Through** the rising of the sun...")
b		Намар болохоор ногоо гандаж сэрүүн болдог.	When autumn comes, the grass withers and the air is cooler. ("**Through** the coming of autumn...")

10.) Division of groups:

a		Энэ ачааг хэсэг хэсгээр нь илгээв.	We sent this cargo **piece by piece.**
b		Гадаад хэл сурахдаа угийг олноор нь цээжлэх хэрэгтэй.	When you study a foreign language, you have to memorize **a lot of words at once.**

1.1.1.2.1.7 Comitative Case

1.1.1.2.1.7.1 Comitative CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffix	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples		English translation
ᠲᠠᠢ (tai/tei)	☛ all vowels and consonants (complying with vowel harmony)	ᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠢ	аавтай	**with** (my) father
–тай		ᠠᠬᠤ ᠲᠠᠢ	ахтай	**with** (my) brother
–той		ᠮᠠᠯ ᠲᠠᠢ	малтай	**with** livestock
–тэй		ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠷ ᠲᠠᠢ	Баатартай	**with** Baatar
(there is no suffix–төй)		ᠮᠣᠷᠢ ᠲᠠᠢ	морьтой	**with** a horse
(ᠵᠤᠨᠢ)		ᠳᠤᠷᠵ ᠲᠠᠢ	Доржтой	**with** Dorj
(ᠵᠤᠨ) (old forms)		ᠡᠵᠡ ᠲᠠᠢ	ээжтэй	**with** (my) mother
		ᠡᠭᠴ ᠲᠠᠢ	эгчтэй	**with** (my) older sister
		ᠬᠦᠨ ᠲᠠᠢ	хүнтэй	**with** a person
		ᠲᠥᠯᠥᠥᠯᠡᠭᠴ ᠲᠠᠢ	төлөөлөгчтэй	**with** a delegate

1.1.1.2.1.7.2 Question Words

With whom did you go to the countryside?
ᠴᠢ ᠤ/ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠ/ ᠪᠤᠤ ᠤ–
Чи хэнтэй хөдөө явсан бэ?

I went **with my father** to the countryside.
ᠪᠢ ᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠ/ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠ/ ..
Би аавтайгаа хөдөө явсан.

What did you bring?
("**With what** did you come?")
ᠲᠠ/ ᠶᠤᠤ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡ/ ᠪᠤᠤ ᠤ–
Та юутай ирсэн бэ?

I brought a lot of gifts. ("I came **with a lot of** ..")
ᠪᠢ ᠶᠣᠨ ᠪᠡᠯᠭᠡ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡ/ ..
Би их бэлэгтэй ирсэн.

1.1.1.2.1.7.3 Usage

1.) Like the English preposition 'with':

a	ᠪᠢ ᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠ/ (ᠠᠮᠲᠠᠭ) ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠ ..	Би аавтайгаа (хамт) хөдөө явав.	I went (together) **with my father** to the countryside
b	ᠲᠠ/ ᠲᠤᠯᠢ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠ/ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡ/ ᠤᠤ ᠤ–	Та толь бичигтэй–гээ ирсэн үү?	Did you bring your dictionary?("Did you come **with your dictionary**?")
c	ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠴᠠᠮᠠᠢ ᠳᠤᠷᠵ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠷᠴᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ..	Тэр чамайг Доржтой андуурчээ.	He confused you **with Dorj.**
d	ᠲᠠ/ ᠡᠨ/ ᠬᠦᠨ/ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠭᠣᠮᠵᠲᠠᠢ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠴᠤ/ ..	Та энэ хүнтэй болгоомжтой харьц.	Be careful in dealing **with this person.**

2.) Postpositions that require the comitative case:

a	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠳᠡᠨᠲᠡᠢ/ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠠᠮᠲᠠᠭ ᠲᠤᠭᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂ ..	Би тэдэнтэй хамт тоглоё!	I want to play **together with them.**
b	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳ (ᠡᠴᠢᠭᠲᠡᠢ/) ᠵᠢᠨ/ ᠪᠤᠤ –ᠤ/ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠶᠠᠭ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠪᠠ/ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠ/	Энэ хүүхэд эцэгтэйгээ яг–сан адил (адилхан) юм бэ!	This child look just **like his father!**
c	(ᠶᠠᠭ/) ᠬᠥᠪᠰᠭᠥᠭᠰᠡᠨ .. ᠲᠡᠷ/ ᠲᠡᠪ/ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠵᠢᠨ/ ᠶᠠᠭ/	Тэр түүнтэй яг ижил (ижилхэн) хувцаслажээ.	She was dressed exactly **like he was.**

d	(illegible) ··	Монгол хэл япон хэлтэй төстэй (төсөөтэй).	The Mongolian language is **similar to the Japanese language.**
e	··	Манай гэр их сургуультай ойролцоо байдаг.	Our house is **close to the university.**

1.1.1.2.1.7.3.1 True Comitative

Through the years, the comitative CS has became a derivational suffix (–тай/ –т; illegible ; see page 50) and as such now forms an adjective. There are a **few guidelines** in order to discern whether the "тай" is a CS or a derivational suffix:

1.) As a CS, the suffix joins a noun to a *verb*.
Ex.: хүнтэй яри–, багштай уулза–, найзтай хамт ява–

2.) As a derivational suffix, the suffix (now a part of an **adjective**) usually ties a noun to a *noun* (exceptions are the adverbial adjectives).
Ex.: аягатай цай, тавагтай хоол, том цонхтой байшин, дээлтэй эмэгтэй

3.) You can add the **reflexive suffix** (ℝ𝕊) to a CS:
Ex.: аавтайгаа, ээжтэйгээ , but not: цэцэгтэйгээ даавуу

4.) You can usually add the **postpositions** "цуг" **or** "хамт" to a CS:
Ex.: ахтай хамт ява– , эгчтэй цуг дуула–, but not: малгайтай хамт хүн

5.) Wherever you see the **old form** of the Classical comitative CS (see page 97), it's a CS.

1.1.1.2.1.7.3.2 False Comitative

a	··	Энэ оюутан олон номтой (оюутан).	This student has many books. ("This student is a student **with** many books.")
b	··	Би ахтай (хүн).	I have an older brother. ("I am a person **with** an older brother.")
c	··	Монголчууд хэлтэй хүн хөлтэй гэж ярьдаг.	The Mongolians say, "A person **with** language is a person **with** legs."
d	··	Бага ангййн сурагчид зурагтай ном унших дуртай.	Pupils in primary school like to read illustrated books. ("...books **with** pictures.")
e		эхнэртэй хүн	a married man ("a man **with** a wife")
f		ногоотой хоол	a vegetable dish ("a meal **with** vegetables")

1.1.1.2.1.8 Directive Case

From the **adverb** "урүү" (ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ) an eighth case has developed in modern times which we will discuss here. The suffix is often **written separately** from the noun because it was an adverb, but occasionally it is added to the noun.

1.1.1.2.1.8.1 Directive CS's, Rules, Examples

Suffix	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples	Examples English
ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ (**uruGu**)	☛ **all vowels and consonants**	ᠬᠣᠲᠠ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠨᠠᠳ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠭᠣᠣᠯ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠡᠳᠡᠭ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ	**to** the city **to** me **to** the river **to** the cloud
руу, рүү	☛ **all vowels and consonants except** –р	хөдөө рүү чам руу түүн рүү Москва руу	**to** the countryside **to** you **to** him **to** Moscow
луу, лүү	☛ –р	та нар луу гэр лүү сар луу Баатар луу	**to** you (pl.) **to** the yurt **to** the moon **to** Baatar

1.1.1.2.1.8.2 Question Words

Where did your father go last night?
ᠴᠢᠨᠦ ᠠᠪ ᠡᠮᠦᠨᠡ ᠥᠩᠭᠡᠷᠪᠡ/ ᠪᠡ ᠀
Чиний аав хаашаа явсан бэ?

To whom did the little boy run?
ᠪᠠᠭᠴᠠᠨ/ ᠬᠦᠦ ᠬᠦ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠰᠠ ᠥᠩᠭᠡᠷᠪᠡ/ ᠪᠡ ᠀
Бяцхан хүү хэн рүү гүйж явсан бэ?

At what did he throw stones?
ᠡᠷᠡ/ ᠴᠣᠯᠤᠭ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠠᠭᠢᠭᠰᠠ/ ᠪᠡ ᠀
Тэр юу руу чулуу шидсэн бэ?

My father went **to the river** last night.
ᠴᠢᠨᠦ ᠠᠪ ᠡᠮᠦᠨᠡ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠥᠩᠭᠡᠷᠪᠡ/ ᠃
Миний аав гол руу явсан.

He ran **to his mother.**
ᠡᠷᠡ/ ᠨᠠᠳ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠠ/ ᠡᠮᠦᠨᠡ ᠥᠩᠭᠡᠷᠪᠡ/ ᠃
Тэр ээж рүүгээ гүйж явсан.

He threw stones **at the window.**
ᠡᠷᠡ/ ᠴᠣᠨᠬ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠠᠭᠢᠭᠰᠠ/ ᠃
Тэр цонх руу чулуу шидсэн.

1.1.1.2.1.8.3 Usage

a	ᠡᠷᠡ/ ᠬᠡᠪ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠬᠠᠷᠤᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ/ ᠃	Тэр үүл рүү харж байна.	He's looking up **at the clouds.**
b	ᠨᠠᠳ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠬᠣᠯᠪᠣᠭᠣᠷᠠᠢ ᠃	Над руу утасдаарай.	Please call **me**. ("Please phone [to] me.")
c	ᠡᠷᠡ/ ᠬᠦᠷᠡ ᠪᠠ ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠣᠭᠣᠷ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ/ ᠃	Тэр мориор сургууль руу ирэв.	He came **to school** on horseback.
d	ᠡᠷᠡ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠠᠭ – ᠠᠪ/ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠠᠭ –	Тэр луу оч! / Түүн рүү оч!	Go **to it**! / Go **to him**!
e	ᠠᠪ/ ᠮᠣᠰᠺᠤᠸᠠ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠵᠤ ᠥᠭᠬᠦ ᠪᠡ ᠀	Та Москва руу хэзээ явах вэ?	When are you leaving **for Moscow**?
f	ᠪᠢᠳ/ ᠭᠡᠷ ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠠ/ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠵᠤ ᠃	Бид гэр лүүгээ явъя.	Let's go **home**!

1.1.1.2.1.8.4 New Form of Directive Case

The adverb "ypyy" (ᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤᠭᠠ) means '**to(wards),** downwards, down'. The adverb "өөд" (ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰ) means '**to(wards),** upwards, up'. So just as the adverb "ypyy" became a case, "өөд" could also be treated as one. This has already happened in colloquial language where the forms "-аад, -ээд, -оод, -өөд" have replaced the adverb "өөд". Following are some examples of the use of "өөд" in written and colloquial language:

Classical Mongolian	**Cyrillic Written Language**	**Cyrillic Colloquial Language**	**English**
ᠨᠢ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰ ᠪᠠᠢ ᠬᠡᠯᠡᠭᠡ	гэр өөдөө хари-	гэрээдээ хари-	to return home ("to return **to** one's yurt")
ᠬᠤᠤᠷᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠢᠨ ᠵᠢᠷᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰ ᠵᠡᠭᠡᠭᠡ	хуруугаар хүн өөд заа-	хуруугаар хүнээд заа-	to point the finger **at** someone
ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦ ᠨ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰ ᠪᠠᠢ ᠵᠡᠭᠡᠯᠡᠪᠡ ..	Миний ах гэр өөдөө явсан.	Миний ах гэрээдээ явсан.	My older brother went home.
ᠲᠤᠨ ᠬᠠᠷ ᠬᠤᠤᠯᠠᠢ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠭᠰ ᠬᠠᠷ –	Чи тэр уул өөд хар!	Чи тэр уулаад хар!	Look **up at** that mountain!

1.1.1.2.2 Case-bound Suffixes (CbS's)

These suffixes are not further cases, but suffixes which are **added to a noun with a CS**. It's not common in the Mongolian language structure that another suffix follows a CS. These CbS's are neither derivational nor inflectional suffixes and have **various functions**. From their **origin** they are **one suffix** with two forms:

originally singular:	-х, -хи, (-их)	(ki)
originally plural:	-хан, -хэн,-хон,-хөн	(kin)

The following **meanings/ functions** are recognized today:

Suffixes			meaning/function	Mongolian ex.	English transl.
Possessive CbS	-х	,	**possessive** function	минийх	**mine**
Local CbS	-х	,	abstract meaning for '**house, yurt**'	манайхаас	from **my home**
Collective CbS	-хан[4]	,	people of the **same group**	Говийнхон	**people** of the Gobi
Attributive CbS	-х, -хи	,	**attributive** function	урдуурхи	**being** in front; **being** in the south

The possessive CbS has a **grammatical** function. Both, **local and collective CbS's** have a **lexical** function. The **attributive CbS changes the grammatical function** in a sentence.

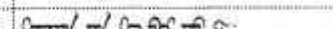
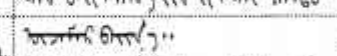
1.1.1.2.2.1 Possessive CbS "-х"

This CbS is always added to a **word with a genitive CS**. It's **used a lot** in colloquial language. Compare with the possessive pronouns on pages 260ff.

1a	Is this Baatar's book?	Энэ – Баатарын ном мөн үү?	-
1b	No, it **belongs to** Dorj.	Үгүй, энэ Доржийнх.	,
2a	**Whose** is this?/ **To** whom does it **belong**?	Энэ – хэнийх вэ?	-
2b	This is yours./ This **belongs to** you.	Энэ – таных.	-
2c	This is **mine**./ This **belongs to** me.	Энэ – миний.	-
2d	This is Walter's./ This **belongs to** Walter.	Энэ – Валтерынх.	-
3a	Where does this child **belong**?	Энэ юун хүүхэд вэ?	
3b	It's a child **from** our class. ("...**belonging to** our class.")	Энэ манай ангийнх.	
4a	Is this cream **for** the face? ("...**belonging to** the face?")	Энэ тос нүүрний үү?	
4b	No, **for** the hands. ("...**belonging to** the hands.")	Үгүй, гарынх.	,

Other suffixes can be added to this suffix if the word is used **as a noun**:

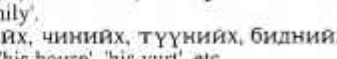
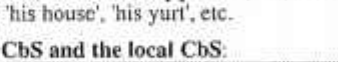
Gen.	Compared to **yours, mine** is quite new. (e.g. pen)	Миний чиний-хийн дэргэд шинэ.	
Dat.	Someone gave some food to **mine**. (e.g. dog)	Минийхэд хоол өгчээ.	
Acc.	Please read Baatar**'s**. (e.g. book)	Чи Баатарынхыг унш.	

Abl.	**Yours** is better than **mine**. (e.g. book)	Чинийх минийхээс сайн.	
Instr	With a Chinese? (e.g. plane)	Хятадынхаар уу?	
Com	**Yours** left together with the older brother's. (e.g. horse)	Таных ахынхтай хамт явжээ.	
Dir.	I want to go and look in a private (**one**). (e.g. shop)	Би хувийнх руу очиж үзмээр байна.	

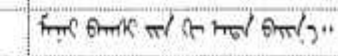
1.1.1.2.2.2 Local CbS "-х"

The CbS has a very exact meaning in this function, yet it can't be easily translated with one word. The idea of this suffix has to do with **the place, the home, the apartment of a particular person or family**. It seldom means simply 'family'.
Notice that the following forms are not possible: "минийх, чинийх, түүнийх, биднийх, таных". "Тэднийх" is possible, but only in the meaning 'his house', 'his yurt', etc.

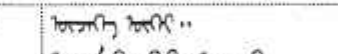
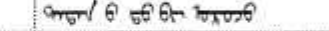
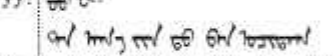
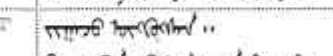
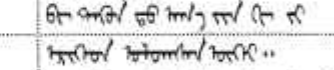
Example to show **the difference between the possessive CbS and the local CbS**:

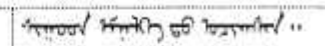
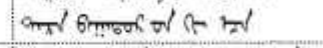
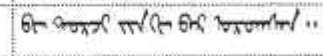
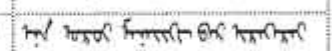
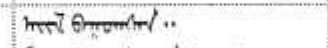
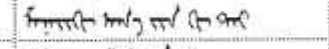
	Word with CbS	English	Cyrillic	Classical
Posses-sive CbS	brother's ахынхыг 	I read **my older brother's**. (What? e.g. book)	Би ахынхыг уншив.	
Local CbS	the **yurt** of my brother ахынхыг 	I helped move **the yurt/household** of my older brother.	Би ахынхыг нүүлгэлцэв.	

Other examples:

a	**We** moved. (with all our household)	Манайх нүүсэн.	
b	Here is my **teacher's home**.	Манай багшийнх энд байна.	
c	Where do **you (and your family)** live?	Танайх хаана байна?	

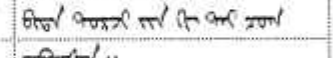
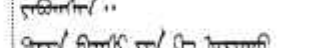
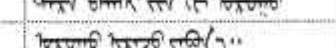
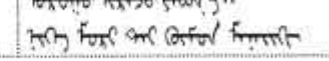
A CS can be added to this CbS, since it has the meaning of a noun (house/yurt). But because its meaning is more abstract there are **no sentences with a genitive CS**. When used with a **dative CS**, the CbS "-х" is **dropped**.
This combination of a dative-locative CS + zero-suffix of local CbS can be compared with the English equivalent 'We ate **at Millers'**; 'There was a party going on **at Birds'**.

Dat.	I haven't been to **their home**.	Тэднийд би орж үзээгүй.	
Dat.	Do you regularly go to **your older brother's home**?	Та ахынхаа очдог уу?	
Acc.	I showed him **my older brother's home.**	Би түүнд ахынхыг зааж өгсөн.	
Acc.	He kept on looking for **Baatar's house**, but didn't find it.	Тэр Баатарынхыг эрээд эрээд олсонгүй.	
Abl.	From **my house** we went to the mountains.	Бид манайхаас ууланд явсан.	

Abl.	He went directly from **Baatar's house** to the hospital.	Тэр Баатарынхаас шууд эмнэлэгт очсон.	
Instr.	I stopped by at **Dorj's.**	Би Доржийнхоор орсон.	
Instr.	Please come to **my home** tonight.	Энэ орой манайхаар ирээрэй.	
Com.	**We** settled in an 'ail' with **my older brother's family.**	Манайх ахынхтай айл буусан.	
Com.	We live together with **Dorj's family.**	Бид Доржийнхтой цуг амьдарч байна.	
Dir.	He went to **the* teacher's home.** (*clear from context)	Тэр багшийнх руу явсан.	
Dir.	One rider is coming towards **my yurt.**	Нэг морьтой хүн манайх руу ирж явна.	

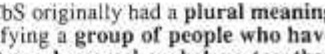
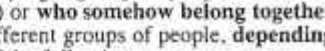
1.1.1.2.2.3 Collective CbS "-хан[4]"

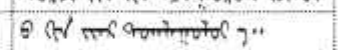
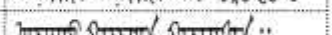
As clarified in the introduction to the CbS's, the collective CbS originally had a **plural meaning** and still has it. It is also **added to the genitive CS**'s, signifying a **group of people who have something in common** (e.g. a table that they all sit around) or **who somehow belong together** (relatives, classmates, etc.). The same word can describe different groups of people, **depending on the context**. For example: "манайхан" can mean any of the following:
'the people in a family', 'close relatives', or 'the people with which one lives/works/studies', etc.

a*	**We** don't have class tomorrow.	Манайхан маргааш хичээл хийхгүй.	
b*	How is **your family**? ("Your family is OK, isn't it?")	Танайхан сайн биз дээ.	
c	**Foreigners** like to eat all kinds of vegetables.	Гадаадынхан төрөл бүрийн ногоо идэх дуртай.	
d	**The people in the countryside** provide themselves with food.	Хөдөөнийхөн хоол хүнсээ өөрсдөө бэлтгэдэг.	
e	**Our classmates** will clean tomorrow.	Манай ангийнхан маргааш цэвэрлэгээ хийнэ.	
f	**The people who live in their house** are quite lively.	Тэдний байрныхан их хөгжилтэй.	

(* see "Note" on next page)

All CB's can be added to this suffix.

Gen.	Last winter was somewhat hard for the **inhabitants of the capital.**	Өнгөрсөн өвөл нийслэлийнхний хувьд хатуухан болсон.	
Dat.	For **people living in the Gobi,** a draught year is difficult.	Говийнхонд гантай жил хэцүү байдаг.	

Acc.	Do you know **the people at my table**?	Та манай ширээний**х**-**н**ийг таних уу?	
Abl.	Three people came from **Dorj's family/relatives.**	Доржийн**х**н**оос** гурван хүн иржээ.	
Instr.	I want to have **my roommates** play this game.	Би энэ тоглоомыг манай өрөөний**х**н**ээр** тоглуулъя.	
Com. *	Will **you** compete with **us**? (e.g. clubs)	Танайхан манай**хан**-**тай** уралдах уу?	
Dir.	He looked in amazement at **the people in our church.**	Тэр манай цугласаны-**хан** **руу** гайхан харсан.	

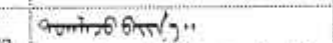
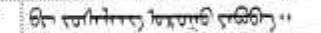
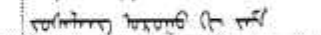
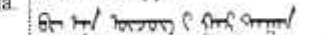
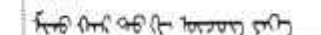
*** Note:**

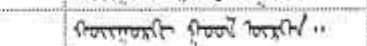
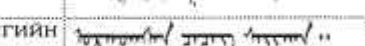
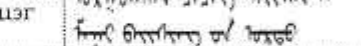
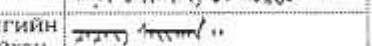
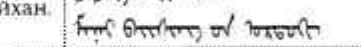
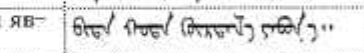
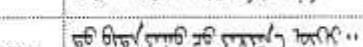
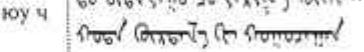
The collective CbS is **often joined to the words** манай () **and** танай (). For this reason, we want to add clarity at this point. These two pronouns are usually thought of as plural forms, but actually they are words which **reflect a modest attitude**. So it is common to hear "манай эхнэр" for 'my wife' although the **plural form is absolutely unnecessary.** Whenever the possessive pronoun doesn't fit a situation (perhaps because the person doesn't really **possess** the noun), the forms "манай/ танай" are used.

манай хүүхдүүд	**my** children	normal **modest** attitude (not mine alone)
миний хүүхдүүд	**my** children	emphasis on"**my**"
бидний хүүхдүүд	**our** children	emphasis on "**our**"
Таны эхнэр сайн уу?	Is your wife doing well?	**No difference** because it's only important for the 1st person to be modest.
Танай эхнэр сайн уу?	Is your wife doing well?	

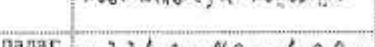
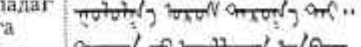
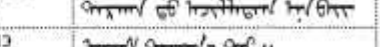
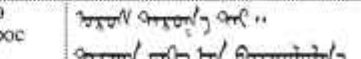
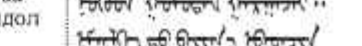
1.1.1.2.2.4 Attributive CbS "-х, -хи"

Most words with a case suffix are followed by verbs. Only the genitive case can be followed by a noun. Because of this, the attributive CbS is called on to help **balance out this weakness** by changing the sentence structure **to allow a *noun* rather than a *verb* to follow it** (see the *italicized words* in the examples). In English we often use a **subordinate clause** to express this, but in the following examples, a **literal translation** will also be given.
Please notice also that dative-locative CS and this attributive CbS, when used together, create the new word-pair дахь/ дэх ( ) (see ex. 7-8).

1a	The road *lies* ahead (southward).	Зам урд байна.	
1b	On the **southern** *road*, children are playing. ("In the **south-lying** *road*...")	Урд**хи** замд хүүх-дүүд тоглож байна.	
2a	I *went* to a summer camp.	Би зуслан руу явав.	
2b	The *road* **to the summer camp** is bad. ("The to-the-**summer-camp-going** *road* ...")	Зуслан руу**хи** зам муу байна.	
3a	I'*m holding* this pen in my hand.	Би энэ үзгийг гартаа барьж байна.	
3b	The *pen* **that I'm holding in my hand** is very good. ("The **in-my-hand-being** *pen* ...")	Миний гарт**хи** үзэг их сайн.	

4a	The river **which** *flows* **in the north** is wide.	Хойгуур урсдаг гол өргөн.	
4b	The *river* in the north is wide. ("The **in-the-north-being** *river* ...")	Хойгуурхи гол өргөн.	
5a	The flowers **which** *have grown* **in front of our house** are beautiful.	Манай байшингийн урд ургасан цэцэг сайхан.	
5b	The *flowers* **in front of our house** are beautiful. ("The **in-front-of-our-house-being** *flowers*")	Манай байшингийн урдхи цэцэг сайхан.	
6a	We'*ll go* to the town.	Бид хот хүртэл явна.	
6b	We hadn't spoken until we got to the town. ("We hadn't spoken during **the until-the-town-reaching** *time*.")	Хот хүртэлх хугацаанд бид юу ч яриагүй.	
7a	This organization, **which** ***works*** **in Darkhan**, has a Russian leader.	Дарханд ажилладаг энэ байгууллага орос даргатай.	
7b	*This organization* **in Darkhan** has a Russian leader. ("This **located-in-Darkhan** *organization*")	Дархан дахь энэ байгууллага орос даргатай.	
8a	The patients (who *are)* **in the hospital** raised a complaint.	Эмнэлэгт байгаа өвчтөнүүд гомдол гаргажээ.	
8b	The **hospital** *patients* raised a complaint. ("The **in-the-hospital-being** *patients* ...")	Эмнэлэг дэх өвчтөнүүд гомдол гаргажээ.	

More words (adverbs) which are often used with this suffix:

9					
	being above/on	дээр	дээрх		
	being below/under	доор	доорхи		
	upwards going	дээш	дээших (дээшхи)		
	downwards going	доош	дооших (доошхи)		
	being close, this side	наашаа	наашаах (наашхаа)		
	being further, that side	цаашаа	цаашаах (цаашхаа)		

Attention!
Here we want to briefly explain the function of the "x", **which connects genitive CS with the reflexive suffix (RS)**. This "x" is **not a suffix**, but serves only as an **inserted consonant** (see page 110) and must **not be confused with the CbS**'s!

noun + **genitive** + RS		noun	genitive CS	**inserted consonant**	RS
гэрийнхээ	=	гэр +	ийн +	х +	ээ
найзынхаа	=	найз +	ын +	х +	аа
модныхоо	=	мод(он) +	ы +	х +	оо
өрөөнийхөө	=	өрөө(н) +	ий +	х +	өө

1.1.1.2.3 Case-bound Particles (CbP's)

In Mongolian there is another **group of words** (not suffixes, because they are written seperately from the word stem) which **appear together with a CS**. In some of their functions they are similar to the **reflexive suffix**, which we will look at on page 108.

These CbP's have 2 major functions: one in connection with nouns, which we will look at in this paragraph and one in connection with syntax (e.g. "тэгсэн чинь, миний эхнэр чинь", etc.)

Characteristics of the CbP's:

1.) They follow **after a noun with a** CS (nominative case is also possible, which is an essential difference to the RS; see the 3rd example of each).
2.) They **relate to a person** which means, every CbP relates only to one specific person.
3.) They **can't be considered as possessive pronouns** because the possessive function, which seems to come through in the translation, is not the most important function. More importantly, they express the **relationship** between the person to which this CbP refers and the noun.
4.) They never **refer to the subject**, but to the 1st, 2nd or 3rd person.

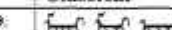
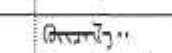
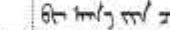
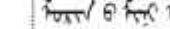
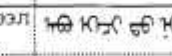
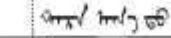
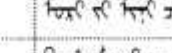
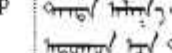
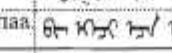
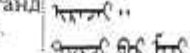
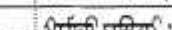
wrong:	**correct:**
Би ээжид минь цай авчирсан. **I** brought **my** mother tea. (CbP can't refer to the subject!)	Би ээждээ цай авчирсан. (see RS) **I** brought **my** mother tea. Би ээжид чинь цай авчирсан. **I** brought **your** mother tea. Ээж минь цай уусан. (nominative case) **My** mother drank tea.
Би ахад минь хэлсэн. **I** told **my** older brother. (CbP can't refer to the subject!)	Би ахдаа хэлсэн. (see RS) **I** told **my** older brother. Би ахад нь хэлсэн. **I** told **his/her** older brother. Ах чинь надад хэлсэн. (nominative case) **Your** brother told me.

1.1.1.2.3.1 CbP's, Rules, Examples

Person	**Cyrillic** (equivalent pronoun)	**Classical**	**Examples:**		
			English	**Cyrillic**	**Classical**
1st p. singular	МИНЬ (миний/ манай)		**my** father **my** wife	аав минь эхнэр минь	
1st p. plural	МААНЬ (бидний/ манай)		**our** children **our** father	хүүхдүүд маань аав маань	
2nd p. singular	ЧИНЬ (чиний)		**your** father **your** mother	аав чинь ээж чинь	
2nd p. plural/ polite form	ТАНЬ (та нарын/ таны)		**your** father **your** mother **your** friend	аав тань ээж тань найз тань	
3rd p. singular/ plural	НЬ (түүний/ тэдний)	 *old forms: strong/weak 	**his/her/its** father **his/her/its** mother **his/her/its** friend	аав нь ээж нь найз нь	

1.1.1.2.3.2 Usage

In the English translation, we cannot see the difference between a possessive pronoun and a CbP, because we don't express this "Mongolian feeling of relationship". In the following examples, the CbP's are translated to English possessive pronouns, but, as stated before, **their main function is not emphasis on possession**.

Cases	English	Cyrillic	Classical
Nom.	**My** horse came.	Морь минь иржээ.	
	His /Her sister lives in Darkhan.	Эгч нь Дархан суудаг.	
Gen.	I've finished sewing **your** older brother's 'deel'.	Би ахын чинь дээ-лийг оёж гүйцлээ.	
	This is **my** horse's saddle.	Морины минь эмээл энэ.	
Dat.	Father gives **her/his** sister lessons.	Аав эгчид нь хичээл заадаг.	
	He brought **our** older brother bread and milk.	Тэр ахад маань мах, сүү авчирлаа.	
Acc.	Please bring **my** horse.	Морийг минь чи аваад ирээч.	
	I know **your** older brother.	Би ахыг чинь танина.	
Abl.	There are no other horses there than **yours**.	Адуунаас тань өөр адуу тэнд алга.	
	I asked **his/her** sister.	Би эгчээс нь асуулаа.	
Instr.	Several books were sent to you with **our** Dorj.	Доржоор маань танд хэдэн ном иржээ.	
	I usually have **his/her** mother cut my hair.	Би ээжээр нь үсээ засуулдаг.	
Com.	Bat's horse left together with **my** horse.	Батын морь морьтой минь хамт явжээ.	
	I'm not like **your** older brother.	Би ахтай чинь адилгүй.	
Dir.	Let's go to **his/her** yurt.	Гэр луу нь явцгаая.	
	Let's go to **your** school.	Сургууль руу чинь очъё.	

Note: Some grammar books list **special accusative CS**'s (-ы, -ий; not to be confused with genitive CS'S!) for the case that a CbP follows. This is because in the colloquial the "g" can hardly be distinguished, but it is still more logical to keep writing it. However, since we often do see this **half-accusative CS** form presented, we want to briefly introduce it here:
"-ийг" becomes "ий" when followed by "минь/ чинь/ маань/ тань/ нь"
"-ыг" becomes "ы" when followed by минь/ чинь/ маань/ тань/ нь".

1.1.1.3 THE REFLEXIVE SUFFIX "-аа^4" (RS)

1.1.1.3.1 Function of the RS

The English language has **no equivalent** to the RS. For that reason we want to explain its function clearly.

The RS has **two main characteristics** that can be explained as follows:

1.) It is never added to the subject of the sentence.
Because the RS links a syntagma* **to the subject,** it can't be added to the subject itself.

2.) It is always added to a CS or a VDS.
A **CS** or a **VDS** is the nucleus of any syntagma. Therefore, in order to link a syntagma to the subject, the RS must be **added to the CS or the VDS** of that syntagma.

*What is a syntagma?
The **case suffixes** (**CS**'s) connect either **nouns with nouns** (N-N-syntagma) or **nouns with verbs** (N-V-syntagma). The **Verb Determining Suffixes** (**VDS**'s) connect **verbs with verbs** (V-V-syntagma). The **RS** helps **to integrate** these three syntagmas in a sentence **coupling them to the subject**. Because the subject is at the beginning of the sentence, this is a 'reverse' coupling and is therefore called 'reflexive'. Sometimes one could be tempted to put this RS simply into the category 'possessive pronouns', but this **possesssive function** is only one function among several.

1.) Example for N-N syntagma:
Би найзынхаа захиаг авав. I received my friend's letter.

who?	I (Би)	subject
what happened?	received (авав)	predicate (verb)
what?	the letter (захиа+г)	direct object (noun)
what kind of?	friend's (найз+ын)	attribute (noun)
N-N syntagma?	the friend's letter (найзын захиа)	noun + noun
relationship?	my (-хаа)	refl. relationship of the syntagma to the subject

2.) Example for N-V syntagma:
Хүүхдүүд аавааса асуув. The children asked their father.

who?	The children (Хүүхдүүд)	subject
what happened?	asked (асуув)	predicate (verb)
whom?	the father (аавааас)	indirect object (noun)
N-V syntagma?	to ask the father (аавааас асуу-)	noun + verb
relationship?	their (-аа)	refl. relationship of the syntagma to the subj.

3.) Example for V-V syntagma:
Би гэртээ ирмэгцээ цай уув. As soon as I came home, I drank tea.

who?	I (Би)	subject
what happened?	drank (уув)	predicate (verb)
when?	As soon as I came (ир+мэгц)	adverbial clause (with VDS)
V-V syntagma?	to drink as soon as one comes (ирмэгц уу-)	verb + verb
relationship?	I came, I drank(-аа) (**my** coming and drinking)	refl. relationship of the syntagma to the subj.

In this part we'll only look at the **first two syntagmas,** because they are **related to the noun and the CS**'s. On page 173, other examples will be included for the third syntagma (V-V). Please see also Chapter 4 in the Appendix (page 418f).

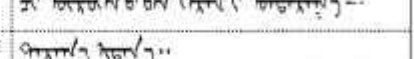
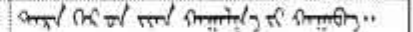
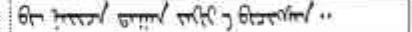
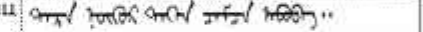
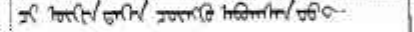
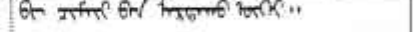
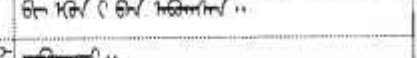
1.1.1.3.2 RS, Rules, Examples

Suffix	Rules: For words ending with p	Examples	(English translation not possible without context)
/ɣɣɣ/ (iyan/iyen)	☛ consonants	/ʎʍʃ ɣɣɣ/	/ɦɷʍʃ ɣɣɣ/
		/ʎɷʍ ɣɣɣ/	/ʍʃ ɣɣɣ/
		/ʃʍʇ ɣɣɣ/	/ʎɷɷʌ ɣɣɣ/
		/ʍɦɷɷ ɣɣɣ/	/ɷʃʌ ɣɣɣ/
/ϴʍ/ (ban/ben)	☛ vowels	/ʍϴ ϴʍ/	/ɷɷɾɷϴ ϴʍ/
		/ɷɣɣɣ ϴʍ/	/ɷʃ ϴʍ/
		/ɷɾɾɷ ϴʍ/	/ʍʍʍ ϴʍ/
		/ɦɷɷʃ ϴʍ/	/ɷɷ/ɾ ϴʍ/
	RS combined with CS's		
	Dative-Locative: (often)		
/ɷɷɷ/ + /ɷʍ/ daGan/degen	☛ vowels	/ɷɷ/ɾ ɷɷɷ/	/ʎɷɷʍ/ɾ ɷʍ/
		/ʍϴ ɷɷɷ/	/ɷʃ ɷʍ/
	☛ "namilaN"	/ɷʃ/ ɷɷɷ/	/ʃ/ ɷʍ/
		/ʎɷɷɷ ɷɷɷ/	/ʎɷʃʇ ɷʍ/
/ɾɾɾ/ + /ɾʍ/ taGan/tegen	☛ "bagarasada"	/ʎʃ/ ɾɾɾ/	/ɷʃ/ ɾʍ/
		/ʎɷɷɷ/ ɾɾɾ/	/ɷɷ/ ɾʍ/
	Accusative: (old forms)		
/ɣɷɷ/ + /ɣʍ/ yuGan/yügen	conforming with vowel harmony	/ʍϴ ɣɷɷ/	/ɷʃ ɣʍ/
		/ɦɷɷ/ɾ ɣɷɷ/	/ɾɷϴϴ ɣʍ/
	Ablative: (quite common)		
/ʃɾɾɾ/ eKeGan	conforming with vowel	/ʎɷʃ/ ʃɾɾɾ/	/ɷʃ ʃɾʍ/
/ʃɾʍ/ eKegen	harmony	/ʎʃ/ ʃɾɾɾ/	/ʍʃ ʃɾʍ/
	Comitative: (old forms)		
/ɾɾɾɾ/ taiGan	conforming with vowel	/ʍϴ ɾɾɾɾ/	/ɷʃ ɾɾɾʍ/
/ɾɾɾʍ/ teigen	harmony	/ϴɷɷϴɷ ɾɾɾɾ/	/ɾɷɷɷ ɾɾɾʍ/

−аа −оо −ээ −өө	☛ **one suffix for everything** conforming with vowel harmony (see exceptions below)	**Dative:** аавд аавдаа ээжид ээждээ охинд охиндоо өрөөнд өрөөндөө	**Ablative:** аавраас аавраасаа гэрээс гэрээсээ номоос номоосоо өвөөс өвөөсөө
		Accusative : аав аавыг (аавыгаа) ээжээжээ (ээжийгээ) хог хогоо өндөг өндгөө	**Instrumental:** аавраар аавраараа ээжээр ээжээрээ номоор номоороо өндгөөр өндгөөрөө
	Attention! ◦ "−г" and "−ж" • inserted consonant "х" for genitive case suffix - • inserted consonant "г" for diphthongs and long vowels; always used with: -zero-suffix accusative (−ø) -comitative (−тай) -directive (руу)	анги анги сургуул сургуулиа **Genitive:** аавын аавынхаа ээжийн ээжийнхээ **Accusative (−ø) :** харандаа харандаагаа бөө бөөгөө **Comitative:** аавтай аавтайгаа ээжтэй ээжтэйгээ	архи архиа морь морио **Directive:** ах руу ах руугаа гэр луу гэр луугээ

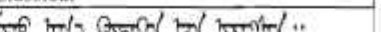
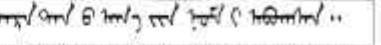
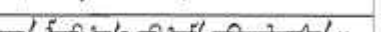
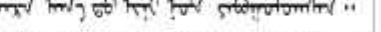
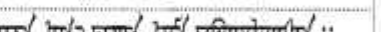
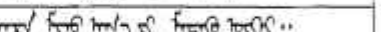
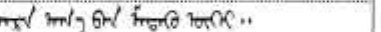
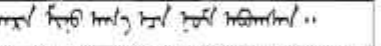
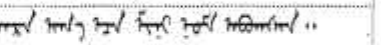
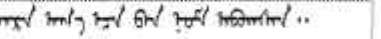
1.1.1.3.3 Usage of the RS

We tried to make it clear in the introduction that the **RS is never added to the subject** of the sentence, and thus does not follow the nominative case. The accusative case can have a **zero-suffix (−ø)** which means, the noun is in the accusative case but misses the suffix. For further explanation look up the **hierarchy list** (on p. 89) and the examples below with an asterisk (*).

Case	English	Cyrillic	Classical
Gen. a	I read **my** friend's letter.	Би найзынхаа захиаг уншсан.	
b	Turn off the light in **your** room!	Чи өрөөнийхөө гэрлийг унтраа!	
c	The children will eat **their** fruit after **their** meal.	Хүүхдүүд жимсээ хоолныхоо дараа иднэ.	
d	She/He closed the door of **her/his** house.	Тэр гэрийнхээ хаалгыг хаав.	
Dat. a	I wrote **my** friend a letter.	Би найздаа захиа бичсэн.	
b	She bought **her** husband a shirt.	Тэр нөхөртөө цамц авав.	
c	Did you buy **your** daughter a bag?	Чи охиндоо цүнх авсан уу?	
Dat. d	He/She loves **his/her** older sister a lot.	Тэр эгчдээ их хайртай.	
Acc. a*	I won't forget you, **my dear.** (pers. pronoun)	Би чамайгаа мартахгүй.	
b*	I took **my** stuff. (demonstr. pronoun)	Би үүнийгээ авсан.	
c*	Please take **your** Dorj with you. (name)	Чи Доржийгоо (Доржоо) аваад яваарай.	

d*	I miss **my** Dad. (relatives)	Би аавыгаа/ааваа санаж байна.	ᠪᠢ ᠠᠠ ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ (ᠠᠠ ᠤ᠋ᠨ) ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎᠎
e*	Please remember **your** teacher always.	Багшаа (Багшийгаа) дурсаж яваарай.	ᠳᠤᠷᠰᠠᠵ ᠤᠭ᠎᠎ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠤ᠋ᠨ (ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠤ᠋ᠨ) ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ
f	She/He's looking after **her/his** cattle. (animals)	Тэр үхрээ хариулж байна.	ᠡᠮᠡ/ ᠡᠷᠡ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎᠎
g	Please take **your** garbage. (things)	Чи энэ хогоо аваарай.	ᠴᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ/ ᠬᠤᠭ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠎᠎
h	Bat forgot **his** pen today. (things)	Бат өнөөдөр үзгээ мартжээ.	ᠪᠠᠲ ᠥᠨᠥᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠦᠽᠭᠡ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/ ᠮᠠᠷᠲᠵᠡᠶ᠎᠎
i	We have to love **our** earth. (things)	Бид дэлхийгээ хайрлах хэрэгтэй.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠳᠡᠯᠬᠡᠢᠨ ᠪᠤ/ ᠬᠠᠢᠷᠯᠠᠬᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ᠎᠎
Abl. a	The children asked **their** Dad many things.	Хүүхдүүд ааваасаа зөндөө юм асуусан.	ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠳᠦᠦᠳ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠᠰᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎᠎ ᠠᠪᠠᠭᠠ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/ ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠵᠢᠯ ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠠᠰᠤᠭᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ
b	Dorj is taller than **his** older sister.	Дорж эгчээсээ өндөр.	ᠳᠤᠷᠵ ᠡᠭᠴᠡᠶᠡᠰᠡ ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷ᠎᠎
c	She/He isn't afraid of **her/his** dog.	Тэр нохойноосоо айдаггүй.	ᠡᠮᠡ/ ᠨᠣᠬᠠᠢ ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠨᠣᠬᠠᠢ ᠠᠢᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ᠎᠎
d	We received a letter from **our** grandfather.	Бид өвөөгөөсөө захиа авсан.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠥᠪᠥᠭᠡᠨ ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ ᠤ᠋ᠨ ᠵᠠᠬᠢᠠ ᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ᠎᠎
Instr. a	We had **our** teacher teach us this.	Бид багшаараа үүнийг заалгасан.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠪᠢᠳ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/ ᠦᠨᠡ ᠶ᠋ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎᠎
b	Please send this with **your** child.	Чи үүнийг хүүхэдээрээ явуулаарай.	ᠴᠢ ᠦᠨᠡ ᠶ᠋ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠳᠡᠶᠡᠷᠡᠭᠦᠯᠵᠦ ᠪᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠎᠎
c	They are proud of **their** daughter.	Тэд охиноороо бахархдаг.	ᠡᠳᠡ/ ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠡᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/ ᠪᠠᠬᠠᠷᠬᠠᠳᠠᠭ᠎᠎
d	That tree is 3 meters tall. ("in **its** height")	Тэр мод өндөрөө 3 метр.	ᠡᠮᠡ/ ᠮᠣᠳᠣ ᠥᠨᠳᠥᠷᠲᠡᠢ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/ ᠭᠤᠤᠯ ᠮᠢᠲᠦᠷ᠎᠎
Com. a	He/She went together with **his/her** friend.	Тэр найзтайгаа хамт явсан.	ᠡᠮᠡ/ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠮᠲᠠᠢ ᠬᠠᠮᠲ ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠭᠠᠵᠠᠷᠲᠠᠢ᠎᠎
b	The mother met with **her** son.	Ээж нь хүүтэйгээ уулзав.	ᠡᠵᠡ ᠨᠢ (ᠬᠦᠦ ᠤ᠋ᠨ) ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ ᠦᠭᠡᠯᠡᠵᠡᠪᠡ᠎᠎
c	We played cards with **our** friends.	Бид нохөдтэйгөө хөзөр тоглов.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ/ ᠨᠣᠬᠣᠳᠲᠠᠢ ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ ᠬᠥᠰᠥᠭ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠤᠪᠤ᠎᠎
d	The mother had **her** picture taken with **her** daughter.	Ээж нь охинтойгоо зургаа авахуулав.	ᠡᠵᠡ ᠨᠢ ᠨᠣᠬᠠᠢ᠎᠎ ᠡᠵᠡ ᠨᠢ ᠨᠣᠬᠠᠢ ᠤ᠋ᠨ/ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ/
Dir. a	He/She went by car to **his/her** summer camp.	Тэр зуслан руугаа машинаар явсан.	ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠎᠎ ᠡᠮᠡ/ ᠵᠤᠰᠯᠠᠨ ᠠᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ/ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ/ ᠲᠤᠭᠠ
b	I went ("to **my**") home.	Би гэр лүүгээ харьсан.	ᠪᠢ ᠭᠡᠷ ᠯᠦᠦᠭᠡᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ/ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠰᠠᠨ᠎᠎

1.1.1.3.4 Comparison with CbP's

	English	Cyrillic	Classical
1a	**My** older brother came from the countryside.	Миний ах хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	
1b		Ах минь хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	
1c	not possible in nominative case!		
2a	He/She took **your** older brother's book.	Тэр таны ахын номыг авсан.	
2b		Тэр ахын таны номыг авсан.	
2c	He/She took **his/her** older brother's book.	Тэр ахынхаа номыг авсан.	
3a	He/She sent **my** older brother a book.	Тэр миний ахад ном явуулсан.	
3b		Тэр ахад минь ном явуулсан.	
3c	He/She sent **his/her** older brother a book.	Тэр ахдаа ном явуулсан.	
4a	He/She doesn't know **my** older brother.	Тэр миний ахыг мэдэхгүй.	
4b		Тэр ахыг минь мэдэхгүй.	
4c	He/She doesn't know **his/her** older brother.	Тэр ах(ыг)аа мэдэхгүй.	
5a	He/She took a book from **my** older brother.	Тэр миний ахаас ном авсан.	
5b		Тэр ахаас минь ном авсан.	
5c	He/She took a book from **his/her** older brother.	Тэр ахаасаа ном авсан.	
6a	He/She had **my** older brother teach him/her.	Тэр миний ахаар хичээл заалгав.	
6b		Тэр ахаар минь хичээл заалгав.	
6c	He/She had **his/her** older brother teach him/her.	Тэр ахаараа хичээл заалгав.	
7a	He/She went to the countryside with **my** older brother.	Тэр миний ах-тай хөдөө явсан.	
7b		Тэр ахтай минь хөдөө явсан.	
7c	He/She went to the countryside with **his/her** older brother.	Тэр ахтайгаа хөдөө явсан.	

1.1.2 Verbs

Verbs serve mainly to **build the predicate** of a sentence. In English, when talking about verbs, we might use the following terminology or subgroups:
Example word "seeks":

Tense:	Present tense	**Mood:**	Indicative
Voice:	Active voice	**Person:**	3rd person
Aspect:	Simple/Indefinite	**Number:**	Singular

But in Mongolian there are **no person or number suffixes. Voice and aspect** have many more possibilities than English, since we often don't express various conditions or aspects morphologically. Also, mood has more subgroups than English. For a **comparative chart of the tenses** see Appendix, Chapter 5.
It is difficult in these verb groups to find a good and correct equivalent since these two languages are constructed with **different systems**. The Latin system, which forms the basis for English as well as other European languages, is not suitable for the Mongolian language. Therefore, we have tried **to present the verbs** (and some other parts of this book) **using a different model,** namely the Mongolian model.

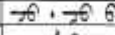
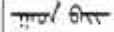
1.1.2.1 CONJUGATION OF VERBS

As the following table shows, this part in Mongolian is **extensive**. As mentioned on page 40, the inflectional verb suffixes can be divided into groups. **We'll present the suffixes in the order in which they are joined to the verb stem.**

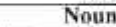
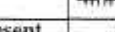
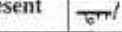
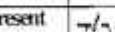
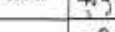
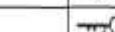
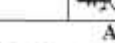
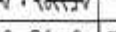
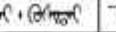
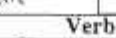
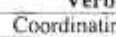
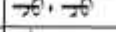
Overview of the inflectional verb suffixes:

1.1.2.1.1 Voice (Voice Suffixes = VoS's)			
Active	–ø	–ø	Би явна.
Causative	[illegible]	–уул[2]	Би захиа явуулсан.
	[illegible]	–лга[4]	Чи намайг яагаад айлгав?
	[illegible]	–га[4]/–аа[4]	Багш биднийг монгол хэлэнд сургана. Баяр чийдэнгээ унтраав.
Passive	[illegible]	–гд	Тэдний баг хожигдов.
	[illegible]	–д/–т	Аавын ном олдсон. Тариалан үерийн усанд автав.
Communal	[illegible]	–лц	Би ахтайгаа байшин барилцав.
Adversative	[illegible]	–лд	Тэр хоёр удаан үнсэлдэв.

1.1.2.1.2 Aspect (Aspect Suffixes = AsS's)			
Synthetically expressed Aspect			
Quick	[illegible]	–схий	Та жаахан явсхийгээрэй.
Temporary	[illegible]	–зана[4]	Та намайг хүлээзнэж байгаарай.
Complete	[illegible]	–чих	Би хоолоо идчихсэн.
Collective	[illegible]	–цгаа[4]	Сайн байцгаана уу?
Repetitive	[illegible]	–л	Миний зүрх хүчтэй цохилж байна.
Others	[illegible]	–лз	Хүний юм руу бүү өнгөлз!
	[illegible]	–вал[2]/–гал[2]	Холоос их хотын гэрэл анивалзана. Тэр үүнээс татгалзаж байна.
	[illegible]	–гана[4]	Жаал хүү юу ч хэлэхгүй бүлтгэнэнэ.

Analytically Expressed Aspects			
Progressive		-ж бай-	Тэр унтаж байна.
Perfect	 	-аад бай- -сан бай-	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчи-хаад байсан. / Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байсан.
Progressive-Perfect		-саар бай-	Бид даалгавраа болсоор байна.

1.1.2.1.3 Mood

Determining Suffixes (DS's)			
Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's)			
Past		-сан[4]	Тийшээ явсан хүн миний аав.
Indefinite Present		-даг[4]	Энд германаар ярьдаг хүн байна уу?
Progressive Present		-аа[4]	Тэнд байгаа номыг авч яваарай.
Future		-х	Би хөдөө явах ажлаас чөлөөлөгдөв!
"Doer"		-гч	Орчуулагч хүү хаана байна вэ?
Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's)			
Wish		-маар[4]	Энэ үзмээр (сайхан) кино байна.
Possibility		-хуйц[2]	Надад хүрэлцэхүйц (их) мөнгө бий.
Necessity		-ууштай[2]	Энэ бол уншуушитай (сонин) ном.
Others	   	-шгүй -лтай[3] -лтгүй -м -мгүй	Бид эх орноо хэвлэлцэшгүй (их) хайрладаг. Энэ бол мориор явалтай (бэрх) газар. Энэ бол машинаар явалтгүй (муу) зам. Хайрлам (сайхан) эх орон минь! Монгол хүнд морь саламгүй (чухал) унаа.
Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's)			
Coordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (cVDS's)			
Simultaneous		-ж/-ч	Ээж хоол хийж аав цай уув.
Associative		-н	Өвгөн үүдээ нээн оров.
Anterior		-аад[4]	Миний аав хоёр хоногоод буцна.
Subordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (sVDS's)			
Conditional		-в(б)ал[4]	Ажлыг эхэлбэл дуусгах хэрэгтэй.
Concessive		-вч	Чамайг явавч байдал өөрчлөгдөхгүй
Immediat.succeeding		-маг[4]	Тэр сургуулиа төгсмөгц хөдөө явсан.
Logically succeeding		-хлаар[4]	Нар гарахлаар дулаан болдог.
Intending		-хаар[4]	Сарнай түүнийг дуудахаар гарсан.
Limiting		-тал[4]	Намайг иртэл хүлээгээрэй!
Progressive		-саар[4]	Би хүн болсоор ийм юм үзээгүй.
Succeeding		-нгуут[2]	Аавыг явангуут эзэж ирлээ.
Seizing opportunity		-нгаа[4]	Дорж явангаа тамхиа асаалаа.
Excluding		-маажин[4]	Сурмаажин сая мэднэ.

Terminating Suffixes (TS's)			
Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's)			
Intention (1st p.)		–я[3]	Би явъя!
Decision (1st p.)		–сугай[2]	Хөдөө аж ахуйг эрчимтэй хөгжүүлсүгэй!
Command (2nd p.)		–ø	Номоо нээ!
Request (2nd p.)		–аач[4]	Чи энэ ажлыг хийгээч!
Demand (2nd p.)		–аарай[4]	Энэ эмийг хоолны өмнө уугаарай!
Admonition (2nd p.)		–уузай[2]	Чи мартуузай!
Appeal (2nd p.)		–гтун[2]	Мөнгөө банканд хадгалуулагтун!
Permission (3rd p.)		–г	Тэр үзвэл үзэг.
Hope (3rd p.)		–аасай[4]	Тэр архи биттгий уугаасай!
Blessing (3rd p.)		–тугай[2]	Танай гэрт аз жаргал дэлгэртүгэй!
Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's)			
General Past		–сан[4]	Би өглөө хоол идсэн.
Past		–жээ/–чээ	Орой болжээ.
Past		–в	Тэр надаас олон юм асуув.
Past		–лаа[4]	Би саяхан сонин ном уншлаа.
Indefinite Present		–даг[4]	Би их сургуульд ажилладаг.
Progress. Present		–аа[4]	Миний ном Доржид байгаа.
Present		–на[4]	Намар борооорно.
Future		–на[4]	Би маргааш явна.

General explanation of the verb suffixes:

1.) Some **vowels are dropped** when a suffix is added (see pages 23-25), in other cases an inserted vowel is needed.

2.) Some Classical verb stems which end with consonants need an **inserted vowel. Rules** for these are found on pages 17-18, and they are referred to in the suffix tables, where necessary.

1.1.2.1.1 Voice Suffixes (VoS's)

In English we are **familiar with the active and passive voices**, but not with the causative, communal or adversative voices, because we express causative, communal or adversative conditions **not with suffixes,** but with other words like **'to have** someone **do** something', 'against', 'together', etc.

Here are some **characteristics** of a Mongolian VoS:

1.) The VoS **does not indicate a tense**. This is the task of a 'terminating suffix' (TS).

2.) Sometimes **more than one VoS** can be added to a verb stem:
Examples: устгуул–, хүргүүл–, гүйлгүүл–, уулгуул–, зөөлгүүл–

3.) Often, the verb stem gets a **completely new meaning** when the VoS is acting like a **derivational suffix**. In these cases, the exact English translation can be traced down but is not used.

ява–	= to go	явуул–	= to cause to go	**= to send**
бай–	= to be	байгуул–	= to cause to be	**= to build**
ол–	= to find	олго–	= to cause to find	**= to give, to grant**
бари–	= to grasp	барилда–	= to grasp each other	**= to wrestle**

Because some of these VoS's have turned into derivational suffixes, other derivational suffixes can now be added to those new verb stems:

Examples: явуул– --> явуулдага = contrivance, espionage
ярилца– --> ярилцлага = discussion
барилда– --> барилдаан = wrestling match

On the following pages we'll talk about **'syntactic subject'** and **'logical subject'**. Therefore, let's explain what we mean by these two terms:

'I had my sister sew me a dress.'
predicate? ---> to sew
subject of sentence? ---> I
logical subject? Who sews? ---> my sister (in fact, this is an object)
In this example, the object of the sentence (my sister) has clearly **subject character**. (She is the one doing the job and not me).

'With Dorj's help I made my son drink the medicine.'
predicate? ---> to (make to) drink
subject ? ---> I
logical subject? Who drinks? ---> my son (object)
How did I do it? ---> with Dorj's help (2 people together caused the action)

(Finally, we have to admit, the Mongolian voices **are causing some headaches** for the Mongolian linguists. So the reader shouldn't be too frustrated if not everything is clear to him.)

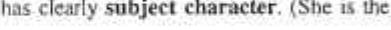
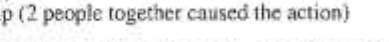
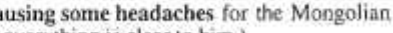
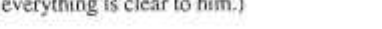
1.1.2.1.1.1 Active VoS (–ø)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
Zero-suffix (–ø)

***Classical Rules*:**
Zero-suffix (–ø)

***Explanations*:**
1.) The subject of the sentence is **active.**
2.) Though some verbs express a **passive** condition (e.g. to be), they are in the active voice (**j,k**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	My father went to Germany.	Миний аав Герман явсан.	
b	Have you eaten anything?	Чи юм идсэн үү?	
c	We study at a college.	Бид дээд сургуульд сурдаг.	
d	Bat slept very late yesterday.	Бат өчигдөр их орой унтсан.	
e	Will you go to your sheep?	Та хониндоо явах уу?	
f	I will be at home writing a letter.	Би гэртээ суугаад захиа бичнэ.	
g	Please come quickly!	Чи хурдан ирээрэй!	
h	The older brother will go there tomorrow.	Ах нөгөөдөр очно.	
i	They have reviewed their lessons well.	Тэд хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	
j	The clothes are drying.	Хувцас хатаж байна.	
k	The water is getting hot.	Ус халж байна.	

1.1.2.1.1.2 Causative Voice

The causative (from Latin 'causa' = 'reason') is used when the subject (which sometimes doesn't appear) **causes something to happen**. The subject is the reason why something happens. But sometimes the causative expresses an action that hasn't been caused purposely but just happened. In English, the causative is expressed with verbs like '**to have** someone do something', '**to cause** ...', '**to make** ...', '**to see to it, that** ...', '**to make sure, that** ...', etc. In Mongolian, all this is expressed by the causative suffixes.

Here some of their **characteristics**:

1.) The **main function** of a causative suffix is to change **intransitive verbs into transitive verbs**. Transitive verbs need a **direct object**; intransitive verbs never have one.
English transitive verbs: to put, to set, to bring, to buy, etc.
English intransitive verbs: to occur, to faint, to sleep, to die, etc.

2.) Verbs with a causative suffix often gain a **new meaning**, that is, they are translated very differently from the original verb (see explanation 3 on page 115).

3.) There are **four different suffixes** which are used to build the causative voice. The **following rules** should prove to be of some help in finding one's way through the causative labyrinth. Unfortunately, we can't do without exceptions since the Cyrillic has developed for so long without conforming to the Classical script. (Example of an exception: унс– ---> унсуул–, although the stem ends with an "s", a fact that is not visible in the traditional Cyrillic verb stem унсэ–).

Classical verb stem ending with:	Classical suffix	Cyrillic suffix
- **short i** - **short vowel**		–уул, –үүл
- **short vowel except i**		–аа, –ээ, –оо, –өө
- **consonants** ("**d**")	 	–га, –гэ, –го, –гө
- **long vowel** - **diphthongs**		–лга, –лгэ, –лго, –лгө

4.) If **two or even three causative suffixes** are used together, it could indicate that the subject **causes an action with the help of some other person(s)**. In colloquial language, verbs with more than one causative suffix are often used. There are many subtle reasons for this which fall beyond the scope of this book.

Possible suffix combinations are:
-лга + -уул -га + -уул -аа + -лга -аа + -лга + -уул

Examples:
шата– = to burn (intransitive; the thing burns by itself, e.g. the fire)
шатаа– = to burn (transitive; someone burns something)
шатаалга– = to have someone burn something (causative)
шатаалгуул– = to have someone burn something (causative)

1.1.2.1.1.2.1 Causative VoS "-уул[2]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-УУЛ, -ҮҮЛ complying with vowel harmony
(-ИУЛ) for verb stems ending with "-ь" or "-и" (**ex. e,h**)
(-УЛ) after "ё/я/е/ю"; these "y-vowels" already contain a vowel (**ex. b**)

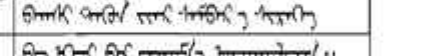
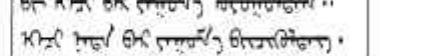
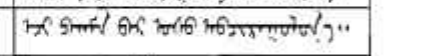
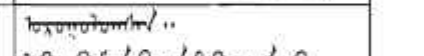
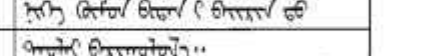
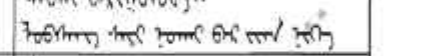
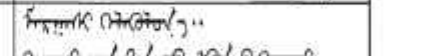
***Classical Rules*:**

complying with vowel harmony

This suffix follows only verb stems **ending with a vowel**. Therefore the inserted vowel is never needed.

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix always follows a verb stem which ends in Classical script with a **short vowel**. A verb stem ending with "**i**" always demands this suffix.
2.) The **subject is omitted**, which often gives a translation in the passive voice (**ex. f**).
3.) Action is caused unintentionally (**ex. g**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	The teacher **had** her clean the blackboard and the table.	Багш түүнээр сам-бар ширээ арчуулав.	
b	The older sister **has** me write things; I **have** her sew things.	Эгч надаар юм бичүүлдэг, би эгчээр юм оёулдаг.	
c	Mother will **see to it that** Pagma fetches water.	Ээж Пагмаар ус авчруулна.	
d	Someone **let** us enter the flat. ("to **have** us come in")	Нэг хүн биднийг байранд оруулсан.	
e	Recently, Luvsan **had** his dog catch a hare.	Лувсан сая нохойгоороо нэг туулай бариуллаа.	
f	Dorj's family will be informed about this tomorrow. ("[A] will **cause** [B] to say this to Dorj's family.")	Доржийнхонд үүний тухай маргааш хэлүүлнэ.	
g	Bayar **had** some lambs and goat kids die.	Баяр хэд хэдэн хур-га, ишиг үхүүлэв.	
h	Bat **made sure** his mother stayed in the hospital. ("to **cause** to lie down")	Бат эхийгээ эмнэ-лэгт хэвтүүлжээ.	

1.1.2.1.1.2.2 Causative VoS "-лга[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-лга, -лго, -лгэ, -лгө complying with vowel harmony
(When adding yet another suffix, the vowel may be dropped.)

Classical Rules:
~~-лгаа~~, -лгэ complying with vowel harmony

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix always follows a verb stem ending with a **long vowel** or a **diphthong**.
2.) The subject is omitted (**ex. c,d**). In English, we need either the passive or insertion of a neutral subject.
3.) The action is caused by 2 persons = *double suffix* (**ex. h,i**)
4.) People often use *double suffix* in colloquial language (**ex. a,b,d,e**)

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	The teacher **makes sure that** we review our lessons. ("to **cause** to review")	Багш биднээр давтлага хийлгэдэг (хийлгүүлдэг).	(ᠬᠢᠢᠯᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭ)·· ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ/ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠭ ᠣᠨᠣᠭᠣᠯᠵᠤ/ (ᠬᠢᠢᠯᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭ)
b	I **had** a lady make me a pair of nice gloves.	Би эгчээр нэг сайхан бээлий хийлгэсэн (хийлгүүлсэн).	(ᠬᠢᠢᠯᠭᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ/ (ᠬᠢᠢᠯᠭᠡᠭᠦᠯᠭᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ/)·· ᠪᠢ ᠬᠦᠭᠵᠢᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠡᠸᠰᠡᠭ/ ᠪᠤᠶᠤᠯ
c	In winter, animal fodder is transported into the 'aimags' of the Gobi. ("to **cause** to be transported")	Өвөл говийн аймгуудад машинаар малын тэжээл тээлгэдэг.	ᠲᠡᠨᠳᠡ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠨ ᠰᠠᠷ ᠳᠤ ᠮᠠᠰᠢᠨ ᠳᠤᠷᠤᠨ ᠲᠡᠵᠢᠶᠡᠯᠡᠭ ·· ᠥᠪᠡᠯ ᠭᠣᠪᠢ ᠲᠤ ᠠᠶᠢᠮᠠᠭ/ ᠤᠳ ᠪᠤᠷᠤ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭ/
d	(Someone) **had** the pupils move the chairs and tables.	Сурагчдаар сандал, ширээ зөөлгөв (зөөлгүүлэв).	ᠲᠤᠰᠤᠭᠴᠢᠳᠠᠭ (ᠲᠤᠰᠤᠭᠴᠢᠳᠠᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭ)·· ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠲᠠᠨ ᠰᠠᠨᠳᠠᠯ ᠂ ᠰᠢᠷᠡᠭ
e	The sports teacher **made** the students run a long distance.	Биеийн тамирын багш оюутнуудыг хол газар гүйлгэлээ (гүйлгүүллээ).	(ᠪᠢᠶᠡᠭᠦᠢᠯᠭᠡᠭᠴᠢ)·· ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢ (ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠯ ᠤᠨᠳᠤᠷ ᠪᠢᠶᠡᠭᠦᠢᠯᠭᠡᠭᠴᠢ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠲᠤ/ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠲᠤ/ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠰᠤᠭᠤᠳᠤᠯ/
f	Why did you **frighten** me? ("to **cause** to be afraid")	Чи намайг юунд айлгав?	ᠴᠢ ᠨᠠᠮᠠᠨᠳ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠦ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠤᠢ··
g	Dorj **made** his son drink milk.	Дорж хүүдээ сүү уулгав.	ᠳᠤᠷᠵ ᠬᠦᠦᠳᠡᠶ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠴᠠᠢ ᠤᠭᠤᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ··
h	With Dorj's help, I **made** my son drink the medicine.	Би Доржоор хүүдээ эмий(г) нь уулгууллаа.	ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢᠯᠠᠵᠤ·· ᠪᠢ ᠳᠤᠷᠵ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠬᠦᠦᠳᠡᠶ ᠢᠨ/ ᠶ ᠢᠨ
i	By asking Dorj, I **arranged** for my younger sister **to live** in a dormitory.	Би Доржийг гуйж дүүгээ байранд суулгав (суулгуулав).	ᠵᠠᠨ/ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ (ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠴᠢᠯᠠᠵᠤ)·· ᠪᠢ ᠳᠤᠷᠵ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠦᠦᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠤᠭᠤᠷᠢᠭ ᠪᠤ/ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠭᠤᠯ

1.1.2.1.1.2.3 Causative VoS's "-га⁴" and "-аа⁴"

In Classical script there is only **one suffix**. Because of the different pronunciations in Cyrillic, **two Cyrillic suffix forms** have developed:

1.1.2.1.1.2.3.1 VoS "-га⁴"

Cyrillic Rules:
-га, -го, -гэ, -гө complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

ᠠ ᠤ ᠣ complying with vowel harmony
For verb stems ending with a **"d"** see on page 17 the 5th rule. **(ex. c,d)**

Explanations:
1.) This Cyrillic suffix is used when the Classical verb stem **ends with a consonant.** Due to the missing final vowel **no sound complex** is being formed in Classical Script when the suffix is added and therefore the suffix is pronounced "-га".
2.) This suffix often gives the verb stems to which it is added a **new meaning** (becomes a derivational suffix). That's why the typical English translations for the causative 'to have, to make, to cause', etc.) don't appear **(ex. a,b,e)**.
3.) *Double* causative suffix **(ex. g,h)**.
4.) The subject is omitted **(ex. f,h)**. In English we need a translation in the passive or insertion of a subject.
5.) With Cyrillic verb stems ending with "д", this suffix changes "д" into "т" **(ex.b-c)**.

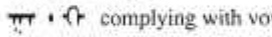
Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Can't you **discharge** me from the hospital soon? ("to **cause** to get out")	Та намайг эмнэлгээс мөд гаргаж өгч чадахгүй юу?	
b	Uyanga **losened** her belt. ("to **cause** to become loose")	Уянга бүсээ султгалаа.	
c	Study well for your exams! ("prepare well")	Та нар шалгалтанд сайн бэлтгэ!	
d	You have really **starved** your child. ("to **cause** to be hungry")	Та хүүхдээ их л өлсгөжээ.	
e	The teacher is **instructing** us well in the Mongolian language. ("to **cause** to learn")	Багш биднийг монгол хэлэнд сайн сургаж байна.	
f	(They')ll let the airplane to Khovd fly tomorrow at 8 o'clock. ("to **cause** to fly")	Ховдын нисэх онгоцыг маргааш 8 цагт нисгэнэ.	
g	**I had** Dorj deliver some books to Bat. ("to **cause** to reach")	Би Батад Доржоор хэдэн ном хүргүүллээ.	
h	(They) **asked** someone **to kill** the cockroaches in (their) flat. ("to **cause** to be exterminated")	Байрныхаа жоомыг хүн гуйж устгуулсан.	

1.1.2.1.1.2.3.2 VoS "–aa[4]"

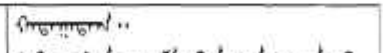
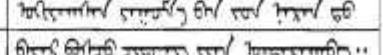
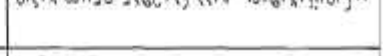
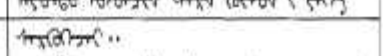
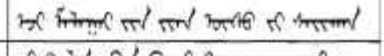
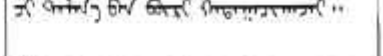
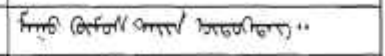
Cyrillic Rules:
-аа, -оо, -ээ, -өө complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This Cyrillic suffix is used when the Classical verb stem **ends with a short vowel**. Because of this final vowel a **sound complex** for long vowels comes into being (see p. 9) and therefore the suffix is pronounced "–aa".
2.) The subject is omitted; therefore, a **translation in the passive** is most common (**ex. a,g,h**).
3.) *Double* and triple causative suffix (**ex. g,h**).

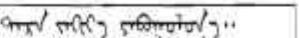
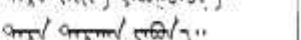
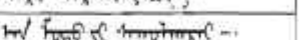
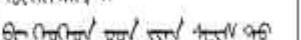
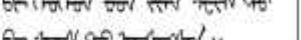
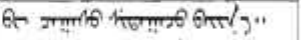
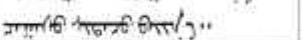
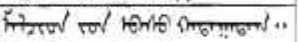
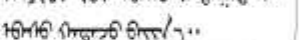
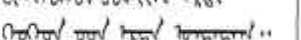
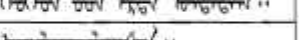
Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	In summer the washed articles are **left to dry** in the sun. ("to **cause** to be dry")	Угаасан юмаа зун наранд хатаалаг.	
b	Bayar got up and **turned off** the light. (to **cause** to be extinguished")	Баяр босч чийдэнгэз унтраав.	
c	A dangerous illness **made** that person suffer a lot.	Аюулт өвчин тэр хүнийг их зовоожээ.	
d	Mother **restored** the fur of the hat nicely. ("to **cause** to be refreshed")	Ээж малгайныхаа үсийг сайхан сэргээжээ.	
e	You've **let** your bread become stone hard. ("to **cause** to be dry")	Чи талхаа бүр хатаачихжээ.	
f	Bad people **provoke** war. ("to **cause** to start")	Муу хүмүүс дайн өдөөдөг.	
g	(Someone) will **cause** this paper **to be burned**.	Энэ цаасыг шатаалгана.	
h	(Someone) will **cause** this paper **to be burned**.	Энэ цаасыг шатаалгуулна.	

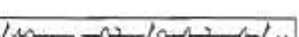
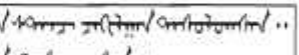
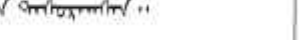
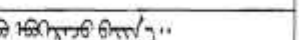
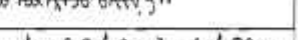
1.1.2.1.1.2.4 Functions of Causative

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Intransitive ---> Transitive

The main function of the causative is to **change intransitive verbs into transitive verbs**. **Intransitive verbs** have no direct (accusative) object. **Transitive verbs** need a *direct object*. In our examples these are written in *italics*.

a	He'll **go** to Darkhan. He'll **send** *a letter*. ("to cause to go")	Тэр Дархан явна. Тэр захиа явуулна.	 
b	Please **sit down**! Please **plant** *this tree*! ("to cause to sit down")	Чи суугаарай! Энэ модыг суулгаарай!	
c	I **grew up** in Switzerland. I **brought up** *my children* in Switzerland. ("to cause to grow up")	Би Швейцарьт өссөн. Би хүүхдүүдээ Швейцарьт өсгөсөн.	  
d	The paper **burns**. I'm **burning** *the paper*. ("to cause to burn")	Цаас шатаж байна. Би цаас шатаажбайна.	 
e	The grass **is dry**. The herders **dry** *the grass* in summer. ("to cause to be dry")	Өвс хатаж байна. Малчид зун өвс хатаадаг.	 
f	The children **go to sleep** early. I **have** *my children* **go to sleep** early.	Хүүхдүүд эрт унтдаг. Би хүүхдүүдээ эрт унтуулдаг.	
g	Those two **met**. We **arranged for** *those two (people)* to meet. ("to cause to meet")	Тэр хоёр уулзсан. Бид тэр хоёрыг уулзуулсан.	 

Note that there are certain suffixes that either make verbs transitive or intransitive:
Intransitive verb suffixes.: тасра⁻, хагара⁻ өвгөрө⁻
Transitive verb suffixes: тасал⁻, хагал⁻

a	The electricity **was cut.** The power station **cut** *the electrical supply*.	Тог (цахилгаан) тасарсан. Цахилгаан станц тог тасалсан.	 
b	My father **is getting old**.	Миний аав овгөрч байна.	
c	-Why **did** the cup **break**? -Who **broke** *this cup*?	-Аяга яагаад хагарсан бэ? -Энэ аягыг хэн хагалсан бэ?	 

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.2 Transitive ---> Causative

The second function is to **change a transitive verb into a causative**. That means, **the action** which is expressed by a transitive verb (with a *direct object*) **is done through someone else**. Person A uses person B to achieve something.

Notice that the logical subject is the same in both sentences, but the syntactic subject changes. In the second sentence the logical subject demands the instrumental case.

a	We had *lessons.* The teacher **made sure that** we **had** *lessons.*	Бид хичээл хийв. Багш бидэнээр хичээл хийлгэв.	[illegible]
b	I typed a *document.* My boss **had** me **type** *a document.*	Би бичиг машиндав. Дарга надаар бичиг машиндуулав.	[illegible]
c	Hey cleaning lady, empty *the trash!* **Have** your cleaning lady **empty** *the trash!*	Цэвэрлэгч аа, хогоо аста. Та цэвэрлэгчээрээ хогоо астуул.	[illegible]
d	I repaired *my watch.* My friend **had** me **repair** *his watch.*	Би цагаа засав. Миний найз надаар цагаа засуулав.	[illegible]
e	I translated a *one-page paper.* / The teacher **had** me **translate** *a one-page paper.*	Би нэг хуудас зүйл орчуулав. / Багш надаар нэг хуудас зүйл орчуулуулав.* (*exception to causative-rule)	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.1.2.4.3 Transitive ---> Passive

The third function is to **change a transitive verb into the passive**. The action which is expressed with a transitive verb (*with direct object*) is changed into a passive voice by means of causative suffixes. It's very important to know that the passive voice is **quite rarely used** in Mongolian. More often, **a passive voice is expressed with a causative suffix**. That's why this third function has **great significance**.
The syntactic subject in the first sentence changes into an indirect object (instrumental or dative) in the passive sentence and the *direct object (accusative)* of the first sentence becomes the *syntactic subject.*

a	I tested *the students.* *The students* **were tested** by me.	Би оюутнуудыг шалгав./ Оюутнууд надаар (намай) шалгуулав.	[illegible]
b	I brought *Dorj* home. *Dorj* **was brought** home by me.	Би Доржийг гэрт нь хүргэв./ Дорж надаар гэртээ хүргүүлэв.	[illegible]
c	The dog bit *the cat.* *The cat* **was bitten** by the dog.	Нохой муурыг хазав. Муур нохойд (нохойгоор) хазуулав.	[illegible]
d	I rode *a horse.A horse* **was ridden** by me.	Би морь унасан. Морь надад унуулсан.	[illegible]
e	The tree has hit *her sister's leg.* *Her sister's leg* **has been hit** by a tree.	Мод эгчийнх нь хөлийг цохичихсон. Эгчийнх нь хөл мод цохиулчихсан.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.1.3 Passive VoS "-гд[5]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-гд normal suffix; exceptions see below
(-д) for verb stems ending with "-л" **or** "-с" (**ex. d**)
(-т) for verb stems ending with "-в"; very rare (**ex. e**)

***Classical Rules*:**

ᠬᠠ • ᠭᠠ complying with vowel harmony

(ᠳᠠ) = da/de/ta/te: exceptions! (**ex. d,e**)

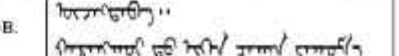
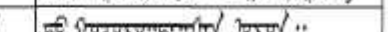
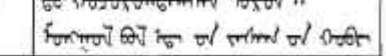
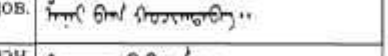
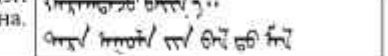
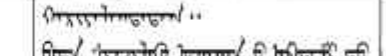
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. b,f**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) Very similar to the English passive voice, yet **not widely used.** The example sentences have verbs that **often** take the passive voice; nevertheless, people prefer the active voice.
2.) In colloquial language, the passive is often expressed with the **causative** voice, thus losing its causative meaning (**ex. j,k,l;** compare also with page 23).
3.) Some passive VoS's have turned into derivational suffixes and give the verbs a **new meaning** (**ex. m-t**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	This wooden house **was built** in 1935.	Энэ модон байшин 1935 онд баригдсан.	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠤᠯᠯᠠᠭᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠶᠢᠨ
b	In 1991, the United Germany **was founded.**	1991 онд Нэгдсэн Герман Улс байгуулагджээ.	ᠨᠢᠭᠡ᠑᠑᠑ ᠣᠨ ᠳ᠋ ᠪᠡᠯᠭᠡᠳᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠂᠂ ᠭᠡᠷᠮᠠᠨ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠭᠡᠯᠳᠡᠷᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ
c	Bajar **was elected** class president.	Баяр ангийн даргаар сонгогдлоо.	ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠷ ᠠᠩᠭᠢ᠎ᠶᠢᠨ ᠳᠠᠷᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭ᠎ᠤᠷ᠂᠂ ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠷ ᠠᠩᠬᠢ ᠤᠨ ᠳᠠᠷᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠴᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ
d	His books and notebooks **were** not **found.**	Түүний ном, дэвтэр олдсонгүй.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ᠂᠂ ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠶᠢᠨ ᠨᠣᠮ᠂ ᠲᠡᠮᠳᠡᠭᠯᠡᠯ ᠣᠯᠳᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ
e	The field **was taken away** by the floods.	Тариалан үерийн усанд автав.	ᠲᠣᠭᠠᠭᠤᠷᠢ᠂᠂ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠠ᠎ᠶᠢᠨ ᠤᠰᠤᠨ ᠳ᠋ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ
f	His life **was devoted to** science.	Түүний амьдрал шинжлэх ухаанд зориулагдсан.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ᠎ᠦ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠨᠲᠡ ᠵᠢᠪᠬᠡ᠎ᠶᠢᠨ ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠡᠬᠦ ᠤᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠳ᠋ ᠵᠠᠷᠢᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂ ᠲᠡᠷᠡ᠎ᠶᠢᠨ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯ ᠰᠢᠨᠵᠢᠯᠡᠬᠦ ᠤᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠳ᠋ ᠵᠠᠷᠢᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ
g	Recently this young man **was released from** prison.	Энэ залуу саяхан шоронгоос суллагдсан.	ᠰᠣᠨᠢᠨ ᠳᠤᠤᠷᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠥᠪᠦᠭᠡᠨ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ
h	Our food **has been used up.**	Бидний хоол барагдсан.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ᠎ᠦ ᠬᠣᠣᠯ᠎ᠤᠷ ᠪᠡᠯᠡᠳᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠂᠂
i	All my money **has been spent.**	Миний бүх мөнгө урэгдсэн.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠎ᠦ ᠪᠦᠬᠦ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡ᠎ᠳ᠋ ᠵᠠᠷᠭᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂
j	One deer **was eaten by** a wolf.	Нэг буга чоно**нд** идэгдэжээ. (идүүлжээ)	(ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ)᠂᠂ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠪᠤᠭᠠ ᠴᠣᠨᠤ᠎ᠳ᠋ ᠢᠵᠢᠭᠳᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ
k	A cat **was bitten by** a dog.	Муур нохойн**д** хазуулав.	ᠮᠤᠤᠷ ᠨᠣᠬᠠᠢ᠎ᠳ᠋ ᠵᠢᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᠭᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠂᠂

l	She **let** me **kiss** her. / She came to greet me (e.g. at the New Year's celebration) ("She **was kissed by** me.")	Тэр надад үнсүүлсэн.	
m	Something white **appeared** in the darkness. ("was seen")	Харанхуйд нэгэн цагаан юм үзэгдэв.	
n	Mongolia is an economically **underdeveloped** country. ("to be behind")	Монгол бол эдийн засгийн хувьд хоцрогдсон орон.	
o	My team **lost.** / My team **was beaten.**	Манай баг хожигдов.	
p	Some animals **can be seen** at the foot of that mountain.	Тэр уулын бэлд хэдэн мал харагдаж байна.	
q	We are **under the auspices** of the Academy of Sciences. ("to be under someone's authority")	Бид Шинжлэх ухааны академид харьяалагддаг.	
r	Yesterday a party **took place** at the university. ("to be gone =to take place")	Өчигдөр их сургууль дээр үдэшлэг явагдсан.	
s	I **like** you a lot. ("You **are being liked** by me.")	Та надад их таалагдаж байна.	
t	I **miss** my home land. ("Home land of mine **is being missed**.")	Нутаг маань их санагдаж байна.	

Attention: Don't use these passive forms:
If the object is **not a living thing**, then the passive is almost never used. The following phrases (a selection) are grammatically correct but **are never used**:

кино үзэгдэ-	a film to be seen
хоол идэгдэ-	food to be eaten
захиа бичигдэ-	a letter to be written
ном уншигда-	a book to be read
хичээл хийгдэ-	a lesson to be taught
тамхи татагда-	tobacco to be smoked
бичиг машиндагда-	a document to be typed
машин жолоодогдо-	a car to be driven
дээл өмсөгдө-	a coat to be worn
архи уугда-	vodka to be drunk
радио сонсогдо-	a radio to be listened to

1.1.2.1.1.4 Communal VoS "-лц[5]"

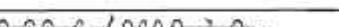
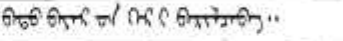
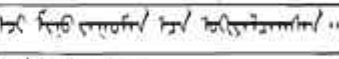
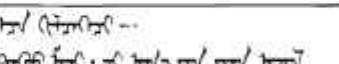
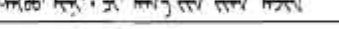
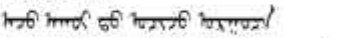
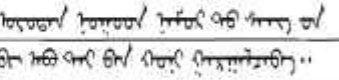
Cyrillic Rules:
-ЛЦ

Classical Rules:

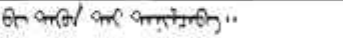
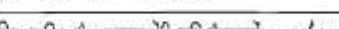
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. g,m**)

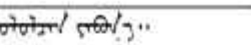
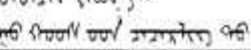
Explanations:
1.) The communal VoS expresses that the **action of the subject is associated** with the action(s) of other(s). The subject is usually a **helper** (**ex. a-e**), but the action of 'helping' is not the main thing, rather we want to stress that someone **takes part/is involved** in the action.
2.) Some verbs with this suffix take on a **new meaning** and lose the communal meaning (**f-i**).
3.) Some verbs which can't take the adversative suffix need the communal suffix to express a **mutual action** (see next VoS on page 127 and **ex. j-n**).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Bat **helped set up** Bayar's yurt.	Бат Баярын гэрийг барилцав.	
b	Mother **helped wash** my things.	Ээж миний юмнаас угаалцсан.	
c	My younger brother, please **help me*** with my work!(*your older brother)	Дүү минь, чи ахынхаа ажлаас хийлцэч!	
d	In fall, students go to the agricultural cooperatives and **help with bringing in** the harvest.	Оюутнууд намарт сангийн аж ахуйд очиж ургац хураалцдаг.	
e	Together with my father, I **killed** a sheep.	Би аавтайгаа хонь гаргалцав.	
f	I **introduced** myself to him.	Би түүнтэй танилцав.	
g	I **study** at the university.	Би их сургуульд суралцдаг.	
h	I **took part in** the meeting.	Би уулзалтад оролцсон.	
i	I'**m in contact** with many foreign scientists.	Би гадаадын олон эр- дэмтэдтэй харилцдаг.	

Attention: The following examples carry **the meaning of the adversative VoS**, although they are written with a communal VoS.

j	For many days, the two sides **shot at each other.**	Хоёр тал олон өдрийн турш буудалцав.	
k	They **talked** about this for a long time. ("to talk with **each other**")	Тэд үүний тухай удаан ярилцав.	
l	We shall **discuss** this problem tomorrow. ("to say to **each other**")	Бид энэ асуудлыг маргааш хэлэлцэнэ.	

m	In the park, young couples walk **hand-in-hand**. ("to guide **each other** by the hand")	Залуу хосууд цэцэр-лэгт хөтлөлцөн явна.	
n	Two unparallel lines will surely **cross each other**.	Параллель биш хоёр шулуун заавал огтлолцдог.	

1.1.2.1.1.5 Adversative VoS "-лдˢ"

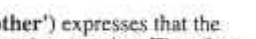
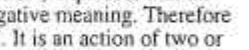
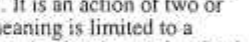
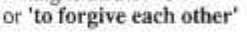
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-лд

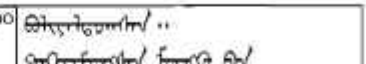
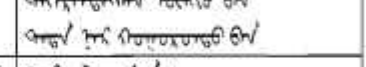
***Classical Rules*:**

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d**)

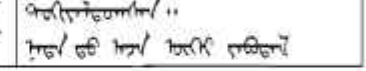
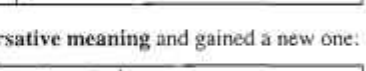
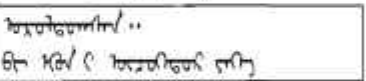
***Explanations*:**
1.) Although the adversative VoS (Latin 'adversus' = **'against each other'**) expresses that the action happens against each other, it does not always indicate a negative meaning. Therefore it's also common to translate as **'with each other'** or **'each other'**. It is an action of two or more subjects which happens **simultaneously**. The 'each other' meaning is limited to a physical realm. Therefore English verbs like **'to hate each other'** or **'to forgive each other'** are **not expressed with this suffix**.
2.) Sometimes, verbs with this suffix are **translated very freely** but the simultaneous action can still be discovered (**ex. g-k**).
3.) This VoS could also serve as a **derivational suffix** and thus loses its adversative function (**ex. l-o**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Those two children **are squabbling with each other.**	Тэр хоёр хүүхэд нөхөлдөж байна.	
b	Listen! You're not going to fight with children! ("to beat **each other**")	За, чи хүүхэдтэй зодолдож болохгүй шүү.	
c	See! These two bulls are really butting "nicely". ("to push **against each other**'s head")	Энэ хоёр бух мөн сайхан мөргөл-дөж байна даа.	
d	Mother and son met, **embraced each other** and **kissed.**	Эх хүү хоёр уул-заж тэврэлдэн үнсэлдлээ.	
e	There, many people **cried together.**	Тэнд олон хүн уйлалдсан.	
f	My friend and I always **consult with each other**.	Би дандаа найзтайгаа зөвлөлдөг.	
g	64 strong wrestlers **wrestled** in the main sports palace. ("to grasp **each other**")	Спортын төв ордонд хүчит 64 бөх барилдав.	
h	I heard that those two **are having an affair.** ("to go **with each other**")	Тэр хоёр явалдаг гэж би сонссон.	

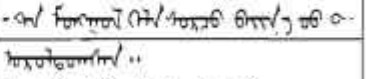
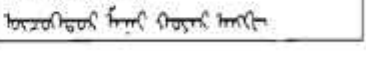
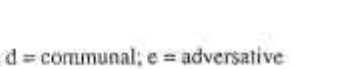
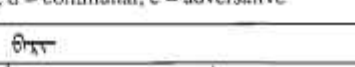
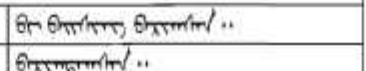
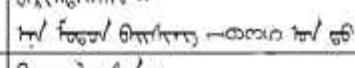
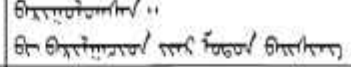
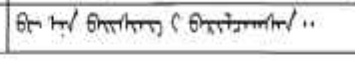
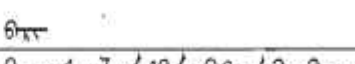
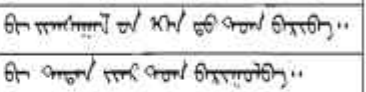
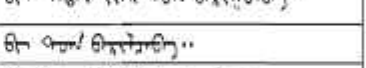
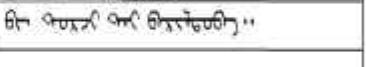
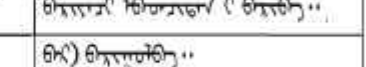
i	They **fought** among themselves **over** the stolen money. ("to snatch away from **each other**")	Тэд нар хоорондоо дээрэмдсэн мөнгөө булаалдсан.	
k	I've had bad luck. ("Bad luck **encountered** me.")	Надад азгүй явдал тохиолдсон.	

Attention: The following examples have **lost their adversative meaning** and gained a new one:

l	I **tried** this a lot yesterday.	Би үүнийг өчигдөр их оролдсон.	
m	--Are you learning Mongolian? -**I'm trying** to.	-Та монгол хэл сурч байна уу? -Би оролдож л байна.	
n	Yesterday our two classes **entered a competition.**	Өчигдөр манай хоёр анги уралдсан.	

1.1.2.1.1.6 Comparison of VoS's

Example sentences: a = active; b = passive; c = causative; d = communal; e = adversative

1.	**to build**	бари-	
1a	I **built** a house.	Би байшин барьсан.	
1b	This wooden house **was built** in 1935.	Энэ модон байшин 1935 онд баригдсан.	
1c	I **had** construction workers **build** (me) a wooden house.	Би барилгачдаар модон байшин бариулсан.	
1d	I **helped build** this house.	Би энэ байшинг барилцсан.	
2.	**to hold**	бари-	
2a	I **held** a flag in front of the parade.	Би жагсаалын эхэнд туг барив.	
2c	I **had** them **hold** the flag.	Би тэднээр туг бариулав.	
2d	I **helped hold** the flag.	Би туг барилцав.	
2e	I **wrestled** with Dorj. ("to **grasp each other**")	Би Доржтой барилдав.	
3.	**to treat**	бари-	
3a	The masseur **treated** the patient.	Бариач өвчтөнийг барив.	
3c (b)	The patient **was treated** by the masseur. (Passive expressed with causative VoS)	Өвчтөн бариачид (бариачаар) бариулав.	
3d	I **assisted** the masseur in **treating** the patient.	Би бариачтай хамт өвчтнийг барилцав.	

4.	**to go**	ява–	[illegible]
4a	My younger sister will **go** to the city.	Миний дүү хот руу явна.	[illegible]
4b	This month, international competitions will **take place** in Ulaanbaatar.	Энэ сард Улаанбаатар хотод олон улсын тэмцээн явагдана.	[illegible]
4c	I will **send** my younger sister to the city. ("to cause to go")	Би дүүгээ хот руу явуулна.	[illegible]
4d	I **accompanied** my younger sister to the city. ("to go with each other")	Би дүүтэйгээ хамт хот руу явалцсан.	[illegible]
4e	I heard that those two **are having an affair**. ("to go with each other")	Тэр хоёр явалдаг гэж би сонссон.	[illegible]
5.	**to kill**	ала–	[illegible]
5a	I **killed** a sheep.*	Би хонь алав.*	[illegible]
5b	In World War II, many people **were killed.**	Дэлхийн 2-р дайнд олон хүн алагдав.	[illegible]
5c	The father **made** me **kill** a sheep.*	Аав надаар хонь алуулав.*	[illegible]
5d	Together with my father I **killed** a sheep. *	Би аавтайгаа хамт хонь алалцав.*	[illegible]
5e	On the battlefield many soldiers **were killing each other.**	Тулалдааны талбарт олон цэрэг алалдаж байсан.	[illegible]
* In this context "ала–" is a taboo word. It would be better to use "гарга–" for 'to slaughter'.			
6.	**to occupy**	булаа–	[illegible]
6a	Iraq **occupied** Kuwaiti territory.	Ирак Кувейтын газар нутгийг булаав.	[illegible]
6b	Kuwaiti territory **was occupied** by Iraq.	Кувейтын газар нутаг Ирактаг булаагдав.	[illegible]
6c	Kuwait **had** Iraq **occupy** its territory.	Кувейт Ирактаг газар нутгаа булаалгав.	[illegible]
6d	The allies of Iraq **helped occupy** Kuwait.	Ираакын холбоотнууд Кувейтын газар нутгийг булаалцав.	[illegible]
6e	Due to the **occupation of each other's** territory, war breaks out.	Газар нутгаа булаалдсанаас болж дайн гардаг.	[illegible]
7.	**to kiss**	үнс–	[illegible]
7a	I **kissed** her.	Би түүнийг үнслээ.	[illegible]
7 (b)	She let me kiss her. ("She **was kissed** by me.") [Passive with causative VoS]	Тэр надад үнсүүллээ.	[illegible]
7c	He **made** me **kiss** you.	Тэр чамайг надаар үнсүүллээ.	[illegible]
7e	These two **kissed each other.**	Энэ хоёр үнсэлдлээ.	[illegible]

8.	**to find**	ол–	[illegible]
8a	(My) son has to **find** his book.	Хүү номоо олох хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
8b	Our son's book **has been found.**	Манай хүүгийн ном олдсон.	[illegible]
8c	The father **had** (someone) **find** the book.	Эцэг нь номыг олуулав.	[illegible]
8d	I **helped** my son find the book. ("Together with my son I found the book.")	Би хүүтэйгээ хамт номыг ололцов.	[illegible]

9.	**to release**	сулла–	[illegible]
9a	The director **released** that young man.	Дарга тэр залуу сулласан.	[illegible]
9b	That young man **was released** from prison.	Тэр залуу шорон-гоос суллагдсан.	[illegible]
9c	That young man's wife **had** (someone) **release** him.	Эхнэр нь тэр залуу суллуулсан.	[illegible]
9d	I **helped** have (someone) release that young man.	Би тэр залуу сул-луулалцсан.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.1.7 Combinations of VoS's

***passive* + causative**			
a	We will **have** their matter ***be*** finished soon.	Бид тэдний хэргийг түргэн барагдуулна.	[illegible]
b	**Make sure that** the country's capital *isn't* wast*ed* in vain.	Та нар улсын хөрөнгийг дэмий бүү үрэгдүүл!	[illegible]
causative + *passive*			
a	Many factories ***are being*** established here. ("are being **caused to be**")	Энд олон үйлдвэр байгуулагдаж байна.	[illegible]
b	I ***was* questioned** about this problem many times.	Би энэ асуудлаар олон удаа байцаагдсан.	[illegible]
causative + communal			
a	I **helped burn** this garbage.	Би энэ хогийг шатаалцсан.	[illegible]
b	I **helped** him **deliver** the load to his yurt.	Би түүний гэрт ачаар нь хүргэлцсэн.	[illegible]
communal + causative			
a	I **had** (them) **dis-cuss** my report.	Би илтгэлээ хэлэлцүүлэв.	[illegible]
b	I **made** my son **assist** them.	Би хүүгээрээ тэдэнд туслалцуулав.	[illegible]
adversative + causative			
a	You two! Please **have** the two wrestlers close to you wrestle quickly. ("grasp each other")	Та хоёр наад хоёр бөхөө түргэн барилдуулаач!	[illegible]
b	Dorj **caused** those two children to beat each other up.	Дорж тэр хоёр хүүхдийг хооронд нь зодолдуулжээ.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.2 Aspect

Aspect expresses **how the action happens**: quickly, repeatedly, continuously, always, etc. In **English** we're well familiar with **the simple** (or indefinite), **the progressive** (or continuous), **the perfect** and the **progressive-perfect** aspects. In Mongolian, these aspects are expressed with analytical forms (see pages 136-38). Besides these, there are other actions that are **described by the means of an aspect suffix** (AsS).

Here are some **characteristics** of the AsS's:

1.) When combined with a VoS, the **AsS always follow the VoS** (for examples, see p.138).
2.) There is also a **simple form** that has a zero-suffix.

1.1.2.1.2.1 Synthetically Expressed Aspects (With Suffixes = AsS's)

1.1.2.1.2.1.1 AsS "-схий": Quick Action

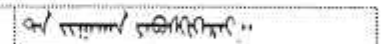
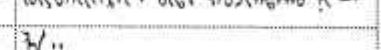
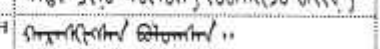
Cyrillic Rules:
-схий

Classical Rules:

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. f**)

Explanations:
1.) The action happens **quickly** and **in a short time**. Sometimes it could be translated with 'a little, a bit' (**ex. c,d**).
2.) Complying with vowel harmony, **weak suffixes** follow this AsS.
3.) Often used with a **PTS**, i.e., this quick action is demanded from others (**ex. a,b,c**).
4.) Often used **for verbs expressing a movement** (**ex. a,c,f**).
5.) **Very often** appears with the verb stems "бай-", "тэгэ-", "ингэ-"; see explanation of next paragraph (page 132)

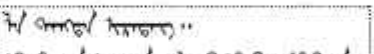
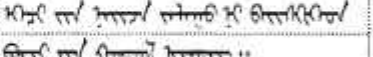
Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **very often,** but only with a few verbs

a	Please hurry up **a bit.** ("Please go a bit faster.")	Та жаахан явсхийгээрэй.	
b	Think again **a bit!**	Та ахиад жаахан бодосхий!	
c	Please run **a bit faster;** we'll be too late.	Гүйсхийгээрэй, бид хожигдох нь!	
d	They were **a little** worried about you.	Тэд чиний төлөө зовосхийж байна лээ.	
e	The teacher gave **a quick glance** at the things I had done.	Багш миний хийсэн юмыг дөнгөж харсхийсэн болсон.	
f	Please move **a bit** (more actively)!	Та жаахан хөдөлсхий!	

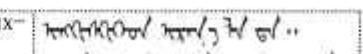
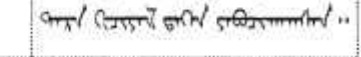
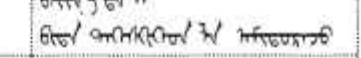
1.1.2.1.2.1.1.1 "–схий" in Colloquial Language

In colloquial language, this suffix is very often added to the verb stems "бай–", "тэгэ–", and "ингэ–".

1.) "байсхийгээд л" + **NDS** "–даг"
This combination of **verb stem + AsS** "–схий" + **VDS** "–ээд" + **particle** "л" intensifies the meaning of the following NDS "–даг". Such phrases could be translated with '**keep ...ing**'. The literary translation would be 'after having been only a short while'.

a	My older sister's boyfriend **keeps coming to visit**.	Эгчийн найз залуу нь байсхийгээд л дандаа ирдэг.	
b	Different kinds of shoes **keep coming** into that shop.	Тэр дэлгүүрт байсхийгээд л янз бүрийн гутал ирдэг.	

2.) "ингэсхийгээд/ингэсхийж" + **verb**
This combination of **verb stem + AsS** "–схий" + **verb** has the rough meaning of 'to do something like this/that'.

a	He has gone to his lesson. I'm sure he'll come soon. ("[he] will **do a bit in this way** and then he will surely come.")	Тэр хичээлдээ явчихсан. Ингэсхийгээд ирнэ л дээ.	
b	Well then, may be (we) can do it **like that**.	Харин зэ, тэгэсхийж хийж болох болов уу?	
c	Well, **that's the way** we live.	Бид тэгэсхийгээд л амьдарч байна даа.	
d	Oh, (look at that)! They've made it **this way.**	Өө, тэд нар ингэсхийгээд хийчихсэн байна шүү дээ.	
e	Please keep holding it **like that.**	Тэгэсхийгээд барьж байгаарай!	

1.1.2.1.2.1.2 AsS "–зана[4]": Temporary Action

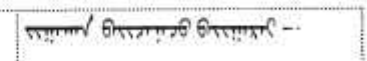
Cyrillic Rules:
–зана, –зэнэ, –зоно, –зөнө complying with vowel harmony
Note that the ***first vowel*** of the suffix is usually dropped.

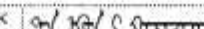
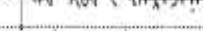
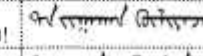
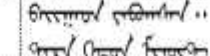
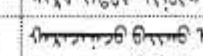
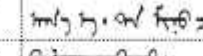
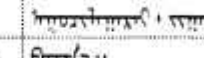
Classical Rules:

(this is a **new form** which was first introduced in the colloquial language)
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. j**)

Explanations:
1.) The action is **to continue for a little while**, but has **temporary character.**
2.) This suffix is supported in its meaning by the word "жаахан" = 'a little' (**ex. a,c,f,j**).
3.) Usually this suffix is used with verbs that express **no movement**.
4.) Very often it appears together with the auxiliary verb "бай–" (**ex. a-e,g-j**).

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	Please stay **a bit** longer./ Please stay **for another minute.**	Жаахан байзнаж байгаарай!	

b	Please keep an eye on this **for a minute.**	Та үүнийг харзнаж байгаарай!	
c	Keep waiting **a little bit longer**, please!	Та жаахан хүлээзнэж байгаач!	
d	He had been waiting for a few minutes and then he left.	Тэр хэдэн минут байзнаж байгаад явсан.	
e	Hey sir, wouldn't you keep an eye on my bag, **just for a minute?**	Ах аа, та миний цүнхийг харзнаж байхгүй юү?	
f	Excuse me! Please wait **a minute.**	Уучлаарай, жаахан хүлээзнээрэй!	
g	My daughter is **temporarily** watching my son.	Хүүг маань эгч нь харзнаж байгаа.	
h	Let me call **after a while**.	Би байзнаж байгаад утасдъя!	
i	Why don't you come **a bit later**! ("Will you not come after having waited a while?")	Та хүлээзнэж байгаад ирэхгүй юү?	
j	Go out **for a minute**, please.	Чи жаахан гарзнаж байгаарай.	

1.1.2.1.2.1.3 AsS "–чих": Completed Action

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
–чих

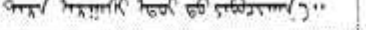
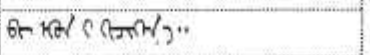
***Classical Rules*:**

complying with vowel harmony

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix expresses an action which is **fully completed**.
2.) It appears very often together with the analytically expressed **perfect aspect** "–аад бай–" (see page 137). Therefore this suffix itself bears a slight **perfect meaning.**
3.) The action might be completed in the future (**ex. g-i**).
4.) In the colloquial language this suffix appears at the end of the sentence (with –ø TS) (**ex. j-k**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	I'**ve eaten** my whole meal.	Би хоолоо бүгдийг идчихлээ.	
b	She's **lost** her purse.	Тэр хэтэвчээ гээчихэв.	
c	Our conversation has been interrupted. ("Someone **has interrupted** ...").	Бидний яриаг тасалчихлаа.	
d	If you **had told** me, it would have been easy, you know.	Та надад хэлчихсэн бол амар байж л дээ.	
e	They'**ve finished** (it).	Тэд дуусчихжээ.	
f	Bat's family **moved** yesterday.	Батынх өчигдөр нүүчихсэн.	

g	He **will have left** by this time tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш өдийд явчихна.	
h	I **will have done** it.	Би үүнийг хийчихнэ.	
i	I **want to have talked** with him by tomorrow evening.	Би маргааш орой хүртэл түүнтэй ярьчихъя.	
j	Stop talking to him! ("Your talking to him **has been**.")	Түүнтэй ярихаа байчих!	
k	Shut up! ("**Have been** without sound.")	Дуугүй байчих!	

1.1.2.1.2.1.4 AsS "-цгаа⁴": Collective Action

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-цгаа, -цгээ, -цгоо, -цгөө complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**

added to all verb stems complying with vowel harmony

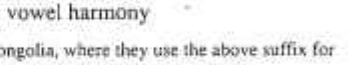
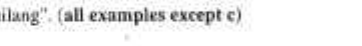
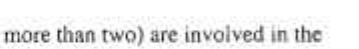
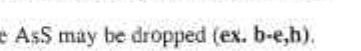
( ) * these two additional forms are used in Inner Mongolia, where they use the above suffix for "bagarasada" and this one for vowels and "namilang". (**all examples except c**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) This collective AsS reveals that **many people** (usually more than two) are involved in the action. Therefore the subject is in the plural.

2.) If the subject already indicates the plural, the collective AsS may be dropped (**ex. b-e,h**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	Hello **everybody**! ("Are you (pl.) well?")	Сайн байцгаана уу?	
b	They left yesterday.	Тэд өчигдөр явцгаасан (явсан).	
c	We took our exams yesterday.	Бид өчигдөр шалгалтаа өгцгөөсөн (өгсөн).	
d	Come tomorrow morning!	Та нар маргааш өглөө ирцгэ (ир)!	
e	Bayar, Bat, Süren and Tsend entered the cafeteria.	Баяр, Бат, Сүрэн, Цэнд нар гуанзанд орцгооожээ (оржээ).	
f	Let's drink to our friendship!	Найрамдлын төлөө ууцгаая!	
g	Study the picture and answer the question(s)!	Зургийг ажиглаад асуултад хариулцгаа!	
h	They are playing.	Тэд нар тоглоцгоож байна (тоглож байна).	
i	Now let's always talk in Mongolian!	Одоо дандаа монголоор ярьцгааж байя!	

1.1.2.1.2.1.5 AsS "-л": Repetitive Action

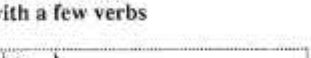
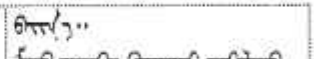
Cyrillic Rules:
-л

Classical Rules:

Inserted vowel necessary

Explanations:
1.) This AsS expresses an action which is **repeated again and again**.
2.) Some consider this suffix to be a derivational suffix.

Frequency: Written language: **only used with a few verbs**
Colloquial language: **only used with a few verbs**

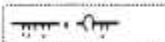
a	My heart **beats** strongly. (to beat = repeated action)	Миний зүрх хүчтэй цохилж байна.	
b	He was afraid of the snake and tried in vain **again and again to grab** it.	Тэр могойноос айж барилж ядан байв.	
c	I was **pulling** the boat out of the water. (to pull = repeated action)	Би завийг таталсаар уснаас гаргав.	
d	Why **isn't** the wall clock **ticking**? (to tick = repeated action)	Ханын цаг яагаад цохилдохгүй байна вэ?	

1.1.2.1.2.1.6 AsS "-лз, -валз²/-галз², -гана⁴": Other Repetitive Actions

The following AsS's are added to the **passive roots** of a few words. They could be considered as derivational suffixes. All have a more or less strong meaning of repetition.

	-лз	The subject repeats itself (with intransitive verbs) Note: ***diphthong*** is dropped.
	найга- найгалза-	to swing in the wind
	онгий- онгөлзө-	to encroach upon, to lean forward in order to see to keep looking, to envy
	бултай- булталза-	to stick out to keep sticking out
	өндий- өндөлзө-	to raise one's head, to straighten up to impatiently wait for

	-валз²/-галз²	This suffix is a left-over of the combination "б"/"г" + "-лз".
	ани- анивалза-	to close one's eyes to blink, to wink
	тата- татвалза-	to pull to writhe with convulsions
	тата- татгалза-	to pull to abstain/refrain from
	түдэ- түлгэлзэ-	to hesitate, to tarry to delay, to be neutral

	−гана[4]	When adding this suffix, the ***diphthongs*** are dropped.
	бүлтий− бүлтгэнэ−	to stare to stare in terror
	бөндий− бөндгөнө−	to be rounded for a round object to move

1.1.2.1.2.2 Analytically Expressed Aspects

Besides the AsS's, the Mongolian language expresses some aspects in an analytical way which means that different suffixes and verbs are used in a **fixed combination**.
The **three English aspects** 'progressive (continuous)', 'perfect' and 'progressive-perfect' are all expressed analytically **using a VDS and the auxiliary verb** "бай−".

1.1.2.1.2.2.1 Progressive Action: "−ж/ч бай−"

Cyrillic Rules:
−ж бай−/−ч бай− for rules see pages 28-29

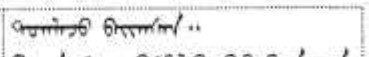
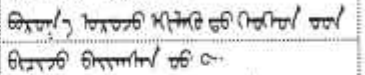
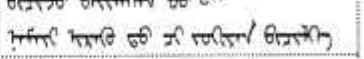
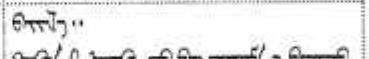
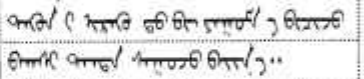
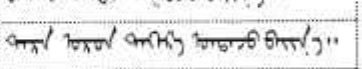
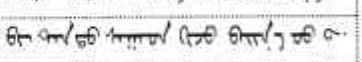
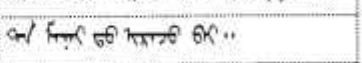
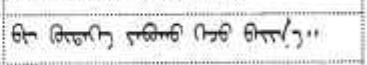
Classical Rules:

after the **consonants** of the code word '**b**a**g**ara**s**a**d**a'

after **vowels** and the **consonants** of the code word '**n**a**m**i**l**a**ng**'

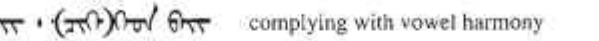
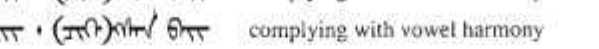
Explanations:
1.) This combination of VDS and auxiliary verb expresses the **progressive aspect** of an action. The time when the action happens can be known by the **TTS** at the verb stem "бай−": past (**ex. a-c**),present (**ex. d-f**), future (**ex. g**).
2.) An interesting construction is built with the **NDS** "−х" + "гэж" + "бай−". The English equivalent would be: 'to be about to do something' (**ex. h-i**).
3.) Interrogative and negative sentences are formed according to the rules of TTS's.

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	When it started raining, the children **were playing**.	Бороо орж эхлэхэд хүүхдүүд тоглож байсан.	
b	**Were** you **writing** an essay when I came?	Намайг ирэхэд чи зохион бичлэг бичиж байсан уу?	
c	When he came, I **was writing** something.	Түүнийг ирэхэд би юм бичиж байлаа.	
d	The teacher **is sitting** there.	Багш тэнд суужбайна.	
e	He **is sleeping** on the bed.	Тэр орон дээр унтаж байна.	
f	**Am** I **disturbing** you? ("Am I being a hindrance to you?")	Би танд саад хийж байна уу?	
g	Do come by. ("**Be coming** to us.")	Та манайд ирж бай.	
h	I'm **about to** leave for the countryside.	Би хөдөө явах гэж байна.	
i	I'm **about to** meet him.	Би түүнтэй уулзах гэж байна.	

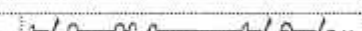
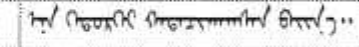
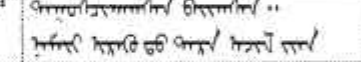
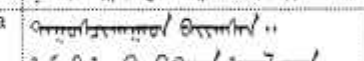
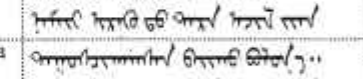
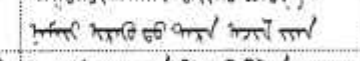
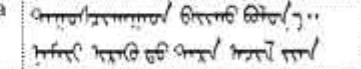
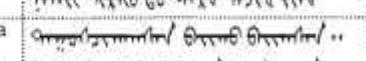
1.1.2.1.2.2.2 Perfect Action: "-(чих)аад[4]/-(чих)сан[4] бай-":

Cyrillic Rules:
-(чих)аад/ -ээд/ -оод/ -өөд бай- complying with vowel harmony
-(чих)сан/ -сэн/ -сон/ -сөн бай- complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
 complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) A **perfect action** is an action **that continues up to a certain selected point of time** in the past (**ex. b**), present (**ex. a**), or future (**ex. c-d**). This aspect is the equivalent of the English perfect aspect.
2.) Because the action is **completed**, the **AsS** "-чих" is part of this analytical construction (above, the suffix is in parentheses; see also pages 133-134).
3.) Whether this analytical form is built with the **VDS** "-аад" or the **NDS** "-сан" doesn't make a big difference. The only slight difference might be that the relationship to the selected point of time is stronger with the form "-(чих)аад бай-" (the reason for this is explained by the original meaning of "-аад"; see pages 159-160).

Frequency: Written language: **not so often**
Colloquial language: **not so often**

a	This **has become** too dry.	Энэ хэтэрхий хатчихсан байна.	
		Энэ хэтэрхий хатчихаад байна.	
b	When I came, he **had** finished his work.	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байсан.	
		Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихаад байсан.	
c	By the time I come, he'll **have** finished his work. ("When I come...")	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байх болно.	
		Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихаад байх болно.	
d	When I came, he should **have had** his work **finished**.	Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихсан байх байсан.	
		Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихаад байх байсан.	

1.1.2.1.2.2.3 Progressive-Perfect Action: "-саар[4] бай-":

Cyrillic Rules:
-саар / -сээр/ -соор/ -сөөр бай- complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d,g**)

***Explanations*:**

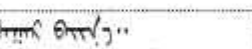
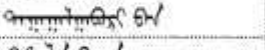
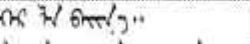
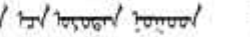
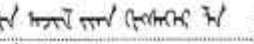
1.) This aspect is a combination of the two previous aspects. Whether the action happens in the present, past, or future, depends on the **TTS** being added to the auxiliary verb "бай-".

2.) The English progressive-perfect tense usually demands time words such as 'all day long', for two hours', etc. (**ex. d**, 2nd sentence). If this is not given in Mongolian, it is better to translate as '**still be ...ing**" (**ex. d, 1st sentence; c,e**) or for the future tense '**...will continue to...**' (**ex. f-h**).

3.) The **particle** "*л*" expresses here the meaning of *'still'*.

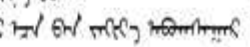
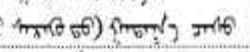
4.) **Interrogative and negative sentences** are built according to the rules for TTS's (**ex. d,h**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	He **has been** thinking about his homework.	Тэр даалгавраа бодсоор байна.	
b	The students **are** *still* coming from the countryside./ The students **have been** coming from the countryside.	Хөдөөнөөс оюутнууд ирсээр л байна.	
c	We're *still* doing our work.	Манайхан ажлаа хийсээр л байгаа.	
d	**Are** you *still* receiving letters from home? / **Have** you **been** receiving letters from home lately?	Та гэрээсээ захиа авсаар л байна уу?	
e	(When I woke up) it **was** *still* snowing outside.	(Намайг сэрэхэд) гадаа цас орсоор л байлаа.	
f	We will **continue to** live in Mongolia.	Бид Монголд амьдарсаар л байх болно.	
g	I will **continue to** receive letters from home.	Би гэрээсээ захиа хүлээн авсаар байх болно.	
h	Will you **continue to** live in Mongolia?	Та Монголд амьдарсаар байх уу?	

1.1.2.1.2.3 Combination of VoS's and AsS's

Voice suffixes (VoS's) in *italics*, aspect suffixes (AsS's) underlined.

a	I **have** ***opened*** a window wide. *("caused ... to be open")*	Би цонх онгойлгочихсон.	
b	We ***had*** our notebooks signed by him.	Бид дэвтэртээ түүгээр гарын үсгийг нь зуруулцгаав.	
c	Please ***have*** your horse go **a bit faster**.	Та морио жаахан явуулсхийгээрэй.	
d	Our wrestlers ***wrestled*** well at the competition.	Манай бөхчүүд тэмцээнд сайн барилдацгаав!	

1.1.2.1.3 Mood

By **means of different verb forms**, the content of a sentence is influenced or **modified by the speaker in a certain way**. Thus, the sentence has a certain mood. Depending upon which mood the speaker chooses for his statement, he can make real, desired, impossible, conditional, "second-hand", and other statements.

The **English** language knows three sets of mood:
- Indicative (fact, action)
- Imperative (command)
- Subjunctive (doubt, wish, hope, etc.)

In Mongolian there are **2 main groups of mood suffixes**. But unlike English, these groups haven't come about because of their similar modal expressions. What makes the suffixes belong to one or the other group is their **placement and function within the sentence**. Therefore, it is difficult to use the European model to classify Mongolian mood suffixes. We have tried to classify them with a view to Mongolian language structure. If we were to **compare Mongolian mood suffixes with the three sets in English**, they would be as follows:
- NDS's, VDS's and TTS's are similar to the indicative forms.
- Most of the PTS's are similar to the imperative forms.
- AwDS's and some PTS's are similar to the subjunctive forms.

Furthermore, it needs to be said that modal statements can also be **expressed with modal constructions** or **modal verbs** (see pages 201-207).

Overview of the mood suffixes:
[In parentheses are the traditional names]

1.) Determining Suffixes (DS's):
- Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's) [verbal noun suffixes]
- Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's) [verbal noun suffixes; converb suffixes]
- Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's) [converb suffixes]

2.) Terminating Suffixes (TS's):
- Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's) [imperative and subjunctive suffixes]
- Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's) [indicative suffixes]

Here are some **characteristics of the mood suffixes (MS)**:
1.) The MS's are always added as the **last suffix to the verb stem**.
2.) One verb stem can only have **one MS**.

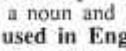
1.1.2.1.3.1 Determining Suffixes (DS's)

1.1.2.1.3.1.1 Noun Determining Suffixes (NDS's)

Because the NDS's are absent in the English language we will explain exactly what they are. However, there are be a few **parallels to the English** grammar.

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 Functions of NDS's

a) The **main function** of a NDS is **to bring a verb into a relationship with the succeeding noun**. In this function, the NDS serves as a verbal adjective to a noun and has the **form of a participle** in English. But these participles are **not commonly used in English** and therefore many such words have to be translated by means of an attribute clause.

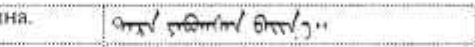
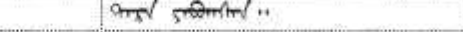
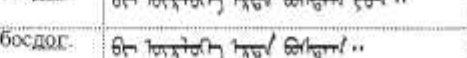
a	the person **who came** ("the **having come** person")	ирсэн хүн	
b	the snow **that falls** in spring ("the spring-fall**ing** snow")	хавар ордог цас	
c	the bag **which** Dorj **has** ("the with Dorj be**ing** bag")	Доржид байгаа цүнх	
d	the book **which I will read** ("my go**ing to** read book")	миний унших ном	
e	a **pupil** ("a learn**ing** [person]")	сурагч [хүн]	

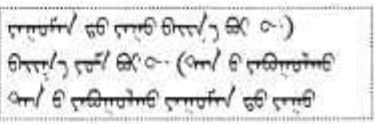
b) If a **verb with an NDS serves as a noun** (the original noun has been dropped), then this 'verbal noun' can fulfill **all the different functions of a noun in a sentence**:
- it can be **declined** (other suffixes can be added to it; see the following table with the *CS's*)
- it can be a **subject**
- it can be an **object**, etc.

Examples (NDS "–сан" declined with all ***case suffixes***):
The first sentence (**a**) shows the verb with a NDS and a following noun.
The second sentence (**b**) shows the verb with a NDS in the **function of a noun** (verbal noun)
Note **the CbP** "нь" which, in this instance, serves as a **noun marker.**

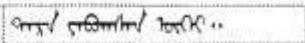
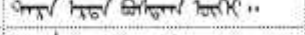
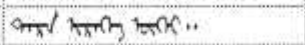
N a	A person **who came** from Germany will return tomorrow.	Германаас ирсэн нэг хүн маргааш буцна.
b	**The one who came** from Germany will return tomorrow.	Германаас ирсэн нь маргааш буцна.
G a	This is the bag *of* the person **who came** from Germany.	Германаас ирсэн хүний цүнх энэ байна.
b	This is the bag *of* **the one who came** from Germany.	Германаас ирснийх нь цүнх энэ байна.
D a	I provided a flat *for* the person **who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэн хүнд байр олж өгсөн.
b	I provided a flat *for* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэнд нь байр олж өгсөн.
A a	Do you know the person **who came** from Germany?	Германаас ирсэн хүнийг та таних уу?
b	Do you know **the one who came** from Germany?	Германаас ирснийг нь та таних уу?
A a	I bought this *from* the person **who had come** from Germany.	Би үүнийг Германаас ирсэн хүнээс худалдаж авсан.
b	I bought this *from* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Би үүнийг Германаас ирснээс нь худалдаж авсан.
I a	My friend sent me a letter *with* the person **who had come** from Germany. ("... sent a letter *through*...)	Миний найз Германаас ирсэн хүнээр надад захиа явуулсан.
b	My friend sent me a letter *with* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Миний найз Германаас ирснээр нь надад захиа явуулсан.
C a	I acquainted myself *with* a person **who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэн нэг хүнтэй танилцсан.
b	I acquainted myself *with* **the one who had come** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэнтэй нь танилцсан.

c) Contrary to verbs with TTS's, verbs with NDS's can be **followed by the *particle*** "юм" or by an **auxiliary verb** [e.g. "бай–"] (**ex. a,b,d,f,g**). This is an advantage because people's moods (**ex. b,d,f,g**) can be expressed. Some NDS's can take upon themselves the **terminating function of a TTS** (see pages 184-191).

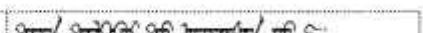
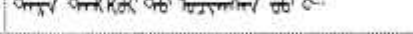
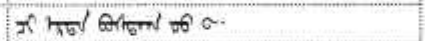
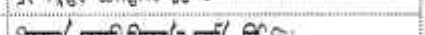
a	He **has left.**	Тэр явсан байна.	
b	He **left** *(indeed).*	Тэр явсан юм.	
c	He **left.**	Тэр явсан.	
d	I *really* get up early in the morning.	Би өглөө эрт босдог юм.	
e	I get up early in the morning.	Би өглөө эрт босдог.	
f	What do you have for drinks, *then*? (What do you have for drinks?)	Танайд уух юм юу байгаа юм бэ? (Танайд уух юм юу байна вэ?)	

g	What, ***then***, is in this thing you're sending? (What is in this thing you're sending?)	Таны явуулах юманд юу байгаа юм бэ? (Таны явуулах юманд юу байна вэ?)	

d) Contrary to the TTS's, ***negative particles*** can be added to verbs with an NDS. That's why most **negative sentences** are built with verbs having an NDS.

a	He did***n't*** go.	Тэр явсангүй.	
b	He does***n't*** get up early.	Тэр эрт босдоггүй.	
c	She has***n't*** come (yet).	Тэр ирээгүй.	
d	We won***'t*** go there.	Бид тэнд очихгүй.	

e) Similar to the negation, **interrogative forms** are usually built with verbs having an NDS to which an ***interrogative particle*** is added.

a	Did he come to the shop?	Тэр дэлгүүрт очсон уу?	
b	Do you get up early?	Чи эрт босдог уу?	
c	What, then, is there?	Тэнд юу байгаа юм бэ?	
d	Why hasn't she come?	Тэр яагаад ирээгүй байна вэ ?	
e	Will we go there together with him?	Бид түүнтэй хамт очих уу?	

f) Every simple sentence can be **turned into a complex sentence** by using NDS's. Theoretically, the number of nouns which exist equals the number of clauses which can be built.

a	Тэр жил үер болдоо. In that year **there was** a flood.	Үер болсон тэр жил олон хүн нас барав. • **In that year of the flood**, many people died. ("**In that year, when there was a flood,** many people died.")
b	Тэр хүн өглөө хоол идэв. That person **ate** breakfast in the morning.	Тэр хүний өглөө идсэн хоол сайхан байлаа. • **The breakfast that that person ate in the morning** was nice. Өглөө хоол идсэн тэр хүн онгоцоор ирсэн. • **The person, who had eaten the breakfast in the morning,** came by plane.
c	Дорж моринд өвс өгчээ. Dorj **gave** grass to the horse.	Доржийн өвс өгсөн морь надад таалагдав. • I liked **the horse that Dorj gave grass to.** Доржийн моринд өгсөн өвс их шимтэй. • **The grass that Dorj gave to the horse** is very nourishing. Моринд өвс өгсөн Дорж миний найз. • **Dorj, who gave the horse grass,** is my friend.
d	Тэр хоёр үйлдвэрт ажилладаг. Those two **work** in a factory.	Тэр хоёрын ажилладаг үйлдвэр маш том. • **The factory in which those two work** is very big.
e	Тогтох адуу малладаг. Togtokh **herds** horses.	Тогтохын малладаг адуу тарган байна. • **The horses which Togtokh herds** are fat.

f	Хавар цас орно. It **snows** in spring.	Хавар ордог цас хурдан хайлдаг. • **The snow falling in spring** melts fast. Цас ордог хавар та үзсэн үү? • Have you seen **a spring with snowfall?** ("Have you seen a snow-**falling** spring?")
g	Ах минь хөдөө явааа. My older brother **is traveling** in the countryside.	Хөдөө явааа ах минь надад захиа явуулсан. • **My older brother, who is traveling in the countryside,** sent me a letter.
h	Миний ном Доржид байгаа. Dorj has my book. ("My book **is** with Dorj.")	Доржид байгаа миний ном их сонирхолтой. • **My book, which Dorj has,** is very interesting. Миний ном байгаа Дорж германаар ярьдаг. • **Dorj, who has my book,** speaks German.
i	Тэр хүн машинд ачаа ачиж байна. That person **is loading** the truck.	Машинд ачаа ачиж байгаа тэр хүн хөдөөнөөс ирсэн. • **That person, who is loading the truck,** came from the countryside. Тэр хүний ачаа ачиж байгаа машин их хуучин юм. • **The truck, which that person is loading,** is really very old. Тэр хүний машинд ачиж байгаа ачаа юу вэ? • What's **the cargo that that person is loading on thetruck?**
j	Тэр морь унана. He **will ride** a horse.	Түүний унах морь их хурдан. • **The horse he will ride** is very fast.
k	Энэ хүн хөдөө явна. This person **will go** to the countryside.	Би хөдөө явах энэ хүнтэй уулзах хэрэгтэй. • I have to meet **the person going to the countryside.** Энэ хүний явах хөдөө их сонин газар. • **The rural aera that this person is going to** is a very interesting place.
l	Багш хичээл заана. The teacher **will teach** (lessons).	Багшийн заах хичээл хэзээ эхлэх вэ? • "When do **the lessons the teacher is going to teach** start?" Хичээл заах багш хаанаас ирсэн бэ? • Where did/does **the teacher who is going to teach** comefrom?
m	Бат сургуульд сурдаг. Bat **studies** at school.	Сургуульд сурагч Батыг би мэднэ. • I know the **Bat who studies at school.**
n	Тэр эмэгтэй амьтан сургадаг. That lady **trains** animals.	Амьтан сургагч тэр эмэгтэйтэй би уулзана. • I'll meet **that lady who trains animals.**

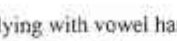
g) With the NDS's, many **different parts of speech** and many **clauses** can be constructed. Here is a selection of a few (for more see Part IV on pages 359ff).

subject clause (subject)	Чиний эрт ирсэн нь их сайн.	It's very good *that you **came** early.* ("Your *having come* early...")
predicate (see explanation under **c**)	Тэр явсан.	He **went.**
object clause - accusative - dative-locative	Онгоц хэзээ ирснийг та мэдэх үү? Таны ирсэнд би их баярлаж байна.	Do you know *when the plane **came**?* I'm very glad *that you **came**.*
adverbial clause - temporal (time) - causal (reason)	Тэр явснээс энэ ажил бүтсэнгүй. Бид явснээр юм өөрчлөгдсөнгүй.	*Since he **left**,* this work has not been progressing. Nothing changed *by us **having left**.*
attribute (attribute clause)	Хот орсон ах маань маргааш ирнэ.	Our older brother, *who **has gone** to town,* will come tomorrow.

h) The NDS's **relate to all three persons** in singular and plural and have **no special person endings**.

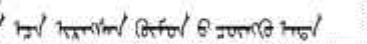
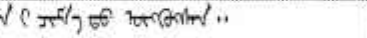
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.2 Past Tense NDS "-сан[4]"

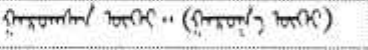
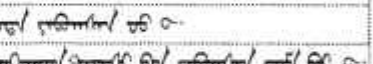
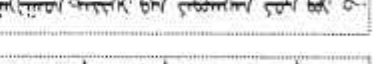
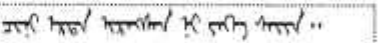
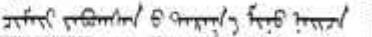
Cyrillic Rules:
-сан, -сон, -сэн, -сөн complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c,e**)

Explanations: [the small letters **a)** to **e)** refer to the points in the introduction to the NDS's]
1. This NDS expresses **past tense**.
a) It is very often used as a **verbal adjective** to the noun. In English, such sentences are best translated with a relative clause since **past participles** are not very commonly used (**ex. a**).
b) All □'s can be added (**ex. with case abbreviations: N-D**)
c) In modern Mongolian, this NDS appears very often at the **end of a sentence** and is used like a TTS (see pages 184-185 and **ex. b-f**).
It's often used together with particles (**ex. g**).
d) It can be used to build **negative sentences**, but only if the action happens against what is being expected. Usually, the NDS "-аа" (—> аагүй) is used (**ex. e**).
e) It's often used to build **interrogative sentences** (**ex. f,g**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Here is the bag of the person **who came** from Germany.	Германаас ирсэн хүний цүнх энд байна.	
b	He **went** there.	Тэр очсон.	
c	I **ate** breakfast this morning.	Би өглөө хоол идсэн.	
d	I **gave** this to you.	Би үүнийг чамд өгсөн.	
e	He **did**n't **go out**.	Тэр гарсангүй. (...гараагүй.)	
f	**Did** you **go** to town?	Чи хот явсан уу?	
g	Why, then, **did** you **go** there?	Чи яагаад тийшээ явсан юм бэ?	

N	It's good that you **came** early.	Чиний эрт ирсэн нь их сайн.	
G	After you **had left**, my friend came.	Чамайг явсны дараа миний найз ирсэн.	
D	I'm very glad that you **came**.	Таны ирсэнд би их баярлаж байна.	
A	Did you know that he **(had) left**?	Чи түүний явснаа мэдсэн үү?	
A	Since he **left**, this work hasn't been progressing.	Тэр явснаас энэ ажил бүтсэнгүй.	
I	Nothing changed by us **having left**.	Бид явснаар юм өөрчлөгдсөнгүй.	

C	Mongolia wasn't like I **had thought** it would be.	Монгол орон миний бодсон шиг адилгүй байсан.	[illegible]
D	You don't have to follow everything you **have seen**. (proverb)	Харагдсан зүйлээ хошуурах хэрэггүй.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.3 Indefinite Present NDS "-даг[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-даг, -дог, -дэг, -дөг complying with vowel harmony

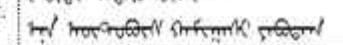
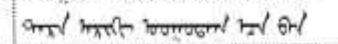
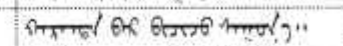
***Classical Rules*:**
[illegible] complying with vowel harmony

***Explanations*:** (the small letters refer to the points in the introduction to the NDS's)
1.) This NDS expresses an action of **indefinite time** [e.g. to live, to work] **(ex. b,c,g,h)** or an action which is **repeated (ex. a,d,e,f)**.
a) It can be compared with the **present participle**: **singing** children, working man, etc. **(ex.a)**.
b) All cases can be added **(ex. with case abbreviations: N-D)**.
c) Very often used as a TTS at the end of a sentence (see page 188 and **ex. b-h**).
d) Often used in **negative sentences (ex. f)**.
e) Very often used in **interrogative sentences (ex. g-h)**.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	In Ulaanbaatar there are many people **who smoke**.	Улаанбаатарт тамхи татдаг хүн олон бий.	[illegible]
b	My Mongolian friend **lives** in Ulaanbaatar.	Миний монгол найз Улаанбаатарт суудаг.	[illegible]
c	I **work** at the university.	Би их сургуульд ажилладаг.	[illegible]
d	Every morning I **get up** at 7 o'clock.	[illegible]
e	In summer it **gets** hot.	Зун халуун болдог.	[illegible]
f	I **don't work** on Sundays.	Би бүтэн сайн өдөр ажилладаггүй.	[illegible]
g	**Do** you **speak** German?	Та германаар ярьдаг уу?	[illegible]
h	What **do** you **call** this in Mongolian?	Үүнийг монголоор юу гэдэг вэ?	[illegible]

N	It's (very) right **to do** homework regularly.	Даалгавар тогтмол хийдэг нь маш зөв.	[illegible]
G	What's the reason that they (**always**) **leave** so early?	Тэд ийм эрт явдгийн учир юу вэ?	[illegible]
D	I'm glad that you (**always**) **help** me.	Таныг надад тусалдаг би баярладаг.	[illegible]

A	We don't know where this bus **goes**.	Энэ автобус хаашаа явдгийг бид мэдэхгүй.	
A	Because he **drinks** alcohol, he has become jobless.	Тэр архи уудгаасаа болоод ажилгүй болсон.	
I	I am writing with a pen or a pencil as I **usually do**.	Би бичдгээрээ л үзэг, харандаагаар бичиж сууна.	
C	I can read as well as you. ("I can read similar to your reading.")	Би чиний уншдаг шиг адил уншиж чадна.	
D	Go where it pleases you! ("Please go where you **always go**.")	Чи очдог руугаа очоорой.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.4 Progressive Present NDS "-аа[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-аа, -ээ, -оо, -өө complying with vowel harmony

(-гаа[4]) for verb stems ending with a **long vowel** or **diphthong**; because of the auxiliary verb "бай-", this form is very often used (**almost all examples**).

(-иа[2]) for verb stems ending with "-и" **or** "-ь" (**ex. l**)

***Classical Rules*:**

complying with vowel harmony

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. k**)

(= + = old forms)

***Explanations*:** (the small letters refer to the points in the introduction to the NDS's)

1.) This NDS expresses an action which **started in the past and is continuing into the present**, with the end time of the action not being defined.

2.) It is added to **a few full verbs** (e.g. "ява-", "суу-"; **ex. a,b**), particularly in poems.

3.) It usually appears together with the auxiliary verb "бай-" (**ex. d-h, N-D**).

a) Often used as a **verbal adjective**; equivalent to the **present participle** (progressive present) (**ex. f**)

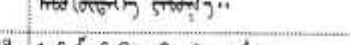
b) All CS's can be added (**ex. with case abbreviations: N-D**).

c) Often appears at the **end of the sentence** (with "бай-") (**ex. a-f**).
In colloquial language often used with **particles** (**ex. g,h**).

d) Very **widely used** in **negative sentences;** forming the **simple past** tense (**ex. i,j**).
In combination with the auxiliary verb "бай-", forming the **present perfect** tense (**ex. k**). But there is a tendency for the auxiliary verb to **drop** in the present tense.

e) If used in **interrogative sentences** then only as a **rhetorical** means [e.g. to start a conversation] (**ex. l,m**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	The father **is traveling** in the countryside.	Аав хөдөө явааа.	
b	My mother **lives** in the countryside. (lyrical)	Эж минь хөдөө суугаа.	
c	Dorj **has** my book. ("My book is with Dorj.")	Миний ном Доржид байгаа.	

d	My mother **is looking** after our children today.	Миний эзэж өнөөдөр манай хүүхдүүдийг харж байгаа.	··· ···
e	**I work** (at the moment) at the university.	Би их сургуульд ажиллаж байгаа.	··· ···
f	Do you know that person who **is coming**?	Та тэр ирж байгаа хүнийг таних уу?	··· ···
g	What do you **have** for drinks, then?	Танайд уух юм юу байгаа юм бэ?	··· ···
h	What, then, **is** in the thing you're sending?	Таны явуулах юманд юу байгаа юм бэ?	··· ···
i	No, I **didn't read** this book.	Үгүй, би энэ номыг уншаагүй.	··· ···
j	He **didn't decide**.	Тэр шийдээгүй.	···
k	He **hasn't gone** out.	Тэр гараагүй (байна).	··· ···
l	**Has** your friend **returned** home?	Чиний найз гэртээ хариа юу?	··· ···
m	**Did** you **get** a job? ("Have you entered into work?")	Чи ажилд орсоо юу?	··· ···

N	What you're **thinking** is wrong.	Чиний бодож байгаа буруу байна.	··· ···
G	I just found out the reason for what you're **talking** about.	Таны хэлж байгаа-[illegible] шалтгааныг би сая мэдлээ.	··· ···
D	One could envy you two for **being** so **happy**.	Та хоёрын ингэж жар галтай байгаа- хүн атаархмаар байна.	··· ···
A	Do you understand what I'**m saying**?	Та миний юу хэлж байгаа- ойлгож байна уу?	··· ···
A	Bat missed several hours of lessons only because of his bad health. ("Because of Bat's body **being** ill...")	Батын бие нь муу байгаа-аас л хэдэн цагийн хичээл тасалжээ.	··· ···
I	Not only **is** Dorj **working**, but he also studies at an evening school.	Дорж ажил хийж байгаа-аар барахгүй оройн сургуульд сурдаг.	··· ···
C	Let me try to adjust this to the one I'**m making**.	Би хийж байгаа-тайгаа үүнийг тааруулж үзье!	··· ···
D	It's better if you don't look at what you're **doing**.	Хийж байгаа-руугаа харахгүй бол сайн.	··· ···

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.5 Future NDS "–х"

Cyrillic Rules:

–х

Verb stems ending with a consonant **always** need an **inserted vowel** complying with vowel harmony (see page 25).

Classical Rules:

complying with vowel harmony

( ) = old forms

Explanations: [the small letters refer to the points in the introduction of the NDS's]

1.) This NDS expresses an action that will take place in the **future**.

2.) Some Mongolian grammars form the infinitive with this suffix (e.g. явах, хэлэх).

3.) This NDS combined with the CbP "нь" can be used as a predicate (at the end of a sentence), if the action can be **predicted** and **will happen soon** (**ex. k-o**).

4.) Very often used together with **modal constructions** (**ex. p-s**).

a) Can be used as **verbal adjective**: the book I'**m going to read** (**ex. a**).

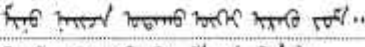
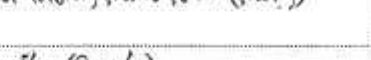
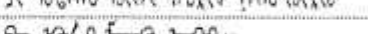
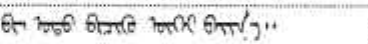
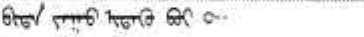
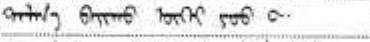
b) All CS's can be added (**ex. with abbreviations: N-D**).

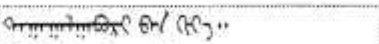
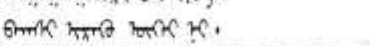
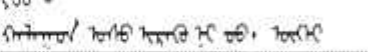
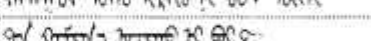
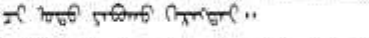
c) Never appears at the end of a declarative sentence without auxiliary verb or particle (**ex. b-d**) If the particle is not needed, it is much better to use the TTS "–на" (**ex. b-d**).

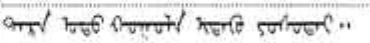
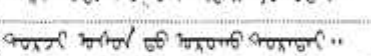
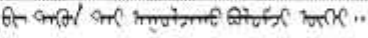
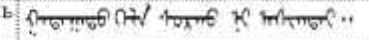
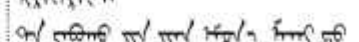
d) Very often used in **negative sentences** where it **replaces the Future-TTS** "–на" and the **present progressive tense** "–ж бай–" (**ex. e-h**).

e) Very often used in **interrogative sentences** where it replaces the TTS "–на" (**ex. h-j**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Now there is no work **to do**.	Одоо хийх ажил байхгүй.	
b	My friend **will** really **come** soon. (My friend will come soon.)	Миний найз удахгүй ирэх юм. (... ирнэ.)	
c	Surely I'll **go** to the countryside. (I'll go to the countryside.)	Би ходоо яваx юм. (... явна.)	
d	Soon you'll really **be** twenty years old. (Soon you'll be twenty.)	Чи удахгүй хорин нас хүрэх юм. (... хүрнэ.)	
e	I don't **know** this.	Би үүнийг мэдэхгүй.	
f	We **won't go** to town.	Бид хот яваxгүй.	
g	I'**m** not writ**ing**.	Би одоо бичиxгүй байна.	
h	What **will** we **eat**?	Бид юу идэx вэ?	
i	What **will** you **do**?	Чи одоо яаx вэ?	
j	**Isn't** there any bread?	Талх байхгүй юу?	
k	The lesson **is about to begin**; let's go quickly!	Хичээл ороx нь, түргэн явъя!	
l	**Isn't** the lesson **about to begin**?	Хичээл ороx нь уу?	

m	**It appears that** the teacher **isn't going to** come; let's do our homework!	Багш ирэхгүй нь, даалгавраа хийе!	
n	**Is** the hot water **about to come** or not?	Халуун ус ирэх нь үү, үгүй юу?	
o	Where **are** you **about to go**?	Та хаачих нь вэ?	
p	You have **to go** now.	Чи одоо явах хэрэгтэй.	
q	He must **eat** now.	Тэр одоо хоол идэх ёстой.	
r	Dorj likes taking showers. ("...**going** into the water.")	Дорж усанд орох дуртай.	
s	It's not possible for me **to meet** him.	Би түүнтэй уулзах боломжгүй.	

N	It's lucrative **to learn** a foreign language.	Гадаад хэл сурах нь ашигтай.	
G	Please come to my home before you **leave**.	Та явахынхаа өмнө манайд ирээрэй.	
D	Mongolians like it a lot when **it snows**.	Цас орохоос монголчуул их дуртай.	
A	Do you know when the plane **will come**?	Онгоц хэзээ ирэхийг та мэдэх үү?	
A	Don't be afraid of **going** to the countryside!	Чи хөдөө явахаас битгий ай!	
I	When you **read** at night, your eyes go bad. ("Because of nightly **reading**...")	Шөнө ном уншихаар нүд муудлаг.	
C	Please come to us when this lesson **is finished**. ("with the ending of this lesson")	Энэ хичээлийг дуусахтай хамт манайд очоорой.	
D	This work **is coming to an end.** (... is approaching to its ending.")	Энэ ажил дуусах дүүгээ дохож байна.	

The NDS "-х" in every day expressions:
Sometimes the verb with this NDS is used by today's people **like a noun**. This is because the original noun has been dropped. The meaning of the suffix relates more to **present** than future tense (like NDS "-даг").

Examples:

original expression:	today's **shortened** expression:	**English** expression:
сурах бичиг	сурах (to learn)	text book
лавлах товчоо	лавлах (to inquire)	information office
нисэх буудал	нисэх (to fly)	airport
цагдан сэргийлэх газар	цагдан сэргийлэх (to guard and prevent)	police
тооцоолон бодох тэв	тооцоолон бодох (to account and calculate)	statistical office
нягтлан бодох хүн	нягтлан (бодох) (examining carefully)	bookkeeper

1.1.2.1.3.1.1.6 "Doer" NDS "-гч"

This NDS is **quite different** from the previous four NDS's. This difference shall be accounted for here:

- It is **not tense-bound** like the other NDS's.
- The verb to which it is added is more ***noun-related*** than verb-related, in other words, a verb with this NDS has **almost lost its verbal function** being evident from the fact that often the genitive case is used.

төслийг удирда-	to lead a **project**	төслийн удирдагч	a project ***leader***
дэлгүүрийг эрхлэ-	to manage a **shop**	дэлгүүрийн эрхлэгч	a shop ***manager***

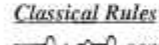
However, this doesn't mean that the genitive case is prevalent. There are verbs that keep their verbal function (and therefore *accusative case*) despite the use of this suffix. Unfortunately, there are **no clear rules** to determine which function (verb or ***noun***) is stronger.

шинийг санаачла-	to invent (**new things**)	шинийг санаачлагч	inventor
тоглолтыг үзэ-	to watch a **game**	тоглолтыг үзэгч	audience (singular)

Now we will present the suffix and its rules and examples:

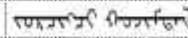
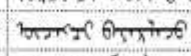
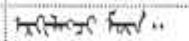
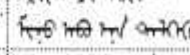
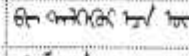
Cyrillic Rules:
-гч
Verb stems ending with a consonant need an **inserted vowel** complying with vowel harmony.

Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. g,h,j**)

Explanations: (the small letters refer to the points of the introduction to the NDS's)
1.) This suffix is similar to the English suffix '-er', which forms from a verb either the **activity/ profession** (to sing -> sing**er**, to build -> build**er**: **ex. a-c**) or the equivalent **agent**: to staple -> stapl**er**, to play -> tape play**er**, to carry -> carri**er**, etc. (**ex. d**).
2.) This NDS has become a **derivational suffix** (see page 44).
a) It is used as a **verbal adjective**, thus describing the kind of action the noun does (**ex. e-f**).
b) Because a verb with this NDS often has a noun function, declension **is very common** (**ex. with case abbreviations: N-D**).
c) Particles can only be added if the verb clearly has a noun function (**ex. g**).
d) The negation is done like a noun (**ex. h-j**).
e) Interrogation is done like a noun (**ex. k-l**).

Frequency: Written/Colloquial language: as a NDS not very often used, but **very often** used in noun function.

a	**The passenger** was late.	Зорчигч хожимдлоо.	
b	**The spectator** is rejoicing.	Үзэгч баярлаж байна.	
c	My father **is the manager** of this shop!	Миний аав энэ дэлгүүрийн эрхлэгч мөн.	
d	I bought **a stapler** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс үдэгч авав.	
e	I know this animal **trainer**. ("this animal-train**ing** man")	Би энэ амьтан сургагч эрэгтэйг мэднэ.	
f	The conference of female **inventors** took place. ("The new-thing-invent**ing** ladies")	Шинийг санаачлагч эмэгтэйчүүдийн чуулган болов.	

g	He really is **a pupil**	Тэр бол сурагч юм.	[illegible]
h	He is not **a pupil**.	Тэр сурагч биш.	[illegible]
i	I don't know a country without **a leader.**	Жолоодогчгүй улсыг би мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]
j	He went to the countryside without **a translator**.	Тэр орчуулагчгүй хөдөө явсан.	[illegible]
k	Should this **liar** be a lawyer?	Энэ худал яригч хуульч гэж үү?	[illegible]
l	Who is the **service station attendant**?("petrol distributor")	Шатахуун түгээгч хэн бэ?	[illegible]

N	**The passenger** was late.	Зорчигч хожимдлоо	[illegible]
G	Our people praise the work and deeds of this **servant/ waiter**.	Манайхан энэ үйлчлэгчийн ажил үйлсийг магтдаг.	[illegible]
D	Please give this to our **investigator**. ("person who finds out")	Үүнийг манай мөрдөн байцаагчид өгөөрэй!	[illegible]
A	I make **the** new **pupil** happy.	Би шинэ сурагчийг баярлуулдаг.	[illegible]
A	Did you ask **the film producer** about this?	Чи энэ тухай кино найруулагчаас асуув уу?	[illegible]
I	The teacher had that **pupil** of his draw something.	Багш нь тэр сурагчаа нэг юм зуруулав.	[illegible]
C	Yesterday I came with one of my **pupils**.	Би өчигдөр нэг сурагчтайгаа хамт ирсэн.	[illegible]
D	He looked angrily at the **prison warden**.	Тэр харгалзагч руу муухай харав.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.2 Adword Determining Suffixes (AwDS's)

The NDS's have the main function of linking a verb with a noun although this function is already weakened with the NDS "гч". The following adword determining suffixes have the main function of **linking a verb to an adword** (for definition of 'adword' see p. 211). But in today's speech, most of these **adwords are missing** because the context of the whole sentence is clear without them (e.g.: films **worthwhile seeing** are always ***nice*** films, thus the adword ***'nice'*** is dropped; something **which needs to be considered** is always ***important***, thus the adword ***'important'*** is dropped). This adword-dropping explains why some grammars consider these AwDS's to be NDS's or VDS's. As a matter of fact, after the adword is dropped, the verb seems to be linked to a noun or a verb, thus **serving as a NDS or a VDS**.
Examples will clarify this process as it might have developed:

1a Энэ бол үзмээр (сайхан) кино.
This is a (nice) film **worth seeing**.
1b Би үүнийг үзмээр (сайхан) санагдаж байна.
This seems to me **worth seeing** (beautiful).
2a Энэ уншихуйц (гоё) ном бололтой.
It appears to be a (nice) book **worth reading**.
2b Энэ мөнгө хөдөө явахад хүрэлцэхүйц (их) байсан.
This money was (big) **sufficient enough** to go to the countryside.
3a Энэ бол анхааруушгай (чухал) асуудал байна.
This is a (important) problem **that needs to be looked at.**
3b Тэр үүнийг анхааруушгай (чухал) санагдсан.
It seemed to him to be something (important) **that needed attention.**

We shall now look at these suffixes in view of **both functions**. Please keep in mind that the sentence structure is quite different from English. Therefore, we often needed to translate freely.

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Wish-AwDS "-маар⁴"

Cyrillic Rules:
-маар, -мээр, -моор, -мөөр complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a, i, o, p**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses a **wish or a desire that can be realized,** or an **intention**. It is stronger in its meaning than the expression "-х хүсэлтэй" and also indicates that someone does something **for a good reason**. It is very rarely used for the 2nd or 3rd person; only if someone passes on another person's statement (compare with **ex. s-t** and their remarks).
2.) In function of a **VDS**; only with a certain number of verbs (**ex. a-k**).
-negation (**ex. f-g,k**)
-interrogation (**ex. h-k**)
3.) In function of an **NDS** (**ex. l-t**).
-declined (**ex. p-r**)
-"...маар юм хэл-/ яръ-" [communicating another person's wishes] (**ex. s**).
4.) See also **modal constructions** (see pages 201-207).
5.) The auxiliary verb "бай-" isn't always needed (**ex. t**).

Frequency: Written/Colloquial language: together with "бай-" **very often**

a	I'**d like to learn** Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл сурмаар байна.	
b	We'**d like** something to **drink**.	Бид нэг юм уумаар байна.	

c	I **wanted to meet** you.	Би тантай уулзмаар байсан.	[illegible]
d	You **wanted to read** in the library yesterday, and did you?	Чи өчигдөр номын санд сууж ном уншмаар байна гэсэн, уншсан уу?	[illegible]
e	I'd **like to** (always) **review** the lessons together with you.	Би чамтай хамт хичээл давтмаар байдаг.	[illegible]
f	I don't **want to go** to the countryside this month.	Би энэ сар хөдөө явмааргүй байна.	[illegible]
g	I don't **want to call** now.	Би одоо утсаар ярьмааргүй байна.	[illegible]
h	**Would** you **like to drink** this tea?	Чи энэ цайг уумаар байна уу?	[illegible]
i	**Would** you **like to learn** Mongolian?	Чи монгол хэл сурмаар байна уу?	[illegible]
j	**Would** you **like to ask** anything else?	Чи өөр юм асуумаар байна уу?	[illegible]
k	Why on earth don't you ever **want to meet** him?	Чи яагаад түүнтэй уулзмааргүй байдаг юм бэ?	[illegible]
l	This is a book **worth reading**.	Энэ бол уншмаар ном байна.	[illegible]
m	My father is the kind of person that people **would like to have as a friend.**	Миний аав бол ханилмаар хүн.	[illegible]
n	This is indeed a yurt one **would like to live** in.	Энэ бол суумаар гэр мөн.	[illegible]
o	This is a coat one **would like to buy.**	Энэ бол худалдаж авмаар дээл.	[illegible]
p	Out of all this meat, this is the (part) which people **would like to buy**.	Энэ олон махнаас авмаар нь энэ байна.	[illegible]
q	Among all those blouses, I looked at those which **would fit** me.	Би тэр олон цамцнаас биедээ таармаар нь үзлээ.	[illegible]
r	Please get married to the one of your three friends who **suits** you most.	Та тэр гурван найзынхаа аль таармаартай нь суугаарай!	[illegible]
s	My friend **talked about wanting to go** to the countryside this summer.	Миний найз зун хөдөө явмаар юм ярьсан.	[illegible]
t	When looking at him from the outside, one **would think** that he's an angry person.	Түүний гаднаас нь харахад их ууртай хүн гэж бодмоор.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.2 Possibility-AwDS "-хуйц²"

Cyrillic Rules:
-хуйц, -хүйц complying with vowel harmony
With verb stems ending with a consonant, the **inserted vowel** is needed.

Classical Rules:
[illegible] + [illegible] complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses that an **action is possible and feasible**, yet it's not clear whether the action will happen or not.
2.) In function of an **NDS (ex. a-g)**
-declined **(ex. f-g)**
3.) In function of a **VDS (ex. h-j)**
4.) See also **modal constructions** (pages 201-207)

Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	This is really a work we **could be proud of.**	Энэ бол бидний бахархахуйц хөдөлмөр мөн.	[illegible]
b	This is a job I **could do.**	Энэ бол миний чадахуйц ажил байна.	[illegible]
c	Where is a person who **could do** this?	Үүнийг хийж чадахуйц хүн хаана байна вэ?	[illegible]
d	Do you have the ability to know this?	Танд үүнийг мэдэхүйц чадвар байгаа юу?	[illegible]
e	That is definitely not a problem that **deserves attention.**	Тэр бол анхаарахуйц асуудал огт биш.	[illegible]
f	Out of those youths, let the ones wrestle who **can.**	Тэдгээр залуучуудаас барилдаж чадахуйцыг нь барилдуул!	[illegible]
g	Please cut with one of the many knives that **cut.**	Олон хутганы дахуйцаар нь огтлооч.	[illegible]
h	It seems that English is a language that **can be learned.**	Англи хэлийг сурч болохуйц санагддаг.	[illegible]
i	We have so much food reserves that it's **sufficient.**	Бидэнд хүнсний нөөц хүрэлцэхүйц байгаа.	[illegible]
j	I have become **able to** talk with any Mongolian person.	Би ямар ч монгол хүнтэй ярьж чадахуйц болсон.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.3 Necessity-AwDS "-уушта́й[2]"

Cyrillic Rules:

-уушта́й, үүштэ́й complying with vowel harmony
(-гуушта́й[2]) for verb stems ending with **long vowel** or **diphthong** (**ex. d**)
(-иушта́й) for verb stems ending with "и "or "ь"

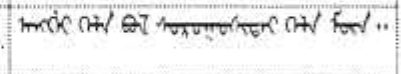
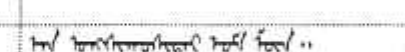
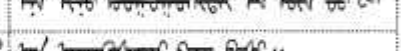
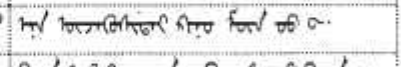
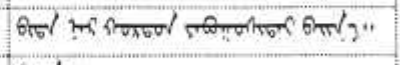
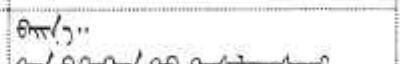
Classical Rules:

complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. b,i**)

Explanations:

1.) This suffix is similar to the AwDS "-хуйц". Also, with this suffix, it isn't clear whether the action will happen or not. The only statement is that the **action should be done**. It's **worth doing it.**
2.) In function of an **NDS (ex. a-f)**
3.) In function of a **VDS (ex. g-j)**
4.) We could look at the AwDS "-шгүй" as a short version of this suffix being used for the negation. It is explained on the next page.

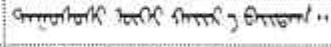
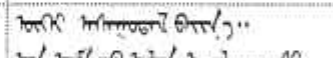
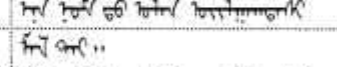
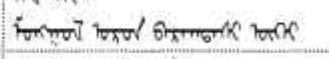
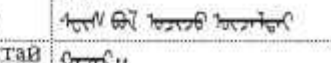
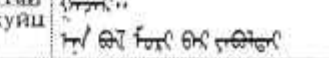
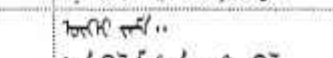
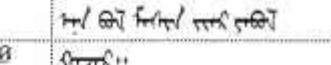
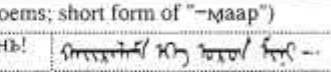
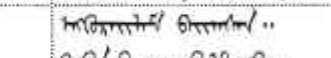
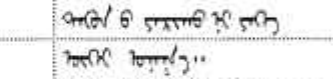
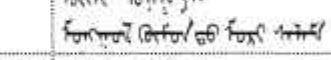
Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	That's indeed a problem that you **should** pay attention to.	Та үүнийг анхаарч үзүүштэй асуудал мөн.	
b	English is indeed a language that one **should** learn.	Англи хэл бол суруушта́й хэл мөн.	
c	This is a book one really **should** read.	Энэ уншуушта́й ном мөн.	
d	Is this really the medicine I **have to** take?	Энэ миний уугуушта́й эм мөн үү?	
e	This is not a film that one **should** watch.	Энэ үзүүштэ́й кино биш.	
f	Is this really a film that one **has to** watch?	Энэ үзүүштэ́й кино мөн үү?	
g	We **should** go quickly.	Бид нар хурдан явуушта́й байна.	
h	(Someone) **should** help your child.	Таны хүүхдэд туслуушта́й байна.	
i	We thought that this **should** be decided.	Бид үүнийг шийдүүштэ́й гэж бодож байсан.	
j	It seemed to us that one **should** travel through the countryside.	Бидэнд хөдөө нутгаар явуушта́й санагдсан.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.2.4 Other AwDS's "–шгүй", "–лтай[3]", "–лгүй", "–м", "–мгүй"

There are some other AwDS's as well. The difference between such an AwDS and a derivational suffix is rather small. That's the reason why some people consider them as **derivational suffixes**. Both approaches seem to be justified. We list these suffixes here for the sake of completeness. Even for Mongolians it is difficult to make out the little shades of meaning.

Examples: (N= in function of an NDS; V= in function of a VDS)

1.) Suffix "–шгүй" = (Short negative form of "–уушгай")			
N	There is **never-ending** love.	Дуусашгүй хайр байдаг.	
N	In this book there are many **incomprehensible** questions.	Энэ номонд олон ойлгогдошгүй асуудал байна.	
N	Mongolia has **endless** livestock.	Монгол орон барагдашгүй малтай.	
V	We love our motherland **beyond all measure.**	Бид эх орноо хязгаар-лашгүй хайрладаг.	
2.) Suffixes "–лтэй"/"–лтгүй" =			
N	Switzerland is a country that's **worth** travelling to and seeing.	Швейцарь бол очиж үзэлтэй орон. (similar to үзүүштэй)	
N	This is an area where one **should** go on horseback.	Энэ бол морио явалтай газар. (similar to "явахуйц / явуушгай")	
N	This is a way where it's **almost impossible** to go by car.	Энэ бол машинаар яваллтгүй зам. (inserted "т")	
N	Moscow is a place one **shouldn't** go to.	Москва бол очилтгүй газар. (inserted "т")	
V	It seems that one **shouldn't** eat fish every day.	Загасны махыг өдөр бүр идэлтгүй санагддаг.	
3.) Suffixes "–м/–мгүй" = (especially in poems; short form of "–маар")			
N	My **be**loved motherland!	Хайрлам эх орон минь!	
V	His talking was very cute.	Түүний ярих нь их энхрийлэм байсан.	
N	For Mongolians, horses are a means of transport **they wouldn't want to be without**.	Монгол хүнд морь саламгүй унаа.	
N	One has to make use of this opportunity; it **won't come again**.	Энэ олдомгүй болом-жийг ашиглах хэрэгтэй. (similar to "олдошгүй")	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3 Verb Determining Suffixes (VDS's)

Here are some **characteristics:**

1.) The VDS's, traditionally called converb suffixes, are verb forms **not standing at the end of the sentences** (as predicates), but verb forms which are **connected or somehow linked with another verb** (=main verb of sentence, predicate). The VDS's link verbs with verbs and **build V-V-syntagmas**. Linking doesn't mean that one verb must immediately follow the other:

linked verbs **adjacent**	гүйж ирэ⁻ хүлээн ав⁻	run + come = to come running wait + take = to receive ("waitingly take")
linked verbs **not adjacent**	ирвэл ... ярь⁻ ирмэгц ... мэндлэ⁻иртэл ... унши⁻	if come ... talk as soon as come ... greet until come ... read

2.) The VDS's on their own **cannot build the predicate** of a finite sentence.

3.) The VDS's **don't** usually **express a tense**. The tense in which the action happens is dependent upon the TTS's (=Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes; see pages 184-191).

1a Yesterday I **got up** at 7 o'clock and brought my mother some tea.
1b Өчигдөр би 7 цагт босч, ээждээ цай аваачиж өгөв.
1c [illegible]

2a Tomorrow I'll **get up** at 7 o'clock and bring my mother some tea.
2b Маргааш би 7 цагт босч, ээждээ цай аваачиж өгнө.
2c [illegible]

4.) Usually, negative particles are added to the predicate at the end of a sentence and not to the VDS's. However, if the sentence structure demands a **negation of the VDS's**, the negative particles "эс" **or** "үл" are used (see pages 332-333).

5.) The VDS's refer to **all persons** singular and plural.

The VDS's can be **divided** into the following **2 groups**:

Groups	**Action(s):**	**Sentence structure:**	**English examples:**
Coordina-ting VDS (cVDS) ⁻ж ⁻н ⁻аад	Neither of the two actions is more important than the other, neither one is subordinated. Only in the temporal aspect is there a certain subsequence.	The verb with the cVDS is situated in the middle of the (Mongolian!) sentence. **cVDS's build compound sentences.**	He **washes** his car and **drives** away. I **got up** and **ate** breakfast. I **went** away **thinking** about his answer.
Subordi-nating VDS's (sVDS's) all others	The action of the main sentence is described by the action of the subordinated clause sentence. The clause sentence expresses the circumstances under which the main action happens.	The verb with the sVDS is situated in the middle of the (Mongolian) sentence and forms the **predicate of the clause sentence**. **sVDS's build complex sentences.**	As soon as he **came** I **called** my dad. **If** you **need** me, please **come over**. You **have to wait until** she **comes**.

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Coordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (cVDS's)

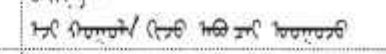
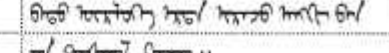
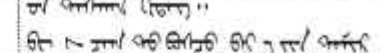
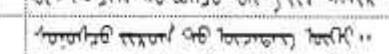
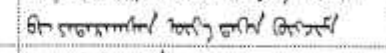
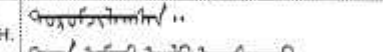
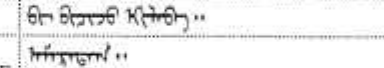
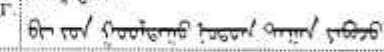
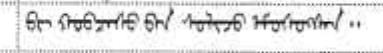
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.1 Simultaneous cVDS "–ж/–ч"

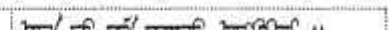
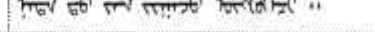
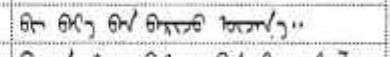
Cyrillic Rules:
–ж/–ч complying with orthographic rules (see pages 28-29)

Classical Rules:
for verb stems ending with '**namilang**' or **vowels**
for verb stems ending with '**bagarasada**' (**ex. c,d**)

Explanations:
1.) Two actions happen **parallel** to each other. That could mean **simultaneously** or, like the VDS "–аад", **in succession**. When one follows the other then they are **not so closely linked** as they would be with the VDS "–аад" (**ex. a-c**).
2.) If the main verb is already **negated** then the verb with the VDS is automatically negated as well (**ex. d**). If only the action which is expressed with the VDS needs to be negated, this can be done with the **negative particles** "эс" **or** "үл".(**ex. e**).
3.) This VDS is used **to link two verbs** which complement each other's meanings (**ex. f-h**).
4.) Often used with **auxiliary verbs** and **modifying verbs** (**ex. i-o**).
"–ж бай–" expresses the **progressive aspect**; compare with page 136 (**ex. i-j**).
5.) In order to express that the action continues and that one is a bit fed up with that, the verb can be **repeated** (**ex. p-q**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	Mother **is cooking**, Father is drinking tea.	Ээж хоол хийж, аав цай ууж байна.	
b	Bat **came** early in the morning and cleaned his classroom.	Бат өглөө эрт ирж ангиа цэвэрлэжээ.	
c	I **usually get up** at 7 o'clock and do morning exercises.	Би 7 цагт босч биеийн тамирын дасгал хийдэг.	
d	When I'm tired I **don't listen** to music and don't watch TV.	Би ядарсан үедээ хөгжим сонсож зурагт үздэггүй.	
e	He ***dis*regarded** and humiliated me.	Тэр намайг үл ойшоож доромжилсон.	
f	I began **to write**.	Би бичиж эхлэв.	
g	In summer, I mainly **go** to my homeland and rest.	Би зун голдуу нутагтаа явж амардаг.	
h	I **changed** my clothes.	Би хувцаа сольж өмссөн.	
i	I **live** well in Mongolia.	Би Монголд сайхан амьдарч байна	
j	We **used to live** here.	Бид энд суудаг байсан.	
k	You may **go**.	Та явж болно.	
l	I can't **come**.	Би ирж чадахгүй.	

m	Please **show** me the way! ("showingly give")	Надад зам заажж өгөөч.	
n	I copied this.	Би үүнийг бичиж авсан.	
o	I'll try to **control** myself.	Би биеэ барьж үзнэ.	
p	It **raines and rained**, and a short while ago it stopped.	Бороо орж орж сая зогслоо.	
q	He **talked and talked** about this and left.	Тэр энэ тухай ярьж ярьж явсан.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.2 Associative cVDS "-н"

Cyrillic Rules:

-н

Verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign need an **inserted vowel** complying with vowel harmony.

Classical Rules:

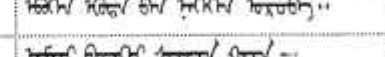
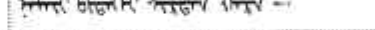
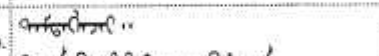
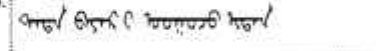
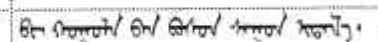
-/

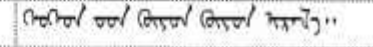
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. e-f**)

Explanations:

1.) The action expressed with this VDS **happens right before** the second action and is closely linked with it (**ex. a-b**).
2.) The action expressed with this VDS happens at the **same time** as the second action, like in English 'to come runn**ing**' (**ex. c-g**).
3.) This suffix **linkes two very similar verbs**. Such a combination often leads to a new meaning, a **new verb** (**ex. h-i**).
4.) A verb with this VDS can be **repeatedly used** (**ex. j-k**).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	I **turned off** the light and lay down.	Би чийдэнгээ унтраан хэвтлээ.	
b	The old man **opened** the door and entered.	Өвгөн үүдээ нээн оров.	
c	Don't **stare** at me! ("staringly look")	Намайг битгий ширтэн хар!	
d	They celebrated the feast with **eating** and drinking. ("eatingly and drinkingly celebrate")	Тэд баярыг ууж идэн тэмдэглэжээ.	
e	I ate my meal half-**standing** and half-**sitting**.	Би хоолоо босон суун идлээ.	
f	The child ran up to me **crying** and **waving**.	Хүүхэд над руу хашгиран даллан гүйлээ.	
g	He sits **pondering**.	Тэр бодлогошрон суугаа.	
h	I **received** a gift. ("to get **waitingly**")	Би бэлэг хүлээн авсан.	
i	I bought a book. ("to take **bargaining**")	Би ном худалдан авав.	

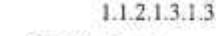
j	The children came **running**.	Хүүхдүүд гүйн гүйн ирлээ.	
k	Bat weeps as he **keeps looking** at his mother.	Бат ээжийгээ харан харан уйлна.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.3 Anterior cVDS "-аад[4]"

Cyrillic Rules:

-аад, -ээд, -оод, -өөд	complying with vowel harmony
(-иад[2])	for verb stems ending with :-и" **or** "-ь" **(ex. f)**
(-гаад[4])	for verb stems ending with **long vowels** or **diphthongs (ex. e)**

Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,c,d**)

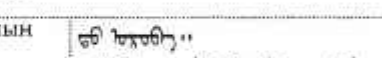
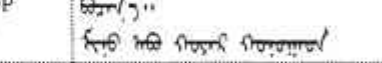
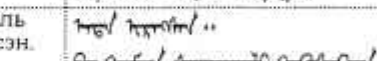
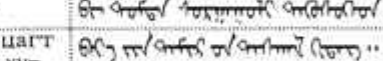
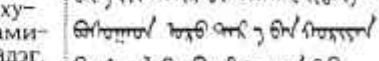
Explanations:

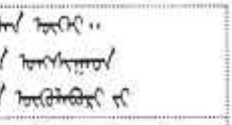
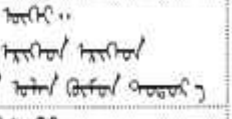
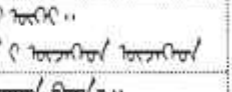
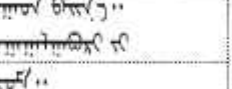
1.) The action expressed with this VDS happens **before the main action**. The main action is like a follow-up of the first action. That's why one could translate **"and then"** or even "after". The problem with the translation 'after...' is that it produces structurally a clause sentence, whereas in Mongolian it isn't a complex, but a **compound sentence** (see explanations on page 156).

2.) A verb with this VDS can be **used repeatedly**, thus expressing that the action continues , but without a satisfactory result. Therefore this structure is always used in negation (**ex. g-i**).

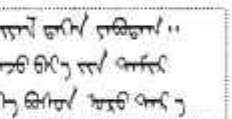
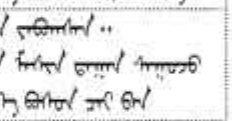
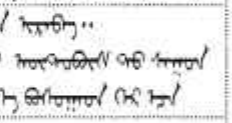
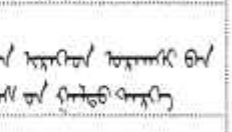
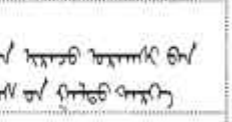
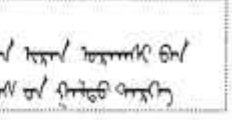
3.) Together with the AsS "-чих" and the auxiliary verb "бай-" this suffix expresses the **perfect aspect**. Compare with page 137 (**ex. j-k**).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Mother **got up and** walked into the kitchen.	Ээж босоод галын өрөөнд оров.	
b	My father will return in 2 days. ("My father **will pass 2 nights and then** return.")	Миний аав хоёр хоносод буцна.	
c	I **graduated** from middle school **and then** came here.	Би дунд сургууль төгсөөд энд ирсэн.	
d	I **get up** every morning at 7 o'clock, **and then** I make my bed and do exercises.	Би өглөө бүр 7 цагт босоод ор дэрээ хураан биеийн тамирын дасгал хийдэг.	
e	After that, I wash myself, **have breakfast, and then** I go to school. ("тэгээд" = 'I **do so and then**')	Тэгээд гар нүүрээ угааж цайгаа уугаад хичээлдээ явдаг.	
f	Dorj **took** his vacation, **went home**, and returned here **after** 10 days. ("...after having spent 10 days...")	Дорж амралтаа аваад гэртээ хариад арваад хоносод иржээ.	

g	Dorj **read** this sentence **again and again** *without* understanding it.	Дорж энэ өгүүлбэрийг уншаад уншаад ойлгосонгүй.	
h	Bat **kept searching** for his younger brother among all those people, but could*n't* find him.	Бат тэр олон хүн дотор дүүгээ эрээд эрээд олсонгүй.	
i	Even if **he looks at** this **again and again**, he won't understand it.	Тэр үүнийг үзээд үзээд ойлгохгүй.	
j	**I have reviewed** this homework.	Би энэ даалгаврыг давтчихаад байна.	
k	**I had found** this book.	Би энэ номыг олчихоод байсан.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.4 Comparison of cVDS's

a	**I get up** in the mornings, **make** my bed, **do** exercises, **and then** go to school.	Би өглөө босоо ор дэрээ хураажж биеийн тамир хийгээд хичээлдээ явдаг.	
b	**I got up** in the morning, **had** breakfast, **and then** drove to work. ("go to work **sitting** in a car")	Би өглөө босоо цайгаа уугаад машиндаа сууж ажилдаа явсан.	
c	**I got up** in the morning, (**and then** I) **left** my house, **took** a bus, and arrived at my work.	Би өглөө босоод гэрээсээ гарч автобусанд суун ажилдаа ирэв.	
e	The international train **will come** from the north (Russia) **and then** go to the south (China).	Олон улсын галт тэрэг хойноос ирээд урагшаа явна.	
f	The international train **comes** from the north (Russia) **and** goes to the south (China).	Олон улсын галт тэрэг хойноос ирж урагшаа явдаг.	
g	The international train **comes** from the north (Russia) **and continues on** to the south (China).	Олон улсын галт тэрэг хойноос ирэн урагшаа явна.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2 Subordinating Verb Determining Suffixes (sVDS's)

The sVDS's can be characterized as follows:

1.) The circumstances under which an action happens are expressed with an sVDS in Mongolian, but **in English, extra words** like 'although', 'as soon as', 'since', 'in order to', etc." are used to express such circumstances.

2.) With sVDS's, as the word already indicates, we always have a **subordination** and therefore these suffixes build **complex sentences**. The subject of the clauses can be in **nominative, accusative or genitive case** (see explanations on page 392-394 and page 89: hierarchy list).

c) To some sVDS's the **reflexive suffix** (see p. 108) can be added. This is always the case when the subject in the main sentence and the subject in the clause are identical (see page 392).

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.1 Conditional sVDS "–бал[4], –вал[4]"

Cyrillic Rules:

–вал, –вол, –вэл, –вөл	complying with vowel harmony
–бал, –бол, –бэл, –бөл	for verb stems ending with the **consonants** "в/ л/ м" (**ex. e,g,h,k**)
(–баас[4], –ваас[4])	(equivalent to the classical suffix ᠪᠠᠰᠤ, which is used in modern Mongolian to express a highly traditional style of writing)

Classical Rules:

ᠪᠠᠯ	complying with vowel harmony
(ᠮᠠᠨᠳᠤ · ᠪᠠᠨᠳᠤ)	old forms
(ᠪᠠᠰᠤ)	parallel form

Explanations:

1.) This suffix can be translated as **'when'**, if **general conditional statements** are made. In this case, it's mainly used in the **indefinite present time** and is similar to the conjunction "–хад" (see **ex. a-e** and page 315).

2.) It can be translated as **'if, in case'** for clauses which express the condition under which the main action happens. In this function it is mainly used in imperative or future sentences (**ex. f-k**).

3.) For **all other sentences** (past tense, negation, subjunctive, etc.), the **conditional particle** "бол" must be used (see pages 342-343).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	**When** the electricity **is cut**, a candle is lit.	Тог тасарвал лаа асаадаг.	ᠲᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠲᠠᠰᠠᠷᠪᠠᠯ ᠯᠠ᠎ᠠ ᠠᠰᠠᠭᠠᠳᠠᠭ᠃
b	**When** it **rains** cats and dogs, there are floods.	Ширүүн бороо орвол үер болдог.	ᠰᠢᠷᠦᠦᠨ᠃ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ᠎ᠨ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠭᠤᠳᠠᠭ
c	**When** you **meet** herdsmen, you talk about livestock.	Малчин хүнтэй уулзвал малын тухай ярьдаг.	ᠲᠠ᠃ ᠮᠠᠯᠴᠢᠨ ᠬᠦᠨᠲᠡᠶ᠃ ᠬᠣᠯᠪᠣᠭᠳᠠᠵᠤ ᠪᠤᠢ ᠮᠠᠯᠴᠢᠨ ᠤ ᠬᠣᠨᠢᠨ
d	**When** people **carry** heavy loads, they become strong.	Хүнд ачаа оргөвөл хүчтэй болно.	ᠬᠦᠴᠦᠳᠡᠢ᠃ ᠬᠦᠴᠦᠲᠡᠢ ᠬᠤᠮᠤᠨ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠯᠤᠨ
e	**When** you **start** a job, you have to finish it.	Ажил эхэлбэл дуусгах хэрэгтэй.	ᠠᠵᠢᠯ ᠡᠬᠡᠯᠪᠡᠯ ᠳᠠᠭᠤᠰᠭᠠᠬᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠃

f	**If** Dad **comes**, we'll eat together.	Аавыг ирвэл бид хамт хоол иднэ.	[illegible]
g	**If** I **buy** this bike, I won't go by bus.	Энэ дугуйг авбал би автобусаар явахгүй.	[illegible]
h	**If** you **find** a bag, please give it to me.	Цүнх олбол надад өгөөрэй.	[illegible]
i	**If** any problem arises, please come to my home.	Ямар нэгэн бэрхшээл гарвал манайд очоорой.	[illegible]
j	Is it OK like this? ("Am (I) allowed to **do it this way**?")	Ингэвэл болох уу?	[illegible]
k	How much interest do I get **if** I **invest** money with you?	Би танайд мөнгө хадгалуулбал хичнээн хүү авах вэ?	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.2 Concessive sVDS "-вч"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-вч

For verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign, **the inserted vowel** is necessary.

***Classical Rules*:**

~~-бчбэ~~

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix can be translated as '**although, though**' and expresses that the action in the main sentence happens **despite the circumstances** mentioned in the clause sentence.

2.) It's usually added to **full verbs**, if the main sentence is in a present or future tense (**ex. a-i**), otherwise **auxiliary verbs** must be used:
- a) NDS [e.g. past tense] (**ex. j-k,o,p,s**)
- b) Negation (**ex. k,n**)
- c) Nouns (**ex. m,q**)
- d) Adjectives (**ex. l,r**)

3.) The following **auxiliary verbs** are used:
"бол-"--> "боловч" [most common, can be used for "авч" or "гэвч"] (**ex.j-n**)
"а-" --> "авч" [only in poems and for personal feelings; old form of "бай-"] (**ex. o-q**)
"гэ-" --> "гэвч" [rare] (**ex. r,s**)

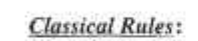
***Frequency*:** Written language: **often** in the form "боловч"
Colloquial language: **often** in the form "боловч"

a	**Although** Dorj **is leaving** now, he won't get home today.	Дорж одоо явавч өнөөдөр гэртээ хүрэхгүй.	[illegible]
b	**No matter** how much you **stare** in this direction, you won't see your beloved husband. ("...your beloved husband will not be seen.")	Тэр зүг хичнээн ширтэвч амраг нөхөр чинь харагдахгүй.	[illegible]
c	**Although it snows** in Mongolia in September, it's not cold.	Монголд 9-р сард цас оровч галаа хүйтэн биш.	[illegible]

d	**Even though** you **have gra-duated** from school, you al-ways have to increase your knowledge and education.	Та нар сургуулиа төг-сөвч мэдлэг боловсро-лоо ямагт дээшлүүлж байх ёстой.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠠᠭᠤᠯᢈᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠰᢈᠡᠪᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢᠯᠠᠯ ᠲᠤᠭᠤᠰᠤᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠠᠭᠤᠷᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠠᠭᠰᠢᠯᠠᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠨ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠯᠭᠡ ᠨᠡᠮᠡᠭᠳᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠬᠤ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ
e	**Even when** he **gets** a cold, he doesn't take medicine.	Тэр ханиад хүрэвч эм уудаггүй.	ᠬᠠᠨᠢᠠᠳ ᠬᠦᠷᠡᠪᠴᠢ ᠡᠮ ᠤᠤᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠃
f	**Even when** he **is angry**, he doesn't quarrel with people.	Тэр уурлавч хүнтэй хэрэлддэггүй.	ᠬᠤᠤᠷᠯᠠᠪᠴᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠲᠡᠢ ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠯᠳᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠭᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠃
g	**Even when** his work **is over** for the day, he doesn't go home.	Тэр ажлаа таравч гэртээ харьдаггүй.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠠᠠ ᠲᠠᠷᠠᠪᠴᠢ ᠭᠡᠷᠲᠡᠭᠡ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠃
h	**No matter** how much we **hurry**, this will not be finished today.	Бид хичнээн яаравч энэ өнөөдөр дуусахгүй.	ᠪᠢᠳ ᠬᠢᠴᠢᠨᠡᠭᠡᠨ ᠶᠠᠭᠠᠷᠪᠴᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠥᠨᠥᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠳᠤᠤᠰᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠃
i	At my home there is an axe, but it has no handle; there is a knife, but it's blunt. ("**Although** there **is** an axe, it has no handle...")	Манайд сүх байвч ишгүй, хутга байвч мохоо доо.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠢ ᠭᠡᠷ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠲ ᠬᠤᠤᠯᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠪᠡᠷᠬᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠬᠤᠤᠯᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃
j	**Although** the weather* is nice, Tsetseg can't go walking today. (*"sky")	Тэнгэр сайхан байгаа боловч Цэцэг өнөөдөр зугаалж чадахгүй.	ᠲᠡᠩᠭᠡᠷ ᠰᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠭᠠᠠ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠴᠡᠴᠡᠭ ᠡᠨᠡᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠵᠤᠭᠠᠯᠠᠵᠤ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠃
k	**Although** he **didn't talk** to me about this, I knew it.	Тэр надад энэ тухай яриагүй боловч би мэдсэн.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠭᠤᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠪᠡ ᠃
l	**Although** Tuya **has** a lot of work, she studies Russian.	Туяа ажил ихтэй боловч орос хэл сурч байна.	ᠲᠤᠶᠠ ᠠᠵᠢᠯ ᠢᠬᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠣᠷᠣᠰ ᠬᠡᠯ ᠰᠤᠷᠴ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃
m	**Although** he **is** an English teacher, he speaks poor English.	Тэр англи хэлний багш боловч англиар муу ярьдаг.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠠᠩᠭᠯᠢ ᠬᠡᠯᠨᠢᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠠᠩᠭᠯᠢᠠᠷ ᠮᠤᠤ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭ ᠃
n	**Although** he **isn't sick**, he isn't coming to work.	Тэр өвчтэй биш боловч ажилдаа ирэхгүй байна.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠥᠪᠴᠢᠲᠡᠢ ᠪᠢᠰᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠳᠠᠭᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃
o	**Although** the guest **will arrive** tomorrow, a flat hasn't been found.	Зочин маргааш ирэх авч байр олоогүй байна.	ᠵᠤᠴᠢᠨ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠭᠰᠢ ᠢᠷᠡᠬ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠷ ᠣᠯᠤᠭᠤᠢ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃
p	**Although** the (first) summer month **has come**, it's still cool.	Зуны сар гарсан авч зэврүүн л байна.	ᠵᠤᠨᠤ ᠰᠠᠷ ᠭᠠᠷᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠵᠡᠪᠷᠦᠦᠨ ᠯ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠃
q	**Although** I'm *Mongolian*, I didn't understand this.	Би монгол хүн авч үүнийг ойлгосонгүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠡᠨᠡᠶᠢᠨ᠎ᠡ ᠣᠶᠢᠯᠭᠣᠵᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨᠭᠦᠢ ᠃
r	An 'ail' where people don't ride **although** they **have** *horses* and don't milk **although** they **have** *cows*, is probably rare.	Морьтой гэвч унадаггүй, үнээтэй гэвч саадаггүй айл ховор байхаа.	ᠮᠣᠷᠢᠲᠠᠢ ᠬᠡᠪᠴᠢ ᠤᠨᠠᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠂ ᠦᠨᠡᠡᠲᠡᠢ ᠭᠡᠪᠴᠢ ᠰᠠᠭᠠᠳᠠᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠠᠢᠯ ᠬᠣᠪᠣᠷ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠ ᠠ ᠃
s	**Although** Tuya **plays an instrument** well, she can't sing.	Туяа сайхан хөгжимд-дөг гэвч дуулж чаддаггүй.	ᠲᠤᠶᠠ ᠬᠥᠭᠵᠢᠮ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠤᠭᠤᠯᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠴᠢ ᠳᠤᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠴᠠᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠃

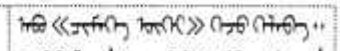
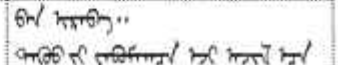
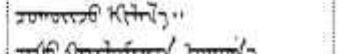
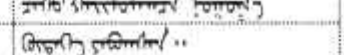
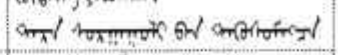
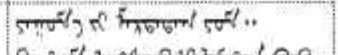
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.3 Immediately Succeeding sVDS "-магц[4]"

Cyrillic Rules:
-магц, -могц, -мэгц, -мөгц complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,d,e,i**)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix is usually translated as '**as soon as**' or '**just as**' and expresses that the main action happens **immediately after** the action in the clause sentence. The action of the clause sentence is always finished (similar to the sVDS "-нгуут"; see page 170).
2.) This suffix is most commonly used for **past** and **indefinite present tenses**, rarely for the future.

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	**As soon as** my younger sister and I **screamed**, Dad said, "Be quiet!"	Дүү бид хоёрыг хашгирмагц аав «Чимээгүй» гэж хэлэв.	
b	**Just after** (my) younger brother **left**, Mother came from work.	Дүүг явмагц ээж ажлаасаа ирэв.	
c	**As soon as** those two **went away**, our horse came.	Тэр хоёрыг холдмогц манай морь ирлээ.	
d	**As soon as** the snow **had melted**, green began to appear.	Цас хайлмагц ногоо цухуйж эхэллээ.	
e	**As soon as** he **had graduated** from school, he went to the countryside.	Тэр сургуулиа төгсмөгц хөдөө явсан.	
f	**As soon as** I **start** to read a book, I forget everything!	Би ном уншиж эхэлмэгц бүх юмыг мартдаг юм.	
g	**As soon as** the teacher **enters,** the pupils stand up.	Багшийг орж ирмэгц сурагчид босдог.	
h	**As soon as** the cow **moos**, the calf comes.	Үнээг мөөрмөгц тугал ирдэг.	
i	**As soon as** it's 9 o'clock, I'll start my work.	Есөн цаг болмогц би ажлаа эхэлнэ.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.4 Logically Succeeding sVDS "-хлаар[4]"

Cyrillic Rules:

-хлаар, -хлоор, -хлээр, -хлөөр complying with vowel harmony
For verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign, the **inserted vowel** is necessary.

Classical Rules:

[illegible] complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:

1.) This suffix is used when two actions follow each other logically. In English it's often translated as 'when' but has nothing to do with the conditional 'when'. It is commonly used for sentences in the **future** or **indefinite present** tense, almost **never for the past**.
2.) Note that, instead of this sVDS, often the NDS "-х" + the CS "-аар" [-> хаар] is used, because this combination gives the same grammatical meaning [see p. 96 No. 9] (**ex. a-b**). Compare with the explanations to the sVDS "-хаар" on the next page.

Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	**When** the sun **rises**, it gets warm. ("Through the rising of the sun...")	Нар гарахлаар дулаан болдог. (Нар гарахаар дулаан болдог.)	[illegible]
b	**When** autumn **comes**, the grass withers and it gets cool. ("Through the autumn-becoming...")	Намар болохлоор ногоо гандаж сэрүүн болдог. (Намар болохоор ногоо гандаж сэрүүн болдог.)	[illegible]
c	Please call me **when** he **comes**.	Түүнийг ирэхлээр над руу утасдаарай.	[illegible]
d	**When** I **receive** my salary, I'll lend you money.	Би цалин авахлаараа танд мөнгө зээлнэ.	[illegible]
e	**When** the teacher **comes**, please enter your lessons.	Багшийг ирэхлээр хичээлдээ ороорой.	[illegible]
f	**When** a wolf **came** at night, the dog barked and the sheep became alarmed.	Шөнө чоно ирэхлээр, нохой хуцаж, хонь үргэлээ.	[illegible]
g	**When** he **comes** to Mongolia, I'll meet him.	Түүнийг Монголд ирэхлээр би түүнтэй уулзана.	[illegible]
h	**When** you go to **sleep** early, you get up early.	Эрт унтахлаар эрт босдог.	[illegible]
i	**When** you **come** from your lessons, we'll eat together.	Чамайг хичээлээс ирэхлээр бид хоолоо идэх болно.	[illegible]
j	**When** winter **comes**, it snows, gets cold, and the rivers freeze.	Өвөл болохлоор цас орж, хүйтэн болж гол хөлддөг.	[illegible]
k	**When** Dad **takes** his vacation, he'll go to his homeland.	Аав амралтаа авахлаараа нутагтаа явна.	[illegible]

l	**When** you **drink** this alcohol, you get a headache.	Энэ архийг уухлаар толгой өвддөг.	
m	**When** you **run up** a mountain, you get tired quickly.	Уул өөд гүйхлээр хурдан ядардаг.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.5 Intending sVDS "−хаар⁴"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

−хаар, −хоор, −хээр, −хөөр complying with vowel harmony
For verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign, the **inserted vowel** is necessary.

***Classical Rules*:**

complying with vowel harmony

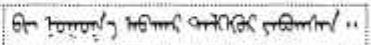
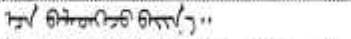
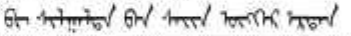
() old form

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is translated as '**(in order) to**' and expresses the **reason** why the main action happens. However, it **can't be used for general statements** because these are expressed with the conjunction "−хад" (= NDS "−х" + dative-locative CS "−д"; see page 315).

2.) In Cyrillic this suffix looks like the combination NDS "−х" + CS "−аар" = "−хаар". It probably developed from this combination, but in Classical script there are two different written forms ( ), and therefore, we also differentiate the two forms.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	I went to the shop (**in order) to buy** vegetables.	Би ногоо авахаар дэлгүүр явсан.	
b	**In order to do well** on an exam, I prepare early.	Би шалгалтаа сайн өгөхөөр эртнээс бэлтгэж байна.	
c	I came to Mongolia (**in order) to study** Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл сурахаар Монголд ирсэн.	
d	Baatar went **to give** his friend something.	Баатар найздаа юм өгөхөөр явжээ.	
e	They left yesterday **to go** to Moscow.	Тэд Москва орохоор өчигдөр хөдөллөө.	
f	My family went to the countryside **to relax.**	Манайхан амраханаар хөдөө явсан.	
g	Sarnai went out **to call** him.	Сарнай түүнийг дуудахаар гарсан.	
h	She went to the countryside **to do** this job.	Тэр энэ ажлыг хийхээр хөдөө явсан.	
i	He left with his family **to live** in Germany.	Тэр Германд суухаар гэр бүлийн хамт явсан.	

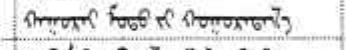
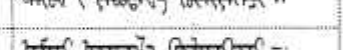
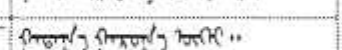
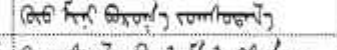
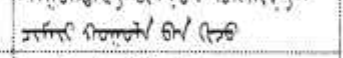
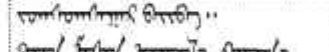
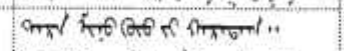
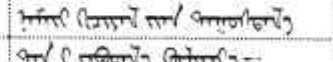
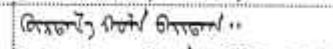
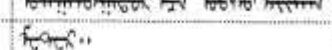
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.6 Limiting sVDS "–тал⁴"

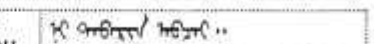
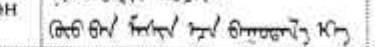
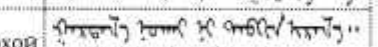
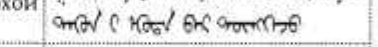
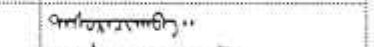
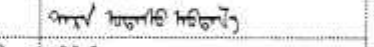
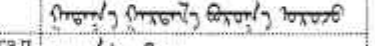
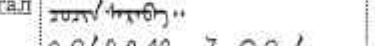
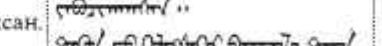
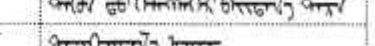
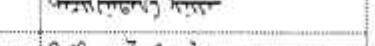
Cyrillic Rules:
–тал, –тол, –тэл, –төл complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

Explanations:
1.) This suffix is translated as **'until'**, and expresses that the action in the main sentence **continues until the action of the clause sentence begins** (**ex. a-h**).
2.) **Local and temporal** limitations are also expressed with this suffix. In this case, the clause is often dropped in the translation (**ex. i-l**).
3.) In some sentences this suffix is translated as '**when**' like the sVDS "–нгуут"(p. 170) or "–маҷ" (p. 164). The difference is as follows: Clause sentences with "–тал" always express that the action of the main sentence happens **surprisingly**. It can't be planned (**ex. m-q**).
3.) The analytical form "–саар байтал" expresses **'although'** (**ex. r**).
4.) Many **colloquial expressions** use this suffix. The sVDS describes, like an adverb, the following verb (**ex. s-x**). Some of these expressions could take the RS if there is a common subject and if the verbs don't only serve to describe, but might actually happen (**ex. y-z**).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Someone was beaten **until** the dry stick **broke** apart.	Хуурай модыг хугартал зоджээ.	
b	Please wait **until** he **leaves**.	Түүнийг явтал хүлээгээч.	
c	Please wait **until** I **come**.	Намайг иртэл хүлээгээрэй!	
d	My son didn't go out **until** the rain **had stopped.**	Хүү минь бороо зогстол гадаа гараагүй.	
e	I'll read a book **until** you've **finished** cooking the meal.	Чамайг хоолоо хийж дуустал би ном уншина.	
f	He stood outside **until** the car **came**.	Тэр машин иртэл гадаа зогсоор байв.	
g	She looks after my son **until** I **have finished** my lessons.	Намайг хичээлээ дуустал тэр миний хүүг хардаг.	
h	Let me wait **until** you've **left**.	Таныг явтал хүлээе!	
i	It's a long way from Ulaanbaatar **to** the Uvs 'Aimag'.	Улаанбаатараас Увс аймаг хүртэл хол байдаг.	
j	It's 25 meters from here **to** there.	Эндээс тэнд хүртэл 25 метр.	
k	Every year, the students are on vacation **until** September 1st. ("until it becomes Sept.")	Оюутнууд жил бүр 9-р сарын нэгэн болтол амардаг.	
l	I'll be in Mongolia **until the beginning** of June. ("until June comes out")	Би 6-р сар гартал Монголд байна.	

m	The woman embraced her son **as** he **got out** of the car.	Хүүгээ машинаас буутал эх нь тэврэн авчээ.	
n	His dog came running **as** he had barely **gone out** the door.	Түүнийг үүдээр дөнгөж гартал нохой нь давхин ирлээ.	
o	**As** he **picked up** the phone, he got cut off.	Тэр утас автал тасарчихав.	
p	**As** (they) **went outside**, it started to rain.	Гадаа гартал бороо орж эхлэв.	
q	**As** he **shouted**, everybody woke up with a start.	Түүнийг хашгиртал бүгд цочин сэрэв.	
r	**Although** he **had been told repeatedly** (not to), he left.	Түүнд хэлсээр байтал тэр явчихсан.	
s	to roar with laughter ("to laugh **until cackling**")	тачигнатал инээ-	
t	to sob ("to cry **until bellowing**")	хэнгэнэтэл уйла-	
u	to fall with a bump ("to fall **until making a 'thud'** [pid]")	пидхийтэл уна-	
v	to sing shrilly (" to sing **until shrilling**)	хангинатал дуула-	
w	to break into a smile, to grin ("to laugh **until grinning**")	маасайтал инээ-	
x	to slap strongly with the hands ("to slap **until jumping**")	үсэртэл алгада-	
y	to eat until one bursts ("to eat **until** one's **bursting**	хагартал(ээ) идэ-	
z	to work like mad ("to work until one's tired")	ядартал(аа) ажилла-	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.7 Progressive sVDS "–саар⁴"

Cyrillic Rules:

–саар, –соор, –сээр, –сөөр complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

complying with vowel harmony

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a**)

Explanations:

1.) This suffix is used to express the **progressive perfect aspect** (see pages 137-138).
2.) Note that the ***particle "л"*** here expresses a meaning similar to **'still'** (**ex. b-d**).
3.) The auxiliary verb "бай–" can be exchanged with another verb (**ex. e-f**) which doesn't even have to follow immediately (**ex. g**).
4.) Very commonly, this suffix is used in the expression "–саар байгаад" (**ex. h-j**). Note that the literary translation (in parentheses) is not common in English.
5.) The **action can be intensified** by doubling the verb with this suffix (**ex. k**) or by using it together with the **cVDS "-н"** (**ex. l-m**).
5.) Often, the two actions **happen simultaneously**, thus giving the translation 'since' (**ex. n-p**).
6.) The **subjects** of the main and clause sentences must be **identical.**

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

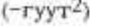
a	We **have been thinking** about our homework.	Бид даалгавраа бодсоор байна.	[illegible]
b	**It was *still* snowing** outside.	Гадаа цас орсоор л байлаа.	[illegible]
c	The students **keep coming back** from the countryside.	Хөдөөнөөс оюутнууд ирсээр л байна.	[illegible]
d	My family **is *still* doing** their work.	Манайхан ажлаа хийсээр л байгаа.	[illegible]
e	We **watched** the Mongolian landscape through the window of the train, as we traveled.	Бид галт тэргэний цонхоор Монгол орны байгалыг харсаар явлаа.	[illegible]
f	Tuya **has been sewing** her 'deel'.	Туяа дээлээ оёсоор суув.	[illegible]
g	**Traveling** by car, we came to an 'ail'.	Бид машинаар явсаар нэг айлд хүрэв.	[illegible]
h	Because I **have been waiting** for you, I couldn't get anything done. ("Having been waiting for you ...")	Би чамайг хүлээсээр байгаад юу ч хийж амжсангүй.	[illegible]
i	Because he **had been writing**, his hand got tired. ("Having been writing, his...")	Бичсээр байгаад гар нь цуцав.	[illegible]
j	Because I **had been sitting**, my foot fell asleep. ("**Having been sitting**, my...")	Би суусаар байгаад хөлөө оршоов.	[illegible]
k	We almost finished this good 'airag', **having been drinking** it **continually**.	Бид нар энэ сайхан айргийг уусаар уусаар бараг дуусгачихлаа.	[illegible]
l	We finally arrived there, **having walked and walked**.	Бид яван явсаар тэнд хүрлээ.	[illegible]
m	My son finished this book, **having read** it **continually**.	Миний хүү энэ номыг уншиж уншсаар дуусгажээ.	[illegible]
n	**Since** I **was born,** I've never seen such a thing. ("Since I have become a person...")	Би хүн болсоор ийм юм үзээгүй.	[illegible]
o	**Since** Bat **began** to study Mongolian, one year has passed. ("...it's becoming one year.")	Бат монгол хэл сурч эхэлсээр нэг жил болж байна.	[illegible]
p	**I have been living** in the city for ten years. ("**While I have been living** in the city, 10 years have passed.")	Би хотод суусаар 10 жил боллоо.	[illegible]

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.8 Succeeding sVDS "-нгуут[2]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

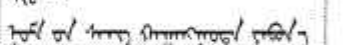
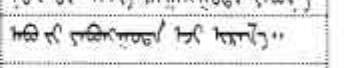
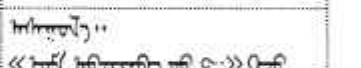
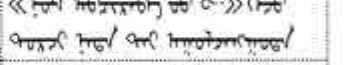
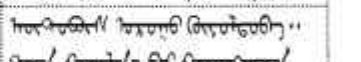
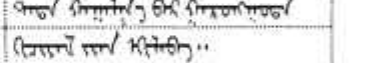
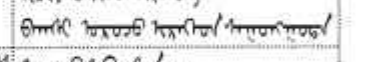
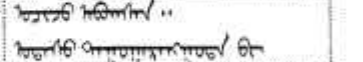
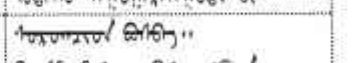
-нгуут , -нгүүт complying with vowel harmony
Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a soft sign need the **inserted vowel**.
* -уут, -үүт complying with vowel harmony (**ex. g-k**)
(-гуут[2]) [for verb stems ending with a **long vowel** or **diphthong**] (**ex. l**).

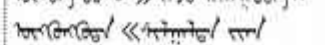
***Classical Rules*:**

 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d,j,k**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix is best translated as '**as soon as**' or '**the moment**' and expresses that the two actions happen shortly after each other (**ex. a-h.** It is very similar to the sVDS "-маг ц".
2.) The **suffixes with** * only have the meaning '**while**', if the two **subjects are identical**. Because they express an **uninterrupted action** they can't be used for all verbs (**ex. i-l**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom** ("-уут" **very seldom**)
Colloquial language: **seldom** ("-уут" **very seldom**)

a	**As soon as** the library **closes**, we'll surely go.	Номын сан хаа<u>нгуут</u> явна шүү!	
b	**As soon as** Dad **had left**, Mother came.	Аавыг ява<u>нгуут</u> ээж ирлээ.	
c	**As soon as** Dorj **met** me, he asked, "Did you bring the book?"	Дорж надтай уулза-<u>нгуут</u> «Ном авчрав уу?» гэж асуулаа.	
d	**The moment** they went out the door, they ran toward the bus.	Тэд хаалгаар гара<u>нгуут</u> автобус руу гүйлдэв.	
e	**As soon as** the teacher had come in and **sat down**, the lesson started.	Багш орж ирээд суу<u>нгуут</u> хичээлээ эхлэв.	
f	**The moment** the phone **rang**, I went and got it.	Утас дуугара<u>нгуут</u> би очиж авсан.	
g	**The moment** the teacher **came in,** the pupils stood up.	Багшийг орж ир<u>үүт</u> сурагчид босов.	
h	**As soon as** the teacher **began** his lesson, the pupils became quiet.	Багшийг хичээлээ эхлү<u>үт</u> сурагчид чимээгүй болов.	
i	Can you understand the meaning in Mongolian **while** you are **reading** (it)?	Та монголоор юм уншу<u>уут</u> утгыг нь ойлгож чадах уу?	
j	**While putting on** his sweater, he ran out.	Тэр цамцаа өмсү<u>үт</u> гүйн гарав.	

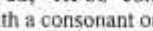
k	A woman asked her son, **while giving** him the meal, "Did you take the test?"	Эх нь хүүдээ хоол хийж өгүүт «Шалгалтаа өгөв үү?» гэж асуув.	
l	The teacher came in and **while** he **sat down,** he greeted them, "Good morning, class."	Багш орж ирээд суугуут «Сайн байцгаана уу?» гэж мэндлэв.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.9 Seizing an Opportunity sVDS "-нгаа[4]"

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-нгаа, -нгоо, -нгээ, -нгөө complying with vowel harmony
Verb stems ending with a consonant or a soft sign need the **inserted vowel**.

***Classical Rules*:**

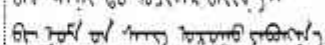
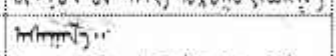
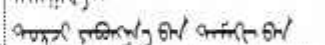
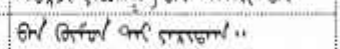
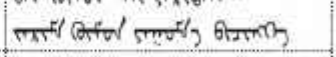
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. e,g,h,k**)

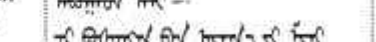
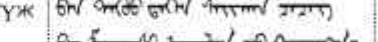
***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix can be translated as **'as'** or **'while'**, and expresses an **opportunity which should be taken advantage of**. The action of the main sentence is not as important as the action of the clause. This level of importance can be expressed with this suffix, but not with the similar expression "-ж байхад" (see page 315).

2.) The suffix "-нгаа" already carries in it the BS (p. 108), which is clearly seen by the Classical suffix. For this reason, the two **subjects must be identical**.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	**As I'm going** to the library, I want to drop by your house.	Би номын сан руу явангаа танайд очмоор байна.	
b	**As** he **was going** Dorj lit a cigarette.	Дорж явангаа тамхиа асаалаа.	
c	**As they're writing,** some people talk with others.	Зарим хүн юм бичингээ хүнтэй ярьдаг.	
d	**While** those two **were playing** chess, they ate a meal and drank tea. (**As** they **were playing...**")	Тэр хоёр шатар тавингаа хоол идэж цай уун суув.	
e	**As** my mother **gave** me some candys she said, "From now on, study even harder, please."	Ээж минь чихэр өгөнгөө «Үүнээс хойш улам сайн сураарай» гэв.	
f	A short while ago, **as** Bat **was going** to his apartment and came back, he bought some 'buuz'.	Бат сая байрандаа очингоо замдаа хэдэн бууз аваад иржээ.	

g	**As** you **stand up**, pass me my cup!	Чи босонгоо аягыг минь аваад аль!	
h	Tomorrow, **as** I go to the mountains, I'll pick nice flowers for my younger sister.	Би маргааш ууланд гарангаа лүүдээ сайхан цэцэг түүж ирнэ.	
i	**On his way** to the market on Sundays, Bayar used to meet with a young lad.	Баяр бүтэн сайн өдөр зах оронгоо нэг залуутай дандаа уулздаг байж.	
j	**While eating** my meals, I like to watch TV.	Би хоолоо идэнгээ телевизор үзэх дуртай.	
k	In order to help her mother, Sarnai works **besides studying**.	Сарнай ээждээ туслахын тулд сурангаа ажиллаж байгаа.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.10 Excluding sVbS "–маажин[4]"

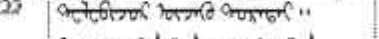
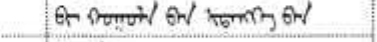
Cyrillic Rules:
–маажин, –мээжин , –моожин, –мөөжин complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a**)

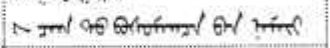
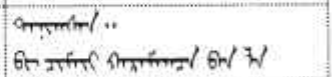
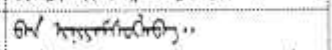
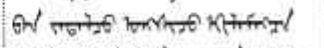
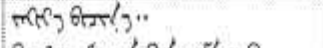
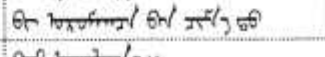
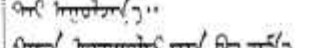
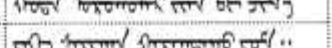
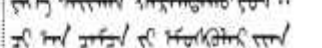
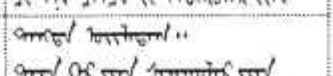
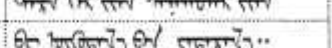
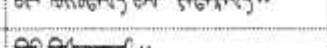
Explanations :
1.) This suffix, which is more widely used in Inner Mongolia, expresses a limiting condition and can be translated as **'only if'**. In Mongolia, people prefer to use the particle "л" to get the "only" meaning ["–бал + л"; see examples in parentheses and page 161]. The suffix маажин" is then reserved for poems and such literary uses.
2.) It's always used in **future** (or present tense) sentences.

Frequency: Written language: **very rare**
Colloquial language: **not used** in Mongolia

a	**Only if** you **learn**, then you know.	Сурмаажин сая мэднэ.	
b	**Only if** you **live** among Mongolians, will you understand them well.	Та монголчуудын дунд амьдармаажин (амьдарвал л) тэднийг сайн ойлгоно.	
c	**Only if** you **do it this way**, will it be fitting.	Ингэмээжин (ингэвэл л) сая таарна.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.11 Use of sVDS's with the RS

Under the condition that the **subject** of the main sentence **is identical** with the subject of the clause, the **RS** may be added to the following sVDS's:
–магц(аа) , –хлаар(аа), –тал(аа), –нгуут(аа) , –уут(аа)
Notice that the suffix "–нгаа" already contains an RS and therefore is always used with common subjects.
Theoretically, by using the RS, the **complex sentence** could be translated **like a simple sentence***. The RS gives it more inner-bonding.
The RS can also appear when the subject of the clause sentence is related to the subject of the main clause (**ex.n**).

a	Please call me, **as soon as** you **get up** at 7 o'clock! (*"Please call me **at your getting up** ...")	7 цагт босмогцоо намайг дуудаарай!	
b	**As soon as I saw** you, I recognized you. (*"**At my seeing** you..")	Би чамайг хар–магцаа л таньсан.	
c	**As soon as** Bat **began** to read his letter, which he had hastily torn open on the way, he smiled.	Бат явангаа яаран захиагаа задалж уншиж эхэлмэгцээ инээмсэглэв.	
d	**As soon as I get there**, I'll write you a letter.	Би очмогцоо чамд захиа бичнэ.	
e	**When I come** to town, I'll meet you. (*At my coming to town")	Хот орохлоороо би чамтай уулзана.	
f	**When** you **wear** this blouse, you look very nice!	Чи энэ цамцыг өмсөхлөөрөө их сайхан харагдах юм.	
g	She always weeps **when** she **is homesick.**	Тэр гэрээ санахлаа–раа дандаа уйлдаг.	
h	I am **dead** tired. ("tired until my dying")	Би үхтлээ ядарлаа.	
i	Please don't get out of bed **until** you **have recovered**.	Эдгэрглээ орноосоо бүү босоорой!	
j	**As soon as** you **have finished** eating, please clean up.	Чи идэж дуусан–гуутаа цэвэрлээрэй.	
k	**When I said** this, I laughed.	Би үүнийг хэлэн–гүүтээ инээсэн.	
l	A woman asked her son, **while giving** him the meal, "Did you take the test?"	Эх нь хүүдээ хоол хийж өгүүтээ «Шалгалтаа өгөв үү?» гэж асуув.	
m	**While putting on** his sweater he ran out.	Тэр цамцаа өмсүү–тээ гүйн гарав.	
n	**When** her son **came**, Oyona made a meal.	Хүүгээ ирэхлээр Оюуна хоол хийсэн.	

1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.12 Comparison of sVDS's

Conditional			
a	**If** the teacher **comes**, I'll talk with him. (conditional)	Багшийг ирвэл би түүнтэй ярина.	Өөрөө ирвэл би түүнтэй ярина.
b	**When** the teacher **enters** (the classroom), the pupils stand up. (general)	Багшийг орж ирвэл сурагчид босдог.	Орох үед. Өөрөө ирэхэд босдог.
Concessive			
a	**Although** the teacher **enters** (the classroom), the pupils don't stand up.	Багшийг орж ирэвч сурагчид босдоггүй.	Ирэхэд орох үед. Өөрөө ирэхэд
b	**Although** the teacher **had entered** (the classroom), the pupils didn't stand up.	Багшийг орж ирсэн боловч сурагчид боссонгүй.	Ирэхэд орсон үед. Өөрөө ирэхэд орсноо
Immediately succeeding			
a	**As soon as** the teacher **entered** the classroom, the pupils stood up.	Багшийг орж ирмэгц сурагчид бослоо.	Ирэхэд орсон. Өөрөө ирэхэд
Logically succeeding			
a	**When** the teacher **enters** the classroom, the pupils stand up.	Багшийг орж ирэхлээр сурагчид босдог.	Ирэхэд орох үед. Өөрөө ирэхэд
Intending			
a	The teacher entered (the classroom) **(in order) to teach**.	Багш хичээл заахаар орж ирэв.	Өөрөө сургаж заахаар ирэхэд
Limiting			
a	The pupils had been talking loudly **until** the teacher **entered** (the classroom).	Багшийг орж ирэтэл сурагчид чанга ярьсаар байв.	Орохоос өмнө. Өөрөө ирэхэд
b	**As** the teacher **entered** (the classroom), the pupils suddenly got quiet. ('surprise')	Багшийг орж ирэтэл сурагчид гэнэт чимээгүй болов.	Гэнэт орох үед. Өөрөө ирэхэд
Progressive			
a	A half an hour has passed **since** the teacher **entered** the classroom.	Багш орж ирсэнээс хагас цаг болж байна.	Ирснээс хойш. Өөрөө ирэхэнд
b	**Having been teaching**, the teacher got tired.	Багш хичээл заасаар байгаад ядарсан.	Заасаар. Өөрөө сургаж заасан
Succeeding			
a	**As soon as** the teacher **entered**, the pupils stood up.	Багшийг орж ирэнгүүт / ирүүт сурагчид босов.	Ирэхэд орох. Өөрөө ирэхэд
b	The teacher was explaining **while writing** on the blackboard.	Багш самбар дээр бичүүт тайлбарлав.	Бичээд. Өөрөө сургаж заасан
Seizing an opportunity			
a	**As** the teacher **entered**, he greeted, "Good morning."	Багш орж ирэнгээ «Сайн байна уу?» гэв.	«Ирэх үед сайн уу?» гэв. Өөрөө ирэхэд
Excluding			
a	**Only if** the teacher **enters**, must the pupils stand up.	Багш орж ирмээжин сурагчид босох ёстой.	Ирэхэд орсон. Өөрөө ирэхэд

1.1.2.1.3.2 Terminating Suffixes (TS's)

The Terminating Suffixes (TS's) can be divided in **two groups**:
1.) The Person-bound TS's (PTS's) are **bound to a specific person** and can be compared to the English imperative forms.
2.) The Tense-bound TS's (TTS's) are **bound to the specific tense** in which the action happens.

The TS's are always **added to the verb at the end of the sentence**, thus building predicates and helping **to build sentences** (see Chapter 4 of Appendix on page 421f).

1.1.2.1.3.2.) Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (PTS's)

Characteristics:

1.) They are used to express **the subjective attitude** or **the wish** of the speaker towards an action that has been caused by himself or another person. That's why these suffixes **are bound to one of the three persons**. Most of these suffixes are translated in English with either an **imperative or a subjunctive** form. That's where their traditional name comes from. Subjunctives are also expressed in other ways (see pages 201-207).

2.) The PTS's are not meant to express a tense, but logically they are usually **future oriented**.

3.) If a negation is possible, the **negative particles** "биттий" or "бүү" are used (see p. 334).

4.) Interrogation is logically impossible with these PTS's.

The **subgroups** are best done according to the **person** they are bound to:

for the **1st person:**	a) –я	b) –сугай			
for the **2nd person:**	a) –ø	b) –аач	c) –аарай	d) –уузай	e) –гтун
for the **3rd person:**	a) –г	b) –тугай	c) –аасай		

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.1 PTS "–я[3]": Intention (1st person)

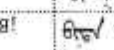
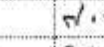
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
–я, –ё, –е complying with vowel harmony (**ex. d,i**), see also pages 21-22 for spelling.

***Classical Rules*:**

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,f**)
() old form

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix expresses an **intention** or a **wish** of the 1st person singular or plural. An exact translation depends on the whole context.
2.) If the subject is not mentioned, the suffix usually refers to the 1st person plural (**ex. c,e,h**).
3.) **Congratulations** and **best wishes** are commonly expressed with this suffix (**ex. i-k**).
4.) Negation is not possible.

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	**Let me go out!/I want to go out.**	Би гаръя!	
b	**Now let's go !/We want to go** now.	Бид одоо явъя!	
c	**OK, let's do that.**	За, тэгъё!	
d	**Let me get off** here!/**I want to get off** here.	Би энд бууя.	
e	**Let's do math!**	Тоо бодъё!	

f	Please stop. **Let** me **take** a picture.	Зогсооч, би зураг авъя.	
g	**Let** me **tell** you a story!	Би чамд нэг үлгэр ярья.	
h	**Let's change** our clothes!	Хувцсаа сольё!	
i	I **wish** you a happy New Year! ("**Let** me **cause** the New Year's wishes to **arrive**.")	Шинэ жилийн баярын мэнд хүргэе!	
j	I **wish** you all the best! ("**Let** me **desire** all the best.")	Сайн сайхныг хүсье!	
k	Please accept my sincere condolences. ("**Let** me **express** to you my condolences.")	Би танд гашууд-лаа илэрхийлье.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.2 PTS "-сугай[2]": Decision (1st person)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-сугай, -сүгэй complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
complying with vowel harmony

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix is only used today to express **resolutions and official decisions**. For that, you could imagine the following introduction to the example sentences: "At the XXX meeting, the following has been decided: ....."
2.) Earlier on, this suffix was used like the "-я" suffix, expressing something like 'Let them...'. Maybe that's the reason why it is considered to belong to the 1st person.
3.) For the **negation,** the negative particle "бүү" (p. 334) is used (**ex. e**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very rare**
Colloquial language: **not used**

a	- **to learn** the Mongolian language well.	Монгол хэлийг сайтар суралцсугай!	
b	- **to** qualitatively **accomplish** this task.	Энэ даалгаврыг чанар-тай биелүүлсүгэй!	
c	- **to quickly develop** the agriculture	Хөдөө аж ахуйг хурдан хөгжүүлсүгэй!	
d	- **to honor** comrade Gongor with the title of "Hero of the Mongolian People's Republic".	Нөхөр Гонгорыг БНМАУ-ын баатар цолоор шагнасугай!	
e	- **not to grant** him salary for extra work.	Түүнд нэмэгдэл ажлын хөлсийг бүү олгосугай.	

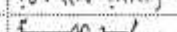
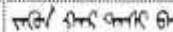
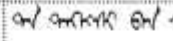
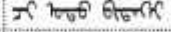
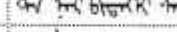
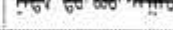
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.3 PTS "¬ø": Command (2nd person)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
Because there is a **zero-suffix (–ø)**, the verb stem itself expresses this imperative form. Note the changing or dropping of vowels in building this imperative form (see pages 23-26; e.g. үнэлэ¬ = үнэл! ора¬ = ор!)

***Classical Rules*:**
Because there is a **zero-suffix (–ø)**, the verb stem itself expresses this imperative form.

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix expresses a **direct command** which is **addressed to the 2nd person** singular or plural. If the subject is omitted, only the context will show whether it is singular or plural (**ex. a-e**).
2.) This form of imperative is **often used** among good friends and in the family as a **familiar way** to make a request.
2.) For negation, the **negative particles** "биттгий" and "бүү" (p. 334) are used (**ex. h-j**).
3.) To give this command a **polite** note, it can be **doubled** (**ex. k-l**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	**Open** your book(s)!	Номоо нээ!	
b	**Come** tomorrow!	Маргааш ир!	
c	**Buy** tickets!	Билет ав!	
d	**Go out** from here!	Эндээс гар!	
e	**Turn** to your left!	Зүүн гар тийшээ эргэ!	
f	**Speak!**	Та ярь!	
g	**Sit here, please**! ("дээшээ" means higher and refers to the honored place; in the north part of the yurt; said with polite voice)	Та дээшээ суу!	
h	**Don't sleep** now!	Чи одоо битгий унт!	
i	**Don't sit down**!	Та нар битгий суу!	
j	**Don't disturb** me! ("Don't make a hindrance for me.")	Надад бүү саад хий!	
k	**Do sit down.**	Чи суу суу!	
l	**Do come in.**	Та ор ор!	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.4 PTS "-аач[4]": Request (2nd person)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-аач, -ооч, -ээч, -өөч	complying with vowel harmony
(-иач[2])	for verb stems ending with "-и " or "-ь" (**ex. i,l**)
(-гаач[4])	for verb stems ending with **diphthongs** or **long vowels** (**ex. a,c,k**)

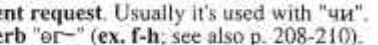
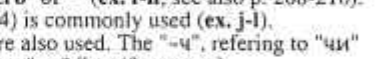
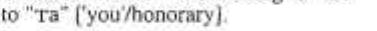
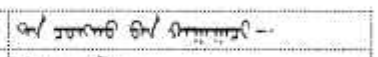
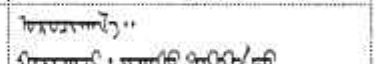
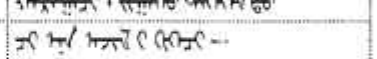
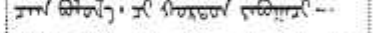
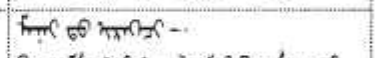
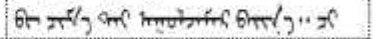
***Classical Rules*:**

complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. f-h**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix expresses a **concrete demand** or an **urgent request**. Usually it's used with "чи".
2.) Very often it appears together with the **modifying verb** "өг–" (**ex. f-h**; see also p. 208-210).
3.) For negation, the negative particle "битгий" (p. 334) is commonly used (**ex. j-l**).
4.) In **dialects**, the suffixes "-аат, -оот, -ээт, -өөт" are also used. The "-ч", refering to "чи" ['you'/singular], is exchanged with the "-т", refering to "та" ['you'/honorary].

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	**Please close** your window.	Та цонхоо хаагаач.	
b	**Look**, there is a fish on the line.	Хараач, загас дэгээнд орчихлоо.	
c	**Please do** this work.	Чи энэ ажлыг хийгээч.	
d	It's time; **go** quickly **please.**	Цаг боллоо, чи хурдан яваач!	
e	I want to see you. **Please come** to my home.	Би чамтай уулзмаар байна. Чи манайд ирээч!	
f	**Give** me 2 loaves of bread, **please**.	Надад хоёр ширхэг талх өгөөч.	
g	**Please bring** the breakfast to my room.	Өглөөний хоолыг миний өрөөнд авчирч өгөөч.	
h	**Please explain** this word to me.	Та надад энэ үгийг тайлбарлаж өгөөч.	
i	**Please change** your clothes.	Хувцсаа солиоч.	
j	**Don't go** (there) today.	Чи өнөөдөр битгий очооч!	
k	**Don't disturb** me, please! ("**Please don't make** a hindrance for me.")	Та надад битгий саад хийгээч.	
l	**Please do *not* talk** loudly.	Чанга бүү яриач.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.5 PTS "-аарай[4]": Demand (2nd person)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-аарай, -оорой, -ээрэй, -өөрэй	complying with vowel harmony
(-иарай[2])	for verb stems ending with "-и" or "-ь" (**ex. d,e,l**)
(-гаарай[4])	for verb stems ending with a **diphthong** or a **long vowel** (**ex. a,b**)

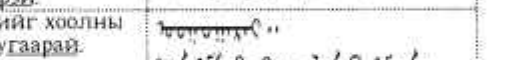
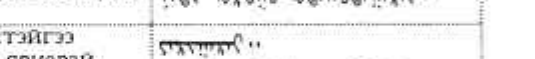
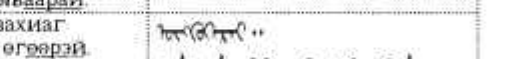
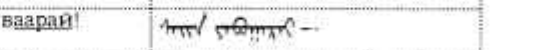
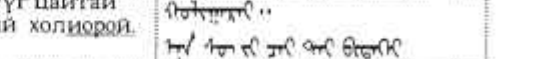
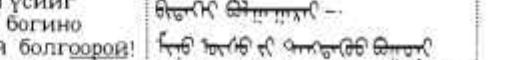
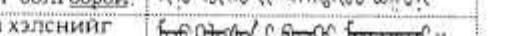
***Classical Rules*:**

complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. g**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is similar to the PTS of Request, only **more demanding**. Since the person asking in this way is quite sure that his demand will be met, this suffix **shouldn't be used for open requests**, where the one being asked should have the chance to refuse.
2.) **Good-bye wishes** are often expressed with this suffix (**ex. h-j**).
3.) For the negation, the negative particle "битгий" (p. 334) is widely used (**ex. k-n**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

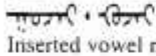
a	**Do** your homework, **please**.	Чи даалгавраа хийгээрэй.	
b	**Please take** this medicine before meals.	Энэ эмийг хоолны өмнө уугаарай.	
c	**Please call** me, ("Please call towards me.")	Над руу утасдаарай.	
d	**Please call** your mother.	Чи ээжтэйгээ утсаар яриарай.	
e	**Please change** your clothes.	Та хувцсаа солиорой.	
f	**Please remember** this always.	Үүнийг ямагт санаж яваарай.	
g	**Please give** this letter to your mother.	Та энэ захиаг ээждээ өгөөрэй.	
h	Good night!/Have a good night! ("**Please sleep** well.")	Сайхан нойрсоорой!	
i	Have a good journey! ("**Please go** well.")	Сайн яваарай!	
j	Please get well soon! ("**Please recover** quickly!")	Түргэн сайн эдгээрэй!	
k	**Please don't write!**	Битгий бичээрэй!	
l	**Please don't mix** this milk with tea.	Энэ сүүг цайтай битгий холиорой.	
m	**Please don't cut** my hair too short. ("Please **don't let** my hair **become** too short.")	Миний үсийг дэндүү богино битгий болгоорой!	
n	**Please don't forget** what I said.	Миний хэлснийг битгий мартаарай.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.6 PTS "-уузай[2]": Admonition (2nd person)

Cyrillic Rules:

-уузай, -үүзэй	complying with vowel harmony
(-иузай[2])	for verb stems ending with "-и" or "-ь" (**ex. f**)
(-гуузай[2])	for verb stems ending with a **diphthong** or a **long vowel** (**ex. g**)

Classical Rules:

 complying with vowel harmony

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. d-e**)

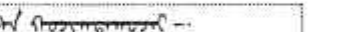
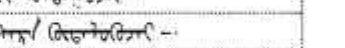
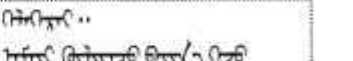
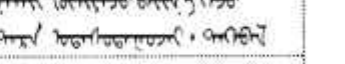
Explanations:

1.) This suffix expresses **admonitions** and **precautionary guidelines**. Even if the verb to which this suffix is added stands in the 3rd person, the admonition is addressed to the 2nd. person singular or plural. In the English translation, a **negation** is needed (**ex. a-g**).

2.) If a second person **has to be strongly reminded of something**, this suffix can also be used, but the negated translation disappears. The suffix meaning has to be expressed by many English words (**ex. h-j**).

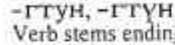
3.) **Negation** is logically not possible.

Frequency: Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	**Make sure** you **'re not late!**	Та хожигдуузай!	
b	**Make sure** you **don't forget!**	Чи мартуузай!	
c	**Make sure** you **don't sleep!**	Чи унтуузай!	
d	**Make sure** he **doesn't move!**	Тэр хөдлүүзэй!	
e	**Make sure that no** fire **breaks out!**	Гал гаруузай!	
f	**Make sure that** you **don't confuse** this book (with others)!	Та энэ номыг солиузай!	
g	**Make sure** he **doesn't drink any** alcohol!	Тэр архи уугуузай!	
h	**If** he **comes** to my home, **make sure** you wake me up.	Тэр манайд ирүүзэй, тэгвэл намайг сэрээгээрэй.	
i	**If** he **calls, make sure** you tell him that I'm waiting.	Тэр утасдуузай, тэгвэл намайг хүлээж байна гэж хэлээрэй.	
j	**If** you **meet** Dorj, **make sure** you tell him that I have come.	Чи Доржтой уулзуузай, тэгвэл намайг ирсэн гэж хэлээрэй.	

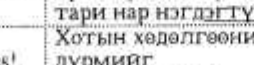
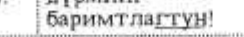
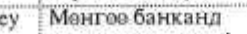
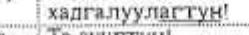
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.7 PTS "-ГТУН²": Appeal (2nd person)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-ГТУН, -ГТҮН complying with vowel harmony
Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a **soft sign** need the inserted vowel.

***Classical Rules*:**
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. a,c,e**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix is mainly used in **slogans and resolutions** (**ex. a-c**).
2.) It may be used as a **very polite form** of addressing **very important persons** (**ex. d**).
3.) Negation is done with the formal **negative particle** "бүү" (**ex. e** and see page 334).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very rare**
Colloquial language: **very official, therefore almost never used**

a	Proletarians of the world, **unite**!	Орон бүхний пролетари нар нэгдэгтүн.	
b	**Adhere to** the city's traffic rules!	Хотын хөдөлгөөний дүрмийг баримтлагтүн!	
c	**Invest** your money in a bank!	Мөнгөө банканд хадгалуулагтүн!	
d	**Be seated, please.**	Та сууғтүн!	
e	**Don't listen!**	Бүү сонсоғтүн!	

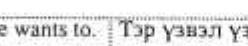
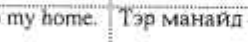
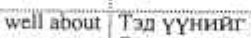
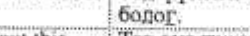
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.8 PTS "-Г": Permission (3rd person)

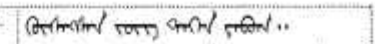
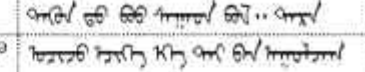
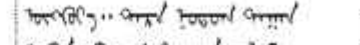
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-Г
Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a **soft sign** need the inserted vowel.

***Classical Rules*:**
complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. e**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix expresses a **permission** or sometimes an **admonition**. In a sentence where this suffix is used, **3 parties** are always involved: 2 people talk and decide about a third one.
2.) Negation is done with the **negative particles**, mainly "бүү" (**ex. h-i** and see p. 334).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	He **may see**, if he wants to.	Тэр үзвэл үзэг!	
b	He **may come** to my home.	Тэр манайд ирэг.	
c	They **may think** well about this.	Тэд үүнийг сайн бодог.	
d	She **may talk** about this with her friend.	Тэр энэ тухай найздаа яриг.	
e	He **is to give** this book to his teacher. (admonition)	Энэ номыг багшдаа өгөг.	

f	Don't stop her. She **may go** where she wants to.	Түүнд бүү саад бол. Тэр хүссэн зүгтээ яваг!	
g	Let's give him one month's holiday. He **may** go home and **meet** his parents.	Түүнд 1 сарын чөлөө өгъе. Тэр нутагтаа очиж эцэг эхтэйгээ уулзаг.	
h	He **is *not* to meet** my friend!	Тэр миний найзтай битгий уулзаг.	
i	They **are *not* to come** to my home.	Тэд манайд бүү ирэг.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.1.9 PTS "-аасай[4]": Hope (3rd person)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-аасай, -оосой, -ээсэй, -өөсэй	complying with vowel harmony
(-иасай[2])	for verb stems ending with "-и" or "-ь" (**ex. d**)
(-гаасай[4])	for verb stems ending with a **diphthong** or a **long vowel** (**ex. g**)

***Classical Rules*:**

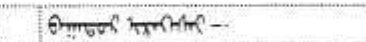
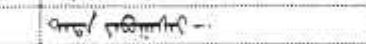
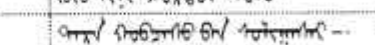
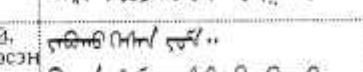
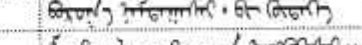
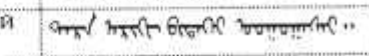
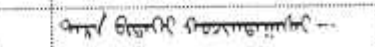
complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c-f**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix expresses **exclamations of hope, longing, and desire**. Sometimes the translation **'I hope'** is most suitable (**ex.h-i**).

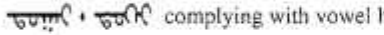
2.) Negation is done with the negative particles, mainly "битгий" (**ex. g-i** and see p. 334).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	**If only** Baatar **would come**!	Баатар ирээсэй!	
b	**If only** they **would go**!	Тэд яваасай!	
c	**If only** my son **would grow** up quickly!	Хүү минь хурдан том болоосой!	
d	**If only** he **would change** his clothes!	Тэр хувцсаа солиосой!	
e	**If only** the rain **would subside**! I want to go to the countryside.	Бороо намдаасай, би хөдөө явах гэсэн юм.	
f	**If only** my salary **would be given** quickly (to me)!	Манай цалинг хурдан өгөөсэй.	
g	**If only** he **would*n't* drink** alcohol!	Тэр архи битгий уугаасай.	
h	**I hope** he **does*n't* lose**!	Тэр битгий хожигдоосой!	
i	**I hope** she **does*n't* come**!	Тэр битгий ирээсэй!	

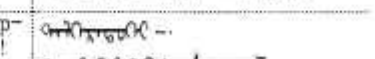
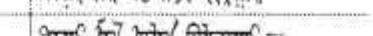
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.10 PTS "–тугай[2]": Blessing (3rd person)

Cyrillic Rules:
–тугай, тугэй complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
 complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses **good wishes and blessings**, usually said at official meetings, weddings, festive parties, etc.
2.) Negation is logically not possible.

Frequency: Written language: **seldom**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	**May** our country **prosper**!	Манай орон мандтугай!	
b	**May** culture and education **abound!**	Соёл боловсрол дэлгэртугэй!	
c	**May** happiness **blossom** in your home.	Танай гэрт аз жаргал дэлгэртугэй!	
d	**May** your livestock **become many**!	Танай мал олон болтугай!	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2 Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (TTS's)

Characteristics:

1.) The TTS's are used to express **real actions** that actually happened, are happening or will happen.

2.) They always **indicate a specific tense**, therefore the name 'tense-bound TS's'.

3.) They refer to all persons singular or plural, and don't have special person endings as in English 'I go', 'he goes', etc.

4.) **Particles** can follow them, but not copulas.

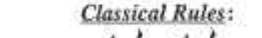
5.) In Mongolian, there are 4 suffixes that can **only** be added to the **verb at the end** of the sentence (as predicate). These are the **true TTS**'s. For interrogative and negative sentences, usually the tense-corresponding NDS's (p. 139-150) are used, 3 of which can also be used as predicates and, therefore, earn the right to be called a TTS. It's even possible that some of the NDS's have developed from TTS's. However, today we know **3 NDS's that have a double function**. A fourth, namely the NDS "-х", is only used for interrogation and negation. If we put all these explanations in a chart we get the following:

Suffixes	Past tense	Present tense	Future Tense
True TTS's:	-жээ -в -лаа	(-на)	-на (-лаа)
NDS's as TTS's:	-сан	-даг -аа	(-х)

Now we'll present these TTS's in the order: past, present, future. Because the NDS's are the most versatile, we will start with them.
Furthermore, we need to mention that we have already talked about the **analytically expressed aspects** with which progressive or perfect tense predicates can be built (see page 136-138).

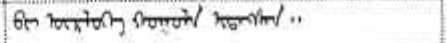
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.1 NDS "-сан[4]" as a TTS (General Past)

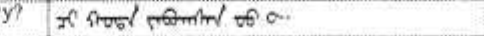
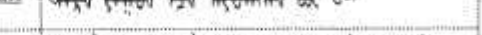
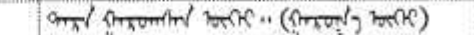
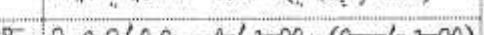
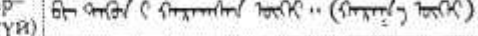
***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-сан, -сэн, -сон, -сөн complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
 complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c,g,j**)

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix is used for all kinds of past actions and is clearly the most commonly used past tense suffix in colloquial language (**ex. a-d**).
2.) **Questions** are often expressed with this suffix (**ex. e-f**).
3.) For **negation** it should only be used if the action happens **against one's assumption** (**ex. g-h**). Otherwise the NDS "-аа" with the negative particle "-гүй" (p. 331) is used ["-аагүй"], which then indicates that the expected thing could still happen (**ex. g-h; parentheses**)
4.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. i-k**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **extremely often**

a	He arrived.	Тэр очсон.	
b	This morning I **ate** breakfast.	Би өглөө хоол идсэн.	
c	I **gave** this to you.	Би үүнийг чамд өгсөн.	

d	He **arrived** yesterday in Ulaanbaatar.	Тэр өчигдөр Улаан-баатарт ирсэн.	
e	**Did** you **go** to town?	Чи хот явсан уу?	
f	What **was** she **afraid of**?	Тэр юунаас айсан бэ?	
g	He **did*n't* go out**. (He **has*n't* gone out.**)	Тэр гарсангүй. (гараагүй.)	
h	I **did*n't* see** her. (I **haven*'t* seen** her.)	Би түүнийг харсангүй. (хараагүй)	
i	Why, ***then***, **did** you **go** there?	Чи яагаад тийшээ явсан юм бэ?	
j	**Did** she **buy** such an expensive 'deel"?!	Тэр ийм үнэтэй дээл авсан юм уу?	
k	What **was** your name ***again***? ("What **were** you **called** again?")	Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн билээ?	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.2 TTS "–жээ/–чээ" (Past)

Cyrillic Rules:

–жээ / –чээ see spelling rules on pages 28-29.

Classical Rules:

after **consonants** of code word '**bagaraşada** '

after **consonants** of code word '**namilang**' and **vowels**

(• • •) old forms (complying with vowel harmony)

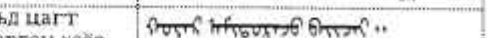
Explanations:

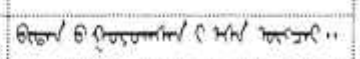
1.) In some ways this suffix is an **exception**, as it can't be used for all the 3 persons. It's always used for actions that one **hasn't observed**. That's why this suffix is **not used for the 1st person**. Actions that happened **suddenly** or unintentionally often have this suffix (**ex. e-f**). **Stories** often begin with this suffix (**ex. b**), as do other actions that happened a long time ago (**ex. b-c**).

2.) **Questions** in the past are **not built** with this suffix. However, in colloquial language there is a **shortened form** being used to ask question, but it's only possible in the **3rd person**. This kind of question is used when one is sure that the person being asked can know the answer (**ex. g-h**).

3.) **Negation** could be done in the written language with the **negative particles** "эс" or "үл" (**ex. i** and see p. 332-333), but most commonly the negated NDS's "–аагүй/–сангүй" are being used.

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Help **came** from Germany for the frost-and snow-plagued 'aimags'.	Зудтай аймгуудад Германаас тусламж иржээ.	
b	Once upon a time, there **lived** an old man and an old woman.	Эрт урьд цагт эмгэн өвгөн хоёр амьдарч байжээ.	
c	The People's Revolution **gained victory** in Mongolia in the year 1921.	Монголд 1921 онд ардын хувьсгал ялжээ.	
d	You **told** a lie.	Чи худал хэлжээ.	

e	My watch **has stopped**.	Миний цаг зогсжээ.	
f	It **became** late/evening.	Орой болжээ.	
g	**Did** the teacher **go** to the countryside?	Багш хөдөө явж уу?	Only in colloquial
h	**Was** today's newspaper **released**?	Өнөөдрийн сонин гарч уу?	Only in colloquial
i	We **weren't given** what we had asked for.	Бидний гуйсныг эс өгчээ.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.3 TTS "-в" (Past)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-в

Verb stems ending with a **consonant** or a **soft sign** need the inserted vowel.

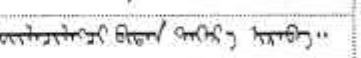
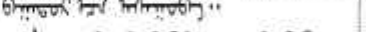
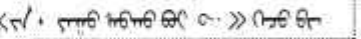
***Classical Rules*:**

() old form

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix is used **in writing** to account for actions that were **witnessed** and which **are finished** (**ex. a-d**).
2.) It is a widely used suffix for **interrogation** about **recent** events (**ex. e-h**).
3.) **Negation** is possible with the negative particles "эс" or "үл" (**ex. i-j** and see p. 332-333), but it's better to use the negated NDS's "-аагүй/-сангүй".

***Frequency*:** Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **not so often**

a	I **sat down**.	Би суув.	
b	We **said 'hello'**. ("We greeted [each other].")	Бид мэндлэв.	
c	The waitress **came** to us.	Үйлчлэгч бидэн дээр ирэв.	
d	"So, what shall we order?", I **asked** Baatar.	«За, юу авах вэ?» гэж би Баатараас асуув.	
e	Tuya, **did** you **see** 'Naadam'?	Туяа, чи наадам үзэв үү?	
f	Why do you ask? ("Why **did** you **ask**?")	Чи яагаад асуув?	
g	How **did** our wrestlers **do**? ("How **did** ... **wrestle**?")	Манай бөхчүүд ямар барилдав?	
h	**Did** Dorj **get married**?	Дорж гэрлэв үү?	
i	**I didn't learn** a new song.	Би шинэ дуу эс сурав.	
j	He **didn't understand** this word.	Энэ үгийг тэр үл ойлгов.	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.4 TTS "-лаа[4]" (Past)

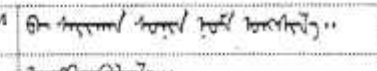
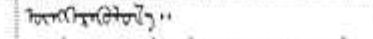
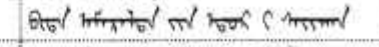
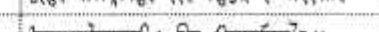
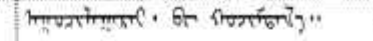
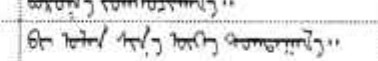
Cyrillic Rules:
-лаа, -лоо, -лээ, -лөө complying with vowel harmony

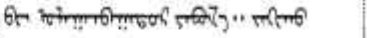
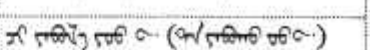
Classical Rules:

Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. b,i,p**)
() old forms

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses an action that one **witnessed** and that happened in the **recent past** (**ex. a-f**).
2.) **Interrogation** is only possible with the **shortened form** in colloquial language to express that one can't remember, although one witnessed the action (**ex. g-h**). Usually, for interrogation, the NDS "-сан" is used (**ex. g-h**; parentheses).
3.) **Negation** could be done with the negative particles "эс" or "үл" (**ex. i** and see pages 332-333), but the negated NDS's "-аагүй/-сангүй" are commonly used.
4.) As in English, this tense could be used for the **immediate future** as in 'I'm gone' meaning 'I'm about to go'. Because of confusion, it's good to use **temporal adverbs** (**ex. j-m**).
In the colloquial language, this future meaning can even extend to **questions.** They express that one has good reason to believe that the action will take place (**ex. n-p**).
5.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can be added (**ex. q**).

Frequency: Written language: **often**
Colloquial language: **often**

a	Recently, I **read** an interesting book.	Би саяхан сонин ном уншлаа.	
b	We wonderfully **celebrated** the day off.	Бид амралтын өдрийг сайхан өнгөрүүлээ.	
c	Sorry, I'm late. ("I **was late**.")	Уучлаарай! Би хожимдлоо.	
d	I liked it very much. (It **seemed** [to me] very pleasing.")	Их аятайхан санагдлаа.	
e	The rain **has stopped.**	Бороо зогсчихлоо.	
f	I **memorized** many new words.	Би олон шинэ үг тогтоолоо.	
g	**Have** you **been** to the post office?	Та шуудан явад уу? (явсан уу?)	only in colloquial language
h	**Have** you **heard** that interesting news?	Чи тэр сонин мэдээг сонсод уу? (сонссон уу?)	only in colloquial language
i	His idea **was*n't* accepted.** ("[They] **did*n't* accept** his idea.")	Түүний саналыг эс авлаа.	
j	Very soon it **will snow.** Let's go before that.	Юу юугүй цас орлоо. Түүнээс өмнө явцгаая.	
k	Mom and Dad **are coming** now.	Одоо аав ээж ирлээ.	
l	The day **is almost over**. Let's do it rather quickly.	Одор өнгөрлөө. За, бушуухан хийцгээе.	

m	**I'm leaving for** Ulaanbaa-tar. Do you have things you want me to bring?	Би Улаанбаатар явдаа. Захих юм байна уу?	
n	**Are** you **leaving** [**now**]? (Are you going to go?)	Чи явдаа юу? (Та явах уу?)	
o	**Are** you **going to sleep** [**now**]? (Are you going to sleep?)	Та нар унтдаа юу? (Та унтах уу?)	
p	**Are** you **getting up** [**now**]? (Are you getting up?)	Чи босдоо юу? (Чи босох уу?)	
q	***You know***, **I'm leaving** tomorrow	Би маргааш явдаа шүү (дээ).	

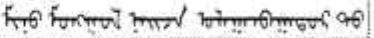
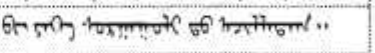
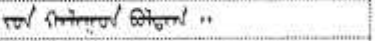
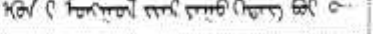
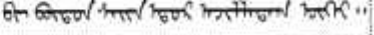
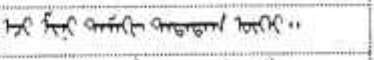
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.5 NDS "-даг[4]" as a TTS (Indefinite Present)

Cyrillic Rules:
-даг, -дэг, -дог, -дөг complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
complying with vowel harmony

Explanations:
1.) This suffix expresses that the action continues for an **indefinite time**, like 'to live', 'to work' (**ex. a,b,e-f,h**) or that the action is **habitual** (**ex. c-d,g,j**).
2.) Interrogation is **widely used** with this suffix (**ex. e-f**).
3.) Negation is done with the **negative particle** "-гүй" (**ex. g-h** and see p. 331).
4.) Particles (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. i-j**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	My Mongolian friend **lives** in Ulaanbaatar.	Миний монгол найз Улаанбаатарт суудаг.	
b	I **work** at the university.	Би их сургуульд ажилладаг.	
c	I **get up** every morning at 7 o'clock.	Би өглөө бүр долоон цагт босдог.	
d	In summer it **gets** hot.	Зун халуун болдог.	
e	**Do** you **speak** German?	Та германаар ярьдаг уу?	
f	What **is** this **called** in Mongolian?	Үүнийг монголоор юу гэдэг вэ?	
g	I **don't work** on Sundays.	Би бүтэн сайн өдөр ажилладаггүй.	
h	My mother **doesn't smoke.**	Ээж минь тамхи татдаггүй.	
i	I **go to sleep** ***really*** early at night.	Би орой эрт унтдаг юм.	
j	In Germany, people **live** well, ***don't they***?	Германд хүмүүс сайхан амьдардаг биз?	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.6 NDS "–aa[4]" as a TTS (Progressive Present)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**

-аа, –ээ, –оо, –өө	complying with vowel harmony
(-гаа[4])	for verb stems ending with a **long vowel** or a **diphthong**, very often because of the auxiliary verb "бай–" (**ex. b-e,j-k**)
(-иа[2])	for verb stems ending with "-и" or "-ь" (**ex. f**)

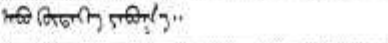
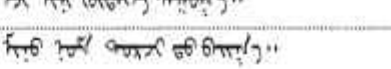
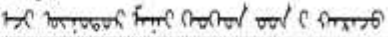
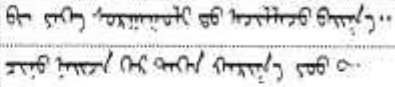
***Classical Rules*:**

complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. i**)

***Explanations*:**

1.) This suffix expresses an action that **started in the past** and still **continues in the present**, whereas the end of the action is open. This suffix can be added to a few selected **full verbs** (**ex. a-b**) but usually appears at the verb stem "бай–" (**ex. c-e, j-k**).
2.) When this suffix is used in the **interrogative**, it expresses a **rhetorical form**, used e.g. to start a conversation (**ex. f-g**).
3.) **Negation** is widely done with the **negative particle** "–гүй"(p. 331)., thus forming the **simple past,** or the **present perfect tense** (**ex. h**; see explanation on p. 145).
4.) Together with the **auxiliary verb** "бай–" the **present perfect** is formed (**ex. i**).
5.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. j-k**).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **quite often**

a	Father **went** to the countryside.	Аав хөдөө яваа.	
b	My mother **lives** in the countryside. (poetical)	Ээж минь хөдөө суугаа.	
c	Dorj has my book. ("My book **is** with Dorj.")	Миний ном Доржид байгаа.	
d	My mother **is looking after** our kids today.	Ээж өнөөдөр манай хүүхдүүдийг харж байгаа.	
e	I **work** at the university.	Би их сургуульд ажиллаж байгаа.	
f	**Did** your friend **return** home?	Чиний найз гэртээ хариа юу?	
g	**Did** you **get** a job? ("**Did** you **enter** work?")	Чи ажилд орсоо юу?	
h	No, I **did*n't* read** this book. / I **haven't read** this book.	Үгүй, би энэ номыг уншаагүй.	
i	He **has*n't* decided.**	Тэр шийдээгүй байна.	
j	What kind of drinks, ***then***, **do** you **have**?	Танайд уух юм юу байгаа юм бэ?	
k	***Hey***, we're **doing** our work well*!*	Бид нар сайн ажиллаж байгаа шүү дээ!	

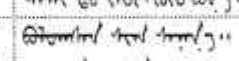
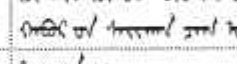
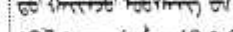
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.7 TTS "-на[4]" (Present)

***Cyrillic Rules*:**
-на, -нэ, -но, -нө complying with vowel harmony

***Classical Rules*:**
complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c**)
( ) old form

***Explanations*:**
1.) This suffix, mainly used for the future, is similar to the NDS "-даг" (p. 188) and is not so often used in the colloquial language because of its **lyrical sound** (**ex. a-c**). In literature, it's often used as a **present tense suffix** when writing **exciting** or **romantic novels** (**ex. d-e**). In colloquial language it's only used for actions that **remain the same** or for **lasting truths** (**ex. f-h**). Often, actions expressed with this suffix have a **future meaning** (**ex. g-h**) and can in this way be distinguished from the NDS "-даг".
2.) **Interrogation** is best formed with the analytically expressed aspect "-ж байна" (p. 136) or with the Present tense NDS's "-аа/-даг" (p. 144-145).
3.) **Negative** particles are not used. Other ways to negate the present tense are: "-хгүй байна/-даггүй" (compare with page 422).

***Frequency*:** Written language: **quite often**
Colloquial language: **seldom**

a	It **snows** in winter.	Өвөл цас орно.	
b	It **rains** in the fall.	Намар бороо орно.	
c	Boats **swim** on the sea.	Далайд завь хөвнө.	
d	When the nice springtime comes, old people **think** of themselves as having become young.	Хаврын сайхан цаг ирэхэд хөгшин хүн өөрийгөө залуу болсон шиг санана.	
e	The snow that fell in winter melts in the spring sun and **wets** Luvsang's boots.	Өвөл орсон цас хаврын наранд хайлж Лувсангийн гутлыг норгоно.	
f	We know that water **freezes**.	Ус хөлддөгийг бид мэднэ (мэддэг).	
g	My older brother **knows** Japanese.	Миний ах япон хэл мэднэ (мэддэг).	
h	I **can** drive a car.	Би машин барьж чадна (чаддаг).	

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.8 TTS "–на⁴" (Future)

Cyrillic Rules:
–на, –нэ, –но, –нө complying with vowel harmony

Classical Rules:
–ᠨᠠ/ᠨᠡ complying with vowel harmony
Inserted vowel necessary (**ex. c**)
(–ᠰᠤ · –ᠰᠦ) old forms (also used for present tense)

Explanations:
1.) This suffix, also used for present tense, is mainly used for the **indefinite future**, with no stress on the immediate future (see explanation 4 on page 187).
2.) **Interrogative** sentences are built with the future NDS "–х" (p. 147-148). If questions are built with this suffix they have a **completely different meaning**, expressing a **polite request** similar to what we have in English (**ex. h-i**).
3.) **Negation** is also done with the future NDS "–х". A **formal** negation is also possible with the negative particles "эс" or "үл" (**ex. j-k** and see p. 332-333).
4.) **Particles** (p. 335ff) can follow (**ex. l**).
5.) Note the **expressions** that are built with this suffix and an interrogative pronoun (**ex. m-o**).

Frequency: Written language: **very often**
Colloquial language: **very often**

a	I'll go tomorrow.	Би маргааш явна.	ᠪᠢ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠠᠱ ᠶᠠᠪᠨᠠ᠃
b	The train **will leave** now.	Галт тэрэг одоохон явна.	ᠭᠠᠯᠲ ᠲᠡᠷᠡᠭ ᠣᠳᠣᠣᠬᠣᠨ ᠶᠠᠪᠨᠠ᠃
c	My sister **will arrive** this morning in Mongolia.	Миний эгч өнөө өглөө Монголд ирнэ.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠡᠭᠴ ᠥᠨᠥᠥ ᠥᠭᠯᠥᠥ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠳ ᠢᠷᠨᠡ᠃
d	Soon, I'll **be** 25 years old. ("I'll **reach** ...")	Би удахгүй хорин таван нас хүрнэ.	ᠪᠢ ᠤᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠨ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ ᠨᠠᠰ ᠬᠦᠷᠨᠡ᠃
e	In 2 hours we'll **arrive** there. ("2 hours will become and then ...")	Хоёр цаг болоод бид очно.	ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠭᠠᠳ ᠪᠢᠳ ᠣᠴᠨᠠ᠃
f	I'll **receive** you at 4pm.	Би таныг арван зургаан цагт хүлээж авна.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠠᠨᠢᠭ ᠠᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠵᠢᠷᠭᠠᠠᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠲ ᠬᠦᠯᠡᠡᠵ ᠠᠪᠨᠠ᠃
g	I'll **work** with you.	Би чамтай ажиллана.	ᠪᠢ ᠴᠠᠮᠲᠠᠢ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠯᠠᠨᠠ᠃
h	**Would** you **please come in?**	Та орно уу.	ᠲᠠ ᠣᠷᠣᠨᠣ ᠤᠤ ᠃
i	**Would** you **give** me your clothes, **please?**	Та надад хувцаа өгнө үү.	ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠬᠤᠪᠴᠠᠭ ᠥᠭᠨᠥ ᠦᠦ ᠃
j	Smoking is ***not*** **allowed**! ("[You] **may** ***not*** pull tobacco.")	Тамхи татаж үл болно.	ᠲᠠᠮᠬᠢ ᠲᠠᠲᠠᠵ ᠦᠯ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃
k	Staff only! ("Outside people **may** ***not*** enter!")	Гадны хүн орж үл болно.	ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃ ᠭᠠᠳᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠬᠢᠨ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠣᠷᠣᠭᠰᠣᠨ ᠦᠯ
l	She **is leaving** tomorrow!	Тэр маргааш явна шүү дээ.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠠᠱ ᠶᠠᠪᠨᠠ ᠰᠡᠢ ᠲᠡ ᠃
m	***Wherever*** he **goes**, I'll follow.	Тэр хаана явна, би дагана.	ᠲᠡᠷ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ ᠶᠠᠪᠨᠠ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠳᠠᠭᠠᠨᠠ᠃
n	***Whoever*** **talks** a lot fails a lot. [proverb]	Хэн их ярина, тэр их алдана.	ᠬᠡᠨ ᠦᠨ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠲᠡᠷ ᠦᠨ ᠠᠯᠳᠠᠨᠠ᠃

1.1.2.2 FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

In Mongolian, verbs can be divided into the following groups according to their functions:

1.) Full verbs
2.) Auxiliary verbs
3.) Modal verbs (and modal constructions)
4.) Modifying verbs
5.) Conjunction verb

1.1.2.2.1 Full Verbs

Full verbs can carry out all the functions of a verb. They can **build the predicate** of a sentence **by themselves**. Obviously, there are thousands of full verbs. We'll only consider here the two full verbs "бай–" and "бол–" which also serve as auxiliary verbs in order to show the difference.

1.1.2.2.1.1 Full Verb "бай–"

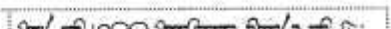
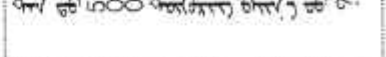
1.1.2.2.1.1.1 In the Function of 'there are'

In this function, the full verb "бай–" always demands a local adverbial in the ***dative-locative case***, which is always placed **before the subject** of the sentence. This full verb can express all tenses, but since "байна" usually refers to the present tense, the *auxiliary* "бол–" is used to express the future (**ex. e**).

a	**There were** 4 tables *in* this room.	Энэ өрөөнд 4 ширээ байсан.	
b	**Are there** wolves *on* this mountain?	Энэ уулаад чоно байдаг уу?	
c	**There are** 11 chairs *in* this room.	Энэ өрөөнд 11 сандал байна.	
d	Yesterday, **there were** some horses *at* the foot of that mountain.	Очигдөр тэр уулын бэлд хэдэн адуу байсан.	
e	Tomorrow, **there will be** a piano in this hall.	Маргааш энэ танхимд төгөлдөр хуур байх болно.	

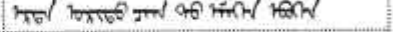
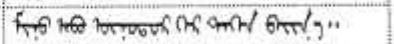
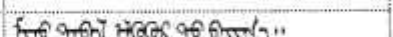
Notice that "бай–" in function of 'there are' is also used to express the English **'(I) have ...'**. Mongolian sentence structure demands a logical subject in ***dative-locative case***. The literal translation would be **'With (me) there are ...'** or **'For (me) ... exists'**. The English accusative object becomes the Mongolian syntactic subject and the English subject becomes a dative-locative object. This function is not used for the future.

a	I **had** one older brother and one older sister. ("With me **there were** ...")	Надад нэг ах, нэг эгч байсан.	
b	He **owns** some fast horses. ("With him **there are**...")	Түүнд хэдэн хурдан морь байдаг.	
c	He **has** some fast horses. ("With him **there are being**...")	Түүнд хэдэн хурдан морь байгаа.	
d	**(At the moment,)** he **has** some fast horses. ("With him **there are being** ...")	Түүнд хэдэн хурдан морь байна.	

e	**Do** you **have** 500 tögrögs? ("**Are there** 500 tögrögs with you?")	Танд 500 төгрөг байна уу?	
f	I **have** bread. I **don't have** bread. ("With me **there is** no bread.")	Надад талх байна. Надад талх байхгүй.	

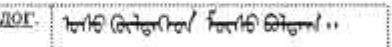
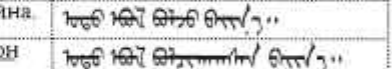
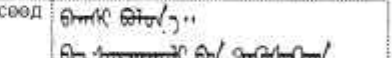
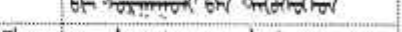
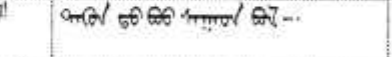
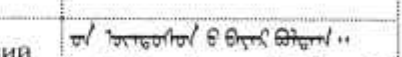
1.1.2.2.1.1.2 In the Function of 'to be'

If "бай–" has the function 'to be', usually a local adverbial (in ***dative-locative case***) is needed. But this time, it comes **after the subject** in the sentence.

a	Once upon a time, there **was** an old couple.	Эрт урьд цагт эмгэн өвгөн хоёр байжээ.	
b	My father **is** at home today.	Миний аав өнөө-дөр гэрээ байна.	
c	My 'deel' **is** in the cloakroom.	Миний дээл өлгүүрт байгаа.	
d	**Please be** at home at 8 o'clock.	Чи орой 8 цагт гэрээ байгаарай.	
e	Tomorrow I'll **be** here.	Маргааш би энд байна.	

1.1.2.2.1.2 Full Verb "бол–"

The full verb "бол–" has the main meaning **'to become'** (**ex. a-e**). But this is not always the best translation in English because many verbs like 'to ripen', 'to be ready' or 'to take place' are expressed in Mongolian with "бол–" (**ex. f-i**). This full verb can be used in all tenses: present (**ex. a-b,f**), past (**ex. c,g-i**), and future (**ex. d-e**).

a	Water freezes and **becomes** ice.	Ус хөлдөөд мөс болдог.	
b	It's **becoming** winter now.	Одоо өвөл болж байна.	
c	Now it **has become** winter.	Одоо өвөл болчихсон байна.	
d	I'll graduate from my school and then **I'll become** a teacher.	Би сургуулиа төгсөөд багш болно.	
e	Don't disturb him! ("Don't **become** a hindrance to him.")	Түүнд бүү саад бол!	
f	On July 11th, the Mongolian national holiday takes place. ("...**becomes**")	7–р сарын 11–нд Монголын үндэсний баяр болдог.	
g	The tea and the meal are ready. ("...**have become**")	Цай, хоол болсон.	
h	These grapes are ripe. ("...**have become** nice") Ripe apples taste good. ("Apples which **have become** have a good taste.")	Энэ усан үзэм сайхан болжээ. Болсон алим сайхан амттай.	
i	Recently there was a snow- storm in Ulaanbaatar. ("...there **became** ...)	Саяхан Улаанбаатарт цасан шуурга боллоо.	

1.1.2.2.2 Auxiliary Verbs

Auxiliary verbs are verbs that can't build the predicate of a sentence on their own. They are used **together with** other verbs or parts of speech in predicate function. Such combinations we call **compound predicates** because the predicate meaning and its grammatical functions are distributed to more than one word.

Examples in English (underlined: full verb; **bold**: auxiliary verb):

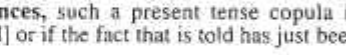
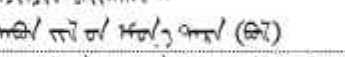
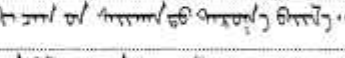
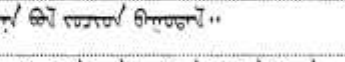
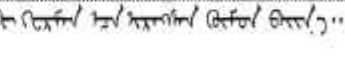
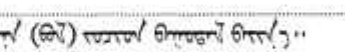
I have done my work.
By next week, this rubbish **will have been** removed.
Shall I help you?

1.1.2.2.2.1 Auxiliary Verb "бай–"

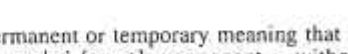
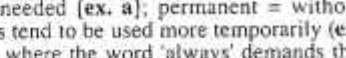
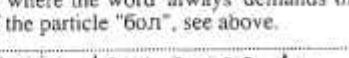
1.1.2.2.2.1.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives)

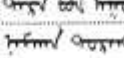
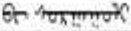
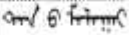
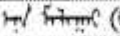
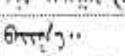
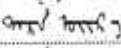
The auxiliary verb "бай–" has the function of a **copula** if it **connects two elements** which are to **be equated with each other** ('copulare' = to connect). **Nouns** or **adjectives** can be connected in this manner. The **particles** "мөн" or "юм" can also serve as copulas. If there is no written copula, the **particle** "бол" marks the **subject** and thus makes it impossible to confuse the subject with other parts of speech.

1.) Examples of noun-copula:
Usually, the copula is used for the past tense (**ex. a-b**), rarely for the future and almost never for the present (**ex.c**). However, under **certain circumstances,** such a present tense copula is needed (e.g. if the fact being told is only temporary [**ex. d**] or if the fact that is told has just been found out [**ex. e-g**]).

a	Five years ago, he **was** a worker. (he = worker)	Таван жилийн өмнө тэр (бол) ажилчин байсан.	
b	In the good old days, I **was** a boss. (I = boss)	Би цагийн сайхан дарга байлаа.	
c	This is a hotel.	Энэ бол зочид буудал.	
d	I **am** the person that has come from Germany. (I = person who came from G.)	Би Германаас ирсэн хүн байна.	
e	This **is** a hotel. (this = hotel)	Энэ (бол) зочид буудал байна.	
f	This one **is** your book, that one **is** Bat's book. (that one = Bat's book)	Энэ нь чиний, тэр нь Батын ном байна.	
g	Oh, this **is** very expensive!	Энэ (бол) их үнэтэй ном байна.	

2.) Examples of adjective-copula:
Whether the copula is needed or not depends on the permanent or temporary meaning that is expressed through the adjective: temporary = copula needed [**ex. a**]; permanent = without copula [**ex. b**]. Tense doesn't play a role. Some adjectives tend to be used more temporarily (**ex. 6-7**), others more permanently (**ex. 8**). Note **example 9**, where the word 'always' demands the copula "бай–" with the NDS "–даг". For the meaning of the particle "бол", see above.

1a	He **is** joyful (now).	Тэр баярталанги байна.	
1b	He **is** a joyful person.	Тэр бол баяртангай.	
2a	She **is** angry (now).	Тэр уурлаж байна. Тэр уурлаж байгаа.	

2b	She **is** an angry person.	Тэр бол уурлаг.	
3a	When I was in school, I **was** short and thin.	Би сургуульд байхдаа намхан, туранхай байсан.	
3b	My father **is** short and thin.	Миний аав (бол) намхан, туранхай.	
4a	Your hat **is** (too) small (for you).	Таны малгай жижиг байна.	
4b	This hat **is** small.	Энэ малгай (бол) жижиг.	
5a	He's **been** ill these days.	Тэр ойрдоо өвчтэй байгаа.	
5b	He **is** a bit mad. ("He **is** ill.")	Тэр бол өвчтэй.	
6a	I **am** hungry.	Би өлсгөлөн байна.	
7a	This picture **is** crooked.	Энэ зураг хэвгий байна.	
8b	Those two ladies **have** a beautiful face.	Тэр хоёр хүүхэн (бол) царайлаг.	
9b	This mountain **is** always snow-covered. ("**is** always with snow")	Энэ уул дандаа цастай байдаг.	

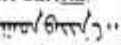
1.1.2.2.2.1.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs)

1.) Building analytical aspects

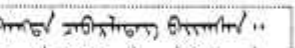
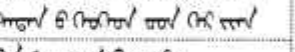
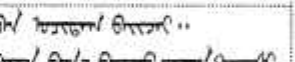
Usually aspects are built with aspect suffixes (see pages 131-136). But aspects can be built using analytical verb forms, as we have already mentioned on page 136ff. These analytical aspects are all built **using the auxiliary verb** "бай-". Here is a summary again:

-ж	+ бай-	= **progressive** aspect	(see page 136)	**ex. 1**
-(чих)аад	+ бай-	= **perfect** aspect	(see page 137)	**ex. 2**
-(чих)сан	+ бай-	= **perfect** aspect	(see page 137)	**ex. 2**
-саар	+ бай-	= **progressive-perfect** aspect	(see page 138)	**ex. 3**

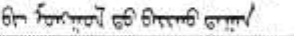
The **tense** in which the action happens is shown by the **TTS** added to the verb "бай-", resp. "бол-" for the future. Since the future NDS "-х" can't be used as a TTS, and because the TTS "-на" already has a fixed present tense meaning here, the auxiliary verb "бол-" is used to express the future tense (compare with pages 198-199).

	Present tense	**Past tense**	**Future tense**
1	Би унтаж байна. **I'm** sleeping.	Би унтаж байсан. I **was** sleeping.	Би унтаж байх болно. I **will be** sleeping.
2	Тэр унтчихаад байна. Тэр унтчихсан байна.  He **has** slept.	Тэр унтчихаад байв. Тэр унтчихсан байв. He **had** slept.	Тэр унтчихаад байх болно. Тэр унтчихсан байх болно. He **will have** slept.
3	Тэд ажилласаар байна. They **have been** working.	Тэд ажилласаар байжээ. They **had been** working.	Тэд ажилласаар байх болно. They **will have been** working.

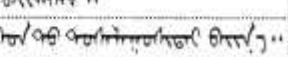
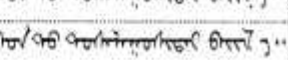
2.) Putting the NDS "–даг" into past tense
If an action is **habitual** in the present, the **NDS** "–даг" is used to express this. If we talk about a habitual action in the past, we need the auxiliary verb "бай–". In English, we best translate with '**... used to ...**'.

a	Their children always **used to** clean their flat.	Тэдний хүүхдүүд гэрээ дандаа цэвэрлэдэг байсан.	
b	When he was young, he **used to** go there.	Тэр бага байхдаа тийшээ очдог байжээ.	
c	When I was in Mongolia, I **used to** celebrate the New Year.	Би Монголд байхдаа цагаан сар тэмдэглэдэг байлаа.	

3.) Building the predicate with *AwDS's*

a	I'*d like* to go.	Би явмаар байна.	
b	I *wanted* to go.	Би явмаар байсан.	
c	(We) *should* help your child.	Таны хүүхдэд туслуштай байна.	
d	(We) *should* **have** helped your child.	Таны хүүхдэд туслуштай байлаа.	

4.) Building the past of the construction "... тай бай–"
This construction '**subject + ...–тай бай–**' can be literally translated as 'subject + **to be with ...**' meaning '**to have, to own**'. This construction is widely used for the past tense (**ex. a-c**). To express the indefinite present, the auxiliary verb "байна" is omitted since the suffix "–тай" expresses enough of a 'having' meaning (**ex. d**). But in order to stress the **temporary owning** of something, "байна" is spoken, thus expressing this meaning (**ex. e**).

a	I had an older brother and an older sister. ("I **was with** an older ...")	Би нэг ах, нэг эгчтэй байсан.	
b	I had one nice book. ("I **was with**...")	Би нэг сайхан номтой байсан.	
c	He **had** only one daughter. ("He **was with** only...")	Тэр ганц охинтой байжээ.	
d	He owns some fast horses. ("He **is with**...")	Тэр хэдэн хурдан морьтой. (zero-form)	
e	I have right now 500 tögrögs. ("I **am with**...")	Би одоо таван зуун төгрөгтэй байна.	

1.1.2.2.2.1.3 Building Subjunctive

When using the subjunctive mood, the speaker or writer indicates that the things he says are not real actions that have happened or will happen, but thoughts, desires or wishes. Thus, the subjunctive is a **mood of imagination**. We'll look at some of these imaginary constructions on pages 201-207. Here, we only give a few examples to show how the auxiliary verb "бай–" is used.
The particle "сан" (p. 339) in parentheses (derived from the defective auxiliary verb "асан") intensifies the imaginary meaning. It can be used in the first or second part of the sentence. In colloquial language, it can be used in **both** parts.

a	He **would have left** if he could.	Тэр чадвал явах байсан.	[illegible]
b	**Would** you **come** to Mongolia again?	Та дахиад Монголд ирэх байсан уу?	[illegible]
c	I **wouldn't come** to Mongolia again.	Би дахиад Монголд ирэхгүй байсан.	[illegible]
d	If I had been a rich man, I **would have bought** a car.	Би баян хүн байсан(сан) бол машин авах байсан.	[illegible]
e	If I had known this, I **wouldn't have married** him.	Үүнийг мэдэж байсан (сан) бол би түүнтэй гэрлэхгүй байх байсан.	[illegible]
f	If I had been in my homeland, I **wouldn't have married** him.	Би нутагтаа байсан(сан) бол түүнтэй гэрлээгүй байх байсан.	[illegible]
g	By the time he came, I **was supposed to have eaten**.	Түүнийг орж ирэхэд би хоолоо идчихээд байх байсан.	[illegible]
h	If you hadn't disturbed me, I **would have finished** this job by now.	Чамайг надад саад хийгээгүй(сэн) бол би энэ ажлыг дуусчихаад байх байлаа.	[illegible]
i	You **should have been working** yesterday until 9 o'clock.	Чи өчигдөр орой 9 цаг хүртэл ажилласаар байх байсан.	[illegible]
j	I **should have gone**.	Би явах хэрэгтэй байсан.	[illegible]
k	He **wasn't to come.**	Тэр ирэх ёсгүй байжээ.	[illegible]

1.1.2.2.2.2 Auxiliary Verb "бол-"

The auxiliary verb "бол-" can, like "бай-", fulfill different functions. In all these functions, the original meaning of 'to become' is still evident.

1.1.2.2.2.2.1 Building Copula (after Nouns and Adjectives)

See explanation of 'copula' on page 194.

1.) Examples of noun-copula:

a	He'll **become** a teacher. (he = teacher)	Тэр багш болно.	[illegible]
b	She **became** a good worker. (she = worker)	Тэр сайн ажилчин болсон.	[illegible]
c	This person **became** my translator. (person = translator)	Тэр хүн миний орчуулагч боллоо.	[illegible]

2.) Examples of adjective-copula:

a	He'll **get** fat like a swine. (he = fat)	Тэр гахай шиг бүдүүн болно.	[illegible]
b	He **got** angry. (he = angry)	Тэр уурлаж болсон.	[illegible]
c	My father **has gotten** old. (father = old)	Аав минь хөгширч болжээ.	[illegible]
d	I **got** well. (my body = well)	Миний бие эдгэрч болсон.	[illegible]
e	Her pitch-black hair **turned** gray. (hair = gray)	Тас хар үс нь бууралж болов.	[illegible]
f	My book disappeared. ("My book **has become** absent.") (book = absent)	Миний ном алга болчихжээ.	[illegible]

1.1.2.2.2.2.2 Building Compound Predicates (after Verbs)

After verbs, "бол–" has the main function of **showing the future tense**:

1.) Following the NDS "–даг"

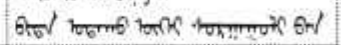
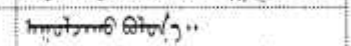
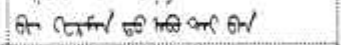
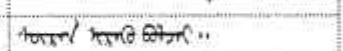
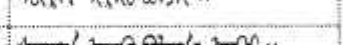
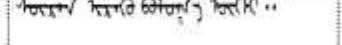
In all these sentences, the literal translation in parentheses shows that the noun [...], which logically would follow this **NDS**, has been dropped, which explains the free translation in English.

a	Their children will get in the habit of cleaning their flat. ("... **will become** regularly cleaning [children].")	Тэдний хүүхдүүд гэрээ дандаа цэвэрлэдэг болно.	[illegible]
b	When I am grown up, I'll be going there. ("...I'll **become** a [person] who is going there.")	Би том болоод тийшээ очдог болно.	[illegible]
c	At this time next year, your son will be walking and talking. ("... your son **will become** a walking and talking [son].")	Хүү чинь ирэх жилийн өдийд явдаг, юм ярьдаг болно.	[illegible]
d	After a few days, your eyes will adjust. ("...your eyes **will become** well seeing [eyes].")	Таны нүд хэд хоноод юм сайн хардаг болно.	[illegible]
e	We're in the process of becoming able to read, write and speak in Mongolian. ("We **are becoming** [persons] who are reading, writing and speaking in Mongolian.")	Бид монголоор уншдаг, бичдэг, ярьдаг болж байна.	[illegible]
f	Father is getting better and can eat again. ("Father's body took care of its illness and he **became** a food-eating [person].")	Аавын бие нь засарч хоол иддэг болсон.	[illegible]
g	Bat has become a fast reader. ("Bat **became** a quick-reading [person].")	Бат хурдан уншдаг болжээ.	[illegible]

2.) Following the NDS "–х"

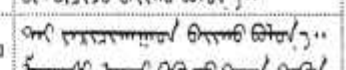
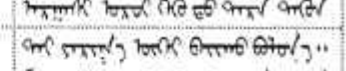
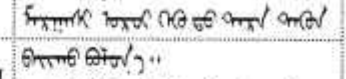
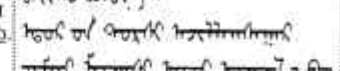
In order to stress a future meaning when using the **NDS** "–х", the auxiliary verb "бол–" can be added (**ex. a-b**).

A second meaning of such an analytical structure is the English expression '**It's time...**'. Again, the noun (e.g. 'time') which logically follows an NDS has been dropped (**ex. a-f**). Depending on the whole context of the sentences, it could also be translated as 'it was decided that...' (see **ex. g-i**).

a	Soon we **will graduate** from our school. ("Soon we'll **become** [persons] who graduate from school.")	Бид удахгүй сургуулиа төгсөх болно.	
b	I'll meet my father in Germany. ("I'll **become** a [person] who will meet with ...")	Би Германд аавтайгаа уулзах болно.	
c	It's time to start the lesson. ("It **became** [time] to enter the lesson.")	Хичээл орох боллоо.	
d	It's time for Suren to come. ("It **became** [time] for Suren to come.")	Сүрэн ирэх болжээ.	
e	It's not yet time for Suren to come. ("It **didn't become** [time] for Suren to come.")	Сүрэн ирэх болоогүй.	
f	It's time for me to go. ("It **is becoming** [time] for me to go.")	Би явах болж байна.	
g	**It was decided that** the lesson would start.	Хичээл орох боллоо.	
h	**It was decided that** Suren will come.	Сүрэн ирэх болжээ.	
i	**It was decided that** Suren wouldn't come.	Сүрэн ирэхгүй болжээ.	

3.) Building the future tense where "байна" is not sufficient

Because the NDS "-х" can't be used as a TTS and the TTS "-на" also refers to the present tense, the future tense can't be expressed with the auxiliary verb "бай-" alone. The auxiliary verb "бол-" has to assist.

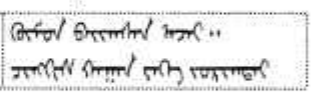
a	**I will be writing.**	Би бичиж байх болно.	
b	By tomorrow evening, he **will have talked** to her.	Маргааш орой гэхэд тэр түүнтэй ярьчихаад байх болно.	
c	By tomorrow evening, he **will not (yet) have talked** to her.	Маргааш орой гэхэд тэр түүнтэй яриагүй байх болно.	
d	When you come tomorrow evening, I **will have been working** the whole day.	Чамайг маргааш орой иртэл би өдрийн турш ажилласаар байх болно.	
e	If he does not write me a letter first, I **won't write** a letter to him.	Тэр надад эхэлж захиа бичихгүй бол би түүнд захиа бичихгүй байсаар байх болно.	

1.1.2.2.2.3 Defective Auxiliary Verbs

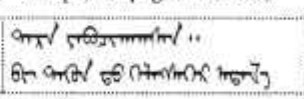
In the preclassical period, the auxiliary verbs "a–" and "**bü–**" were used instead of today's "бай–" and "бол–". At that time, they could be fully conjugated as any other verb. But today, only **leftovers of these verb conjugations** exist and they are mainly used in **literary language**. Here is a list of the most important ones:

1.1.2.2.2.3.1 Defective Auxiliary Verbs "ажээ, атал, аваас"

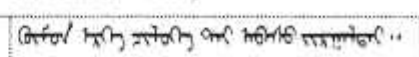
"ажээ" has the meaning of "байжээ": One has heard about something.

a	Genghis Khan **is said to** have been a very brave man.	Чингис хаан их зориг–той хүн байсан ажээ.	

"атал" has the meaning of "байтал" (together with the VDS "–саар", see pages 168-169)

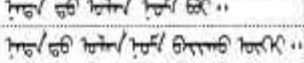
a	**Although** I had warned him, he left.	Би түүнд хэлсээр атал тэр явчихсан.	

"аваас" has the meaning of "байвал" ("–ваас" = old form of "–бал")

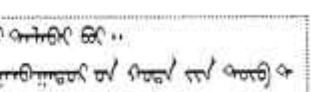
a	**If** a man has freedom, he is happy.	Хүн эрх чөлөөтэй аваас жаргалтай.	

1.1.2.2.2.3.2 Defective Auxiliary Verbs "буй, бий, билээ"

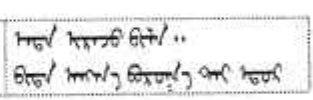
"бий" has the meaning of "байгаа": Whatever someone has, he **owns**.

a	I **have (own)** a lot of books.	Надад олон ном бий.	
b	Do you **have** a lot of books? I **don't have** a lot of books.	Танд олон ном бий юу? Надад олон ном байхгүй.	

"буй" has the meaning of "байдаг": Used for more **official situations**.

a	In the center of Ulaanbaa–tar, **there is** a big square.	Улаанбаатар хотын төвд том талбай буй.	
b	Mongolia **is situated** in Central Asia.	Монгол улс Төв Азид буй.	

"билээ" has a similar meaning to "байлаа": To remind someone or oneself of something. See also page 338 (modal particle "билээ").

a	We first arrived here on a rainy day, (do you remember)?	Бид анх бороотой өдөр энд ирж билээ. (...ирсэн билээ)	

1.1.2.2.3 Modal Verbs and Modal Constructions

What is expressed in English with **modals** like 'will', 'shall', 'would', 'should', 'ought to', 'can', 'might', 'must', 'need', etc. is expressed in Mongolian with either **modal suffixes** (e.g. "–аасай, –я"), **modal verbs** (see the following paragraph) or **modal constructions** (see below).

1.1.2.2.3.1 Modal Verb "чада–"

Please note that the modal verb "чада–" always demands the *cVDS* "–ж/–ч".

a	**Can** you be at the hotel in one hour?	Та нэг цаг болоод зочид буудалд байж чадах уу?	ᠪᠠ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠤᠳ ᠵᠤᠴᠢᠳ ᠪᠤᠤᠳᠠᠯ᠊ᠳ ᠪᠠᠢᠵᠠ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠤ ᠤᠤ᠃
b	**Can** you change a 1000 tögrög bill into small bills for me?	Та надад мянга төгрөг задлаж өгч чадах уу?	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠵᠠᠰᠤᠭᠠᠢ ᠪᠡ᠃ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠮᠢᠨᠢ᠊ ᠲᠥᠭᠥᠷᠥᠭ ᠵᠠᠰᠤᠭᠯᠠᠵ ᠥᠭᠴᠦ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠤ ᠤᠤ᠃
c	You **can't** help me, can you?	Та надад туслаж чадахгүй биз!	ᠪᠢᠽ᠄ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠤᠰᠯᠠᠵ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠢᠽ᠊
d	**Can** the children do it in only 2 hours?	Хүүхдүүд үүнийг хоёрхон цагт хийж чадах уу?	ᠬᠦᠦᠬᠳᠦᠳ ᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷᠬᠣᠨ ᠴᠠᠭᠲ ᠬᠢᠵᠦ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠤ ᠤᠤ᠃
e	I **can** do that myself, can't I?	Би үүнийг өөрөө хийж чадна биз дээ.	ᠪᠢ᠄᠄ ᠪᠢ ᠦᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠥᠪᠥᠥ ᠬᠢᠵᠦ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨᠠ ᠪᠢᠽ ᠳᠡᠭᠡ᠊
f	Bat said he **could** help me.	Бат надад тусалж чадна гэсэн.	ᠪᠠᠲ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠲᠤᠰᠯᠠᠵ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨᠠ ᠭᠡᠵᠡᠨ᠄᠄
g	We hope that he **is able to** do this work (of his).	Манайхан түүнийг энэ ажлаа хийж чадна гэж найдаж байна.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠶᠬᠠᠨ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠢᠶᠡᠭ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠵᠢᠯᠠᠨ ᠳᠤᠷ ᠬᠢᠵᠦ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨᠠ ᠭᠡᠵ ᠨᠠᠶᠳᠠᠵ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ᠃

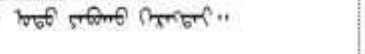
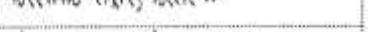
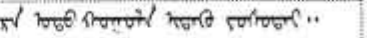
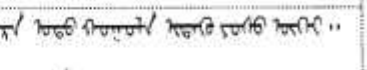
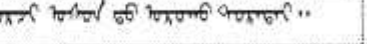
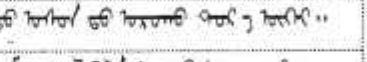
1.1.2.2.3.2 Modal Constructions

1.1.2.2.3.2.1 "...–х ...–тай[3]/–гүй"

As the name 'NDS' (noun determining suffix) indicates, the verb suffix "–х" determines a noun. Because the following word, to which the comitative CS "тай" is added, is a noun, this construction always demands the NDS "–х" and never the VDS "–ж/–ч".

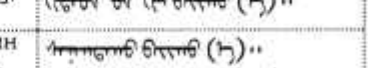
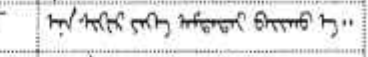
хэрэгтэй (хэрэггүй)	ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠲᠡᠢ (ᠬᠡᠷᠡᠭᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠢᠽ)	**have to, ought to, need to, should** ("with the **necessity**")
ёстой (ёсгүй)	ᠶᠣᠰᠲᠠᠢ (ᠶᠣᠰᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠢᠽ)	**must** ("with the **law**")
дуртай (дургүй)	ᠳᠤᠷᠲᠠᠢ (ᠳᠤᠷᠲᠤᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠪᠢᠽ)	**to like** ("with the **pleasure**")
санаатай (санаагүй)	ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠭᠠᠲᠠᠢ (ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠭᠠᠨ᠎ᠤ ᠪᠢᠽ)	**to intend** ("with the **thought**")
бодолтой (бодолгүй)	ᠪᠣᠳᠣᠯᠲᠠᠢ (ᠪᠣᠳᠣᠯᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠢᠽ)	
боломжтой (боломжгүй)	ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠮᠵᠲᠠᠢ (ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠮᠵᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠢᠽ)	**to be possible** ("with the **possibility**")
хүсэлтэй (хүсэлгүй)	ᠬᠦᠰᠡᠯᠲᠡᠢ (ᠬᠦᠰᠡᠯᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠢᠽ)	**to desire** ("with the **desire**")
учиртай (учиргүй)	ᠤᠴᠢᠷᠲᠠᠢ (ᠤᠴᠢᠷᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠢᠽ)	**to have reason to** ("with the **reason**")

Examples:

a	You **have to/ought to/ need to** go now./You **should go** now.	Чи одоо явах хэрэгтэй.	
b	You **don't need** to cry./ You **shouldn't** cry.	Чи уйлах хэрэггүй.	
c	He **must** eat now.	Тэр одоо хоол идэх ёстой.	
d	He **must not** eat now./ He **is not to** eat now./ He **is not supposed to** eat now.	Тэр одоо хоол идэх ёсгүй.	
e	Dorj **likes** swimming/bathing.	Дорж усанд орох дуртай.	
f	Bat **doesn't like** swimming/bathing.	Бат усанд орох дургүй.	
g	I **intend to** learn Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл сурах санаатай.	
h	We **intend to** go to Germany by train.	Бид галт тэргээр Герман явах бодолтой.	
i	He **doesn't think of** going abroad.	Тэр гадаадад явах бодолгүй.	
j	**It's possible for me to** work together with you.	Би тантай хамт ажиллах боломжтой.	
k	**It's impossible** for me **to** meet him.	Би түүнтэй уулзах боломжгүй.	
l	I **desire to** live in Mongolia.	Би Монголд амьдрах хүсэлтэй.	
m	He **has (no) reason to** come to my home.	Тэр манайд ирэх учиртай./ учиргүй.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.2 "... -байх(аа)"

If "байх" is used at the end of a sentence, it indicates that the statement is a **presumption.** The meaning is **stronger than** "магадгүй" (=perhaps, may be). So this modal is best translated as **'probably'** or **'most likely'**. If "байх" is used together with the **particle** "aa", then the meaning is similar to a tag question. If a true and maybe hurting statement is meant to be more **polite**, this construction is used (**ex. d**). Very often, sentences with this construction are used **in the future** (presumptions are usually future related) and therefore the *NDS* "-х" is commonly used.

a	It's **probably** from China. (It's from China, **isn't it?**)	Хятадынх байх(аа).	
b	**Most likely**, the Gobi will be very interesting to you.	Говь танд их сонин санагдах байх(аа).	
c	These sweets are **probably** very tasty, **aren't they?**	Энэ чихэр их амт-тай байхаа.	
d	He **might be** stupid. (instead of 'he is stupid')	Тэр тэнэг байхаа.	
e	**Most likely,** you'll be pleased with the concert.	Концерт танд их ая-тай санагдах байх.	

f	Ask the teacher, he'll **probably** know it.	Багшаас асуу! Тэр мэдэх байхаа.	[illegible]
g	It will **probably** rain soon.	Удахгүй бороо орох байхаа.	[illegible]
h	You know, **most likely**, I'll be a bit late!	Би жаахан хожимдох байх шүү!	[illegible]
i	He **is likely to** fail the exams, **isn't he**?	Тэр шалгалтандаа унах байхаа.	[illegible]
j	-Can you ride a horse? **-Probably** not, I haven't tried it yet.	-Морь унаж чадах уу? -Чадахгүй байх, би морь унаж үзээгүй!	[illegible]
k	Yesterday it **probably** rained.	Өчигдөр бороо орсон байхаа.	[illegible]
l	**Most likely,** Bat left yesterday for the countryside, **didn't he**?	Өчигдөр Бат хөдөө явчихсан байхаа.	[illegible]

1.1.2.2.3.2.3 "... юм байна"

These two words together express **surprise**. One finds out something that one didn't know before. In colloquial language the particle "лээ" is added to express a **careless attitude**. In English we best translate with **'supposed to be...'** or **'said to be ...'** or use a word that **expresses surprise**.

a	By the way, her husband **is said to** be a very big boss.	Сониноос, түүний нөхөр нь маш том дарга юм байна (лээ).	[illegible]
b	Their house **is said to** be very cold.	Тэдний байр нь их хүйтэн юм байна (лээ).	[illegible]
c	**Wow**, that girl can speak Japanese!	Ооё, тэр охин японоор ярьж чаддаг юм байна.	[illegible]
d	Bat **is said to** be very interested in music.	Бат хөгжим их сонирхдог юм байна (лээ).	[illegible]
e	**I found out that** the children miss their parents a great deal.	Хүүхдүүд нь эцэг эхийгээ их санадаг юм байна.	[illegible]
f	**Ugh**, to do this, one needs a lot of money!	Үүнийг хийхэд их мөнгө хэрэгтэй юм байна.	[illegible]
g	**Boy**, that's difficult!	Хэцүү л юм байна даа!	[illegible]

1.1.2.2.3.2.4 "... байлтай/... байлгүй"

Similar to the construction "байхаа", this statement is likely to be true. Using "байлтай" gives a high percentage of truth, as all factors are in favor of one's statement: '**It must be...**'. Using "байлгүй" the chance is less: '**It's likely to...**'.

a	He **must** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн байлтай.	[illegible]
b	He **can't** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн биш байлтай.	[illegible]
c	He **must** have arrived.	Тэр ирсэн байлтай.	[illegible]
d	He **is likely to** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн байлгүй.	[illegible]
e	He **is not likely to** be Mongolian.	Тэр монгол хүн биш байлгүй.	[illegible]
f	I'**m likely to** go.	Би явах байлгүй.	[illegible]

1.1.2.2.3.2.5 "... -сан бол-..."

Primarily, this construction expresses that the action is not done with delight or pleasure, but rather **unwillingly**, forced or just to **pretend**. Contrary to the construction "-хаас даа", this construction is used for an action that continues over a longer period of time. Secondly, it is used to show a **modest attitude**.

a	**Well,** I'm **just** doing my work.	Би ажлаа хийсэн болж байна.	[illegible]
b	I'm **just** reading this book because I have exams soon.	Удахгүй шалгалт өгөх тул би энэ номыг уншсан болж байна.	[illegible]
c	These days I haven't been well. I attend classes but I'm only there physically.	Ойрдоо бие муу байна. Хичээлдээ явсан болж л байна.	[illegible]
d	Please **just** do what he wants.	Түүний хүссэнийг нь хийсэн болчихооч!	[illegible]
e	He speaks Mongolian, **somewhat**.	Тэр монголоор ярьсан болдог.	[illegible]
f	I cleaned my apartment **somehow**.	Би гэрээ цэвэрлэсэн болсон.	[illegible]
g	The teacher **gave the impression of** having examined my paper.	Багш миний бичсэн зүйлийг шалгасан болсон.	[illegible]
h	I read this book **after a fashion.**	Би тэр номыг нь уншсан болов.	[illegible]

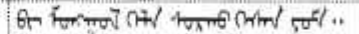
1.1.2.2.3.2.6 "...-х гэсэн юм"

This construction which is widely used in colloquial language expresses a **desire** or an **intention** of the **1st person**. It is similar to "-маар байна" (see p. 151), but the speaker uses this expression to make **his intention clear**, to avoid being misunderstood.

a	I **want to go** to Mongolia.	Би Монголд очих гэсэн юм.	
b	I **want to** meet him.	Би түүнтэй уулзах гэсэн юм.	
c	I **want to** learn Mongolian.	Би монгол хэл сурах гэсэн юм.	

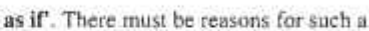
1.1.2.2.3.2.7 "...-болоттой"

This construction expresses the meaning **'it seems/looks as if'**. There must be reasons for such a presumption.

a	**It seems as if** he has come.	Тэр ирсэн болоттой.	
b	**It looks as if** it would rain soon.	Бороо орох болоттой.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.8 "...-х юмсан/...-хсан"

This construction expresses **'I would ('d) like to...'**. It is **not a realistic desire** as the "Би явмаар байна", but more a imaginary thinking. Note that the **particle** "сан" also appears in subjunctive sentences and is therefore connected with a **mood of imagination** (see pages 196ff).

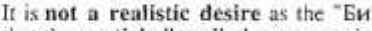
a	I'**d like to** go to the countryside.	Би хөдөө явах юмсан.	
b	I'**d like to** go have a summer holiday in Germany.	Би зун Германд амрах юмсан.	
c	If I got an invitation, I'**d like to** go to America.	Би урилга авбал Америк явахсан.	
d	If I had enough money, I'**d like to** buy a TV.	Би хангалттай мөнгөтэй бол телевиз авахсан.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.9 "...-сан юмсан"

This construction is used if something **doesn't turn out as planned or desired**.

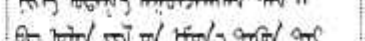
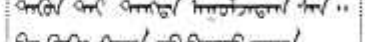
Ex. a: You talked with your friend about something and had hoped he would act accordingly. But he didn't.

Ex. b: You had hoped that Walter would do this or that after learning the language, but now he isn't using his Mongolian at all.

a	**That's odd!** Haven't I told him!	Би найздаа хэлсэн юмсан.	
b	**What a shame!** Walter has learned Mongolian so well!	Валтер монгол хэл сайн сурсан юмсан.	

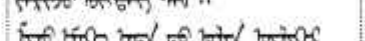
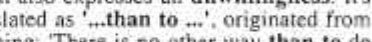
1.1.2.2.3.2.10 "...-сансан/...-дагсан"

These constructions are used if **one is reminded of something**. Depending on whether the action is habitual or not, the "-даг" or "-сан" NDS is used. The particle "сан" originated from the defective auxiliary verb "асан".

a	**Oh yes**, I met him once many years ago.	Би олон жилийн өмнө түүнтэй нэг удаа уулзсансан.	
b	**Oh yes**, my grandpa was a very tall man.	Миний өвөө их өндөр хүн байсансан.	
c	**Oh yes, I remember**, when I was in Huhhot, I always used to meet him.	Би Хөххотод байхдаа түүнтэй дандаа уулздагсан.	
d	**Oh yes**, my granny used to tell me a lot of stories.	Миний эмээ надад олон үлгэр ярьж өгдөгсөн.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.11 "...-хаас даа."

This construction is similar to the "-сан бол-", which also expresses an **unwillingness**. It's likely that this expression which could be literary translated as '**...than to ...**', originated from the sentence "Тэгэхээс өөр арга байхгүй даа." meaning: 'There is no other way **than to** do this.' Say the English sentences with a **deep sigh** after the 'well' to get the feeling.

a	**Well, then** I have to cook.	Би хоол хийхээс даа	
b	He isn't about to come. **Well, then** I have to go.	Тэр ирэхгүй нь. Би явахаас даа.	
c	**Well**, I'll meet him **then**.	Түүнтэй уулзахаас даа!	
d	**Well, then** I have to live in the countryside.	Хөдөө амьдрахаас даа.	

1.1.2.2.3.2.12 Comparison of Modal Constructions and Modal Suffixes

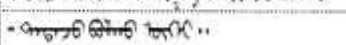
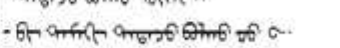
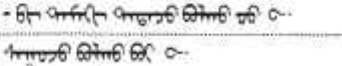
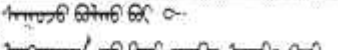
This chart is an attempt to compare all these modals. We don't consider this perfect or complete, as there has been very little research done on this topic.

1	I **must** go.	Би явах ёстой.	Би явмаар юм шүү.
2	I **must** go.("If I don't go, it's not OK.")	Би явахгүй бол болохгүй.	Би явахгүй бол муу юм.
3	I **must** go.("My not going is not OK.")	Би явалгүй болохгүй.	Би яваагүй муу юм.
4	I **am supposed to** go. ("I am becoming gone.")	Би явах болж байна.	Би явах гэж байна.
5	I **have to** go./**I need to** go./ I **ought to** go./I **should** go.	Би явах хэрэгтэй.	Би явмаар.
6	I **have reason to** go.	Би явах учиртай.	Би явмаар.
7	I **want to** go./**Let me go.**	Би явья.	Би явъя.
8	I **want to** go.	Би явах гэсэн юм.	Би явмаар юм.
9	I'm **made to** go./**It's been decided that** I would go.	Би явах болсон.	Би явсан юм.
10	I'm **meant to** go.	Би явах байлтай.	Би явмаар.
11	I **would like to** go.	Би явмаар байна.	Би явмаар.
12	I **desire to** go.	Би явах хүсэлтэй.	Би явмаар.
13	I'm **allowed to** go.	Би явж болно.	Би явж.
14	I **can** go **then**. *(if I have to)*	Би явж болох юм.	Би явж.
15	I'm **able to** go.	Би явж чадна.	Би явж.
16	**It's worthwhile that** I go./ I **should** go.	Би явуушгай байна.	Би явуушгай.
17	**Well,** I'll **just** go.	Би явсан болж байна.	Би явсан.
18	**Well** *(big sigh)*, **then** I'll go.	Би явхаас даа.	Би яхаа.
19	**Most likely/Probably** I'll go.	Би явах байх(аа).	Би явмаар (ш).
20	**Maybe** I'll go.	Би явж магадгүй.	Би явж.
21	I'm **likely to** go./I **think** I'll go.	Би явах байлгүй.	Би явмаар.
22	I **might** go.	Би явж болзошгүй.	Би явж.
23	It's **seems as if** I **will** go.	Би явах болоолтой.	Би явмаар.
24	I **would** go./**I'd like to** go.	Би явах юмсан. Би явахсан.	Би яхъя. Би явсан.
25	**Probably** I won't go.	Би явахгүй байх(аа).	Би явмаар (ш).
26	I'm **not likely to** go.	Би явахгүй байлгүй.	Би явмаар.
27	**What a shame,** he went!	Тэр явсан юмсан.	Тэр явсан.
28	He **must have** gone.	Тэр явсан байлтай.	Тэр явсан.
29	**He is said to** have gone./ **Oh,** he is gone!	Тэр явах юм байна.	Тэр явсан.
30	**Oh yes**, he **used to** go there.	Тэр тийшээ явдагсан.	Тэр явдаг.
31	He **may** go.	Тэр яваг.	Тэр явъя.
32	**Hopefully**, he'll go.	Тэр яваасай!	Тэр явсан.

1.1.2.2.4 Modifying Verbs

Modifying verbs are similar to modal verbs, but they carry - besides their main meaning as a full verb - **one or two other meanings** also. In Mongolian, **two verbs are** always **connected** and therefore one of the **cVDS's** are necessary.

1.1.2.2.4.1 "-ж-ч бол-" in the Function of 'to be allowed to; may'

a	**-May** I talk with Mrs. Dulmaa, **please**? -You **may**.	-Дулмаа гуайтай ярьж болох уу? -Болно.	
b	**-May I** come in? -Yes, do come in.	-Би орж болох уу? -Болноо, болно.	
c	Where **can** I put my clothes?	Хувцаа хаана тайлж болох вэ?	
d	**-May** I smoke? -No, smoking is not **allowed**.	-Би тамхи татаж болох уу? -Татаж болохгүй.	
e	How much luggage **can** I take on the plane?	Онгоцонд хир зэрэг ачаатай сууж болох вэ?	
f	**May** I have the salt, **please**?	Давс авч болох уу?	
g	**-May** I take a picture here? -You **can** take pictures anywhere.	-Энд зураг авч болох уу? -Та хаана ч зураг авч болно.	
h	This is **allowed/possible**. This is not **allowed**/not **possible**.	Энэ бол байж болно. Энэ бол байж болохгүй.	
i	Recently I got my salary. Therefore, I **could** treat you at a restaurant.	Би саяхан цалингаа авсан. Тийм болохоор чамайг ресторанд дааж болох юм.	

1.1.2.2.4.2 Table of Other Modifying Verbs

There is only a limited number of full verbs that can also be used as modifying verbs. They're not commonly used in official language, but mainly in **colloquial and literary** language.

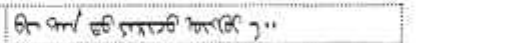
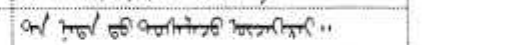
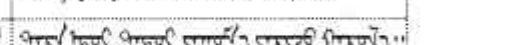
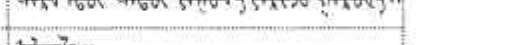
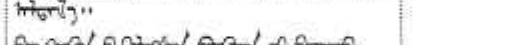
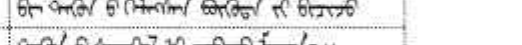
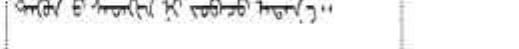
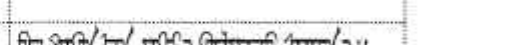
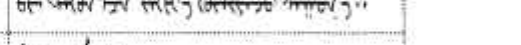
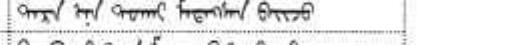
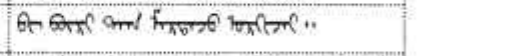
Depending on which **cVDS** is added to the previous full verb, **3 groups** can be formed. We look at these groups in their order of priority. But first, here is a **list of the modifying verbs** and their rough meanings:

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Modifying meaning
a	өг-		to give	to do something for someone else
b	ав-		to get, to take	to do something for oneself
c	үз-		to watch	to do something for the first time, to try
d	гар-		to go out	to begin

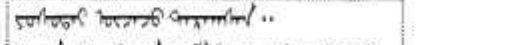
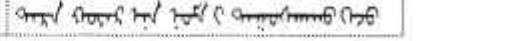
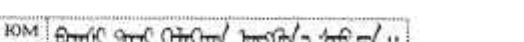
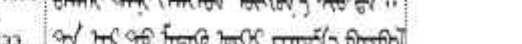
e	–ж алда– –аад алда– –н алда–	 	to loose	to get lost in something, to do s.th. very intensively to be about to do something
f	мэдэ–		to know	maybe, probably
g	суу–		to sit	to keep doing something
h	таара–		to fit	to be convinced of something
i	орхи–		to leave	to do s.th. without being able to undo it again similar to the AsS "–чих"
j	хэвтэ–		to lie	to do something easily, without problems
k	тара–		to end, to dissolve	to persevere in something to the end, to work hard (usually used together with "үзэ–")

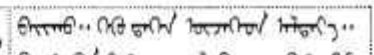
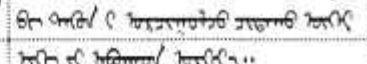
Example sentences:

a) Together with the cVDS "–ж/–ч"

a	*Let* me **tell** you.	Би танд ярьж өгье.	
b	Please *try to* **help** me.	Та надад тусалж үзээрэй.	
c	He *began* **talking** about a lot of things.	Тэр өдий төдий юм ярьж гарлаа.	
d	I **wrote down** everything he said *mechanically*. (without thinking)	Би түүний хэлсэн бүгдийг бичиж алдлаа.	 
e	He'll *probably* **worry**. ("His heart will probably suffer.")	Түүний сэтгэл нь зовж мэднэ.	
f	I'm **waiting** *patiently* for his letter.	Би түүнээс захиа хүлээж суугаа.	
g	He *must* **have known** about this.	Тэр энэ тухай мэдсэн байж таарна.	 
h	**I've** *totally* **forgotten** (about this).	Би бүр таг мартаж орхижээ.	
i	He's on vacation in the countryside, *doing nothing*.	Тэр одоо хөдөө амарч хэвтэж биз.	
j	Those two **worked** *really hard* in order to finish this book.	Тэр хоёр энэ номыг дуусгах гэж ёстой үзэж тарсан.	 

b) Together with the cVDS "–аад"

a	If you don't know something, the teacher *will* surely *tell* you.	Та нарт мэдэхгүй юм байвал багш тань хэлээд өгнө шүү дээ.	 
b	Would you please wait a bit; I want to **write** *down* this sentence.	Та жаахан хүлээж байна уу, би энэ өгүүлбэрийг бичээд авъя.	
c	***Try*** to bring to an end what (you) have started.	Эхэлсэн зүйлээ эцсийг нь хүртэл оролдоод үз.	 

d	Most likely I can't translate this, but let me **try** *anyway*.	Би үүнийг орчуулж чадахгүй байх. Гэхдээ үзээд алдъя.	
e	I don't know this very well. But **let** me **buy** one *anyway*.	Би үүнийг сайн мэдэхгүй. Гэвч нэгийг аваад орхие.*	

* In colloquial language the form "-аад орхи-" is sometimes written like this: "-аатах-".

c) Together with the cVDS "-н"

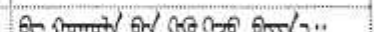
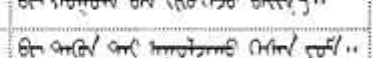
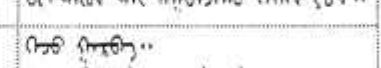
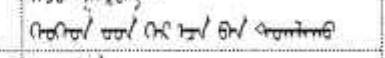
a	I *was about* **to say** something, *but I didn't*.	Би хэлэн алдлаа.	

1.1.2.2.5 The Conjunction Verb "гэ-"

A **peculiarity** of the Mongolian language is the **conjunction verb** "гэ-", which probably originated from the verb "хэмэ-" = 'to say'. This conjunction verb, as the name indicates, has a **connecting function** between parts of speech and words of all kinds.

1.) As a full verb, it has the meaning **'to say, to talk'** and is very important in **direct and indirect speech** (see pages 398-400).

2.) It is also **used as a conjunction** (see page 309).

a	My name is Martin. ("[People] **call** me Martin.")	Намайг Мартин гэдэг.	
b	What was your name again? ("How is your name **called** again?")	Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн билээ?	
c	I **am** about **to** cook my meal.	Би хоолоо хийх гэж байна.	
d	I **want to** meet him. *	Би түүнтэй уулзах гэсэн юм.	
e	The children went outside **to** play. *	Хүүхдүүд гэрээсээ тоглох гэж гарав.	
f	I came here **with the intention to** study the Mongolian language. *	Би монгол хэл сурах гэж энд ирсэн.	
g	- What does this person **want**? * - (He **wants**) **to** meet you. *	- Тэр хүн яах гэсэн юм бэ? - Тантай уулзах гэсэн юм.	
h	I **heard that** Michael is ill.	Михайлийн бие муу байгаа гэсэн.	
i	Michael **is said to** be ill.	Михайлийн бие муу байгаа гэнэ.	

* The construction "-х гэ-" (**ex. d-g**) is similar to the VDS "-хаар" (see page 166), but even stronger in its intention.

1.1.3 Adwords

We created the term 'adword' because neither the term 'adjective' nor the term 'adverb' can be so generally used as it would be needed to reflect the Mongolian language structure.

. An 'Adword' is a word that describes the following word

In Mongolian, such adwords could be used to describe:

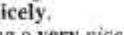
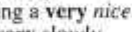
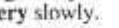
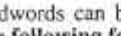
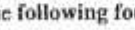
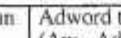
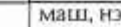
1.) **Nouns** (= traditionally '**adjectives**' or '**numerals**')
2.) **Verbs** (= traditionally '**adverbs**')
3.) **Adjectives** (= traditionally adverbs)
4.) **Adverbs** (= traditionally adverbs)

English example sentences:

1.) She's wearing a **nice** *sweater*. (Adword to 'sweater' = adjective)
I have **three** *dogs*. (Adword to 'dogs' = numeral)
2.) She *sings* **nicely**. (Adword to 'sings' = adverb)
3.) She's wearing a **very** *nice* sweater. (Adword to 'nice' as adjective = adverb)
4.) He works **very** slowly. (Adword to 'slowly' as adverb = adverb)

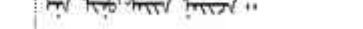
Some of the adwords can be used with both nouns and verbs. Therefore, the adwords can be divided into the **following four groups**:

Overview with examples:
(Compare also with the suffix system in Chapter 4 of the Appendix)

Adword to Noun (Aw - N)	Adword to Adword (Aw - Adw)	Adword to both Noun and Verb (Aw - N/V)	Adword to Verb (Aw - V)
хар	маш, нэн, тун	сайн морь, сайн давхи–	сайтар
			
black	very	**good** horse/to gallop **well**	well, thoroughly
улаан	онц	муу хүн, муу сур–	үтэр
			
red	extreme	**bad** person, to study **poorly**	immediately
цэцэн	хэтэрхий, дэндүү	хурдан машин, хурдан ява–	мөд
			
wise	too	fast car / to go **fast**	soon
дөрвөлжин	бүр	дэмий ажил, дэмий яри–	дандаа
			
square	completely	**futile** work / to talk **in vain**	always

We'll consider these 4 groups, looking in detail at the **adjectives** (always describing a noun) and the **adverbs** (always describing a verb). We'll explain the **adwords** to adjectives and adverbs in that particular chapter. The third group of the chart above (adwords to nouns or verbs), we'll comment on here:

Adwords to both nouns and verbs:
Such adwords have the **same form** whether they describe nouns or verbs. In English, there are a few adwords like that, e.g. 'a **fast** car', 'to go **fast**', but usually the English form of an adverb is different from that of the adjective (e.g. nice-nice**ly**, quick-quick**ly**, etc.). In Mongolian, the **placement** of this kind of adword will determine whether it is used as an adjective (before a noun) or as an adverb (before a verb). In the following examples, we give the adwords to the *noun* [= adjectives] under (a), and the adwords to *verbs* [=adverbs] under (b).

1a	This is my **good** *friend*.	Энэ миний сайн найз.	
1b	Dorj, the student, *learned* **well**.	Оюутан Дорж сайн сурав.	

2a	I need a **small** *box*.	Надад жижиг хайрцаг хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
2b	When looking down from high above, all things *appear* **small**.	Өндрөөс доош харахад бүх зүйл жижиг харагдана.	[illegible]
3a	What a **loud** *voice* you have!	Чи ямар чанга дуутай юм бэ.	[illegible]
3b	Baatar was frightened and *screamed* **loudly**.	Баатар айсандаа бо-лоод чанга хашгирав.	[illegible]
4a	Where did you buy this **nice** *blouse*?	Энэ сайхан цамцыг хаанаас авсан бэ?	[illegible]
4b	My older sister *sings* **nicely**.	Миний эгч сайхан дуулдаг.	[illegible]
5a	Dorj is a **close** *relative* of my mother.	Дорж манай зээжийн ойр төрлийн хүн.	[illegible]
5b	Dorj *lives* **close** to us.	Дорж манайхтай ойр амьдардаг.	[illegible]
6a	On a rainy day, one has to be careful when going downhill. ("...when walking on a **going-down** *road*.")	Бороотой өдөр уруу замаар болгоомжтой явах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
6b	A bad person has a negative influence on his friends. ("... *pulls* his friends **downward**.")	Муу хүн нөхдөө уруу татдаг.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1 ADJECTIVES (ADWORDS TO NOUNS)

1.1.3.1.1 Characteristics of Adjectives

1.) Adjectives ('adiectum' ='the added thing') have from their Latin origin a much wider meaning than they have today. These days, they usually refer to words that describe a noun. Since we have created the term 'adword' for a general meaning, 'adjective' in this book always refers to a **word describing a noun**.

2.) The Mongolian adjectives describe **colors, qualities, sizes, masses, characteristics, movements**, etc. of nouns:

a	colors:	улаан, шар	[illegible]	red, yellow
b	qualities:	хатуу, муу	[illegible]	hard, bad
c	sizes:	хонхор, хавтгай	[illegible]	hallow, flat, level
d	masses:	хол, нам	[illegible]	far, short
e	characteristics:	цэцэн, зоригтой	[illegible]	wise, brave
f	movement:	хурдан, удаан	[illegible]	fast, slow

3.) Mongolian adjectives **are never declined** unless they are used like a noun when the noun is dropped. Note that in this case, *the CbP "нь"* marks the omitted noun.

a	Give me **the green *one***.	Надад ногоонын нь өг.	[illegible]
b	Give this **little *one*** something to eat.	Энэ багад нь идэх юм өгөөч.	[illegible]

4.) Mongolian adjectives can be divided into **2 groups**:

original adjectives:	өндөр, ойр, хол	[illegible]	high, close, far
derived adjectives: (see pages 49-54)	модон	[illegible]	wooden
	аюултай	[illegible]	dangerous
	хиймэл	[illegible]	artificial
	халуун	[illegible]	hot

1.1.3.1.2 Placement of Adjectives

The adjectives can be used in two ways:

attributively (as adjectives)	I bought a **nice** shirt.	Би гоё цамц авлаа.	[illegible]
predicatively (as complements)	This shirt is **nice**.	Энэ цамц гоё.	[illegible]

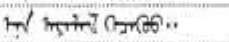
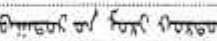
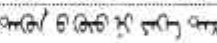
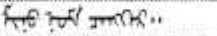
1.1.3.1.2.1 Attributive Adjectives

Such adjectives always stand **in front** of the ***noun***.

a	My book is on a **big *table***.	Миний ном том ширээн дээр байна.	[illegible]
b	Here are many **new *notebooks***.	Энд олон шинэ дэвтэр байна.	[illegible]
c	Whose is the **white *hat*** on the stand?	Тавиур дээрх цагаан малгай хэнийх вэ?	[illegible]
d	Today the teacher taught us an **interesting *lesson***.	Өнөөдөр багш бидэнд сонин хичээл заав.	[illegible]
e	In order to draw nicely, one needs a **sharp *pencil***.	Сайхан зурахад хурц харандаа хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
f	Our grandfather has two **roan *cows***.	Манай өвөөд 2 алаг үнээ бий.	[illegible]
g	I like **mottled *material***.	Би эрээн даавуунд дуртай.	[illegible]

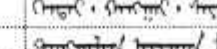
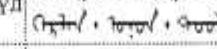
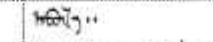
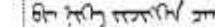
1.1.3.1.2.2 Predicative Adjectives (Complements)

These adjectives were originally also attributive adjectives because the ***noun*** that followed was dropped: **'He is big'** ('He is [a] big [*man*]'). Nowadays, the adjective, called a complement here, together with the verb (e.g. to be) builds the predicate. Therefore the name 'predicative adjectives' is given. Such adjectives are always at **the end of a sentence**. The auxiliary verb "бай–" or a particle could follow. See also pages 194-195, where we have explained when "бай–" is needed.

a	My father is **tall**.	Миний аав өндөр.	
b	This journey is **difficult**.	Энэ аялал хэцүү.	
c	Baatar's horse is **fast**.	Баатарын морь хурдан.	
d	His son is very **humble**.	Түүний хүү нь их даруу.	
e	My dog is **cute**.	Миний нохой хөөрхөн.	
f	My book is **light blue**.	Миний ном цэнхэр.	
g	In the eyes of her children, every mother is **nice**.	Эх хүн бүр үрдээ сайхан. (saying)	
h	The spring season is **nice**.	Хаврын улирал сайхан.	
i	This pig is very **fat**.	Энэ гахай их бүдүүн.	

1.1.3.1.3 Order of Adjectives

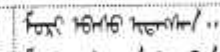
If there is more than one adjective for a word, they are written consecutively with **no commas** between. Exceptions are the predicative adjectives which **demand a conjunction** like "бөгөөд" = ***'and'*** **(ex. d-e)**.

a	The **nice, high** mountain ranges of Khentii, Khangai, and Sayan (from a poem)	Хэнтий, Хангай, Саяны өндөр сайхан нуруунууд	
b	The **clear, sacred** rivers of Kherlen, Onon, and Tuul (from a poem)	Хэрлэн, Онон, Туулын тунгалаг ариун мөрнүүд	
c	I have bought a **small, blue** notebook.	Би нэг жижигхэн цэнхэр дэвтэр авлаа.	
d	My father is **tall** *and* **strong.**	Миний аав өндөр бөгөөд хүчтэй.	
e	This person is **graceful** *and* **humble.**	Энэ хүн энэрэнгүй бөгөөд даруу.	

1.1.3.1.3.1 Rule

The adjective which is **most directly linked to the noun** needs to be placed **closest to it**. The more logically and definitely an adjective describes the noun, the closer it is placed. Generally, the following **rule** can be followed which differs from the English adjective order rule only in the adjectives that describe the origin of the noun.

Origin	*Value, Number*	*Mass*	*Age, Temperature*	*Size*	*Color*	*Material*	Noun

a	My **older brother's three, fat, brown** horses ate grass.	Миний ахын гурван тарган бор морь өвс идсэн.	

b	I bought a **modern, luxurious, fast, black** ***Japanese*** car.	Би нэг Японы орчин үеийн гоёмсог хурдан хар машин авсан.	[illegible]
c	Our grandfather has a **beautiful, small, square, black, locally-made, wooden** table.	Манай өвөөд дотоодын гоё жижиг дөрвөлжин хар модон ширээ бий.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1.4 Degrees of Adjectives

There are 3 degrees:

Positive degree (normal):	big	nice	beautiful
Comparative degree:	bigger	nicer	**more** beautiful
Superlative degree:	**the** biggest	**the** nicest	**the most** beautiful

1.1.3.1.4.1 Positive Degree

The first degree is called 'positive' (Latin 'positivus' = 'given'). This degree is the same as in English.

a	He gave me **red** flowers.	Тэр надад улаан цэцэг өгөв.	[illegible]
b	I have a **fast** car.	Би хурдан машинтай.	[illegible]
c	My older brother has many **cute** children.	Манай ах олон хөөрхөн хүүхэдтэй.	[illegible]
d	There was an **interesting** book in the shop.	Дэлгүүрт сонирхолтой ном байсан.	[illegible]
e	His mother cooks well. ("...makes **good** meals.")	Ээж нь сайхан хоол хийдэг.	[illegible]
f	I won't go on a **dark** night.("through a dark...")	Би харанхуй шөнөөр явахгүй.	[illegible]
g	Please show me that **red** shirt.	Та надад тэр улаан цамцыг үзүүлээч.	[illegible]
h	**Sick** people need help.	Өвчтэй хүнд тусламж хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]

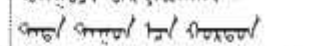
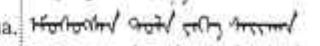
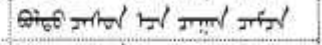
1.1.3.1.4.2 Comparative Degree

The second degree is called '**comparative**' and indicates already, by its name, that things are compared. This degree can be expressed in **many ways**:

1.1.3.1.4.2.1 Using Ablative Case and Adjective

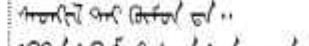
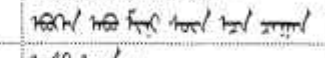
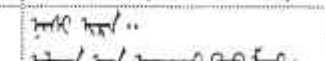
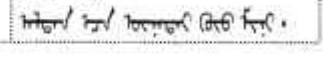
The most widely used comparative degree is built with the *ablative CS*. In poetic language (but also in colloquial language) this form is **very popular**.

a	You are **older** ***than*** I.	Та надаас настай.	[illegible]
b	Alcohol is **more expensive** ***than*** beer.	Архи пивоноос үнэтэй.	[illegible]
c	Germany is **more developed** ***than*** Mongolia.	Герман монголоос хөгжилтэй.	[illegible]

d	They traveled by supersonic plane. ("...a plane **faster *than*** the sound.")	Тэд дуунаас хурдан онгоцоор явсан.	
e	Because Bold is wearing a snow-white shirt he looks very good. (... a shirt **whiter *than*** snow.")	Болд цаснаас цагаан цамц өмссөн тул их сайхан харагдаж байна.	
f	Your son came in, (having gotten) pitch-black! ("... **blacker *than*** ashes")	Хүү чинь хөөнөөс хар болчихсон орж ирлээ.	
g	My grandfather is a man with a golden heart. ("...with a heart **whiter *than*** milk.")	Өвгөн аав минь сүүнээс цагаан сэтгэлтэй хүн дээ.	
h	My son, my heart's treasure, come here. ("...my **more precious *than*** gold son...")	Алтнаас үнэтэй хүү минь, наашаа ир.	

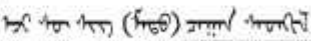
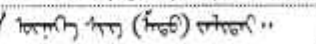
1.1.3.1.4.2.2 Using Repeated Adjectives and the Ablative Case

This comparative degree form is equivalent to the English 'whiter than white', 'hotter than hot', etc. which is not widely used. Instead, we would say '**severely** cold', '**extremely** difficult', or in very colloquial language '**bloody** cold', '**damn** cold'.
Rule: The **adjective is repeated** using the *ablative CS* in between.

a	Outside it's **severely cold**. ("...**colder *than* cold.**")	Гадаа хүйтнээс хүйтэн байна.	
b	I like eating **rock-hard** 'aaruul'*. ("...**harder *than* hard.**") [*dried curds]	Би хатуугаас хатуу ааруул идэх дуртай.	
c	Only I was given an **extremely difficult** task. ("**more difficult *than* difficult.**")	Надад л хүндээс хүнд даалгавар өгчээ.	
d	Your sister is **incredibly sweet.** (...**sweeter *than* sweet**)	Чиний дүү хөөрхөнөөс хөөрхөн охин доо.	

1.1.3.1.4.2.3 Using the Postpositions "адил, шиг, мэт, чинээ"

The English word 'like' can be translated with "мэт" (as, like, similar), "шиг" (like, as, similar), "адил" (same, identical) or "чинээ" (as big as, equivalent) and be used for a comparison. The words "мэт" **and** "шиг" could be interchanged with each other, but it's good to make sure that the sentence as a whole sounds good. "адил" demands either *comitative* or *genitive CS* (**ex. c**), "чинээ" needs *genitive CS* (**ex. d-e**) and is only used for things that can be measured.

a	"My mother has a heart ***as* white *as*** milk."	Миний ээж сүү шиг (мэт) цагаан сэтгэлтэй.	
b	He is ***as* cunning *as*** a fox.	Тэр үнэг мэт (шиг) зальтай.	
c	Children wish to become ***as* famous** a singer* ***as*** Michael Jackson. (*"actor")	Хүүхдүүд Майкл Жексонтэй адил алдартай жүжигчин болохыг хүсдэг.	
d	In our school there was a fish ***as* big *as*** a head.	Манай сургуульд толгойн чинээ том загас байсан.	

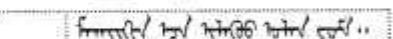
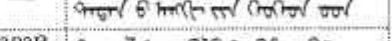
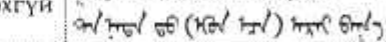
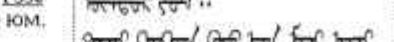
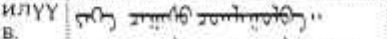
e	I have a cat (that is) *as* **small** *as* the palm of a hand.	Надад алгын чинээ жижиг муур бий.	

1.1.3.1.4.2.4 Using the Adwords "илүү, арай"

These adwords can be placed before any adjectives. "илүү" (excessive/superfluous/too much) is stronger in its meaning than "арай" (scarcely/barely/a little). Sometimes they can be used together (**ex. e**).

Example:

big	**bigger** than	***a little bigger*** than	***much*** **bigger** than
том	-аас том	-аас арай том	-аас илүү том

a	There are indeed ***many*** **more** children in their class **than** ours.	Тэдний ангийн хүүхдүүд манайхнаас илүү олон юм.	
b	Wouldn't you show me a boot that is ***a little*** **smaller** (**than** this one)?	Та надад (үүнээс) арай бага гутал үзүүлэхгүй юү?	
c	Your child is indeed ***a bit*** **taller than** my son.	Танай хүүхэд хүүгээс минь арай өндөр юм.	
d	The pupils collected ***much*** **more** paper **than** before.	Сурагчид урьдаас илүү их цаас цуглуулав.	
e	Baatar is indeed ***a little*** **heavier than** I.	Баатар надаас арай илүү жингэй юм.	

1.1.3.1.4.3 Superlative Degree

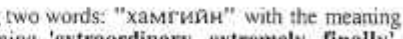
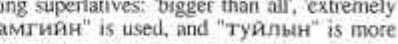
The 3rd degree, the **highest** one, is called 'superlative'. There are **many ways** to express it:

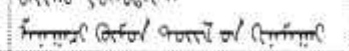
1.1.3.1.4.3.1 Using "хамгийн, түйлын"

Usually the superlative is expressed with the following two words: "хамгийн" with the meaning **'of all, of everything'**; "түйлын" with the meaning **'extraordinary, extremely, finally'**. Together with the adjective 'big', we then get the following superlatives: 'bigger than all', 'extremely big', 'the biggest'. In **colloquial language**, mainly "хамгийн" is used, and "түйлын" is more for the written official language.

Sometimes other words are used to express a superlative, but only in **poems, songs,** or other written forms:

"хавьгүй" (incomparable), "ижилгүй" (matchless/splendid), "зүйрлэшгүй" (incomparable)

a	The hare is ***the*** **cutest** animal.	Туулай бол хамгийн хөөрхөн амьтан.	
b	***The most*** **important** thing is to read this book.	Хамгийн чухал нь тэр номыг унших хэрэгтэй.	
c	In our family, 'buuz' is ***the*** **best** meal.	Манайд хамгийн сайхан хоол бол буув юм.	
d	In the circus, an ***incomparably*** **astonishing** performance was shown.	Циркэд түйлын гайхамшигтай үзүүлбэр үзүүлэв.	

e	Guards must be ***incredibly*** **attentive**.	Манаач хүн туйлын хянамгай байх ёстой.	
f	Our teacher is an ***incredibly*** **industrious** person!	Багш маань ч туйлын ажилсаг хүн дээ.	

1.1.3.1.4.3.2 Using Genitive Case and Repetition

When using a **double adjective with *genitive CS***, something similar to a superlative is formed with the meaning 'the highest of high'/'the biggest of big' which in English could also be expressed with prewords like '**all**-powerful', '**omni**potent', '**super**-strong'.

a	Knowledge is the highest good. ("...**the highest of the high** wealths").	Мэдлэг бол дээдийн дээд баялаг.	
b	In order to come to Mongolia, we traversed a **super** long way. ("**the longest of long** ways.")	Бид Монголд ирэхийн тулд холын хол зам туулсан.	

1.1.3.1.5 Modification of Adjectives

Through modification, the **meaning of an adjective can be slightly changed** without changing it to another word category. In Mongolian this is done in two ways:
In order to **weaken the meaning**, suffixes are used which are called **diminutive suffixes**.
In order to **intensify the meaning**, **adwords** are used. (There is only **one** intensifying suffix.)

1.1.3.1.5.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's)

1.1.3.1.5.1.1 Diminutive AwS "-хан[4]"

This AwS serves to build **diminutive and affectionate forms**. In English, such forms can be expressed with the suffix '**-ish**' in words like 'reddish', 'yellowish', or with an adverb like '**quite**', '**rather**'.
As mentioned before, the meaning changes only slightly. The exception is "сайн" ---> "сайхан" (**ex. f***). Note, that with some adjectives, the final consonant "***н***" is dropped when this suffix is added (**ex. e-f**).

a	small	**tiny, minute**	жижиг	жижиг**хэн**		
b	blue	blu**ish**	цэнхэр	цэнхэр**хэн**		
c	beautiful	**pretty**	гоё	гоё**хон**		
d	small	**quite** small	бага	бага**хан**		
e	green	green**ish**	ногоон	ногоо**хон**		
f	good	**nice***	сайн	сай**хан***		

1.1.3.1.5.1.2 Diminutive AwS's "-втар[4]" and "-дуу[2]"

These two AwS's are similar in meaning to the "-хан" suffix, but are mainly used for **colors** and **sizes** and are very **popular in colloquial** language:
-(а)втар, -(э)втэр, -(о)втор, -(ө)втөр, like '-ish', but used for **comparison** **ex.e**
-дуу, -дүү like '-ish', but used more **generally** **ex.f**

a	brown	brown**ish**	бор	бор**овтор** бор**дуу**			
b	black	black**ish**	хар	хар**автар** хар**дуу**			

c	blue **bluish**	хөх хөхөвтөр хөхдүү	[illegible]
d	small **tiny**	жижиг жижгэвтэр жижигдүү	[illegible]
e	Let me buy the blouse that is more reddish.	Би арай улаавтар цамцыг авъя.	[illegible]
f	I like reddish (all kinds of red) blouses.	Би улаандуу цамцад дуртай.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1.5.1.3 Intensifying AwS "-в"

This AwS serves to intensify mainly adjectives which express **colors, sizes, and temperatures**. In English translation, we'd probably use the word **'very'** most of the time.

Rule: Take the first syllable of the adjective and add "-в", then the adjective follows as a whole.
Example: white = "ца-гаан" ; very white = "цав цагаан"
Notice that adjectives that can serve as **adverbs** could also take this AwS (**ex.f**).

a	The clothes of the younger brother got ***very*** **black.**	Дүүгийн хувцас хав хар болжээ.	[illegible]
b	In summer the steppe becomes ***very*** **green.**	Зуны улиралд тал хээр нов ногоон болдог.	[illegible]
c	Yesterday there were ***bright*** **red** apples in the store.	Очигдөр дэлгүүрт ув улаан алим байсан.	[illegible]
d	I like the ***pastel*** **blue** color best.	Би цэв цэнхэр өнгөнд хамгийн дуртай.	[illegible]
e	Mother poured ***piping*** **hot** tea into the cups.	Ээж хав халуун цай аягалав.	[illegible]
f	(Someone) wrote in this book ***very*** **clearly** about plants.	Энэ номонд ургамлын тухай тов тодорхой бичжээ.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1.5.2 Modification with Adwords

1.1.3.1.5.2.1 Adwords "маш, их, тун, нэн, даан" with the Meaning 'very'

The adwords "маш" (very), "их" (big, very), "тун" (extraordinary), "нэн" (even more), and "даан" (extreme) show the **degree of the characteristics** the adjective expresses. They can be translated in many different ways. "тун" and "нэн" are almost exclusively used in the **written language** (poems, songs, or very official: **ex. c-e**). In the **colloquial language**, "маш" and "их" are most widely used (**ex. a-b**), but among the youth words like "аймаар" (frighteningly) have become popular. "даан" tends to have a **negative** taste to it (**ex. e**).

a	Mongolia has ***very*** **many** livestock.	Монгол орон маш олон малтай.	[illegible]
b	That lady is really ***very*** **pretty.**	Тэр хүүхэн маш хөөрхөн юм.	[illegible]
c	To draw pictures is a **very careful** job.	Зураг зурах тун нарийн ажил.	[illegible]
d	Only this one is a **brand new** model.	Зөвхөн энэ л нэн шинэ загвар.	[illegible]
e	This is **far too** expensive! ("This is with an ***extremely big*** **price**.")	Энэ даан их үнэтэй юм даа.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1.5.2.2 Adwords "хэтэрхий, дэндүү, даанч" with the Meaning 'too'

These adwords have the meaning **'too...'**, **'extremely ...'**, **'over...'**. The strongest in meaning and most **emotional** one is "даанч" (**ex. d**). For a more matter-of-fact statement the other two are used, whereas "хэтэрхий" is stronger than "дэндүү".

a	These trousers are ***too*** **expensive**.	Энэ өмд дэндүү үнэтэй байна.	[illegible]
b	My father is ***too*** **strict**.	Миний аав хэтэрхий чанга хүн.	[illegible]
c	You made ***too*** **many** mistakes.	Чи хэтэрхий олон алдаа хийсэн.	[illegible]
d	You embezzled ***too*** **much** money. ("You ate far too much money!")	Чи даанч их мөнгө идсэн юм.	[illegible]

1.1.3.1.5.2.3 Different Adwords with the Meaning 'absolutely, totally'

For some selected adjectives there exist **special adwords** which express also a kind of superlative. Sometimes such an adword can only be used for one single adjective.

a	***absolutely*** full	full ***to bursting***	пиг дүүрэн	[illegible]
b	***totally*** wrong	***dead*** wrong	тэс буруу	[illegible]
	completely different		тэс өөр / ондоо	[illegible]
c	***absolutely*** stupid	***thick-headed***	шал тэнэг/мангар	[illegible]
	totally drunk	***three sheets to the wind***	шал согтуу	[illegible]
	totally wrong	***dead*** wrong	шал буруу	[illegible]
d	***completely*** blind	***as blind as a bat***	таг сохор	[illegible]
	completely calm	***deathly*** silent	таг дуугүй	[illegible]
	completely closed	***closed tight as a drum***	таг битүү	[illegible]
e	***totally*** young	***in the bloom of youth***	цэл залуу	[illegible]
	completely blue	***ice***-blue	цэл хөх	[illegible]
	absolutely cold	***ice-cold***	цэл хүйтэн	[illegible]
f	***absolutely*** new	***brand***-new	цоо шинэ	[illegible]
g	***absolutely*** black	***pitch***-black	пад/тас хар	[illegible]
	absolutely dark	***pitch***-dark	пад/тас харанхуй	[illegible]
h	***totally*** red	***fiery***-red	час улаан	[illegible]
	totally hot	***fiery***-hot	час халуун	[illegible]
i	***totally*** grey	***iron***-grey	цал бууран	[illegible]

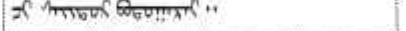
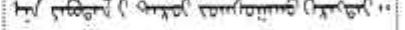
1.1.3.2 ADVERBS (ADWORDS TO VERBS)

This is one of the 4 subgroups within the adwords. Adverbs **always describe a verb**. In the Mongolian language, adverbs haven't developed a lot. This is already evident from the introduction to the adwords. There are only **a few original adverbs**. Many of the English adverbs are built in Mongolian with either the instrumental or the dative-locative CS, or in a different analytical way.

In this Part, we will divide today's adverbs into **grammatical groups** and then discuss their **usage** (in semantic groups).

1.1.3.2.1 Original Adverbs

Under original adverbs, we understand words that **aren't declined** and **only exist as adverbs**. This means that such words don't serve at the same time as an adjective (like "сайн") or as a noun (like "орой").

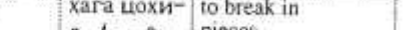
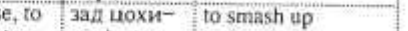
a	Please think **carefully**.	Чи сайтар бодоорой.	
c	**Recently**, he came back from the countryside.	Тэр сая хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	
d	She will not come **soon**.	Тэр мөд ирэхгүй.	
e	(We) have to stop that matter **at once.**	Энэ явдлыг даруй зогсоох хэрэгтэй.	
f	Let me talk to you **later**.	Би тантай аяар ярилцъя.	
g	In the hospital, (you) have to talk **quietly**.	Эмнэлэгт аяар ярих хэрэгтэй.	
h	He **purposely** offended me.	Тэр намайг зориуд гомдоосон.	

1.1.3.2.2 Passive-Root Adverbs

These adverbs can only be used **with certain verbs**. In the same way that passive roots (see page 35-36) bear **a certain meaning in themselves**, so also do these adverbs. Many of them could be translated as 'broken', but the adverbs tell us how something got broken. The chart below shows the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs. The two transitive forms differ in the following way:

- the verb with the adverb (e.g. "хуга цохи–") expresses an action that hasn't been planned.
- the verb with the transitive verb suffix (e.g. "хугал–") expresses an action that has been planned. This difference is clearly evident with the verb:
  "задал–" = 'to analyze' or 'to purposely take apart'
  "зад цохи–" = 'to break in pieces'

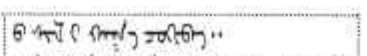
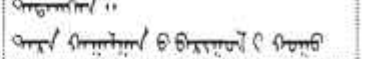
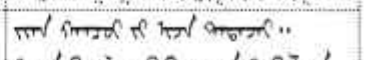
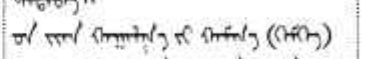
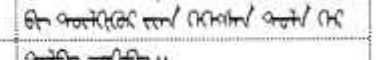
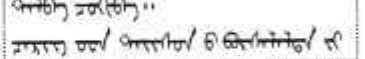
Intransitive (happens by itself)			Transitive (verb)		Transitive (adverb)= neg. meaning	
a	хугара–	to break in two	хугал–	to break in two	хуга цохи–	to break in pieces to smash up
b	хагара–	to break	хагал–	to break	хага цохи–	to break in pieces,
c	задра–	to fall apart	задал–	to analyse, to take apart	зад цохи–	to smash up

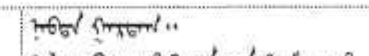
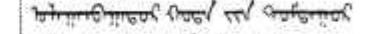
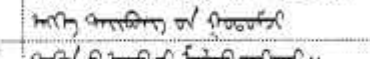
This pen **broke into pieces**.	Энэ үзэг хугарсан.	
He discouraged me. (He **broke** my enthusiasm/my interest.)	Тэр миний урмыг хугалсан.	
He **smashed** this pen.	Тэр энэ үзгийг хугга цохисон.	

1.1.3.2.2.1 Overview of Passive-Root Adverbs

	Adword		with the following verb:	English translation
a	хага		цохи–, тата–	to break **in pieces** (e.g. dishes)
b	хуга		цохи–, тата–, өшиглө–	to break **apart** (e.g. long thin things)
c	яз		цохи–, тата–	to burst, to tear (e.g. material, skin)
d	хамх (хэмх)		цохи–,өшиглө–, дэвсэ–, тата–	to shatter, to splinter (e.g. big hard things)
e	дэлбэ		цохи–, тата–	to smash, to destroy (like a bomb or dynamite)
f	бут		цохи–, ниргэ–	to break up, to scatter (e.g. to win over an army)
g	зад		цохи–, тата–, өшиглө–	to break **apart** (e.g. something that holds together)
h	няц		цохи–, дара–	to crush, to mash, to squash (e.g. insects, soft things)
i	нэвт		хара–, мэдэ–, гар–, цоло–, нүхлэ–	to look **through**, to go **through** (e.g. wall, door, window)
j	мулт		цохи–, тата–, дара–	to knock **out**, to tear **out**, (e.g. joints, eye)
k	суга		тата–	to pull **out** (e.g. book in between two things)

1.1.3.2.2.2 Usage of Passive-Root Adverbs

a	Someone **broke** the glass of the window with stones.	Хэн нэгэн хүн чулуугаар цонхны шилийг хага цохив.	
b	He **broke** the door handle.	Тэр хаалганы бариулыг хуга татсан.	
c	He wrestled and **tore apart** the sleeve of his 'deel'.	Тэр барилдаж байгаад дээлийнхээ ханцуйг яз татжээ.	
d	Because I had lost my key, I **crashed through** the door of my flat.	Би түлхүүрээ гээсэн тул гэрийнхээ хаалгыг хамх (хэмх) татав.	
e	The soldiers **broke up** the enemy's blockade.	Цэргүүд дайсны бүс–лэлтийг дэлбэ цохив.	
f	In the year 1939, the united forces of the Soviet Union and Mongolia **destroyed** the Japanese army at the Khalkh river.	1939 оны зун Монгол, Зөвлөлтийн хамтарсан хүч Халх голд японы милитаризмыг бут цохив.	
g	My son played football and **tore** his shoe **apart**.	Миний хүү хөл бөмбөг тоглоод гутлаа зад татжээ.	
h	The eggs in the bag were **crushed**.	Цүнхэн дотор байсан өндөг няц дарагджээ.	

i	Peace Avenue **passes through** the middle of Ulaanbaatar.	Энх тайвны гудамж Улаанбаатар хотын дундуур нэвт гардаг.	
j	(Someone) **knocked out** his eye.	Түүний нүдийг мултлуулсан.	
k	A strong wind **uprooted** a tree.	Хүчтэй салхи ургаа модыг суга татав.	

1.1.3.2.3 Modification of Adverbs

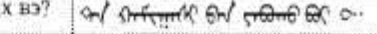
Adverbs can be modified in **three ways**:
- Adding a suffix (declension)
- Using them repeatedly or in combinations
- Using adwords

1.1.3.2.3.1 Modification with Adword Suffixes (AwS's)

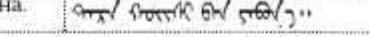
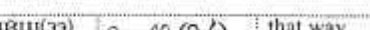
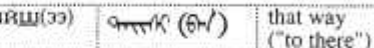
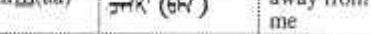
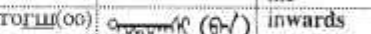
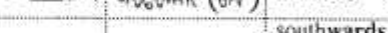
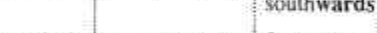
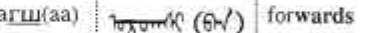
If adverbs are modified with a suffix, they can be called **derivative adverbs** in contrast to the original adverbs. Such derivative adverbs always have their origin with another word. With most of these adverbs, the **derivation is still visible** today. Many of them use the **RS** (see page 108).

1.1.3.2.3.1.1 Direction AwS "¬(г)ш"

If the direction suffix "¬(г)ш" is added, the adverb **shows a direction** and answers the question **'where to?'** The opposite direction form is built with the *Ablative CS* (question 'where from?').

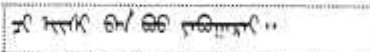
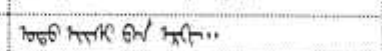
Where do/did you come *from*?	Та хаанаас ирсэн бэ?	
Where are you going (**to**)?	Та хаашаа явах вэ?	
He came *from* the north (=Russia).	Тэр хойноос ирсэн.	
He'll go north (=Russia).	Тэр хойшоо явна.	

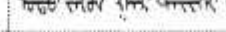
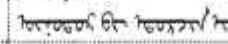
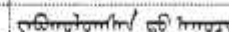
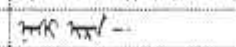
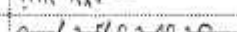
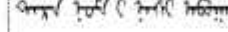
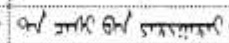
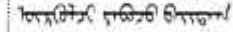
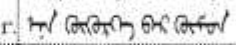
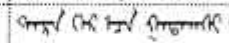
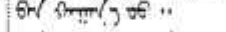
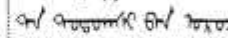
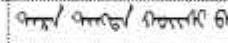
Overview of most commonly used adverbs with the direction suffix:

1	ийш(ээ)		this way ("to here")	2	тийш(ээ)		that way ("to there")
3	наашаа)		towards me	4	цаашаа)		away from me
5	гадагш(аа)		outwards	6	дотогш(оо)		inwards
7	хойш(оо)		northwards	*			southwards
8	арагш(аа)		backwards	9	урагш(аа)		forwards
10	дээш(ээ)		upwards	11	доош(оо)		downwards

* This suffix isn't added to "өмнө"; "урагш(аа)" is also used in the meaning 'southwards'.

Examples:

1	Please don't go **this way**.	Чи ийшээ бүү яваарай.	
1	Now turn **here**.	Одоо ийшээ эргэ.	
2	Would you please hand that **over there**?	Та үүнийг тийшээ өгнө үү?	

2	Now **towards** the left.	Одоо зүүн гар тийшээ.	
1 2	Today, I went **all over the place** for the whole day.	Өнөөдөр би өдержин <u>ийш тийш</u> явлаа.	
1 2	Please excuse me (that) I made you-run **here and there** so many times.	Би таныг <u>ийшээ тийшээ</u> олон явуулсанд уучлаарай.	 
3	Come **here**!	<u>Нааш</u> ир!	
3	Pass me that book, please. (Please take that book and give it to [me] here.)	Тэр номыг <u>нааш</u> аваад өгөөч.	
4	From here **onwards**, please go alone.	Та <u>цаашаа</u> ганцаараа яваарай.	
4	Please go **on** talking.	Та <u>цаашаа</u> яриарай.	
3 4	People and animals keep on going **back and forth** over this bridge.	Энэ гүүрээр хүн мал <u>нааш цаашаа</u> үргэлж явж байдаг.	 
5	He ran **out** of the yurt.	Тэр гэрээс <u>гадагш</u> гүйн гарав.	
6	Would you please come **in** and close the door?	Та <u>дотогшоо</u> орж хаалгаа хаана уу.	
7	He always goes **north**. (= to a country in the north)	Тэр дандаа <u>хойшоо</u> явдаг.	
8	This car drives **backwards**.	Энэ машин <u>арагшаа</u> ухарч байна.	 
9	Many riders go **to the south**.	Олон морьтой хүн <u>урагшаа</u> явж байна.	
9	Take a step **forward**!	Нэг алхам <u>урагш</u> гар.	
10	Do sit **up**! ("up" means a respected place away from the door)	Та <u>дээшээ</u> суу!	
10	The plane **took off**.	Онгоц <u>дээш</u> хөөрөв.	
11	The plane fell **down(ward)**.	Онгоц <u>доош</u> унав.	
10 11	Many times I went **up and down** these stairs looking for you.	Би таныг эрж энэ шатаар <u>дээш доош</u> олон удаа явлаа.	 

1.1.3.2.3.1.2 Movement AwS "-уур/-үүр"

If the movement suffix is added, the adverb expresses a **movement within a certain place**. It answers the questions **'Where abouts?'/'[On] which way?'** Compare this with the usage of the instrumental CS because this suffix has been **derived from the Instrumental CS**. This can be clearly seen with examples 1 and 2 : үүгээр ( ), түүгээр ( ). Note that we have omitted the RS in Classical Script ( ) in the chart below (due to lack of space).

Overview of the most commonly used adverbs with this suffix:
(The English translation may poorly reflect some of these movements)

1	үүгээр(ээ)	[illegible]	around here	2	түүгээр(ээ)	[illegible]	around there
3	наагуур(аа)	[illegible]	along/on this side	4	цаагуур(аа)	[illegible]	along/on that side
5	гадуур(аа)	[illegible]	outdoors	6	дотуур(аа)	[illegible]	indoors
7	хойгуур(аа)	[illegible]	in the north	8	өмнүүр(ээ)	[illegible]	in the south
9	ардуур(аа)	[illegible]	behind	10	урдуур(аа)	[illegible]	in front
11	дээгүүр(ээ)	[illegible]	above	12	доогуур(аа)	[illegible]	below

Examples:

1	In the old days, the army of Genghis Khan passed by **here.**	Дээр үед <u>үүгээр</u> Чингис хааны цэрэг өнгөрсөн.	[illegible]
2	Now it's raining heavily **over there**.	Одоо <u>түүгээр</u> их бороо орж байна.	[illegible]
3	You have to get everything done **over at your** (place).	Та нар <u>наагуураа</u> бүх зүйлийг амжуулах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
4	I don't know what he thinks in the back of his mind. (" what he thinks **over there**/away from me.")	Тэр <u>цаагуураа</u> юу бодож байгааг би мэдэхгүй.	[illegible]
5	When walking **outdoors** in the cold season, one has to wear warm clothes.	Хүйтний улиралд <u>га-дуур</u> явахдаа дулаан хувцас өмсөх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
6	A fly is flying **around** in this room.	Нэг ялаа өрөөн <u>дотуур</u> нисээд байна.	[illegible]
7	The river flows **in the north.**	Гол <u>хойгуур</u> урсаж байна.	[illegible]
8	This horse is always in the lead. ("This horse hasn't seen any dust **in front of it**.")	Энэ морь <u>өмнүүрээ</u> тоос гаргаж үзээгүй.	[illegible]
9	They're sitting quite far **in the back**.	Тэд нилээд <u>ардуур</u> сууж байна.	[illegible]
10	When watching a concert, it's good to sit **in the front.**	Концерт үзэхэд <u>урдуур</u> суувал сайн.	[illegible]
11 12	Planes fly **up (there)**, cars drive **down (there).**	Онгоц <u>дээгүүр</u> нисч машин <u>доогуур</u> явна.	[illegible]

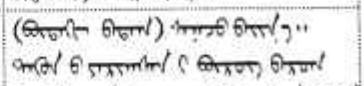
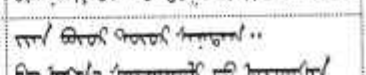
Note:
Many Mongolian adverbs are built in an **analytical way** with the instrumental, dative-locative or another CS. That's why they don't appear as one word (like in English) but rather as a **chain of words,** which is common in adverbials. The borderline between adverbs and adverbials is, therefore, very narrow in Mongolian. It depends on how long such an analytical construction already exists and how much of the original meaning of the words being used is kept alive. From the Classical Script (which has been revised), we can often see which analytical adverbs have become fixed adverbs (e.g. "дандаа").

Illustration:

Analytical form	Classical	English literal translation	English
сүүлд = сүүл + д	=	"in the tail/end"	later; then
ард = ар + д		"in the back"	in the back; behind
харамсалтайгаар = харамсалтай+аар		"through/by the regrettable"	regrettably; by re-grettable circumstances
үүрээр = үүр + ээр		"through/by the dawn"	early in the morning; during the dawn
өнөөдөр = өнөө + өдөр	=	"this day"	today
нөгөөдөр = нөгөө өдөр	=	"other day"	the day after tomorrow
бие биедээ = бие бие + д + ээ		"for one's body body"	(for) each other
дандаа = даан + д + аа	= =	"for one's extreme"	always
үнэндээ = үнэн + д + ээ		"in one's truth"	really; indeed; in truth
муудлаа гэхэд		"when saying: It has become bad"	at worst; if worse comes to worst
тэгэлгүй яахав = тэгэ⁻ + лгүй + яа⁻+ х + вэ		"not doing so, what will happen?"	of course

1.1.3.2.3.2 Modification with Word Combinations

Different **new adverbs** can be built by **creating pairs** of words. Some of these pair words have a meaning by themselves (e.g. "арай"), others are only rhymes to the first one (e.g. "чарай"). Some of the passive root adverbs appear in such pairs (e.g. "нэвт шувт"). Many imitation words (e.g. "ярс ярс") are being used in this way (e.g. noises or movements are imitated).

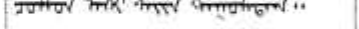
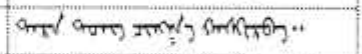
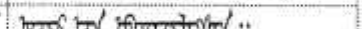
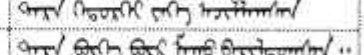
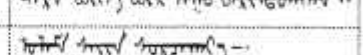
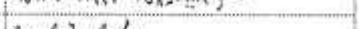
a	We (two) understood each other **with great difficulty**.	Бид хоёр арай чарай ойлголцсон.	
b	Because I was quite drunk, I remember **only vaguely** what he said.	Би нилээд согтуу байсан тул түүний ярьсныг бүрэг бараг (бүдэг бадаг) санаж байна.	
c	I remember my first day of school **vaguely**.	Би анх сургуульд орсноо бүүр түүр санадаг.	

d	Those two wrestlers **balanced one another out**.	Тэр хоёр бөх <u>ач тач</u> (<u>ана мана</u>) барилдсан.	(ᠨᠠᠳᠠ ᠮᠠᠨᠠ) ᠪᠠᠯᠠᠨᠴᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠪᠥᠭᠡ ᠨᠢ ᠠᠷᠭᠠ
e	This suit fits me **exactly**.	Энэ костюм надад <u>яв цав</u> таарч байна.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠭᠣᠰᠲᠦᠮ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ ᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠲᠣᠬᠢᠷᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃ ᠨᠠ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠲᠡᠢ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠭᠣ ᠲᠣᠬᠢᠷᠠᠭᠠ ᠵᠣᠭᠰᠣᠭᠣ
f	I meet him **once in a while**.	Би түүнтэй <u>мэр сэр</u> уулздаг.	ᠪᠢ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠲᠡᠢ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠤᠷᠢᠮ ᠤᠴᠤᠷᠠᠯᠴᠠᠨᠠ᠃
g	When he was angry, he kicked the door **to pieces**.	Тэр уурласандаа хаалгыг <u>өм цөм</u> өшиглөв.	ᠲᠡᠭᠡ ᠵᠤᠪᠤᠭᠠ ᠬᠠᠷᠢᠭᠤᠯᠵᠠᠢ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠦᠷᠴᠡᠭᠯᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ ᠬᠤᠶᠠᠷᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠨᠢ
h	He left all his belongings in his room **in chaos**.	Тэр өрөөндөө бүх юмаа <u>ундуй сундуй</u> хаяжээ.	ᠪᠢ ᠪᠠᠭᠠᠵᠢ ᠬᠤᠪᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠶᠠᠨ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠤᠪᠢᠶᠠᠨ ᠪᠤᠷᠤ ᠪᠥᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠵᠠᠭᠠ
i	Those two had **a quarrel**. ("temporarily tapping")	Тэр хоёр <u>түр тэр</u> хийсэн.	ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠤᠯᠤᠭᠠᠢ᠃
j	On that matter, I agreed with him **completely**.	Би энэ талаар түүнтэй <u>яг таг</u> тохиролцсон.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠠᠬᠠᠯᠴᠠᠭᠠᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠮᠢᠨ ᠪᠤᠷᠤ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠪᠤᠷᠤ
k	I know her **through and through**.	Би түүнийг <u>нэвт шувт</u> мэднэ.	ᠪᠢ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠶ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠭ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠨᠡ᠃
l	I met him **a number of times** in the street.	Би түүнтэй гудамжинд <u>өдий тэдий</u> тааралдсан.	ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠠᠯᠠᠵᠠᠷᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠠᠷ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠭᠤ ᠮᠥᠷ
m	A strong wind **uprooted** the trees.	Хүчтэй салхи ургаа моднуудыг <u>суга суга</u> татав.	ᠬᠦᠴᠦᠲᠡᠢ ᠶ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠ ᠣᠭᠣᠷᠣᠭᠠᠨ᠃ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠮᠠᠭᠠᠴ ᠬᠠᠭᠤᠯᠠᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠴᠥᠭᠴᠢᠭᠡᠷ
n	(Someone) has **broken** all the windows of the house.	Байшингийн цонхнуудыг цөмийг <u>хага хага</u> цохижээ.	ᠲᠡᠭᠡ ᠶ ᠬᠤᠭᠤ ᠬᠤᠭᠤ ᠲᠣᠭᠢᠴᠠᠭᠠ᠃ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠰᠢᠨᠭᠤᠨ ᠤ ᠴᠣᠩᠬᠣᠨᠤᠭᠤᠳ ᠶ
o	He **tore** all his clothes **apart**.	Тэр хамаг хувцсаа <u>яз яз</u> татсан.	ᠠᠭᠤᠷᠮᠠᠢ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠤᠪᠤᠭᠤᠨ ᠬᠤᠪᠴᠠᠰᠠᠭᠠ ᠪᠤᠷ ᠨᠡᠭ ᠨᠡᠭ
p	I am a **hopp**ing round, brown hare. (from a children's song)	<u>Бөн бөн</u> шогшдог бөөрөнхий бор туулай би.	ᠪᠥᠨ ᠪᠥᠨ ᠬᠣᠭᠰᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃ ᠪᠣᠷᠤ ᠪᠣᠷᠤ ᠥᠯᠥᠨᠵᠢᠳᠡᠭ ᠪᠣᠷᠤᠭᠠᠨ
q	The soldiers **march sharply** in formation.	Цэрэг эрс жагсаалаар <u>ярс ярс</u> алхана.	ᠴᠡᠷᠢᠭ ᠠᠯᠬᠠᠨ᠃ ᠵᠠᠭᠰᠠᠯ ᠳᠤᠷ ᠲᠤᠮᠠᠨᠴᠢᠯᠠᠯ ᠲᠤᠷ ᠴᠡᠷᠢᠭ
r	She walks, **her body bent**, through the streets.	Тэр гудамжаар <u>намс намс</u> алхана.	ᠠᠯᠬᠠᠨ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠷ ᠨᠠᠮᠤᠭ ᠨᠠᠮᠤᠭ
s	She walked **click clack** away.	Тэр <u>тог тог</u> алхсаар холдов.	ᠬᠣᠯᠳᠣᠭᠰᠣᠨ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠣᠳᠤ ᠣᠳᠤ ᠠᠯᠬᠠᠵᠤᠮᠰᠠᠷᠠᠭᠴ
t	At night a faraway light is seen **flashing**.	Шөнө холын гэрэл <u>гялс гялс</u> харагдана.	ᠬᠠᠷᠠᠭᠳᠠᠨᠠ᠃ ᠬᠤᠲᠠᠯ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠ ᠲᠤᠷ ᠥᠭᠡᠷᠢ ᠭᠶᠠᠯᠰ ᠭᠶᠠᠯᠰ
u	Someone **plods** along the road.(very tired or bored; the body swinging up and down)	Нэгэн хүн замын хажуугаар <u>найгас найгас</u> алхана.	ᠨᠠᠶᠭᠠᠰ ᠨᠠᠶᠭᠠᠰ ᠠᠯᠬᠠᠨ᠃ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠬᠦᠨ ᠵᠠᠮ ᠤ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭ ᠪᠤᠷ
v	Outside, the wind **rustles**.	Гадаа <u>сэр сэр</u> салхилна.	ᠰᠠᠯᠬᠢᠯᠠᠨ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠰᠡᠷ ᠰᠡᠷ
w	The rain **is drizzling**.	Бороо <u>шивэр шивэр</u> орж байна.	ᠣᠷᠵᠤ᠂ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠭ ᠨᠤᠭᠤᠭ ᠣᠷᠣᠭᠰᠣᠭᠣ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠ᠃

x	The soup **is bubbling**.	Шөл пор пор буцалж байна.	

1.1.3.2.3.3 Modification with Adwords

As mentioned in the introduction to the adwords, adwords can describe nouns, verbs or other adwords (like adjectives or adverbs). Here we give examples for adwords that are used to describe adverbs. Note that the same adwords can also describe adjectives (see pages 219-220).. Sometimes, such an adword could be dropped if the context of the sentence allows that (**ex. i-j**).

a	Tsolmon sings **very** nicely.	Цолмон маш сайн дуулдаг.	
b	She screamed **extremely** loud.	Тэр тун чанга хашгирав.	
c	He got sick because he worked **too** much.	Тэр хэтэрхий их ажилласан учраас өвчилсөн.	
d	That wrestler fought **even** worse.	Тэр бөх бүр муу барилдсан.	
e	Let's study **even** better!	Улам сайн сурцгаая!	
f	You behaved **quite** badly yesterday.	Чи өчигдөр нэлээд муухай аашилсан.	
g	My father knows this **really** well.	Манай аав үүнийг үнэхээр сайн мэднэ.	
h	You guessed this **exactly** right.	Чи үүнийг яг зөв таав.	
i	Our son studied (**extremely**) well. ("онц" = best grade)	Манай хүү онц (сайн) сурсан.	
j	For some days, he worked **far too** much.	Тэр хэдэн өдөр дэндүү (их) ажилласан.	

1.1.3.2.4 Semantic Classification of Adverbs

And now we will - without regard to the grammatical groups - divide the adverbs into semantic groups according to their usage in speech. You may also want to refer to the 'adverbs in postpositional functions', explained on page 284.

1.1.3.2.4.1 Local Adverbs

Local adverbs always answer the question '**where?**'.

Overview (a selection of the most common ones):

1	энд		here	2	тэнд		there
3	наана		on this side/ here where I am	4	цаана		on that side/ there, away from me
5	гадаа (гадна)	()	outside, outdoors	6	дотор		inside
7	хойно		in the north	8	өмнө		in the south
9	ард		in the back	10	урд		in the front
11	дээр		upstairs, above	12	доор		downstairs, below

Examples: (The numbers refer to the numbers of the adverbs in the chart on the previous page)

1	Let's meet, the two of us, **here** tomorrow.	Маргааш хоёулаа энд уулзъя.	[illegible]
2	Now there are many people **there**.	Одоо тэнд олон хүн байна.	[illegible]
1 2	In Ulaanbaatar there are little kiosks **everywhere**. ("... **here and there** ...")	Улаанбаатарт энд тэндгүй тохирол-цооны жижиг дэлгүүр байдаг.	[illegible]
3	My house is **on this side/ closer**.	Манай гэр наана байдаг.	[illegible]
4	Their house is **on that side/further away**.	Тэдний гэр цаана байдаг.	[illegible]
5 6	Although in winter it's cold **outside**, it's warm **inside**.	Өвөл гадаа хүйтэн байвч дотор дулаан байдаг.	[illegible]
5 6	**On the outside** shining, **on the inside** filthy. (saying)	Гаднаа гялалцаг, дотроо паланцаг.	[illegible]
6	My son is **inside**.	Манай хүү дотор байна.	[illegible]
7	He lived for many years **in the North**. (refers usually to 'Russia')	Тэр олон жил хойно амьдарсан.	[illegible]
8	I lived for two months **in the South**. (refers usually to 'China')	Би хоёр сар өмнө суусан.	[illegible]
9	He's sitting **in the back**.	Тэр ард сууж байна.	[illegible]
10	He always calls the tune. ("He always goes **in the front**.")	Тэр ямагт урд явдаг.	[illegible]
11	That very book is **above/ upstairs**.	Нөгөө ном чинь дээр байгаа.	[illegible]
12	Our children are **downstairs**.	Манай хүүхдүүд доор байгаа.	[illegible]
13	Shop number 4 is **close by**.	4-р дэлгүүр ойр (хон) байна.	[illegible]
14	My homeland is very **far** away.	Манай нутаг их хол байдаг.	[illegible]
15	He is bad in walking **downhill**.	Тэр уруу явахдаа муу.	[illegible]
16	This car can't go **uphill**.	Энэ машин өөд явж чаддаггүй.	[illegible]

1.1.3.2.4.2 Temporal Adverbs

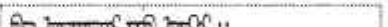
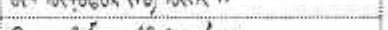
Temporal adverbs always answer the question '**when?**'.

Overview (a selection of the most common ones):

1	өнөөдөр	[illegible]	today	2	маргааш	[illegible]	tomorrow
3	өчигдөр	[illegible]	yesterday	4	уржигдар	[illegible]	the day before yesterday
5	нөгөөдөр	[illegible]	the day after tomorrow	6	одоо	[illegible]	now

7	дараа		afterwards, after that	8	хожим		later, (since)
9	аяар		gradually, later	10	мөд		soon
11	урьд		before	12	сая саяхан	 	just now recently
13	эрт эртхэн	 	early, earlier	14	орой оройхон	 	late (in the evening) later, quite late
15	үүрд		forever, eternally	16	өнөд		forever, for a long time
17	ашид		always, permanently	18	эгнэгт		always, forever
19	насад		always, (lifelong)	20	үргэлж		always, constantly
21	ямагт		always, all the time	22	дандаа		always
23	хэзээд		always	24	хойшид		from now on
25	үтэр		immediately	26	төдхөн		soon thereafter
27	даруйхан	 	right away, immediately	28	дороо		at once
29	түр		temporarily, for a short time	30	гэнэт(хэн)	 	suddenly
31	хааяа		from time to time, seldom	32	заримдаа		sometimes
33	байнга		regularly, often	34	туж		throughout, all the time

Examples:

1	I don't have time **today**.	Би <u>өнөөдөр</u> завгүй.	
2	Baatar will come **tomorrow**.	Баатар <u>маргааш</u> ирнэ.	
3	What did you do **yesterday**?	Та <u>өчигдөр</u> юу хийсэн бэ?	
4	**The day before yesterday** it snowed here.	<u>Уржигдар</u> манай энд цас орсон.	
5	What will you do **the day after tomorrow**?	Та <u>нөгөөдөр</u> яах вэ?	
6	What are you doing **now**?	Та <u>одоо</u> юу хийж байна вэ?	
7	I will meet you **afterwards**.	Би тантай <u>дараа</u> уулзъя.	
8	I haven't seen him **since (then)**.	Би түүнтэй <u>хожим</u> уулзаагүй.	
9	I want to talk with you about this **later**.	Би энэ тухай тантай <u>аяар</u> ярья.	
10	They'll come **soon**.	Тэд нар <u>мөд</u> ирнэ.	
11	Before, this place used to be a big town.	<u>Урьд</u> энэ газар том хот байжээ.	
12	He **just** called.	Тэр <u>сая</u> утсаар ярьсан.	

12	He came **recently** from the countryside.	Тэр саяхан хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	[illegible]
13	Baatar came **early** today.	Баатар өнөөдөр эрт ирсэн.	[illegible]
13	Please come **earlier** today.	Чи өнөөдөр эртхэн ирээрэй.	[illegible]
14	He comes home **late**.	Тэр гэртээ орой ирдэг.	[illegible]
14	Yesterday he came home **quite late**.	Өчигдөр тэр гэртээ оройхон ирсэн.	[illegible]
15	I will honor you **forever**.	Би таныг үүрд хүндэлнэ.	[illegible]
16	The earth will **eternally** turn around the sun.	Дэлхий өнөд нарыг тойрон эргэлдэнэ.	[illegible]
17	Mankind will remember his name **forever.**	Хүн төрлөхтөн түүний нэрийг ашид дурсах болно.	[illegible]
18	Please remember her **always**.	Чи түүнийг эгнээгт дурсаж яваарай.	[illegible]
19	I will respect my mother **all my life**.	Би ээжийгээ насад хүндэлнэ.	[illegible]
20	Please remember this **always**.	Чи үүнийг үргэлж санаж яваарай.	[illegible]
21	He **always** smiles.	Тэр ямагт инээж байдаг.	[illegible]
22	She **always** lies.	Тэр дандаа худал хэлдэг.	[illegible]
23	He is **always** ready for this.	Тэр хэзээд үүнд бэлэн байдаг.	[illegible]
24	**From now on**, don't do that again, please.	Чи хойшид дахин битгий ингээрэй.	[illegible]
25	Please go quickly and **at once**.	Үтэр түргэн яваарай.	[illegible]
26	**Soon thereafter**, he died.	Тэр тэдхэн (удалгүй) нас барсан.	[illegible]
27	Please give me this book **immediately**.	Чи надад энэ номыг даруй(хан) өгөөрэй.	[illegible]
28	That thief told the truth **at once**.	Тэр хулгайч дорхо үнэнээ хэлсэн.	[illegible]
29	I live **temporarily** in Ulaanbaatar.	Би Улаанбаатарт түр амьдарч байна.	[illegible]
30	She came in and then, **suddenly**, she started to cry.	Тэр орж ирээд гэнэт(хэн) уйлсан.	[illegible]
31	**From time to time**, I watch a movie at the theater.	Би хааяа кино театрт кино үздэг.	[illegible]
32	**Sometimes** I feel like going back to my homeland.	Би заримдаа нутагтаа буцмаар санагддаг.	[illegible]

33	I live **permanently** in Ulaanbaatar.	Би Улаанбаатарт байнга амьдардаг.	[illegible]
34	For two days it rained **continuously**.	Хоёр хоног туж бороо орсон.	[illegible]

Temporal adverbs combined with each other:

a	I don't have time **these days**.	Би энэ маргааш завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	**Sometime, sooner or later,** I will meet her.	Эрт орой хэзээ нэгэн цагт би түүнтэй уулзана.	[illegible]
c	I am in Ulaanbaatar **for a short while,** waiting for my Chinese visa.	Би Улаанбаатарт Хятадын виз хүлээгээд түр зуур байж байна.	[illegible]

1.1.3.2.4.3 Modal Adverbs

Modal adverbs answer always the question **'how?', 'in what way?'**.

Overview (a selection of the most common ones):

1	голдуу	[illegible]	mainly	2	аяндаа	[illegible]	automatically, for oneself
3	ихэнхдээ	[illegible]	to a large degree, in most cases	4	ихэвчлэн	[illegible]	generally, largely
5	далдуур	[illegible]	secretly	6	зориуд	[illegible]	purposely
7	үнэндээ	[illegible]	as a matter of fact, in fact	8	үнэхээр	[illegible]	really, truly
9	тас түс (түс тас)	[illegible]	absolutely, openly	10	хааш яаш	[illegible]	carelessly
11	арай чарай	[illegible]	merely, somehow	12	санд мэнд	[illegible]	hastily
13	халп(и) малп	[illegible]	briefly, superficially	14	дөнгөн данган	[illegible]	hardly, barely
15	яв тав/ цав	[illegible]	exactly, just right	16	ихэд	[illegible]	greatly, very much
17	сайтар	[illegible]	well, thoroughly	18	бүрнээ	[illegible]	completely, entirely
19	гүнээ	[illegible]	deeply (only used positively)	20	бүрмөсөн	[illegible]	completely, entirely

Examples:

1	In summer, Mongolians use **mainly** milk products*. (*"white food")	Монголчууд зунд голдуу цагаан идээ хэрэглэдэг.	[illegible]
2	If your friend's matter succeeds, your matter will succeed too. ("... **by itself**.")	Нөхрийн хэрэг бүтвэл өөрийн хэрэг аяндаа бүтнэ. (saying)	[illegible]
3	**To a large degree,** Mongolians are engaged in animal husbandry.	Монголчууд ихэнхдээ нүүдлийн мал аж ахуй эрхэлдэг.	[illegible]

4	Mongolians raise **mostly** sheep and cattle.	Монголчуud ихэвчлэн хонь, үхэр өсгөдөг.	[illegible]
5	They talked **secretly** about this person.	Тэд энэ хүний ту-хай далдуур ярьсан.	[illegible]
6	He **purposely** came too late.	Тэр зориуд хожимдсон.	[illegible]
7	**As a matter of fact,** I don't have money.	Надад үнэндээ мөнгө байхгүй.	[illegible]
8	I **really** can't help you.	Би үнэхээр чамд туслаж чадахгүй.	[illegible]
9	Today (we) have **to come to** a final decision in regard to this problem.	Энэ асуудлыг өнөөдөр тас тус шийдэх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
9	We have to talk **openly** about this.	Бид үүний тухай тус тас ярих хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
10	He does his work **carelessly**.	Тэр ажлаа хаяш яаш хийдэг.	[illegible]
11	I **merely** agreed with him.	Би түүнтэй арай чарай тохиролцсон.	[illegible]
12	He heard this and **hastily** left his house.	Тэр энэ тухай сонсоод гэрээсээ сандмэнд явсан.	[illegible]
13	I met him **briefly** in the street.	Би түүнтэй гудамжинд халт(и) мөлт уулзсан.	[illegible]
14	I **barely** get by in life with my salary.	Би цалингаараа дөнгөн данган амьдарч байна.	[illegible]
15	Everything happened **exactly**, according to plan.	Бүх юм төлөвлөс-ний дагуу яв тав болж өнгөрсөн.	[illegible]
16	He **greatly** offended me.	Тэр намайг ихэд гомдоосон.	[illegible]
17	You have to consider that **thoroughly** and decide.	Та үүнийг сайтар бодож шийдэх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
18	We **completely** support your idea.	Бид нар таны саналыг бүрнээ дэмжиж байна.	[illegible]
19	I respect her **deeply**.	Би түүнийг гүнээ хүндэлдэг.	[illegible]
20	It would be good if we **completely** finished this work today.	Энэ ажлыг өнөөдөр бүрмөсөн дуусга-вал сайн байна.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3 NUMERALS

The different numerals (Latin 'numerus' = 'number') also belong to the big group of **adwords** because they **describe nouns and verbs**. In Mongolian, most numerals are formed with suffixes that express meanings like 'approximate', 'about', 'over', 'each', 'times', etc. Sometimes other words, like postpositions, serve to build a particular form of numeral.

1.1.3.3.1 Overview of Numerals and Numeral Suffixes (NuS's):

Subgroups	Suffixes (–...) or Words		Examples		
Cardinal			ten	арав	
Ordinal	-дугаар		**number** ten	арав<u>дугаар</u>	
	-дүгээр		**number** four	дөрөв<u>дүгээр</u>	
	-дахь		(the) ten**th**/10**th**	арав<u>дахь</u>	
	-дэх		(the) four**th**/4**th**	дөрөв<u>дэх</u>	
Collective	-уул(аа)		the **ten** (of ...)	арв<u>уул(аа)</u>	
	-үүл(ээ)		the **four** (of ...)	дөрв<u>үүл(ээ)</u>	
Approximate	-аад, -оод		**at most** ten	арв<u>аад</u>	
	-ээд, -өөд		**at most** forty	дөч<u>өөд</u>	
(expressed with post-positions)	гаруй		**more than** ten	арав <u>гаруй</u>	
	илүү		**more than** ten	арав <u>илүү</u>	
	шахам		**almost** ten	арав <u>шахам</u>	
	орчим		**about** ten	арав <u>орчим</u>	
Multiplying	-таа, -тээ		ten **times**	арван<u>таа</u>	
	-тоо, -төө		four **times**	дөрвөн<u>тээ</u>	
	дахин		ten **times**	арав <u>дахин</u>	
	удаа		four **times**	дөрвөн <u>удаа</u>	
Diminutive	-хан,		**only** ten	арав<u>хан</u>	
	-хон		**only** four	дөрөв<u>хөн</u>	
	-хэн, -хөн				
Distributive	repetitive form	repetitive form	ten **each**	арав арав	
			four **each**	дөрөв дөрөв	

1.1.3.3.2 Cardinal Numerals

1.1.3.3.2.1 Overview of Cardinal Numerals and Numeral Suffixes (NuS's)

Explanations to the table on the next page:

***1)** See next page for an explanation, when the **n-stem** (in parentheses) is necessary.

***2.)** Note the exception in Classical Script form of **number 8**! (not –)

***3.)** Usually "арван мянга" and "зуун мянга" are used for 10,000 and 100,000, because the words "түм" and "бум" are a bit **outdated** and often used in the meaning 'very many', 'a great sum of'.

1	нэг (нэгэн) *1		10	арав (арван)	
2	хоёр		20	хорь (хорин)	
3	гурав (гурван)		30	гуч (гучин)	
4	дөрөв (дөрвөн)		40	дөч (дөчин)	
5	тав (таван)		50	тавь (тавин)	
6	зургаа (зургаан)		60	жар (жаран)	
7	долоо (долоон)		70	дал (далан)	
8	найм (найман)	*2.)	80	ная (наян)	
9	ес (есөн)		90	ер (эн)	

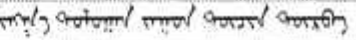
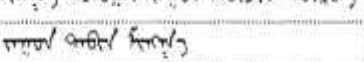
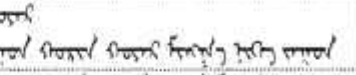
100	зуу(н)	
1,000	мянга(н)	
10,000	түм(эн), арван мянга(н) *3.)	
100,000	бум(ан), зуун мянга(н) *3.)	
1,000,000	сая	
A thousand millions (Brit.) Billion (Am.)	тэрбум	

1.1.3.3.2.2 Usage of Cardinal Numerals

1.1.3.3.2.2.1 Compound Cardinal Numerals

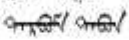
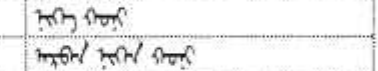
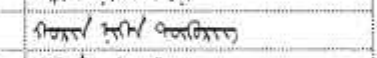
Compound cardinal numerals are already formed after number ten since the Mongolian numeral system is **based on the decimal system** and not - like in English- on a twelve-system (ten, eleven, twelve, dozen, etc.)
Generally speaking, the **n-stem** is used to build compound numerals.
Exceptions are: хоёр, мянга, түм, бум, сая, тэрбум (**see***).

11	арван нэг		111	зуун арван нэг	
12	арван хоёр		120	зуун хорь	
13	арван гурав		135	зуун гучин тав	
21	хорин нэг		177	зуун далан долоо	
22	хорин хоёр		202	хоёр (*) зуун хоёр	
28	хорин найм		310	гурван зуун арав	
31	гучин нэг		540	таван зуун дөч	
33	гучин гурав		630	зургаан зуун гуч	
39	гучин ес		718	долоон зуун арван найм	
66	жаран зургаа		866	найман зуун жаран зургаа	
92	ерэн хоёр		992	есөн зуун ерэн хоёр	
1967	мянга(*) есөн зуун жаран долоо				

2,000	хоёр(*) мянга	
3,744	гурван мянга(*) долоон зуун дөчин дөрөв	
450,000	дөрвөн зуун тавин мянга (450.000)	
822,132	найман зуун хорин хоёр(*) мянга(*) нэг(*) зуун гучин хоёр (822.132)	
3,560,000	гурван сая(*) таван зуун жаран мянга (3.560.000)	
6,005,014,310	зургаан тэрбум(*) таван сая(*) арван дөрвөн мян-га(*) гурван зуун арав (6.005.014.310)	

1.1.3.3.2.2.2 Cardinal Numerals as Attributes

In order to use numerals as attributes, the **n-stem is necessary**.
Exceptions are: нэг, хоёр, сая, and тэрбум (*).

a	**four** people	дөрвөн хүн	
b	**three** books	гурван ном	
c	**one** sheep	нэг(*) хонь	
d	**eleven** sheep	арван нэгэн хонь	
e	**twenty-one** tögrög	хорин нэгэн төгрөг	
f	**seventy** years old	далан настай	
g	**five hundred** tögrög	таван зуун төгрөг	
h	I have **three** younger brothers and sisters.	Би гурван дүүтэй.	
i	I need **twenty** notebooks.	Надад хорин дэвтэр хэрэгтэй.	
j	Baatar bought **two** books.	Баатар хоёр(*) ном авсан.	
k	How many **thousand** tögrögs do you get as a monthly salary? ("A how-many-thousand-tögrög salary...")	Та сард хэдэн мянган төгрөгийн цалин авдаг вэ?	
l	This house costs **one million** tögrög. ("is with a million-tögrög price")	Энэ байр сая (*) төгрөгийн үнэтэй.	
m	That bank got into a debt of several **billion** dollars.	Тэр банк хэдэн тэрбум (*) долларын өрөнд оржээ.	

1.1.3.3.2.2.3 Cardinal Numerals as Conjunctions

As a conjunction, the numeral is always used **without the n-stem**. When personal pronouns are used instead of names (**ex. b-e**), the **last personal pronoun** has to be *plural*.

a	Baatar, Dorj **and** Tsetseg went to town. ("Baatar, Dorj, Tsetseg **three**...")	Баатар, Дорж, Цэцэг гурав хот явсан.	
b	You **and** *I* go by car. ("You, *we* **two**...")	Чи бид хоёр машинтай явна.	
c	(My) mother, father, older brother **and** *I* will come. ("Mother, father, the older brother, *we* **four**...")	Ээж, аав, ах, бид дөрөв ирнэ.	
d	Only you **and** *I* know about this. ("...you *we* **two**...")	Энэ тухай та бид хоёр л мэднэ.	
e	Are the teacher **and** you going to a movie? ("The teacher *you* **two**...")	Багш та хоёр кинонд явах уу?	

1.1.3.3.2.2.4 Cardinal Numerals in Everyday Life

1.1.3.3.2.2.4.1 Date

To express the date, the **n-stem is necessary** (without exceptions!).
Explanation to the examples k-l:
With the help of the instrumental case, an **approximate** time is expressed (therefore it is only used for even dates: 10, 15, 20, 25...). If dative-locative case and instrumental case appear together (**ex.l**), the **date expressed is more definite** because of certain known factors.

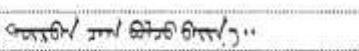
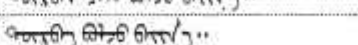
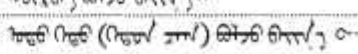
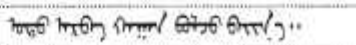
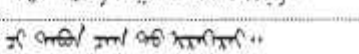
a	What's the date today?	Өнөөдөр хэдэн бэ?	
b	Today is **January 1st**. ("day one of first month")	Өнөөдөр нэгдүгээр сарын нэгэн.	
c	**April 12th** is Astronaut Day.	Дөрөвдүгээр сарын арван хоёрон бол сансрын нисэгчдийн өдөр.	
d	Today is **May 5th**.	Өнөөдөр тавдугаар сарын таван.	
e	Today is **July 10th.**	Өнөөдөр долдугаар сарын арван.	
f	My birthday is **9-19-1955**. (September nineteenth, nineteen fifty-five)	Миний төрсөн өдөр 1955.9.19. (мянга есөн зуун тавин таван оны есдүгээр сарын арван есөн)	
g	He'll come on (the day of) **May 3rd**.	Тэр 5-р сарын 3-ны өдөр ирнэ.	
h	We'll go on **March 28th**.	Бид нар гуравдугаар сарын хорин найманд явна.	
i	Do you remember **July 27th**?	Чи 7-р сарын 27-ныг санаж байна уу?	

j	The school vacation started on the **15th**. ("from the 15th...")	Сурагчдын амралт арван тавнаас эхэлсэн.	
k	He will come around **December 30th**.	Тэр арван хоёрдугаар сарын гучнаар ирнэ.	
l	He'll go around **April 15th**.	Тэр дөрвөн сарын арван тавдаар явна.	

1.1.3.3.2.2.4.2 Time

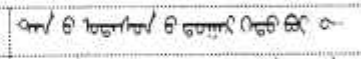
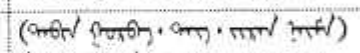
- When "цаг" (o'clock) is written, the **attributive numeral** takes the n-stem (**ex.a**)
- When "цаг" is dropped, the **numeral takes the place of the noun**. It can be declined and it never takes the n-stem (**ex. b**).

Please notice that the Mongolian literal translation always uses the verb 'become': 'It is **becoming** 4 o'clock.'

1a	It's **four o'clock**.	Дөрвөн цаг болж байна.	
1b	It's **four**.	Дөрөв болж байна.	
2a	What's the time? (**'How many** o'clock... ?")	Одоо хэд(эн цаг) болж байна вэ? ("хэд" is more colloquial)	
2b	It's **half past ten**.	Одоо арав хагас болж байна.	
3a	Please come at **5 o'clock**.	Чи таван цагт ирээрэй.	
3b	Please come at **5.**	Чи тавд ирээрэй.	
4a	We have lessons **from two to five o'clock**.	Бид хоёр цагаас таван цаг хүртэл хичээллэдэг.	
4b	We have lessons **from two to five**.	Бид хоёроос тав хүртэл хичээллэдэг.	

1.1.3.3.2.2.4.3 Telephone

In telling someone a telephone number, the usual thing is to say **2 numbers together** (3x2), sometimes 3 numbers together (2x3), but never all numbers separated as is common in Britain. Usually, the Russian word for zero, "ноль", is used.

a	What's your phone number? ("**How many** is...")	Таны утасны дугаар хэд вэ?	
b	My work number is **53068**. (fifty-three, zero, sixty-eight)	Миний ажлын утас 53068 (тавин гурав, ноль, жаран найм)	
c	The home number: **312248**. (thirty-one, twenty-two, forty-eight)	Гэрийн утас: 312248 (гучин нэг, хорин хоёр, дөчин найм)	

1.1.3.3.2.3 Declension of Cardinal Numerals

When numerals are used **in place of a noun**, they could be declined, i.e., **CS**'s can be added. Shown in English sentences: 'Give me **the three**.' 'Take **those two**.'

1.1.3.3.2.3.1 Overview of Declined Cardinal Numerals

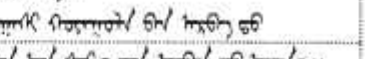
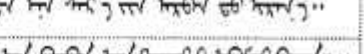
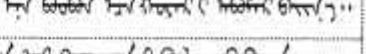
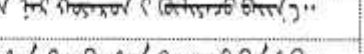
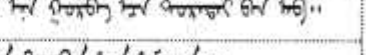
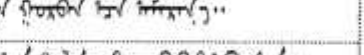
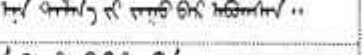
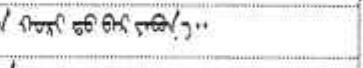
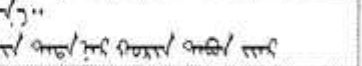
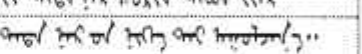
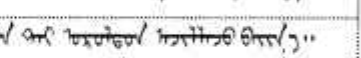
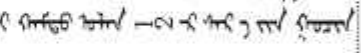
Explanations:
*1) "сая" has no n-stem
*2) **n-stem** is also used for **fractions**, therefore, we can have it with **big numerals**
*3) **n-stem** for dates, therefore only **until thirty**

	1	10	100 *3)	1000 *3)	10'000 *3)
N.	нэг (нэгэн)	арав (арван)	зуу (зуун)	мянга (мянган)	сая *1)
G.	нэгийн (нэгний)	арвын (аравны)	зуугийн (зууны)*2)	мянгын (мянганы)*2)	саяын *2)
D.	нэгд (нэгэнд)	аравд/аравт (арванд)	зуул	мянгад	саяд
A.	нэгийг (нэгнийг)	арвыг (аравныг)	зууг	мянгыг	саяыг
A.	нэгээс (нэгнээс)	арваас (аравнаас)	зуугаас	мянгаас	саяас
I.	нэгээр (нэгнээр)	арваар (аравнаар)	зуугаар	мянгаар	саяар
C.	нэгтэй (нэгэнтэй)	аравтай (арвантай)	зуутай	мянгатай	саятай
D.	нэг руу (нэгэн руу)	арав руу (арван руу)	зуу руу	мянга руу	сая руу

1.1.3.3.2.3.2 Usage of Declined Cardinal Numerals

The **first example** of each case is always **without the n-stem**, the **second** is always **with** it. The latter is used for dates or fractions. With **dative-locative case**, there are three options, but the difference between two of them only shows in Cyrillic. For **instrumental case**, see explanation on page 237 (date).

N.	Would you please count to **ten**?	Та арав хүртэл тоолно уу?	
N.	January **10th** was a Sunday.	Нэгдүгээр сарын арван сайн өдөр байсан.	
G.	My younger brother studies in class **10**A.	Миний дүү арвын «А» ангид сурдаг.	
G.	Please take 3/**10**ths of it. (three-tenths)	Аравны гуравыг нь аваарай.	
D.	Please give this to **ten** (of them).	Үүнийг тэдний арав(нь) өгөөрэй.	

D.	Let's meet (the two of us) tomorrow at **ten.**	Маргааш хоёулаа арав**т** уулзъя.	
D.	He'll come on the **10th** of this month.	Тэр энэ сарын арван**д** ирнэ.	
A.	I want to buy **2** of these cookies.	Би энэ боовноос хо**ё**р**т** авмаар байна.	
A.	We are waiting for the second.	Бид нар хоёрн**т** хүлээж байна.	
A.	Take from these **3** what you like.	Та энэ гурва**в** дуртайгаа ав.	
A.	We'll have vacation from **the third** on.	Бид гуравна**в** амарна.	
I.	I bought this loaf of bread for **a hundred**.	Би энэ талхыг зуу**г**аар авсан.	
I.	We'll go around the **20th**.	Бид хорьдо**г**оор явна.	
I.	But they'll come around **the twenty-fifth**.	Харин тэд нар хо**р**ин тавна**г**аар ирнэ.	
C.	I'll meet **one** of them. ("I'll meet with one ..")	Би тэд нарын нэ**г**э**н**ээ уулзана.	
C.	Our union competes with December **31st**. (Expl.: A production goal had been fixed that has to be reached)	Манай хамт олон 12-р сарын гу**ч**ин нэгэнтэ**й** уралдан ажиллаж байна.	
D.	The hour-hand of the watch moved toward **the 9** and stood still.	Цагийн урт зүү **ес** зүү дөхөж очоод зогсчээ.	
D.	The time drew nearer to May **10th** like an arrow that had been shot.	Хоног хугацаа тав-дугаар сарын а**р**ва**н** зүү харвасан сум мэт ойртож байлаа.	

1.1.3.3.3 Ordinal Numerals

The name 'ordinals' (Latin 'ordo' = 'order') reveals the **main characteristic** of this numeral group. All ordinal numerals are numbers that are **bound to a certain order**. In English we use the **suffix 'th'** to express this order: the ten**th** man, the four**th** book, but the 1**st** winner, the 2**nd** prize, the 3**rd** choice.

In Mongolian there are two ways to build ordinal numerals:

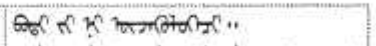
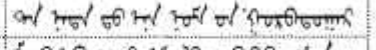
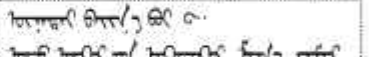
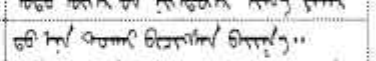
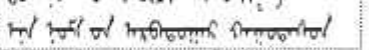
- **with the suffix** "-дахь/-дэх" ( )
- **with the word 'number'** = "дугаар" ( ), which actually has a suffix function and therefore exists today in 2 versions (for vowel harmony):
  "-дугаар/-дүгээр" ().

The **usage** of these two suffixes is not always so straight forward. Sometimes they can be used interchangeably, in other cases only one of them is possible. It's best to memorize which suffix is used for which situation.

1.1.3.3.3.1 Ordinal NuS's "дугаар[2], дахь/-дэх"

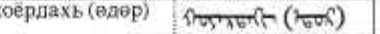
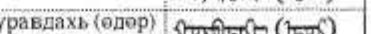
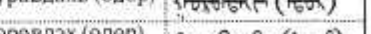
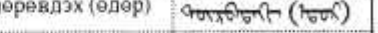
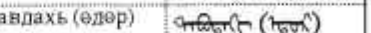
These ordinal numerals have their abbreviations: 3-р, 3-дахь, 4-р, 4-дэх, etc.
Note the **exceptions in the written forms** of the numbers **2, 6, and 7**(*).

No.1	1-р (нэгдүгээр) анхдугаар	(᠊᠊᠊

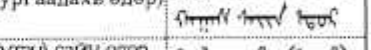
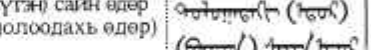
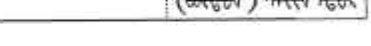
d	Please show me the **third** volume of this book.	Та надад энэ номын гуравдугаар ботийг нь үзүүлээч.	
e	My father was in Hospital **Number 2**. ("..lay in ...")	Миний аав 2-р эмнэлэгт хэвтсэн.	
f	How expensive is **first**-class beef now?	Одоо үхрийн нэгдүгээр мах ямар үнэтэй байна вэ?	
g	On page **10** of this book, something is written about this. ("On the **10**th page..")	Энэ номын аравдугаар хуудсанд энэ тухай бичсэн байгаа.	
h	The **first** congress of Mongolists took place in the city of Ulaanbaatar in 1959.	Монголч эрдэмтний анхдугаар их хурал 1959 онд Улаанбаатар хотод болсон.	
i	Please take this from **number five**. (e.g. "sportsman with No. 5")	Үүнийг тавдугаараас нь аваарай.	

1.1.3.3.3.2.3 Weekdays (-дахь/-дэх)

The Mongolian weekdays originate in the Tibetan language and are similar in their meaning to the European weekdays*. These Tibetan names are used for official publications (e.g. timetables, hours of opening, newspapers, etc.) **In everyday language,** the versions with the **suffix** "-дахь/-дэх" are commonly used. Note the special names for 'Saturday' (half good day) and 'Sunday' ([whole] good day). These weekdays can also be **declined** if the word "өдөр" (day) drops.

Monday	Даваа *(moon)		1. day	нэгдэх (өдөр)	
Tuesday	Мягмар		2. day	хоёрдахь (өдөр)	
Wednesday	Лхагва		3. day	гуравдахь (өдөр)	
Thursday	Пүрэв		4. day	дөрөвдэх (өдөр)	
Friday	Баасан		5. day	тавдахь (өдөр)	
Saturday	Бямба		6. day	хагас сайн өдөр (зургаадахь өдөр)	
Sunday	Ням *(sun)		7. day	(бүтэн) сайн өдөр (долоодахь өдөр)	

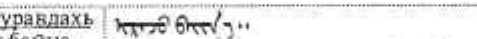
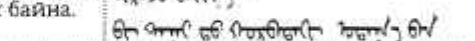
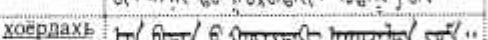
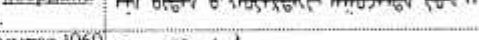
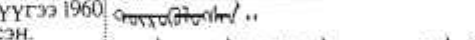
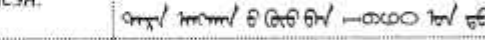
Examples:

a	Do the lessons begin on **Monday**? ("from Monday?")	Хичээл нэгдэх өдрөөс (нэгдэхээс) эхлэх үү?	
b	I'll go to the hospital on **Wednesday**.	Гуравдахь өдөр (гуравдахид) би эмнэлэг явна.	
c	Will you come to my home on **Friday**?	Чи тавдахь өдөр манайд ирэх үү?	
d	What will he do on **Thursday**?	4-дэх өдөр тэр юу хийх вэ?	
e	Do you remember **Tuesday**? ("the second")	Чи хоёрдахийг санаж байна уу?	

f	Please come to my home **Saturday** evening.	Та <u>зүргаадахийн</u> орой манайд ирээрэй.	

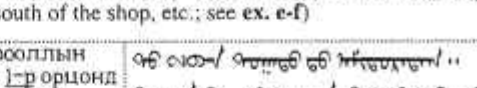
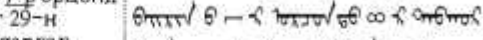
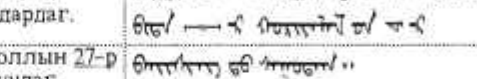
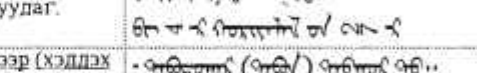
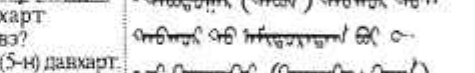
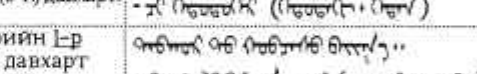
1.1.3.3.3.2.4 Other uses (-дахь/-дэх)

Note, that commonly "анхны" is used instead of "нэгдүгээр" (**ex. c**).

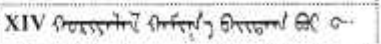
a	I'm coming to your home for the **third** time.	Би танайд <u>гуравдахь</u> удаагаа ирж байна.	
b	This is our **second** meeting.	Энэ бидний <u>хоёрдахь</u> уулзалт юм.	
c	She gave birth to her **first** son in 1960.	Тэр анхны хүүгээ 1960 онд төрүүлсэн.	
d	My **second** daughter plays the violin.	Миний <u>хоёрдахь</u> охин хийл тоглодог.	
e	Would you please give this to the **third** child.	Та үүнийг <u>гуравдахь</u> хүүхдэд өгнө үү.	
f	Please get this from **the fifth one**. (e.g. box)	Үүнийг <u>тавдахиас</u> нь аваарай.	

1.1.3.3.3.2.5 Address (-дугаар[2], -дахь/-дэх)

In Ulaanbaatar there are street names, but the address is always given by **telling district, house, entrance, and apartment numbers**. To all these **numbers**, the suffix "дугаар/-дүгээр" is usually added, but for the floor number "-дахь/-дэх" is also used. In colloquial language, apartment numbers and floor numbers are often used with хэдэн and *n-stem attributes like* арван, гурван (**ex. a,c,d**; нэг doesn't take n-stem). When someone doesn't know the number of a house ("-дугаар/-дүгээр"), the address is explained by refering to well-known places like shops, the four points of the compass, and the order number ("-дахь/-дэх") of the house (e.g. the second one from the right, the last one south of the shop, etc.; see **ex. e-f**)

a	We live in district **11**, house number **4**, entrance number **1**, eighth floor in apartment number 29.	Бид <u>11-р</u> хорооллын <u>4-р</u> байрны <u>1-р</u> орцонд <u>8-р</u> давхарт 29-н тоотод амьдардаг.	
b	I live in house number **27** of the **4th** district.	Би <u>4-р</u> хорооллын <u>27-р</u> байшинд суудаг.	
c	-On which floor do you live? ("On the how-manyth floor...") -On the **fifth** floor.	-<u>Чи хэддүгээр (хэддэх /хэдэн)</u> давхарт амьдардаг вэ? -<u>Тавдугаар</u>(5-н) давхарт.	
d	Clothes are on the **first** floor of the department store.	Их дэлгүүрийн <u>1-р</u> (1-дэх/ нэг) давхарт хувцас байгаа.	
e	Ours is the **first** house from the north behind the 'Jukov' Museum.	Манайх Жуковын музейн ард хойноосоо <u>нэгдэх</u> байшин.	
f	My friend lives in the **second** house south of shop **No. 64**, in the **first** entrance from the right.	Манай найз <u>64-р</u> дэлгүүрээс урагш <u>2-дахь</u> байшингийн баруунаас <u>1-дэх</u> орцонд суудаг.	

1.1.3.3.3.2.6 Roman Numerals in Function of "-дугаар[2]"

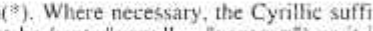
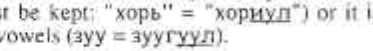
a	We live in the **20th** century.	Бид XX зуунд амьдарч байна.	
b	Where is district **number 14**?	XIV хороолол хаана байдаг вэ?	
c	Were you born in **May**?	Та V сард төрсөн үү?	

1.1.3.3.4 Collective Numerals

The collective numerals (Latin 'colligere' = 'to collect') and their suffixes have no exact equivalents in English. They express something like 'the 4 of [us]', '[we] 6'. They appear often together with the **RS** (compare with p. 108).

1.1.3.3.4.1 Collective NuS "-уул[2]"

The numerals **2, 6, and 7** have a special written form(*). Where necessary, the Cyrillic suffix changes according to spelling rules ("ь" and "и" must be kept: "хорь" = "хориул") or it is added after the *inserted consonant* which follows long vowels (зуу = зуугуул).

the two **of** [us], **both**	хоёул(аа) *	
the three **of** [us], **all** three	гурвуул(аа)	
the four **of** [us], **all** four	дөрвүүл(ээ)	
the five **of** [us], **all** five	тавуул(аа)	
the six **of** [us], **all** six	зургуул(аа) *	
the seven **of** [us], **all** seven	долуул(аа) *	
the eight **of** [us], **all** eight	наймуул(аа)	
the nine **of** [us], **all** nine	есүүл(ээ)	
the ten **of** [us], **all** ten	арвуул(аа)	
all twenty **of** [us] together	хориул(аа)	
all hundred **of** [us] together	зуугуул(аа)	

1.1.3.3.4.2 Usage of Collective Numerals

Explanations:

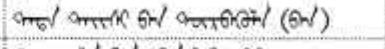
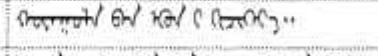
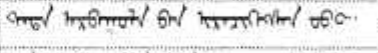
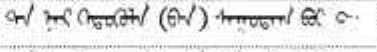
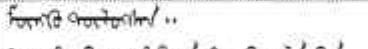
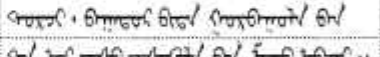
1.) If the numeral is used **without an *RS***, the main interest is aimed at the **number**. If the ***RS* is added**, the main focus is on the fact whether all of them have come.

The six of them came. (not the five or the four)	Тэд нар зургуул ирсэн.	
All six of them came. (None stayed behind)	Тэд нар зургуулаа ирсэн.	

2.) In **colloquial language**, the numeral can be **repeated** and thereby often expresses a **surprise** (pleasant or unpleasant). In this case, the *RS* is always added (see **ex. i**). **Ex. f** and **h** are not repetitions in this sense because the "гурав" and the "ес" are part of the subject (та гурав/ та нар ес).

Examples:

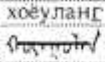
a	There are **5 of us** living in our home.	Бид гэртээ тавуул(аа) байдаг.	

b	They went there, **the four of them**.	Тэд тийшээ дөрвүүл(ээ) явсан.	
c	Let's do this, **both of us**!	Хоёулаа үүнийг хийчихье.	
d	Have **all ten** (of them) come?	Тэд арвуулаа ирчихсэн үү?	
e	**How many of you** are you at home?	Та нар хэдүүл(ээ) суудаг вэ?	
f	**All three of you** clean **together** please!	Та гурав гурвуулаа цэвэрлээрэй.	
g	Dorj, Baatar, and I, **all three of us**, have paid money.	Дорж, Баатар бид гурвуулаа мөнгө төлсөн.	
h	You nine **all** got an 'unsatisfactory'.	Та нар ес есүүлээ муу авчээ.	
i	Oh, then,**you both, the two of you** have come?	Та хоёр хоёул хоёулаа ирсэн юм уу?	

1.1.3.3.4.3 Declension of Collective Numerals

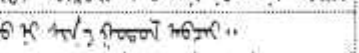
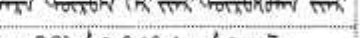
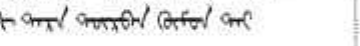
This suffix has an **n-stem** which is used for **declension**: хоёул(ан), гурвуул(ан), etc. The "г" only appears in Cyrillic with certain cases as an **inserted consonant.**

1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Overview of Declined Collective Numerals

Nom.	хоёул	гурвуул	дөрвүүл	арвуул
Gen.	хоёулангийн	гурвуулангийн	дөрвүүлэнгийн	арвуулангийн
Dat.	хоёуланд	гурвуланд	дөрвүүлэнд	арвуланд
Acc.	хоёуланг	гурвуланг	дөрвүүлэнг	арвуланг
Abl.	хоёулангаас	гурвуланг аас	дөрвүүлэнгээс	арвуланг аас
Instr.	хоёулангаар	гурвуланг аар	дөрвүүлэнгээр	арвуланг аар
Com.	хоёулантай	гурвуланг тай	дөрвүүлэнтэй	арвуланг тай
Dir.	хоёулан руу	гурвуланг руу	дөрвүүлэн рүү	арвуланг руу
				

1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Usage of Declined Collective Numerals

Explanations:
The CS is **always** added to the collective numeral, and usually also to the object to which the numeral refers (exception is **ex. G**, where the object is a pronoun that doesn't need the CS). The numbers in parentheses may appear but without any extra meaning.

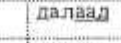
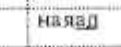
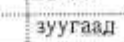
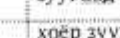
N	Father and mother, **both of them**, will come from the countryside.	Аав ээж (хоёр) хоёу-лаа хөдөөнөөс ирнэ.	
G	The books of **all four of us** are in this chest of drawers.	Бид дөрвүүлэнгийн маань ном энэ шүү-гээнд байдаг юм.	
D	The father bought for his five children, for **all five of them**, new boots.	Эцэг нь таван хүү-хэдтээ тавуулангаа нь шинэ гутал авчээ.	
A	The teacher calls **you two, both of you**.	Та хоёрыг хоёуланг чинь багш дуудаж байна.	
A	The teacher asked us, **all six of us**. ("The teacher asked of us, of **all six** ..")	Багш бид (зургаа-гаас) зургуулангаас маань асуулт асуув.	
I	On his way, he entered **four** yurts, **all of them**.	Тэр дөрвөн гэрээр дөрвүүлэнгээр нь оржээ.	
C	I am a good acquaintance of those **four** people, **of all of them**. ("..acquaintance with...")	Би тэр дөрвөн хүн-тэй дөрвүүлэнгээ нь сайн танил.	
D	He shot simultaneously at **all three**.	Тэр гурвуулан руу зэрэг буудсан.	

1.1.3.3.5 Approximate Numerals

Approximate numerals are expressed in English with words like: **at most, approximate, about, less than, more than, at least, etc**. In Mongolian, suffixes and postpositions are used. The suffixes should only be used for **round figures** like 50, 70, 200, 400, and 500.

1.1.3.3.5.1 Overview of Approximate Numerals

The NuS "–аад[4]" determines the **upper limit**, that means, for example, "арваад" should be translated as '**at most ten**'. But not always the translation 'at most' is the best one.
Please note the special **Cyrillic written forms** that have to do with correct spelling rules:
- "ь" and "и" may not be dropped: "хорь" = "хориод", "тавь" = "тавиад"
- long vowels need the inserted consonant "г": "зуу" = "зуугаад"
- "я" already contains an "а": "ная" = "наяад"

at most 10	арваад		at most 70	далаад	
at most 20	хориод		at most 80	наяад	
at most 30	гучаад		at most 90	ерэлд	
at most 40	дөчөөд		at most 100	зуугаад	
at most 50	тавиад		at most 200	хоёр зуугаад	
at most 60	жараад		at most 1000	мянгаад	

1.1.3.3.5.2 Usage of Approximate Numerals

1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Approximate NuS "-аад[4]"

Meaning 'at most', 'about', 'not more than'

a	**About 10** children are playing there.	Тэнд арваад хүүхэд тоглож байна.	
b	This school has **not more than 60** teachers.	Энэ сургууль жараад багштай.	
c	In our classroom there are, **at most**, **40** chairs.	Манай анги дөчөөд сандалтай.	
d	In the shop **about 80** meters of material are left.	Дэлгүүрт наяад метр даавуу үлджээ.	
e	**At best**, **100** people might come today.	Өнөөдөр зуугаад хүн ирэх байх.	
g	Father will come in **about 20** days.	Аав хориод хоногт ирнэ.	
h	Oh, **about 30** cars are gathered outside.	Хөөх, гадаа гучаад машин цугларчээ.	

Meaning '— ies' (talking of years)

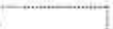
a	In Mongolia in the **fifties,** collectivism won.	Монголд 1950-иад онд нэгдэлжих хөдөлгөөн ялсан.	
b	Nowadays, life in Mongolia has become very different from that in the **eighties**.	Одоо Монголын амьдрал наяад оны-хоос их өөр болжээ.	
c	In the **nineties,** many heavy problems arise in the world.	Ерээд онд дэлхий дээр олон чухал асуудал гарч байна.	

1.1.3.3.5.2.2 Postpositions "гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим"

Numerals with the following **postpositions** can be used as approximate numerals:

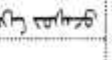
a	гаруй		more than ...	only for tens
b	илүү		more than...	only for tens
c	шахам		almost ...	only for tens
d	орчим		approximate	the number being used is in the middle

a	People discovered this monument after **more than 1000** years.	Энэ дурсгалыг хүмүүс мянга гаруй жилийн дараа олсон.	
a	I have **more than 100** camels.	Би зуу гаруй тэмээтэй.	
b	This year we harvested **more than 500** hectares.	Энэ жил таван зуу илүү га-гаас ургац авсан.	
b	**More than 40** people fit in this hall.	Энэ танхимд 40 илүү хүн багтана.	

c	He owns **almost a hundred** sheep.	Тэр зуу шахам хоньтой.	
c	Baatar is **almost 50** years old.	Баатар тавь шахам настай.	
d	She is **about 20** years old.	Тэр хорь орчим настай.	
d	Their group has **about 70** members.	Тэдний баг дал орчим гишүүнтэй.	

1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Repetition

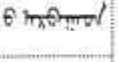
a	хоер гурав дөрөв тав	 	two three four five	always used with successive numbers
b	зуу зуун... мянга мянган... түм буман ...	 	hundreds of ... thousands of ... very many...	Only with "түм бүм" two different numbers ("10,000/ 100,000") are used.

a	Will you come **in three, four** minutes?	Та гурав дөрвөн минутын дараа ирэх үү?	
a	There were only **five, six** eggs.	Зөвхөн тав зургаан өндөг байсан.	
a	Yesterday **four to five hundred** people came.	Өчигдөр дөрөв таван зуун хүн ирэв	
a	It rained around **two, three** o'clock.	Хоёр гурван цагийн үеэр бороо орсон.	
b	He has **hundreds of** dollars.	Түүнд зуу зуун доллар бий.	
b	**Thousands of** families are spending their summer here.	Энд мянга мянган айл өрх зусаж байна.	
b	In the streets, **very many** people behave madly. ("...**10,000, 100,000** living beings are being bewildered.")	Гудамжинд түм буман амьтан бужигнаж байна.	

1.1.3.3.5.3 Declension of Approximate Numerals

The declension of the approximate numerals is done according to general rules.

Examples:

N	**At most, ten** of the students who came yesterday are working here.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь энд ажил хийж байна.	
G	The work of **about ten** of the students who came yesterday is coming to an end.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь ажил дуусах шахжээ.	

D	To **about ten** of the students who had come yesterday, someone alloted work again.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь дахин ажил хуваож өглөө.	[illegible]
A	The boss of the cooperative called **about ten** of the students who had come yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь нэгдлийн дарга дуудсан.	[illegible]
A	**About 10** of the students who had come yesterday were asked about this. ("From about ten...")	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь энэ тухай асуусан.	[illegible]
I	Potatoes and cabbage will be harvested by, **at most, ten** of the students who came yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь төмс, байцаа хураалгана.	[illegible]
C	We worked together today with, **at most, ten** of the students who had come yesterday .	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь бид өнөөдөр хамт ажил хийсэн.	[illegible]
D	We sent money to **not more than ten** of the students who had come yesterday.	Өчигдрийн ирсэн оюутны арваад нь бид мөнгө явуулсан.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.6 Multiplying Numerals

With such numerals 'times' is expressed. Again, there are two ways in Mongolian to say this:
- with **suffixes**, which is only done in **written language**
- with the **words** for 'times' (удаа) or 'again' (дахин), which are widely used in **colloquial language**.

1.1.3.3.6.1 Overview of Multiplying Numerals

This suffix is added to the **n-stem**. It's usually used for **small numbers**.

2x, twice	хоёрон**тоо**	[illegible]	5x, five times	таван**таа**	[illegible]
3x, three times	гурван**таа**	[illegible]	6x, six times	зургаан**таа**	[illegible]
4x, four times	дөрвөн**төө**	[illegible]	7x, seven times	долоон**тоо**	[illegible]

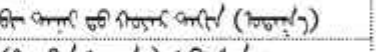
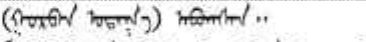
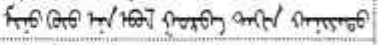
1.1.3.3.6.2 Usage of Multiplying Numerals

1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Multiplying NuS "-таа"

a	Although he shot **three times**, he didn't hit the target.	Тэр гурвантаа буудсан боловч оносонгүй.	[illegible]
b	He often comes here. ("**many times**")	Тэр энд олонтоо ирдэг.	[illegible]
c	He nodded **twice** and then went out.	Тэр хоёрон**тоо** толгой дохиод гарч одов.	[illegible]

1.1.3.3.6.2.2 Words "дахин, удаа"

"удаа" needs the **n-stem,** "дахин" does **not.** Generally, these two words can be used interchangeably. The exception is **ex. c**, where a repeated action is logically impossible. To see the difference more clearly, study examples **d and e**. In mathematics, "дахин" is used.

a	I came **twice** to your home.	Би танайд хоёр дахин (удаа) ирсэн.	
b	My son has had three colds this winter. ("**three times** a cold")	Миний хүү энэ өвөл гурав дахин (гурван удаа) ханиад авсан.	
c	Please take this medicine **three times** a day.	Та энэ эмийг өдөрт гурван удаа уугаарай.	
d	He failed **three times in a row** in the exam.	Тэр шалгалтанд гурав дахин унасан.	
e	He failed the examinations **three times**.	Тэр шалгалтанд гурван удаа унасан.	

1.1.3.3.7 Diminutive Numerals

This suffix bears the meaning '**only**'. As a matter of fact, it's a derivational suffix for adjectives and serves the numerals in this function.

1.1.3.3.7.1 Diminutive NuS "-хан"

It is always used **without the n-stem**, possible for **all numerals**.

only one	ганцхан (нэгхэн)		**only** six	зургаахан	
only two	хоёрхон		**only** seven	долоохон	
only three	гурвахан		**only** eight	наймхан	
only four	дөрөвхөн		**only** nine	есхөн	
only five	тавхан		**only** ten	аравхан	

1.1.3.3.7.2 Usage of Diminutive Numerals

a	I have **only two** older brothers.	Би хоёрхон ахтай.	
b	Today he **only** worked **five** hours.	Тэр өнөөдөр тавхан цаг ажиллав.	
c	**Only ten** people came into the hall.	Танхимд аравхан хүн иржээ.	
d	Bold had **only one** point less than Baatar.	Болд ганцхан (нэгхэн) оноогоор Баатараас дутав.	
e	My son, I* will come back after **only 2** hours. (* the mother)	Миний хүү, ээж нь хоёрхон цагийн дараа ирнэ.	
f	Sir, please give me **only four**.	Ах аа, та надад дөрөвхнийг өгөөч дээ.	

1.1.3.3.8 Distributive Numerals

The English '**4 each**', '**8 each**', **etc.** is expressed in Mongolian with a **repeated number**. Such distributive numerals give either an ***accusative*** or an ***instrumental object***. If the noun is dropped, they can be **declined**.

1.1.3.3.8.1 Usage of Distributive Numerals

Examples "a" always show the **attributive usage**, i.e., they describe a *noun*. If this noun is dropped, the numeral has a noun function and is declined **(ex. b)**. If the noun is mentioned before the numeral, the numeral has to be declined **(ex. b*)**.

1a	The students were given prizes of **a thousand** *tögrögs* **each.**	Оюутнуудыг мянга мянган төгрөгөөр шагнажээ.	ᠣᠶᠤᠳᠤᠨ ᠤᠳᠤᠰᠢᠭ ᠮᠢᠩᠭᠠᠨ ᠲᠥᠭᠦᠷᠢᠭ᠋ᠦᠷ ᠰᠢᠭᠨᠠᠵᠠᠪᠠ᠃
1b	The students were given prizes of **a thousand each**.	Оюутнуудыг мянга мянгаар шагнажээ.	ᠣᠶᠤᠳᠤᠨ ᠤᠳᠤᠰᠢᠭ ᠮᠢᠩᠭᠠᠨ ᠮᠢᠩᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠰᠢᠭᠨᠠᠵᠠᠪᠠ᠃
2a	The soldiers stood in *blocks* **of twenty** *rows*.	Цэргүүд хорь хорин эгнээгээр жагсжээ.	ᠴᠡᠷᠭᠦᠳ ᠬᠣᠷᠢ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠨ ᠡᠭᠨᠡᠭᠡᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠭᠰᠵᠠᠪᠠ᠃
2b	The soldiers stood in rows **of twenty**.	Цэргүүд хорь хориор эгнэн жагсжээ.	ᠴᠡᠷᠭᠦᠳ ᠬᠣᠷᠢ ᠬᠣᠷᠢᠭᠠᠷ ᠡᠭᠨᠡᠨ ᠵᠠᠭᠰᠵᠠᠪᠠ᠃
3a	The teacher gave **each** of his pupils **five** *thin notebooks*.	Багш сурагчиддаа тав таван нимгэн дэвтэр өглөө.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠭᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨ ᠲᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ ᠨᠢᠮᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠡᠪᠲᠡᠷ ᠥᠭᠯᠥᠪᠡ᠃
3b *	The teacher gave **each** of his pupils **five** *thin notebooks*.	Багш сурагчиддаа нимгэн дэвтэр тав тавыг өглөө.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠭᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨ ᠲᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ ᠨᠢᠮᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠡᠪᠲᠡᠷ ᠥᠭᠯᠥᠪᠡ᠃
3b	The teacher gave his pupils **five each.**	Багш сурагчиддаа тав тавыг өглөө.	ᠪᠠᠭᠱ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠭᠴᠢᠳᠠᠨ ᠲᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ ᠲᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ ᠲᠠᠪ᠃
4a	Please take **two** *notebooks* **each**.	Та нар хоёр хоёр дэвтэр аваарай.	ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠳᠡᠪᠲᠡᠷ
4b *	Please take from these *notebooks* **two each.**	Та нар энэ дэвтрээс хоёр хоёрыг аваарай.	ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠳᠡᠪᠲᠡᠷᠡᠴ᠃ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠲᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ
4b	Please take **two each**.	Та нар хоёр хоёрыг аваарай.	ᠠᠭᠤ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠲᠠᠪ ᠲᠠᠪᠠᠨ ᠲᠠᠪ᠃ ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃
5	Stack these books up on that shelf **ten per** pile.	Наад номоо тэр тавиур дээр арав арваар нь давхарлан хураа!	ᠠᠪᠴᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ ᠲᠠᠪᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠢ ᠂᠂ ᠠᠮᠢᠴᠢ ᠵᠢ ᠮᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠮᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠯ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠲᠠᠪᠢᠨ ᠠᠮᠢᠴᠢᠯᠠᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃
6	(Someone) bundled the many one-*tögrög* bills together **by the hundreds.**	Олон нэгтийн төгрөгийг зуу зуугаар нь боолоо.	ᠣᠯᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳᠦᠯ ᠲᠥᠭᠦᠷᠢᠭ᠋ᠦᠷ ᠵᠠᠭᠠᠭᠠᠷ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠭᠡᠵᠡᠪᠡ᠃
7	Enter there **one by one**!	Та нар тийшээ нэг нэгээр орцгоо.	ᠣᠷᠴᠭᠤᠭᠠᠷᠠᠢ᠃ ᠠᠭᠤ ᠲᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠲᠡᠶᠢᠰᠡᠭᠡ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠭᠡᠳ ᠳᠤ
8	The people made groups **of three each**.	Хүмүүс тэнд гурав гурваараа баг болжээ.	ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠪᠦᠰᠡᠴᠡ᠃ ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠯᠵᠤ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠨ ᠳᠤ

1.1.3.3.9 Numerals in Mathematics

These are the most commonly used terms in mathematics:

+	нэмэх тэмдэг		plus sign
-	хасах тэмдэг		minus sign
·	үржүүлэх тэмдэг		multiplication sign
:	хуваах тэмдэг		division sign
=	тэнцүүгийн тэмдэг		equal sign

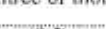
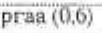
1.1.3.3.9.1 Decimals

"ноль" is a Russian loan word and, until now, has been used in schools, but the Mongolian word for zero "тэг" has been reintroduced. A literal translation of **ex. g** would be:
'six (six whole), three hundred and thirty-three of thousand'.

a	0.5 (zero point five)	тэг аравны тав (0,5)	
b	0.6 (zero point six)	тэг аравны зургаа (0,6)	
c	0.3 (zero point three)	тэг аравны гурав (0,3)	
d	0.25 (zero point two five)	тэг зууны хорин тав (0,25)	
e	10.5 (ten point five)	арав (арван бүхэл) аравны тав (10,5)	
f	1.75 (one point seven five)	нэг (бүхэл) зууны далан тав (1,75)	
g	6.334 (six point three three four)	зургаа(зургаан бүхэл) мянганы гурван зуун гучин дөрөв (6,334)	

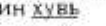
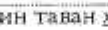
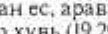
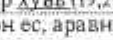
1.1.3.3.9.2 Fractions

In Mongolian, you have to start with the **denominator**, which is in genitive case.

a	1/2 (one half)	хоёрны нэг	
b	1/3 (one third)	гуравны нэг	
c	1/5 (one fifth)	тавны нэг	
d	3/8 (three eighths)	наймны гурав	
e	7/9 (seven nineths)	есний долоо	
f	2 5/6 (two and five sixths)	хоёр бүхэл зургааны тав	
g	5 1/2 (five and a half)	таван бүхэл хоёрны нэг	

1.1.3.3.9.3 Percentages

"процент" is a Russian loan word which, until now, has also been used in schools, but the Mongolian word for percent "хувь" (share) has been reintroduced.
Because a noun follows (хувь), the number is used **attributively**, i.e., with its **n-stem**.

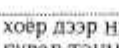
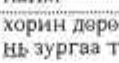
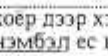
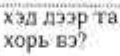
a	20% (twenty percent)	хорин хувь	
b	45% (forty-five percent)	дөчин таван хувь	
c	19.2% (19 point two percent)	арван ес, аравны хоёр хувь (19,2%)	
d	99.8% (ninety-nine point eight percent)	ерөн ес, аравны найман хувь (99,8%)	
e	103.85% (one hundred three point eight five percent)	зуун гурав, зууны наян таван хувь (103,85%)	

1.1.3.3.9.4 Numerals in Basic Arithmetic Functions

1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Addition

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Хоёр дээр гурвыг нэмэхэд тав болно/ болдог.
- Хоёр дээр гурвыг нэмбэл тав болно/ болдог.

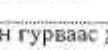
Examples:

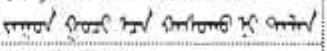
a	2+3=5 (two **plus** three equals five)	хоёр дээр нэмэх нь гурав тэнцүү тав	
b	10+8=18 (ten **plus** eight equals eighteen)	арав дээр нэмэх нь найм тэнцүү арван найм	
c	24+6=30 (twenty-four **plus** six equals thirty)	хорин дөрөв дээр нэмэх нь зургаа тэнцүү гуч	
d	2+?=9 (two **plus** how many equals nine?)	хоёр дээр хэдийг нэмбэл ес вэ?	
e	?+5=20 (how many **plus** five equals twenty?)	хэд дээр тавыг нэмбэл хорь вэ?	

1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Subtraction

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Арваас наймыг хасахад хоёр үлдэнэ/ болно.
- Арваас наймыг хасвал хоёр үлдэнэ/ болно.

Examples:

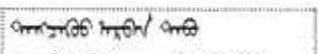
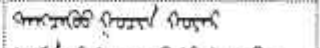
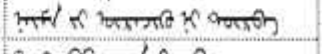
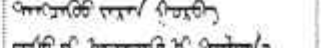
a	10-8=2 (ten **minus** eight equals two)	арваас хасах нь найм тэнцүү хоёр	
b	13-7=6 (thirteen **minus** seven equals six)	арван гурваас хасах нь долоо тэнцүү зургаа	

c	130-71=59 (hundred and thirty **minus** seventy-one equals fifty-nine)	зуун гучаас хасах нь да-лан нэг тэнцүү тавин ес	
d	7-?=4 (seven **minus** how many equals four?)	долооғоос хэдийг хасвал дөрөв бэ?	
e	?-30=18 (how many **minus** thirty equals eighteen?)	Хэдээс гучийг хасвал арван найм бэ?	

1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Multiplication

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Гурвыг таваар үржүүлэхэд арван тав болно.
- Гурвыг таваар үржүүлвэл арван тав болно.

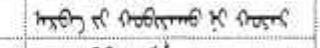
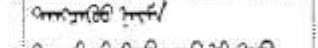
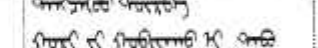
Examples:

a	3·5=15 (three **times** five equals fifteen)	гурвыг үржих нь тав тэнцүү арван тав	
b	8·4=32 (eight **times** four equals thirty-two)	наймыг үржих нь дөрөв тэнцүү гучин хоёр	
c	9·7=63 (nine **times** seven equals sixty-three)	есийг үржих нь долоо тэнцүү жаран гурав	
d	2·?=16 (two **times** how many equals sixteen?)	хоёрыг хэдээр үржүүлвэл арван зургаа вэ?	
e	?·4= 36 (how many **times** four equals thirty-six?)	хэдийг дөрвөөр үржүүл-вэл гучин зургаа вэ?	

1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Division

Instead of "тэнцүү", one could say "тэнцэх нь". The following versions are also possible:
- Арвыг хоёрт хуваахад тав болно.
- Арвыг хоёрт хуваабал тав болно.

Examples:

a	10:2=5 (ten **divided by** two equals five)	арвыг хуваах нь хоёр тэнцүү тав	
b	40:5=8 (forty **divided by** five equals eight)	дөчийг хуваах нь тав тэнцүү найм	
c	20:5=4 (twenty **divided by** five equals four)	хорийг хуваах нь тав тэнцүү дөрөв	
d	56:?=7 (fifty-six **divided by** how many equals seven?)	тавин зургааг хэдэд хуваахад долоо вэ?	
e	?:8=6 (how many **divided by** eight equals six?)	хэдийг наймд хуваахад зургаа вэ?	

1.2 Representative Parts of Speech (Prowords)

We have given **a new name** to those parts of speech that can represent others: **prowords**. The traditional name 'pronouns' (Latin 'pro nomen' = 'for noun') doesn't fully serve our purpose because **Mongolian prowords not only represent nouns**, but also adjectives, adverbs, numerals, and even verbs.

1.2.1 Systematic Classification

In the following chart we will try to show which Mongolian prowords represent which parts of speech. In the semantic classification, we will give examples and translations.

1.2.1.1 PROWORDS FOR NOUNS

Explanation	Personal	Possessive	Reflexive	Demonstr.	Interrog.	Indefinite
for people	би	миний(х)	өөрөө (singular)	эд нар тэд нар өнөөдүүл нөгөөдүүл	хэн	хэн ч хэн нэгэн хэн хэнгүй хэн ч ...-гүй
	чи/та	чиний(х) таны(х)				
	тэр	түүний(х)				
	бид (нар)	биднийх манайх	өөрсдөө (plural)			
	та нар	та нарын(х) танайх				
	тэд (нар)	тэдний(х) тэд нарын(х)				
for things, items				эдгээр тэдгээр өнөөтөх нөгөөтөх	юу	юу ч юу юугүй юу ч ...-гүй

1.2.1.2 PROWORDS FOR VERBS

- There are **no prowords** for verbs in the categories **'personal'**, **'possessive'**, and **'reflexive'**.
- **demonstrative:** ингэ-, тэгэ-
- **interrogative:** яа-, хэрхи-
- **indefinite:** яа- ч

1.2.1.3 PROWORDS FOR ADWORDS

- There are **no prowords** for adwords in the categories **'personal'** and **'possessive'**.
- **reflexive:** өөрийн(хөө), өөрсдийн(хөө)
- **demonstrative:** энэ, тэр, эдгээр, тэдгээр, ийм, тийм, иймэрхүү, тиймэрхүү, өнөө, нөгөө, өдий, тэдий, өчнөөн, төчнөөн,
- **interrogative:** ямар, аль, хэд(эн), хичнээн, хэзээ, хэдийд, хаа(на), хаашаа, хаанаас, хаагуур, хэр, яаж, яагаад
- **indefinite:** ямар ч, ямар нэг(эн), алин ч, аль нэг(эн), аль альгүй, хэд(эн) ч, хичнээн ч, хэзээ ч, хэзээ нэг, хэзээ нэгэнтээ, хэзээ хэзээгүй, хаана ч, хаа нэг, хаа нэгэнтээ, хаа хаагүй, хаашаа ч, хаанаас ч, хаагуур ч, яаж ч, яа- ч.

1.2.2 Semantic Classification

The semantic classification follows the traditional way to make subgroups:

1.2.2.1 PERSONAL PROWORDS

Personal prowords always **represent nouns**. Therefore, we could also use the traditional name 'personal pronouns'.

1.2.2.1.1 Overview of Personal Prowords

Cyrillic	Classical	English	Explanations
би (над-)		**I**	The stem in **parentheses** is always used for **declension** (i.e., to add suffixes). Note the **4 exceptions** to this (see **shadowed** squares under 1.2.2.1.2).
чи (чам-)		**you**	Generally used for **younger** people than oneself or **close friends** around the same age.
та (тан-)		**you** (honorary)	Originally plural form, then changed into **honorary singular** form. Usually used for people **older** than oneself.
тэр (түүн-)		**he** **she** **it**	**There is no difference between he/she/it** because originally, there was no proword for the 3rd person. "тэр/энэ" are actually demonstrative prowords (this/that). For this reason, it's **not very polite** to use this personal proword. Where possible, other words should be used (see examples on page 259).
бид (бидэн-) (ман-) бид нар	 [**old:**	**we**	"бид нар" **stresses the plural meaning,** or is used when referring to a **group of individuals**. "ман-" is the old plural stem that has lost its meaning. But with the youth, the usage of "ман-" has become popular. "Биднүс" is a very informal colloquial version.
та нар	 [**old:**	**you** (plural)	"та" was originally the personal proword for the **2nd person plural**. Today it's mainly used for a **honorary singular** address. Therefore, the common plural form today is "та нар".
тэд (тэдэн-) тэд нар	 [**old:**	**they**	"тэд нар" **stresses the plural,** or is used when referring to a **group of individuals**. An explanation for "эд нар" is found on page 264.

Explanations to the declension table on the next page:

1.) We suggest that students **memorize the *word stems*** (in the table above in parentheses) and the **4 exceptions** to it (shadowed squares in table on the next page):
- "миний" and "чиний" don't use the common stem.
- "намайг" has a different declension; in colloquial language people also use "надыг".
- "чамайг" has a different declension; but "чамыг" is wrong!
- « », the Classical script forms for "намайг/чамайг", are written as exceptions. « » are wrong forms.

2.) The English translation can vary if these prowords are used in a context, particularly the instrumental and ablative case prowords.

3.) The third person singular form in instrumental case has two acceptable forms: "түүнээр" and "түүгээр". Grammatically, the first form is correct, as it uses the stem "түүн".

4.) The directive CS "руу[2]/луу[2]" could also be added directly as in "надруу, та нарлуу".

5.) For an explanation of "манай/танай"[19] (1st/2nd person singular genitive) see page 104.

1.2.2.1.2 Declension of Personal Prowords

	Singular				Plural		
N	I	you	you (hon.)	he/she/it	we	you	they
	би	чи	та	тэр	бид (нар)	та нар	тэд (нар)
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
G	my	your	your	his/her/its	our	your	their
	миний *манай	чиний *танай	таны	түүний	бидний бид нарын (манай*)	та нарын	тэдний тэд нарын
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
D	(to) me	(to) you	(to) you	(to) him/her/it	(to) us	(to) you	(to) them
	надад	чамд	танд	түүнд	бидэнд бид нарт	та нарт	тэдэнд тэд нарт
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
A	me	you	you	him/her/it	us	you	them
	намайг надыг	чамайг	таныг	түүнийг	бидний бид нарыг	та нарыг	тэдний тэд нарыг
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
Ab	from me	from you	from you	from him/her/it	from us	from you	from them
	над	чам	таны	түүний	бидний бид нарын	та нарын	тэдний тэд нарын
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
I	by me	by you	by you	by him/her/it	by us	by you	by them
	надаар	чамаар	таны түүгээр	түүний түүгээр	бидний бид нарын	та нарын	тэдний тэд нарын
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
Com	with me	with you	with you	with him/her/it	with us	with you	with them
	над	чам	таны	түүний	бидэнтэй бид нартай	та нартай	тэдэнтэй тэд нартай
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
Ter	toward me	toward you	toward you	toward him/her/it	toward us	toward you	toward them
	над	чам	таны	түүний	бидэн бид нар	та нарын	тэдэн тэд нарын
	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]

1.2.2.1.3 Usage of Personal Prowords

1.2.2.1.3.1 "Би" = "I"

a	**I** am rejoicing.	Би баярлаж байна.	Би баярлаж байна..
b	**My** father is a teacher. (**My*** wife returned to her job.)	Миний аав багш. (Манай* эхнэр ажилдаа орсон.)	(Манай эхнэр ажилдаа орсон..) Аав нь багш..
c	Please give **me** this notebook.	Надад энэ дэвтрийг өгөөч!	Надад энэ дэвтрийг өгөөч..
d	Dorj saw **me**.	Дорж намайг харсан.	Дорж намайг харсан..
e	What did you ask me? ("What did you ask **from me**?")	Чи надаас юу асуусан бэ?	Чи надаас юу асуусан бэ?
f	He had me help him. ("He was helped **by me**.")	Тэр надаар туслуулсан.	Тэр надаар тусалуулсан..
g	When will you meet me? ("...meet **with me**?")	Чи надтай хэзээ уулзах вэ?	Чи надтай хэзээ уулзах вэ?
h	Please call me. ("Please talk **toward me** through the wire.")	Та над руу утсаар яриарай.	Та над руу утсаар ярианаа..

* see explanation to the words "манай/ танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.2 "чи" = "you"

a	When will **you** go?	Чи хэзээ явах вэ?	Чи хэзээ явах вэ?
b	Where is **your** book? (Is **your*** child well?)	Чиний ном хаа байна? (Танай * хүүхэд сайн уу?)	(Таны хүүхэд сайн уу?) Таны ном хаана байна?
c	I will teach a lesson **to you**./ I will teach **you**.	Би чамд хичээл заана.	Би чамд ном уншуулж өгнө..
d	I know **you**.	Би чамайг танина.	Би чамайг танина..
e	I took a book **from you**.	Би чамаас ном авсан.	Би чамд нэг ном хөдөлгөв..
f	Did the mother send the letter with you? ("...**through you**?")	Ээж чамаар захиа явуулсан уу?	Ээж чамаар дамжуулсан уу? Энэ чамд ээж явуулсан уу
g	I study together **with you**.	Би чамтай хамт сурдаг.	Би чамд очиж хичээл хийдэг..
h	I will come **to(ward) you**.	Би чам руу очно.	Би чамд ирэхээр явдаг..

* see explanation to the words "манай/ танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.3 "Та" = "you" (honorary)

a	Do **you** have time?	Та завтай юу?	Та сайхан суух уу?
b	What's **your** name? (Where does **your*** husband work?)	Таны нэр хэн бэ? (Танай* нөхөр хаана ажилладаг вэ?)	Таны нэрийг хэлнэ үү? Та ямар нэгэн ажил хийдэг уу? (Таны нөхөр ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?)
c	I will give **you** bread.	Би танд талх өгнө.	Би та нарт сайн талх өгье..
d	I waited for **you**.	Би таныг хүлээсэн.	Би та нарыг хүлээлээ..
e	I'd like to buy dollars **from you**.	Би танаас доллар авмаар байна.	Би та нараас доллар авмаар байна..
f	I want to have a 'deel' made **by you**.	Би танаар дээл хийлгэмээр байна.	Би та нараар дээл оёлгомоор байна..

g	I will go together **with you**.	Би тантай хамт явна.	[illegible]
h	I will send this **to you** afterwards.	Би үүнийг дараа тан руу явуулна.	[illegible]

* see explanation to the words "манай/танай" on page 104.

1.2.2.1.3.4 "тэр" = "he/she/it"

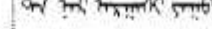
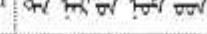
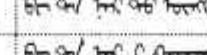
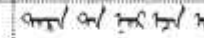
This personal proword is **not very polite** in its nominative form and should only be used if there is no better way to say it (see **ex. a** in parentheses). **Ex. f** gives the grammatically correct form "түүнээр", but "түүгээр" is widely used in colloquial language.

a	**He/She/It** left. (Baatar.../My older brother.../The person who came to your home...)	Тэр явсан. (Баатар/ Манай ах../ Танайд ирсэн хүн...)	[illegible]
b	Where is **his/her** father?	Түүний аав хаа байна?	[illegible]
c	Give **him/her/it** something to drink.	Түүнд нэг уух юм өг!	[illegible]
d	Will you see **him/her/it**?	Чи түүнийг харах уу?	[illegible]
e	Ask him/her. ("Ask **from him/her**.")	Түүнээс асуу!	[illegible]
f	I have him/her teach me English. ("I am being taught English **by him/her**.")	Би түүнээр англи хэл заалгадаг.	[illegible]
g	I talked **with him/her** on the phone.	Би түүнтэй утсаар ярьсан.	[illegible]
h	My teacher sent him/her a fax. ("...a fax **to him/her**.")	Манай багш түүн руу факс явуулсан.	[illegible]

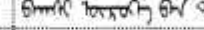
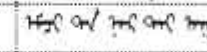
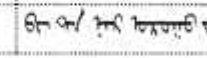
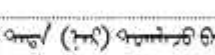
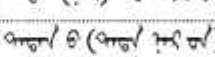
1.2.2.1.3.5 "бид (нар)" = "we"

a	**We** shall arrive tomorrow.	Бид (нар) маргааш ирнэ.	[illegible]
b	**Our** beds are hard. (**Our** house has 4 rooms.)	Бидний (Бид нарын) ор хатуу байна. (Манай байр 4 өрөөтэй.)	[illegible]
c	Please give **us** something to eat.	Бидэнд (Бид нарт) нэг идэх юм өгөөрэй!	[illegible]
d	Who called **us**?	Биднийг (Бид нарыг) хэн дуудсан бэ?	[illegible]
e	He was bored with us. ("He was bored **from us**.")	Тэр биднээс (бид нараас) уйдсан.	[illegible]
f	He made us help him./He was helped **by us**.	Тэр биднээр (бид нараар) туслуулсан.	[illegible]
g	They (always) play together **with us**.	Тэд бидэнтэй (бид нартай) тоглодог.	[illegible]
h	The puppy ran **toward us**.	Гөлөг бидэн руу (бид нар луу) гүйсэн.	[illegible]

1.2.2.1.3.6 "та нар" = "you" (plural)

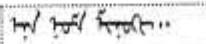
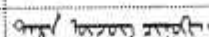
a	What will **you** do tomorrow?	Та нар маргааш юу хийх вэ?	
b	**Your** books are there.	Та нарын номууд тэнд байна.	
c	I won't give **you** money.	Би та нарт мөнгө өгөхгүй.	
d	I saw **you**.	Би та нарыг харсан.	
e	She is embarrassed in your presence. ("She is embarrassed **from you**.")	Тэр та нараас ичдэг.	
f	Does the teacher have **you** clean his classroom? (*causative* takes instr. CS)	Багш өрөөгөө та нараар цэвэрлүүлдэг үү?	
g	The doctor will meet **you**. ("... meet **with you**")	Эмч та нартай уулзана.	
h	I sent you a letter. ("... **toward you**.")	Би та нар луу захиа илгээв.	

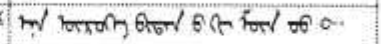
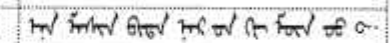
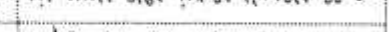
1.2.2.1.3.7 "тэд (нар)" = "they"

a	**They** are playing.	Тэд (нар) тоглож байна.	
b	**Their** father is a teacher.	Тэдний (Тэд нарын) аав багш.	
c	Give **them** many balls.	Тэдэнд (Тэд нарт) олон бөмбөг өг!	
d	Please train **them** in the German language.	Тэднийг (Тэд нарыг) герман хэлэнд сургаач.	
e	Don't ask them. ("...**from them**.")	Тэднээс (Тэд нараас) битгий асуу!	
f	Have them write it./ Have it be written **by them**."	Чи тэднээр (тэд нараар) бичүүл.	
g	Come **with them** tomorrow to my home.	Маргааш тэдэнтэй (тэд нартай) манайд ир!	
h	Please go **to(ward) them**.	Та тэд нар луу очоорой.	

1.2.2.2 POSSESSIVE PROWORDS

In order to build possessive prowords, the **personal prowords** are used in the **genitive case with the possessive CbS** "-х" which is explained on page 101.

a	This book is **mine**./This book **belongs to me**.	Энэ ном миний.	
b	That pen is **yours**./That pen **belongs to you**.	Тэр үзэг чиний.	
c	Is this **yours**?/Does this **belong to you**?	Энэ таных уу?	
d	Is this **his/hers**?/Does this **belong to him/her**?	Энэ түүнийх мөн үү?	

e	This horse is **ours**./This horse **belongs to us**.	Энэ морь манайх.	
f	Is this **our** room? (e.g. in a hotel; here, not belonging!)	Энэ өрөө бидний мөн үү?	
g	Is this **our** car? (e.g. on a trip; here, not belonging!)	Энэ машин бид нарынх мөн үү?	
h	Is this house **yours**?/Does this house **belong to you**?	Энэ байшин танайх уу?	
i	Are these books **yours**?/Do these books **belong to you**?	Энэ номууд та нарынх уу?	
j	Oh no, **theirs**./Oh no, they **belong to them**.	Үгүй ээ, тэд нарынх.	

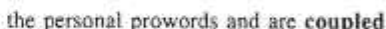
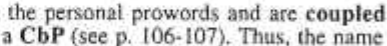
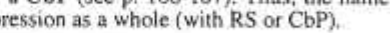
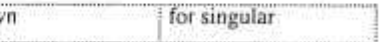
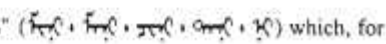
1.2.2.3 REFLEXIVE PROWORDS

There are **2 words** which often appear together with the personal prowords and are **coupled back** to them by adding either the **RS** (see p. 108) or a **CbP** (see p. 106-107). Thus, the name '**reflexive** proword' is only correct if it refers to the expression as a whole (with RS or CbP).

өөр (өөрөө)		-self/own	for singular
өөрсөд (өөрсдөө)		-selves/own	for plural

1.2.2.3.1 Declension of Reflexive Prowords

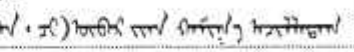
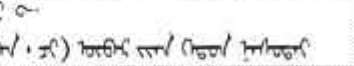
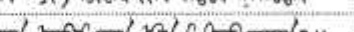
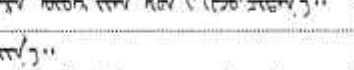
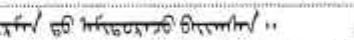
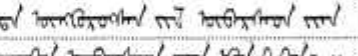
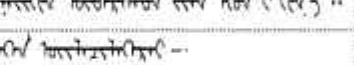
refers to the **CbP**'s "минь/ маань/ чинь/ тань/ нь" () which, for reasons of space, we won't write in the table below.

Case	Singular		Plural	
Nom	өөрөө		өөрсдөө	
Gen.	өөрийнхөө		өөрсдийнхөө	
	өөрийн #		өөрсдийн #	
Dat.	өөртөө		өөрсөдөө	
	өөрт #		өөрсөд #	
Acc.	өөрийгөө		өөрсдийгөө	
	өөрийг #		өөрсдийг #	
Abl.	өөрөөсөө		өөрсдөөсөө	
	өөрөөс #		өөрсдөөс #	
Instr.	өөрөөрөө		өөрсдөөрөө	
	өөрөөр #		өөрсдөөр #	
Com.	өөртэйгөө		өөрсөдтэйгөө	
	өөртэй #		өөрсөдтэй #	
Dir.	өөр луугээ		өөрсөд руугээ	
	өөр луу #		өөрсөд руу #	

1.2.2.3.2 Usage of Reflexive Prowords

When the reflexive proword is **coupled to the subject**, it is translated as '**-self/-selves**'. When it has adjective function and is **coupled to an object** which is in genitive case, it is translated as '**own**'. In the nominative case, the RS is always needed.

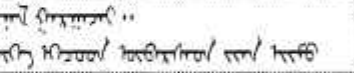
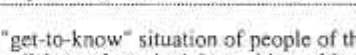
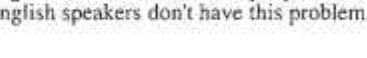
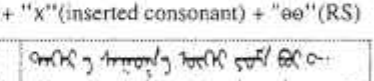
1.2.2.3.2.1 Examples in Nominative Case

a	I made this **myself**.	Би үүнийг өөрөө хийсэн.	
b	Where do **you** work? ("**Self***, where work?")	(Та/чи) Өөрөө* хаана ажилладаг вэ?	
c	How old are **you**? ("**Self***, how many age?")	(Та/чи) Өөрөө* хэдэн настай вэ?	
d	He/She can do this **him/herself**.	Тэр өөрөө үүнийг хийж чадна.	
e	We learn English by **ourselves**.	Бид англи хэл өөрсдөө сурч байна.	
f	Last year, we were living in Germany **too**.	Бид өнгөрсөн жил өөрсдөө Герман амьдарч байсан.	
g	We'll do this **ourselves**.	Манайхан өөрсдөө үүнийг хийнэ.	
h	Children! Help **yourselves**! ("Please serve to you **yourselves**.")	Хүүхдүүд ээ! Өөрөө өөртөө үйлчлээрэй! (double plural unnecessary!)	
i	The parents, **themselves,** have come up with such an idea.	Эцэг эхчүүд өөрсдөө ийм санал гаргажээ.	

* Explanation:
If you don't know whether to say "та" or "чи" (e.g. in a "get-to-know" situation of people of the same age) this reflexive proword can be used instead. (English speakers don't have this problem, as 'you' can be direct or honorary.)

1.2.2.3.2.2 Examples in Genitive Case

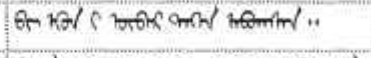
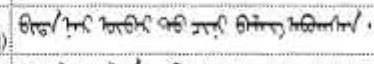
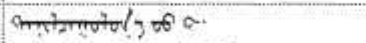
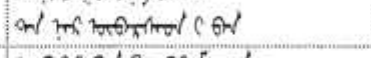
"өөрийнхөө"="өөр"(proword) + "ийн"(genitive CS) + "х"(inserted consonant) + "өө"(RS)

a	Why, then, didn't you sit on **your own** chair?	Чи яагаад өөрийнхөө сандал дээр суугаагүй юм бэ?	
b	Saraa, clean **your own** room nicely, please.	Сараа, өөрийнхөө өрөөг сайхан цэвэрлээрэй!	
c	Saraa finished **her own** tasks and then she helped Bold.	Сараа өөрийнхөө үүргийг биелүүлчи-хээд Болдод туслав.	
d	We must do **our own** jobs ourselves.	Бид өөрсдөө өөрсдийн-хөө ажлыг хийх ёстой.	
f *	I cleaned **your** room.	Өөрийн чинь өрөөг би цэвэрлэсэн.	
g *	What's **your** name?	Өөрийн тань нэр хэн бэ?	

h	One's **own** things are debtless.	Өөрийн юм өргүй. (proverb; general statement, therefore no RS)	

* **ex. f-g**: Here the **neutral word** "өөр" is used to avoid having to say "та" or "чи". The CbP's "чинь/тань" are not so strict in their meaning of 'honorary' or 'direct' as are the personal prowords "та/чи".

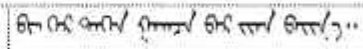
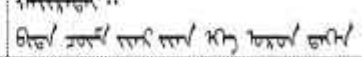
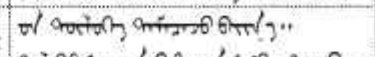
1.2.2.3.2.3 Examples in Other Cases

a	Please give this **to him** and only **him**!	Үүнийг зөвхөн өөрт нь өгөөрэй.	
b	I bought this **for myself**.	Би үүнийг өөртөө авсан.	
c *	We bought a gift for **you**.	Бид нар өөрт чинь бэлэг авсан. (танд/чамд)	
d	Would you please introduce **yourselves**.	Та нар өөрсдийгөө танилцуулна уу.	
e	Don't praise **yourself**!	Өөрийгөө битгий магт!	
f	It's their fault they're late. ("It 's because **of themselves**...")	Тэд нар өөрсдөөсөө болж хожимдсон.	
g	Please have them do this **by themselves**.	Үүнийг тэд нараар өөрсдөөр нь хийлгээрэй.	
h	I talked **to myself**.	Би өөртэйгөө ярьсан.	
i	Could you pull that table a little **toward yourself/yourselves**?	Энэ ширээг өөр лүүгээ жаахан татаж болох уу?	

* **ex. c**: Here the neutral word "өөр" is used to avoid having to say "та" or "чи". The CbP's "чинь/тань" are not so strict in their meaning of 'honorary' or 'direct' as the personal prowords "та/чи".

1.2.2.3.3 Other Reflexive Words

Some **other words** can also be **coupled back to the subject** with the help of the **RS**. Such phrases must not be taken apart as they form a **new unit** and are mostly translated with new English words (alone, throughout, etc.).

a	I'm at home **alone**. ("...**by my single**.")	Би гэртээ ганцаараа байна. (ганц+аар+аа)	
b	We **all** will watch a movie **together**. ("We **by us all**...")	Бид бүгдээрээ кино үзнэ. (бүгд+ээр+ээ)	
c	We **all** love our motherland. ("We **by us all** ...")	Бид цөмөөрөө эх орондоо хайртай. (цөм+өөр+өө)	
d	**In the whole** world, people fight for peace. (World **by its total**...")	Дэлхий нийтээрээ энх тайвны төлөө тэмцэж байна. (нийт+ээр+ээ)	
e	**Throughout** the country, people are talking about this. ("Country **by whole**...")	Орон даяараа энэ тухай ярьж байна. (даяар+аа)	

1.2.2.4 DEMONSTRATIVE PROWORDS

Demonstrative prowords, as the name already indicates, point or refer to something. They can take on the function of a noun and can then be **declined**. Most of these demonstrative prowords appear in **pairs**. Usually, the **distance to the speaker** is the main difference between these two pair words.

1.2.2.4.1 Overview of Demonstrative Prowords

The word stems in parentheses are used for the declension (to add suffixes). In colloquial language, some people decline the **stems** "тэр/энэ" (e.g. тэрийг, энийг, тэрэнд, тэрнээс).

Cyrillic	Classical	English	Explanations
энэ (үүн-) тэр (түүн-)	 	this (here) that (there)	**Singular**; represent **adjectives**. Note that "энэ (үүн)" can never represent a noun (person).
эдгээр тэдгээр **as nouns:** эд нар (эдэн-) тэд нар (тэдэн-)	 **as nouns:** 	these (here) those (there)	**Plural**; represent **adjectives**. When used as nouns, "эдгээр/тэдгээр" represent **things**, and "эд (нар)/тэд (нар)" represent **people**. **Ex.:** Эдгээрийг чи аваарай. (хонь) Эдний/Эд нарыг чи хараарай. (хүүхдүүд)
ийм тийм	 	such, as ... as this such, as ... as that	Represent **adjectives**.
иймэрхүү тиймэрхүү	 	this kind that kind	Represent **adjectives**. They are **more general** than "ийм/тийм".
өнөө нөгөө	 	this other .... that other	Represent **adjectives** and always refer to something that is known to the speaker, something that was **mentioned before**.
өнөөтэх нөгөөтэх	 	this other one that other one	Represent **adjectives in a noun function**.
өнөөдүүл нөгөөдүүл	 	these others those others	Represent **nouns** (**people**).
өдий тэдий	 	as many as this as many as that	Represent **numerals**, usually **countable** numerals.
өчнөөн тэчнээн	 	as much as this as much as that	Represent **numerals,** usually **uncountable** numerals. [(т)өчнөөн = (т)өдий+ чинээ]
ингэ- тэгэ-	 	to do it this way to do it that way	Represent **verbs** and can be **conjugated** like verbs.

1.2.2.4.2 Usage of Demonstrative Prowords

Many of the demonstrative prowords can be **used in pairs** and then gain a **new meaning** (see the examples with an "*" on the next pages).

1.2.2.4.2.1 "энэ(/тэр, (т)эдгээр, (т)эд (нар)" = "this/that, these/those"

When these demonstrative prowords are **used as nouns** (example sentences in parentheses), the following has to be considered:

- If "энэ/ тэр" are referring to **people in singular**, the "түүн–" stem has to be used and, in English, it's translated with **personal prowords**: **ex. c,d.**
- If "энэ/ тэр" are referring to **people in plural**, "(т)эд нар/ (т)эдэн" are used and,in English, it's translated with **personal prowords**: **ex.g-h.**
- If "энэ/ тэр" are referring to **things in singular**, the "үүн–" stem should be used, but often people add the case suffixes to the "энэ" stem (энийг), which is wrong. In English, it's best to add the word 'one', thus saying **'this one (here)', 'that one (there)'**: **ex. e-f**
- If "энэ/ тэр/ (т)эдгээр" are referring to **things in plural**, "(т)эдгээр" is used and, in English, it's translated as **'these (ones) here', 'those (ones) there'**: **ex. i-j.**

a	What's **this**?	Энэ юу вэ?	
b	What's **that**?	Тэр юу вэ?	
c	Do you know **this** person? (Do you know **him**?)	Та энэ хүнийг таних уу? (Та түүнийг таних уу?)	
d	Please ask **that** student. (Please ask **him**.)	Та тэр оюутнаас асуугаарай. (Та түүнээс асуугаарай.)	
e	I bought **this** cup. (I bought **this one**.)	Би энэ аягыг авсан. (Би үүнийг авсан.) [Би энийг авсан.= colloquial]	
f	Please take **that** car. (Please take **that one**.)	Та тэр машинаар яваа–рай. (Та түүгээр яваарай.)	
g	What are **these** people doing here? (What are **they** doing here?)	Энэ хүмүүс энд юу хийж байна вэ? (Эд [нар] энд юу хийж байна вэ?)	
h	Please have this work done by **those** people. (Please have this work done by **them**.)	Энэ ажлыг тэдгээр хүмүүсээр хийлгээрэй. (Энэ ажлыг тэд нараар [тэднээр] хийлгээрэй.)	
i	Let's move **these** tables from this room. (Let's move **these here/the ones here** from this room.)	Эдгээр ширээг энэ өрөөнөөс гаргая. (Эдгээрийг энэ өрөөнөөс гаргая.)	
j	Please put this book together with **those** books. (Please put this book together with **those over there**.)	Энэ номыг тэдгээр номтой хамт тавиарай. (Энэ номыг тэдгээртэй хамт тавиарай.)	
k *	We didn't notice that it had become late, having been talking about **this and that.**	Бид хоёр энэ тэрийг ярьсаар орой болсныг мэдсэнгүй.	

1.2.2.4.2.2 "(т)ийм, (т)иймэрхүү" = "such, this/that kind of"

a	My father is **as** big **as this**.	Миний аав ийм өндөр.	
b	My father is **as** big **as that**.	Миний аав тийм өндөр.	

c	I don't need a table **like this**.	Надад <u>ийм</u> ширээ хэрэггүй.	[illegible]
d	I won't buy something from a person **like that**.	Би <u>тийм</u> хүнээс юм авахгүй.	[illegible]
e	Let me buy **such** a blouse. (Let me buy **one like this**.)	Би <u>ийм</u> цамц авъя. (Би иймийг авъя.)	[illegible]
f	**This kind of** math problem he solves well.	<u>Иймэрхүү</u> тоог тэр сайн боддог.	[illegible]
g	I don't like talking about **this kind of** thing.	Би <u>иймэрхүү</u> юмны тухай ярих дургүй.	[illegible]
h	I am looking for **that kind of** a house.	Би <u>тиймэрхүү</u> байшин хайж байна.	[illegible]
i	I can't cook **that kind of** meal.	Би <u>тиймэрхүү</u> хоол хийж чаддаггүй.	[illegible]
j*	Decide for yourself! But make sure you don't bring this up again. ("make sure you don't talk **this and that.**")	Чи өөрийнхөөрөө шийд. Харин дараа <u>ийм тийм</u> юм яриузай.	[illegible]

1.2.2.4.2.3 "энээ(тэр)/.нөгөө(тэр)\.өнөөдүүл/.нөгөөдүүл" = "this/that other (one)"

a	Did you watch **that one** film to the end?	Та <u>нөгөө</u> киногоо дуустал үзсэн үү?	[illegible]
b	Did you watch **that other one** to the end?	Та <u>нөгөөтхөө</u> дуустал үзсэн үү?	[illegible]
c	Did you talk with your husband about **that other** matter?	Та нөхөртэйгөө <u>нөгөө</u> юмны тухай ярьсан уу?	[illegible]
d	Did you talk with your husband about **that other one**?	Та нөхөртэйгөө <u>нөгөөтхийн</u> тухай ярьсан уу?	[illegible]
e	Please give me **this very** book./Please give me the book **you mentioned**.	Та надад <u>өнөө</u> номоо өгөөч.	[illegible]
f	Please give me **this very one**./Please give me **the one you mentioned**.	Та надад <u>өнөөтхөө</u> өгөөч.	[illegible]
g	**Those other** people, you know, have come.	<u>Нөгөө</u> хүмүүс чинь ирлээ.	[illegible]
h	**Those other ones,** you know, have come.	<u>Нөгөөдүүл</u> чинь ирлээ.	[illegible]
i	Where are **the others**?	<u>Өнөөдүүл</u> маань хаана байна?	[illegible]

1.2.2.4.2.4 "(т)өдий, (т)ечнөөн" = "as many/much as this/that"

a	Why didn't he get married for so long? ("...until he reached **as many as this**?")	Тэр яагаад өдий хүртэл гэрлээгүй вэ?	Нэмэлт хэлэх бол оо· Энэ үеийнхэнтэй нэгэн адилхан
b	At this age, Mongolian children ride horses well. ("....in their **as many as this** age")	Монгол хүүхдүүд өдий насандаа морь сайн унадаг.	Одоо/ Монгол хүүхэд/ адилхан/ Морьтой явдаг/ сайн/ нэгэн/
c	**As much as you** read, **as much** you'll know.	Хэдий чинээ их уншвал төдий чинээ их мэдэх.	Олон/ сурах/ бол/ ч·· Мэдэх/ сурах/ бол/ адилхан/
d	I talked with him about this **so many** times.	Би түүнд энэ тухай ечнөөн ярьсан.	Ярьсан/ ·· Би/ энэ/ тэр/ тухай/ олон/ удаагийн/
e	I can give you **as much** money **as** you need. ("How much money do you need? I can give you **that much**.")	Танд хичнээн мөнгө хэрэгтэй байна, би төчнөөнийг өгч чадна.	Өгье/ ч·· Өгье/ ч, би/ хэрэгтэй/ адилхан/ Энэ/ тэр/ мөнгийг/ хэлнэ/ чадна/
f *	I have **a lot of** books about the Mongolian language.	Надад монгол хэлний тухай өдий төдий ном бий.	Надад/ олон/ ном/ бий··
g *	I talked with him about that **hundreds of** times.	Би түүнд энэ тухай ечнөөн төчнөөн (удаа) ярьсан.	Ярьсан/ (олон/ ч) удаагийн/ ·· Би/ энэ/ тэр/ тухай/ адилхан/

1.2.2.4.2.5 "ингэ-/тэгэ-" = "to do this/that way"

a	Can you **do** (it) **this way**?	Та ингэж чадах уу?	Энэ/ хэлбэр/ зүйлээ/ бий оо·
b	I'**d like** you **to do** my book **this way**.	Би бас номоо танаар ингүүлмээр байна.	Хэлбэлзэл/ өгье/ ч·· Би/ бас/ чамд/ ном/ энэ/
c	We'd like to go **soon**. ("We **do like this for a while and then** we'd like to go.")	Бид нар ингэхийгээд гэхэд явмаар байна.	Явье/ ээ/ хэлбэлзэл/ гэвэл/ өгье/ ч··
d	Don't **do that!**	Битгий тэг!	Өнөөх/ энэ/ —
e	He always **does like that!**	Тэр дандаа тэгдэг юм.	Энэ/ эмэгтэй/ онцлог/ юм/··
f	At this time tomorrow we'll be **doing that**. ("Tomorrow at this much...")	Маргааш өдийд бид тэгэж байх болно.	Өдий/ ч··
g	I can't drink half a bottle of alcohol. (I can't **do this**.)	Би хагас шил архи ууж чадахгүй. (Би ингэж чадахгүй.)	Үгүй·· (Би хэлбэлзэл зүйлээ үгүй··) Би/ уухын/ тул/ хэлбэл/ чадахгүй/ зүйлээ

1.2.2.5 INTERROGATIVE PROWORDS

Interrogative prowords are used to form questions. They can **represent different parts of speech**. Therefore, what other grammars call interrogative adverbs (where, when, how, why, what for, etc.), we have included in this big group of interrogative representatives.

1.2.2.5.1 Overview of Interrogative Prowords

Cyrillic	Classical	English	What they ask for	Represent:
The words in this **first group** can be **declined in all cases** as they **represent nouns** or parts of speech that can be declined like nouns.				
хэн?		who?	**people**	nouns
юу (юун-)?		what?	**things** or **animals**	nouns
ямар?		what kind of?	**characteristics** of people or things	adjectives
аль (алин-)?		which?	**choices** of things or people	adjectives
хэд (хэдэн-)?		how many?	**countable things** (not strictly)	numerals
хичнээн?		how much? about how much?	**uncountable things** or **approximate mass** (not strictly)	numerals
The prowords in this **second group can't be declined** as they **never represent a noun**.				
хэзээ?		when?	**point of time (exactly)**	temporal adverb
хэдийд?		about when?	**point of time (approx.)**	temporal adverb
хаана? (хаа? = colloquial)		where?	**place**	local adverb
хаашаа?		where to?	**direction** (aim is important)	local adverb
хаанаас?		where from?	**local starting-point**	local adverb
хаагуур?		which way?	**direction** ('way' needed)	local adverb
хэр?		how? (e.g.big)	**manner,** (followed by adjective)	modal adverb --> adword
хэрхэн? (from:хэрхи-)		how?	**manner** (rather detailed)	modal adverb
яаж? (from: яа-)		how?	**manner** (rather general)	modal adverb
яагаад? (from: яа-)		why?	**reason**	causal adverb
The prowords in this third group **represent verbs** and can be **conjugated like verbs**.				
хэрхи-?		to do in what way?	**actions**	verbs
яа-?		to do in what way?	**actions**	verbs

1.2.2.5.2 Comparison of Interrogative Prowords

In a sentence, the interrogative prowords take the place of the words they represent. For emphasis, the prowords could be placed at the beginning of the sentence.

a	-**Who** gave Dorj money? -**Bat.**	-Доржид хэн мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -Бат.	- Өчүү .. - Өчүүхэн ба/ Доржид мөнгөөгөө өгсөн ба/
b	-**What** did Bat give to Dorj? -**Money**.	-Бат Доржид юу өгсөн бэ? -Мөнгө.	- Юунд .. - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Доржид мөнгөөгөө өгсөн ба/
c	-**What kind of money** did Bat give to Dorj? -**Filthy** money.	-Бат Доржид ямар мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -Бохир мөнгө.	- Ямар юунд .. Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Доржид Юунд өгсөн бэ/
d	-**Which** money did Bat give to Dorj? -**His own** money.	-Бат Доржид аль мөнгийг өгсөн бэ? -Өөрийнхөө мөнгийг.	- Хэнийх ч/ ямар/ Юунд ч .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Хэн Юунд ч
e	-**How many** tögrögs did Bat give to Dorj? -**A thousand**.	-Бат Доржид хэдэн төгрөг өгсөн бэ? -Мянган.	- Хэдүүлээ/ .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Нэгэн/ Өчүүхэнээ/
f	-**How much** money did Bat give to Dorj? -**More than 2 million**.	-Бат Доржид хичнээн мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -2 сая гаруй.	- Сая ба/ ч Юунээ .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Гүйцэлээ/ Юунд
g	-**When** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**Yesterday**.	-Бат Доржид хэзээ мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -Өчигдөр.	- Хэзээхээ .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Өнөө ч Юунд
h	-**About when** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**Last week**.	-Бат Доржид хэдийд мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -Өнгөрсөн долоо хоногт.	- Хэзээхээ/ Өдөөдөө/ Үлдээд/ ээ .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Өнөө ба Юунд
i	-**Where** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**At home**.	-Бат Доржид хаана мөнгө өгсөн бэ? -Гэртээ.	- Аль аа/ .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Үйлдэл/ Юунд
j	-**Where** did Bat send Dorj **to**? -**To the bank**.	-Бат Доржийг хаашаа явуулсан бэ? -Банк руу.	- Юунд Хэлээ .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Үйлдэл/ Суурьшлын газар/
k	-**From where** did Bat send Dorj? -**From his home**.	-Бат Доржийг хаанаас явуулсан бэ? -Гэрээсээ.	- Аль Нэг/ аа/ .. Суурьшлын газар/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Үйлдэл/ ээ Нэг/
l	-**Which way** did Bat guide Dorj? -**Along the corridor**.	-Бат Доржийг хаагуур гаргасан бэ? -Хонгилоор.	- Аль Үүд үүд .. Өгсөн ба/ Өгсөн ба/ - Өчүү Өчүүхэн ба Үйлдэлээр Суурьшлын газар/

m	**-How** much money did Bat give to Dorj? -A lot. ("**Very** much.")	–Бат Доржид хэр (их) мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –Маш их.	- [illegible] [illegible] - [illegible]
n	**-How** did Bat give money to Dorj? -**Straight away.**	–Бат Доржид хэрхэн мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –Шуудхан.	- [illegible] [illegible] - [illegible]
o	**-How** did Bat give money to Dorj? - **Secretly.**	–Бат Доржид яаж мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –Нууцаар.	- [illegible] [illegible] - [illegible]
p	**-Why** did Bat give money to Dorj? -Because **he had a debt.**	–Бат Доржид яагаад мөнгө өгсөн бэ? –Тэр өртэй байсан учраас.	- [illegible] [illegible] - [illegible]
q	**-What did** Bat **do** with Dorj? -Bat **deceived** Dorj.	–Бат Доржийг хэрхсэн бэ? –Бат Доржийг хуурсан.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
r	I wonder **what** Bat **will do** with Dorj.	Бат Доржийг яах бол!	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3 Usage of Interrogative Prowords

As mentioned before, some interrogative prowords can be declined, others cannot. In our examples, small letters (a,b,c,d) are used for undeclined examples and the big letters N-G-D-A-A-I-C-D represent the 8 cases. The stem in parentheses (see table on page 268) is not always used for declensions. Sometimes, **nuances in meanings** are expressed by using different stems (see page 272 "хэд").

1.2.2.5.3.1 "хэн?" = "who?"

a	**Who** are you?	Та хэн бэ?	[illegible]
b	**Who** came?	Хэн ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
c	What's your name? ("**Who** do [they] call your name?")	Таны нэрийг хэн гэдэг вэ?	[illegible]
G.	**Whose** animal is this?	Энэ хэний мал вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**To whom** did you give bread?	Чи хэнд талх өгсөн бэ?	[illegible]
A.	**Who** did you see?	Чи хэнийг харсан бэ?	[illegible]
A.	Who did you ask? ("**From whom** did ...")	Та хэнээс асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
I.	Who did you have help you?/**By whom** were you helped?	Та хэнээр туслуулсан бэ?	[illegible]
C.	**With whom** will he talk?/To whom will ...	Тэр хэнтэй ярих вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**To(wards) whom** is Bat walking?	Бат хэн рүү явж байна вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.2 "юу(н)?" = "what?"

a	**What** is this?	Энэ юу вэ?	[illegible]
b	**What** came? (e.g. cat, ship)	Юу ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
G.	**What** do you teach? ("**What** teacher are you?")	Та юуны багш вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What** is this medicine **for**? ("хэрэгтэй" demands dat.)	Энэ эм юунд хэрэгтэй вэ?	[illegible]
A.	**What** did he ask?	Тэр юу асуусан бэ?	[illegible]
A.	What are you afraid of? ("**From what** are you...")	Чи юунаас айдаг вэ?	[illegible]
L.	How did you come? ("**By what** did you come?")	Чи юугаар ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
C.	**What** will you wear? ("**With what** [clothes] will you come?	Та юутай ирэх вэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What** are you yearning **for**? ("**Towards what** are you rushing?")	Чи юу руу тэмүүлж байна вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.3 "ямар?" = "what kind of?"

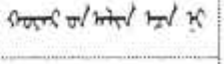
Note: the CbP "нь" serves here as a **noun marker** (**ex. D,A**).

a	How much is this? ("With **what kind of** price is this?")	Энэ ямар үнэтэй вэ?	[illegible]
b	**What kind of** hat is this?	Энэ ямар малгай вэ?	[illegible]
c	**What kind of** animal did you see?	Чи ямар амьтан харсан бэ?	[illegible]
D.	**What kind of *one*** do you like? (e.g. car)	Та ямарт нь дуртай вэ?	[illegible]
A.	**What kind of *one*** will you buy? (e.g. table)	Чи ямрыг нь авах вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.4 "аль/алин?" = "which?"

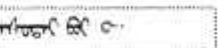
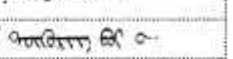
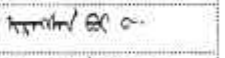
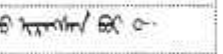
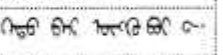
Sometimes these prowords are used in very different expressions (**ex. c-e**). The CbP "нь" refers here to the **other things (3rd person)** from which the choice is being made. The translation for this "нь" could be '***one***', thus serving also as a **noun marker**.

a	**Which** color do you like?/ **Which *one* of these** colors do you like?	Чи аль өнгөнд нь дуртай вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Which** car pleases you?/ **Which *one* of these** cars pleases you?	Аль машин нь чамд таалагдаж байна вэ?	[illegible]
c	Go as quickly as you can!	Чи аль болохоор хурдан яв!	[illegible]
d	Take the best *one*!	Аль сайныг нь аваарай.	[illegible]
e	One can't stop telling all his bad things.	Түүний аль мууг хэлж барах вэ!	[illegible]
D.	**In which *one*** of those two houses do you live?	Та тэр хоёр байшингийн алинд нь суудаг вэ?	[illegible]

A.	Are you afraid of cats or dogs? ("**From which** *one* of the two, cat or dog, are you afraid?")	Та муур нохой хоёрын алинаас нь айдаг вэ?	
C.	**Which** *one* of them will you meet? ("**With which one** ...")	Та тэдний алинтай нь уулзах вэ?	

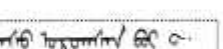
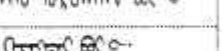
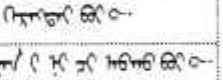
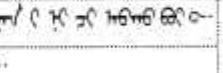
1.2.2.5.3.5 "хэд(эн)?" = "how many?"

By using **different** ***stems***, different *meanings* can be expressed (see **ex. D**).

a	How old are you? ("With **how many** age are you?")	Чи хэдэн настай вэ?	
b	**How many** tögrögs is this?	Энэ хэдэн төгрөг вэ?	
c	**How much** is this?	Энэ хэд вэ?	
D.	What *time* did you come? ("**At how many** did you come?")	Чи хэдэд ирсэн бэ?	
D.	What *date* did you come? ("**At how many** did you come?")	Чи хэдэнд ирсэн бэ?	
A.	**How many** will you buy?	Чи хэдийг авах вэ?	
I.	**For how much** will you give this?	Та үүнийг хэдээр өгөх вэ?	
C.	How old are you? ("**With how many** are you?")	Чи хэдтэй вэ?	

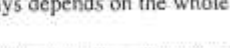
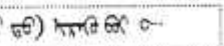
1.2.2.5.3.6 "хичнээн?" = "(about) how much?"

The CbP "нь" serves here as a **noun marker**.

a	**How much** snow fell there?	Тэнд хичнээн цас орсон бэ?	
b	**About how much** do you need?	Чамд хичнээн хэрэгтэй вэ?	
A.	**How many** of those *(ones)* will you buy?	Тэдгээрээс хичнээ-нийг нь чи авах вэ?	
C.	**How many** of them will you meet **with**? ("**With how many** of those *ones*...")	Та тэдгээрээс хичнээнтэй нь уулзах вэ?	

1.2.2.5.3.7 "хэзээ?/ хэдийд?" = "(about) when?"

The **difference** between these two prowords is only a **matter of exactness**. With "хэзээ", an **exact answer** is expected, with "хэдийд", a **general answer** will do. Thus, the answer to "Чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?" could be 'I'll come at 3pm.' and to "Чи хэдийд ирэх вэ?" it could be 'Sometime in the afternoon'. But what is called 'exact' and 'general' always depends on the whole context of the conversation.

a	**When** will you come?	Та хэзээ / хэдийд ирэх вэ?	
b	**When** will it be ready?	Энэ хэзээ / хэдийд бэлэн болох вэ?	
c	**When** did you meet her?	Та түүнтэй хэзээ / хэдийд уулзсан бэ?	

d	**When** is your national holiday?	Танай үндэсний баяр хэзээ / хэдийд болдог вэ?	ᠲᠠᠨᠠᠢ ᠦᠨᠳᠦᠰᠦᠨᠦ ᠪᠠᠶᠠᠷ ᠬᠡᠵᠡᠶ / ᠬᠡᠳᠦᠢᠳ ᠪᠣᠯᠳᠣᠭ ᠪᠡ᠃
e	**When** were you born?	Чи хэзээ / хэдийд төрсөн бэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠡᠵᠡᠶ / ᠬᠡᠳᠦᠢᠳ ᠲᠥᠷᠰᠥᠨ ᠪᠡ᠃

1.2.2.5.3.8 "хаа(на)?" = *"where?"*

a	**Where** was I born? (title of a poem)	Би хаана төрөө вэ?	ᠪᠢ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ ᠲᠥᠷᠥᠭᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠡ᠃
b	**Where** do you live?	Та хаа(на) амьдардаг вэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠯᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃
c	**Where** did you go (to)?	Та хаана очсон бэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ ᠤᠨᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠡ᠃
d	**Where** is Hong Kong situated?	Гонгконг хаана оршдог вэ?	ᠬᠤᠸᠠᠩᠭᠤᠨ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ ᠣᠷᠣᠰᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃
e	**Where** should such a good person be!	Ийм сайн хүн хаа байна!	ᠡᠢᠮ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠬᠠᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ!

1.2.2.5.3.9 "хаашаа?" = *"where to?"*

a	**Where** are we off **to**?	Бид хаашаа явж байна вэ?	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠬᠠᠠᠰᠠ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃
b	**Where** will you move **to**?	Та нар хаашаа нүүх вэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠬᠠᠠᠰᠠ ᠨᠦᠭᠡᠭᠡ ᠤᠤ᠃
c	**Where** will (we) go **to** next?	Дараа нь хаашаа очих вэ?	ᠳᠠᠷᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠢ ᠬᠠᠠᠰᠠ ᠤᠨᠤᠬᠤ ᠪᠡ᠃

1.2.2.5.3.10 "хаанаас?" = *"where from?"*

a	**Where** did you come **from**? / **Where** are you **from**?	Та хаанаас ирсэн бэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ ᠤᠤ᠃
b	**Where** do [I] find him? ("ол–" demands ablative)	Түүнийг хаанаас олох вэ?	ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨ᠎ᠢ ᠶᠠᠭ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠣᠯᠣᠬᠤ ᠪᠡ᠃
c	**Where** did you hear this? ("сонс–" demands ablative)	Энэ тухай чи хаанаас сонссон бэ?	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠴᠢ ᠬᠠᠠᠨᠠ᠎ᠠᠴ᠎ᠠ ᠰᠣᠨᠰᠤᠪᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃

1.2.2.5.3.11 "хаагуур?" = *"which way"?*

To understand the meaning of "хаагуур", one has to understand the meaning of the instrumental case **as** "хаагуур" **is derived from** "хаа(на)" **plus instrumental CS.** This proword always refers to a **movement that happens in a certain place/area**.

a	**Where** have you been today?	Чи өнөөдөр хаагуур явсан бэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠥᠨᠥᠳᠥᠷ ᠬᠠᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠡ᠃
b	**Which way** do you go to get to the Academy?	Академид очиход хаагуур явах вэ?	ᠠᠺᠠᠳᠧᠮᠢ ᠳ᠋ ᠣᠴᠢᠬᠤ ᠳ᠋ ᠬᠠᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠬᠤ ᠪᠡ᠃
c	**Which part** of the city of Ulaanbaatar does the Tuul river flow **through**?	Туул гол Улаанбаатар хотын хаагуур урсдаг вэ?	ᠲᠤᠭᠤᠯ ᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠨᠪᠠᠭᠠᠲᠤᠷ ᠬᠣᠲᠠ᠎ᠶᠢᠨ ᠬᠠᠠᠭᠤᠷ ᠤᠷᠰᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠡ᠃

1.2.2.5.3.12 "хэр?" = *"how?"*

a	**How** long will you be living in Mongolia?	Та Монголд хэр удаан амьдрах вэ?	ᠴᠢ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳ᠋ ᠬᠡᠷ ᠤᠳᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠠᠮᠢᠳᠤᠷᠠᠬᠤ ᠪᠡ᠃

b	**-How** are you living in Mongolia?/-**What's** your living standard like in Mongolia? -We live here OK./-It's OK.	–Та Монголд хэр зэрэг амьдарч байна вэ? –Би энд зүгээр амьдарч байна.	- Би энд/ сонин амьдралтай байна/ гэнэ ээ. - Аа/ ойлголоо/ ер нь/ сайн амьдарч байна
c	**How** long of a wire does one need to make an antenna?	Антена хийхэд хэр урт утас хэрэгтэй вэ?	Мэдэхгүй ээ. Мэргэжлийн хүн ер нь/ мэдэх ёстой
d	**How** big a table am I supposed to buy?	Би хэр том ширээ авах хэрэгтэй вэ?	Ээ. Би ер нь/ өөрөө/ харсны/ дараа/ мэдэнэ/ биз

1.2.2.5.3.13 "хэрхэн?" = "how?"

Please compare the **examples b-c** (with their answers) with "яаж" below to see the difference.

a	**-How** do you live in Mongolia? -I get a small salary from my organization.	–Та Монголд хэрхэн амьдарч байна вэ? –Би байгууллагаасаа бага зэрэг цалин авдаг.	Сайхан/ амьдар. - Би өнчирсөн/ юм/ би/ өө/ гэнэ/ биз/ дээ ээ. - Аа/ ойлголоо/ ер ингэж/ амьдарсан
b	**-How** did you come to Mongolia? -I came to Mongolia voluntarily.	–Та Монголд хэрхэн ирсэн бэ? –Би Монголд сайн дураараа ирсэн.	Ингэлээ/. - Би ойлголоо/ ер чамд/ очиж/ үзье/ гэнэ/ - Аа/ ойлголоо/ ер/ ингэлээ/ биз ээ.
c	**-How** did you do this? -I asked many people and then I did it by myself.	–Чи үүнийг хэрхэн хийсэн бэ? –Би олон хүнээс асуугаад өөрөө бие дааж хийсэн.	Олонд/ нэг/ бүр/ зөвлөгөө/ гуйлаа/. - Би/ эцэст/ нь/ өөрөө/ - Аа/ ойлголоо/ ер/ хийлээ/ биз ээ.
d	**How** do (they) manufacture Mercedes cars?	Мерседес машиныг хэрхэн хийдэг вэ?	Мерседесийн/ үйлдвэр/ ингэж/ хийдэг биз ээ.
e	**How** do you calm her down?	Түүнийг хэрхэн тайвшруулах вэ?	Өөрөө/ ингэж/ өөртөө/итгүүлэхээр биз ээ.

1.2.2.5.3.14 "яаж?" = "how?"

Please compare the **examples b-c** with "хэрхэн" above to see the difference.

a	**-How** did you come to Mongolia? -I came **via Hong Kong**.	–Та Монголд яаж ирсэн бэ? –Би Гонконгоор дамжиж ирсэн.	- Би Гонконгоор нэг очоод/ ингэлээ/ дээ. - Аа/ ойлголоо/ ер/ очоод/ ингэлээ/ биз ээ.
b	**-How** did you do this? -I did it easily.	–Чи үүнийг яаж хийсэн бэ? –Би үүнийг амархан хийсэн.	- Би ядаж/ ингэлээ/ биз/ дээ. - Аа/ ойлголоо/ ер/ амархан/ биз ээ.
c	**How** does one quickly learn English?	Англи хэлийг яаж хурдан сурах вэ?	Ээ. Мэдэх/ ёстой/ ер/ сайхан/ сурдаг/ юмдаа

1.2.2.5.3.15 "яагаад?" = "why, for what reason?"

a	**Why** hasn't he come?	Тэр яагаад ирээгүй вэ?	[illegible]
b	**Why** were you late?	Чи яагаад хожимдсон бэ?	[illegible]
c	**Why** isn't this computer working?	Энэ компьютер яагаад ажиллахгүй байна вэ?	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.16 "хэрхи-?" = "to do what?"

a	Do you know **what** they **did** with him?	Түүнийг тэд нар хэрхсэнийг чи мэдэх үү?	[illegible]
b	Talk well with each other and then please tell me **what** you're **going to do**.	Та нар сайн ярилцаад хэрхэх тухайгаа надад хэлээрэй.	[illegible]

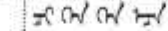
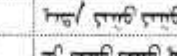
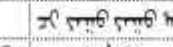
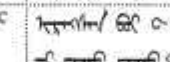
1.2.2.5.3.17 "яа-?" = "to do what?"

With this interrogative proword, many **expressions** are formed (**ex.** g-l), some of which are difficult to trace back to their original meaning.

a	**What happened**?	Яасан бэ?	[illegible]
b	**What** shall I **do**?	Би яах вэ?	[illegible]
c	**What would** you **like to do?**	Та яамаар байна бэ?	[illegible]
d	**What in the world**!	Яах нь вэ?	[illegible]
e	(I) don't know **what to do**!	Яахыг бүү мэд!	[illegible]
f	This is impossible for me to do. ("**No matter what** I do, I can't achieve it.")	Би яавч амжихгүй.	[illegible]
g	**What** nice flowers!	Яасан сайхан цэцэг вэ!	[illegible]
h	I don't mind!/Either way is OK. ("**Whatever happened, what shall happen**?")	Яасан ч яахав! (note: яах +вэ)	[illegible]
i	**Of course!** ("What will happen if [we] don't do it that way?")	Тэгэлгүй яахав! (note: яах +вэ)	[illegible]
j	**No matter what happened,** we have to help him.	Яагаад ч гэсэн түүнд туслах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
k	**There's no way out**. ("Whatever happens, there is no means; whatever happens, a means is absent.")	Яах ч аргагүй, яах ч арга алга.	[illegible]
l	There is **still plenty of** time.	Цаг яагаа ч үгүй.	[illegible]

1.2.2.5.3.18 Repeated Interrogative Prowords Expressing Plural

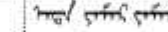
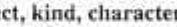
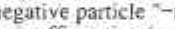
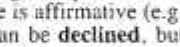
When **asking for different** things, people, characteristics, etc. the interrogative proword is **used twice**. By putting this principle in English, we get the following impossible sentences: '**What what** is here?' '**What kind of, what kind of** book is this?' '**Who who** do you see?' By using this repeated form in Mongolian, the **plural suffixes can be omitted** (see page 76).

a	**Who all** has come?	Хэн хэн ирсэн бэ?	
b	**Who all** did you ask?	Чи хэн хэнээс асуусан бэ?	
c	**What all** is here?	Энд юу юу байна вэ?	
d	**What all** did you ask?	Чи юу юу асуусан бэ?	
e	What all did you bring from the countryside? (**'With what all** did you come?')	Чи юу юутай хөдөөнөөс ирсэн бэ?	
f	**What kind of** books are here?	Энд ямар ямар ном байна вэ?	
g	In **which** buildings do foreigners live?	Гадаадын хүмүүс аль аль байшинд суудаг вэ?	

1.2.2.6 INDEFINITE PROWORDS

Those words which represent an **indefinite person, object, kind, characteristic, circumstance, mass, etc**. are called indefinite prowords. They are mostly formed with the help of the **focus particle** "ч". Often they are used in **negation** with the negative particle "–ГҮЙ". Therefore, the translations vary a lot, depending on whether the sentence is affirmative (e.g. 'everyone/anyone') or negative (e.g. 'no one'). Some indefinite prowords can be **declined**, but note that the case suffix is not added to the particle "ч", but to the proword itself.

1.2.2.6.1 Overview of Indefinite Prowords

хэн ч		who(so)ever, no matter who, anybody, anyone
хэн ч ... –ГҮЙ		nobody, no one (at all)
хэн нэг(эн)		somebody, someone, anybody
хэн хэнгүй		everyone; all, no matter who
юу ч		what(so)ever, no matter what, anything
юу ч ... –ГҮЙ		nothing, none (at all)
юу юугүй		"just like that", very soon, for no reason at all
ямар ч		whatever kind of, no matter what kind of, any kind of
ямар ч ... –ГҮЙ		no ... at all, no ... whatsoever
ямар нэг(эн)		any, some (kind of)
алин ч		whichever, no matter which (one)
алин ч ... –ГҮЙ		none (at all)
аль нэг(эн)		any, any one
аль альгүй		none of them

хэд(эн) ч	[illegible]	no matter how many
хэд(эн) ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	none at all
хичнээн ч	[illegible]	no matter how much
хичнээн ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nothing at all
хэзээ ч (хэдийд ч)	[illegible]	whenever, no matter when, always
хэзээ ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	never
хэзээ нэг(эн) (цагт, үед)	[illegible]	sometime
хэзээ нэгэнтээ	[illegible]	at any time
хэзээ хэзээгүй	[illegible]	every (moment) now
хаана ч	[illegible]	wherever, no matter where, everywhere
хаана ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nowhere (at all)
хаа нэг(эн) (газар...)	[illegible]	somewhere
хаа нэгэнтээ	[illegible]	at any place
хаа хаагүй	[illegible]	everywhere
хаашаа ч	[illegible]	no matter where to
хаашаа ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nowhere
хаанаас ч	[illegible]	no matter where from
хаанаас ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	from nowhere
хаагуур ч	[illegible]	wherever (movement) whichever way
хаагуур ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	nowhere (movement)
яаж ч	[illegible]	however, no matter how, in every way
яаж ч ... –гүй	[illegible]	in no way
яа– ч ...	[illegible]	to do whatever

1.2.2.6.2 Usage of Indefinite Prowords

1.2.2.6.2.1 "хэн ч" = "who(so)ever, everyone, anyone, no one"

a	**Anybody/Everybody** can do this work.	Энэ ажлыг хэн ч хийж чадна.	[illegible]
b	When he returned, **no one/nobody** recognized him.	Түүнийг буцаж ирэ–хэд хэн ч таньсангүй.	[illegible]
c	**No matter which person** in my class (you) charge with this, (it) will be done well.	Манай ангийн хэнд ч (иг) даалгасан сайн биелүүлнэ. (хэнд +ч +гэсэн)	[illegible]
d	Call **anyone** of them, no matter which one.	Тэднээс хэнийг нь ч хамаагүй дууд!	[illegible]

e	Bat can make friends with **anybody/anyone/everybody/everyone**.	Бат хэнтэй ч нохорлож чаддаг.	Бат ямар ч хүнтэй найзалдаж чаддаг.
f	**Nobody/No one** knows this.	Үүнийг хэн ч мэдэхгүй.	Үүнийг хэн ч мэдэхгүй.
g	If **somebody/ someone/ anybody/anyone** comes, please call me.	Хэн нэгэн хүн ирвэл намайг дуудаарай.	Хэн ирэх болов уу? Намайг дуудаарай.
h	**Someone/Somebody** gave this to me.	Үүнийг хэн нэгэн нь надад өгчээ.	Үүнийг хэн нэгэн надад өгсөн.
i	**Everyone** has to learn English well, **no matter who**.	Хэн хэнгүй англи хэл сайн сурах хэрэгтэй.	Хэн ч англи хэлийг сайн мэдэх хэрэгтэй.

1.2.2.6.2.2 "юу ч" = "what(so)ever, everything, anything, nothing"

a	**Whatever** I rub on, it suits me.	Надад юу ч түрхсэн сайхан таардаг.	Юу ч түрхсэн сайхан таардаг.
b	After we two get a gun, we won't be afraid of **anything**.	Буутай хойно юу ч болсон бид хоёр айхгүй.	Бид хоёр буутай болсноо юу ч болсон айхгүй.
c	**Whatever** he gives me, I won't give my dog (away).	Түүнийг юу ч өгсөн би нохойгоо өгөхгүй.	Юу ч өгсөн би нохойгоо өгөхгүй.
d	He doesn't know **anything**. /He knows **nothing**.	Тэр юу ч мэдэхгүй.	Тэр хэн ч мэдэхгүй.
e	They returned from the countryside with **nothing**.	Тэд хөдөөнөөс юу ч үгүй ирсэн.	Тэд хоосон ирсэн. Тэд хэн ч биш
f	Please give me something to drink, **no matter what**!	Надад юу ч хамаагүй уух юм өгөөч!	Надад ямар нэгэн зүйл уух юм өгөөч!
g	As soon as she came in, she broke into tears **for no reason.**	Тэр орж ирмэгцээ юу юугүй уйлж гарав.	Тэр орж ирмэгцээ хэн хэнгүй уйлж гарав.

1.2.2.6.2.3 "ямар ч" = "whatever kind of, any kind, no ... whatsoever"

a	**Every** nation has its own customs. ("**No matter what** nation...")	Ямар ч(иг) ард түмэн өөрийн ёс заншилтай. ("чиг" is colloquial)	Бүрэн бүхэлдээ ард түмэн бүр өөрийн ёс заншилтай.
b	**Every/Any** person knows this. ("**No matter what kind of** ...")	Ямар ч хүн үүнийг мэднэ.	Бүрэн бүтэн хэн ч мэднэ.
c	He did this without the slightest attention. ("...**with no** attention **whatsoever**.")	Тэр үүнийг ямар ч хяналтгүйгээр хийсэн.	Тэр хайхгүй. Тэр хэн ч бүрэн бүтэн хайхгүй
d	At the moment, there is **no** news **whatsoever**.	Одоохондоо ямар ч сонингүй.	Байхгүй. Одоогоор бүрэн бүтэн мэдээ
e	Yesterday, **not one** single person **whatsoever** came to my home.	Өчигдөр манайд ямар ч хүн ирээгүй.	Хэлэхгүй. Өчигдөр хэн ч бүрэн бүтэн ирсэнгүй.

f	What's the matter? Has **something** happened?	Яав, ямар нэгэн юм болов уу?	[illegible]
g	Well, do (you) have **any** news?	За, ямар нэгэн сонинтой юу?	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.4 "аль ч" = "whichever, none"

a	In **every** big city, many people live. ("In **which-ever** big city...")	Аль ч (иг) том хотод олон хүн суудаг.	[illegible]
b	I don't mind **which** one. ("To me **whichever** has **no** relation.")	Надад бол аль нь ч хамаагүй.	[illegible]
c	Mother pleased **none**.	Ээжид аль нь ч таалагдсангүй.	[illegible]
d	He doesn't live in **either** of these two buildings.	Тэр энэ хоёр байшингийн алинд нь ч суудаггүй.	[illegible]
e	Give me **any one** of those.	Тэндээс аль нэгийг нь аваад өг.	[illegible]
f	The person who follows two rabbits is left with **neither** of them.	Хоёр туулай хөөсөн хүн аль альгүй хоцордог. (proverb)	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.5 "хэдэн ч" = "no matter how many"

a	**No matter how many** times I've seen this movie, I don't get bored.	Би энэ киног хэдэн ч удаа үзсэн уйдахгүй.	[illegible]
c	I have **no** tögrögs **at all.**	Надад хэдэн ч төгрөг байхгүй.	[illegible]
d	He returned from the country-side with **no** tögrögs **at all**.	Тэр хэдэн ч төгрөг-гүй хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.6 "хичнээн ч" = "no matter how much"

a	(I) told him this **a hundred** times, but it's pointless. (" ... **no matter how many** times ")	Түүнд энэ тухай хичнээн ч хэлээд нэмэргүй.	[illegible]
b	He'll probably give you **as much** money **as** you ask for.	Та түүнээс хичнээн ч мөнгө гуйсан тэр өгөх байх.	[illegible]
c	Even if he has **no** money **at all**, he'll help you.	Тэр хичнээн ч мөнгөгүй байсан танд туслана.	[illegible]
d	Even if he does**n't** exercise **at all**, he'll win this contest.	Тэр хичнээн ч дас-гал хийхгүй бай-сан энэ тэмцээнд түрүүлнэ.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.7 "хэзээ ч" = whenever, always, never"

"хэдийд" can be used instead of "хэзээ" **only** in **ex. a.**

a	You may come to my home **any time/always**.	Та хэзээ ч манайд ирж болно.	··
b	(I) will **never** go there!	Тийшээ хэзээ ч очихгүй!	··
c	His mother is probably **never** coming again.	Түүний эзэж дахин хэзээ ч ирэхгүй байх.	··
d	This one is a longing that will **never** come true.	Энэ чинь хэзээ ч биелэхгүй мөрөөдөл.	··
e	Well, we'll meet **sometime**, won't we?	За, хэзээ нэгэн цагт уулзана биз дээ.	··
f	**Sometime (in the future)** I'll do that.	Хэзээ нэгэн цагт би үүнийг хийнэ.	··
g	**Sometime (in the future)** I'll return to my homeland.	Би хэзээ нэгэнтээ нутагтаа буцах болно.	··
h	**Any time now**, my friend will come from Germany.	Манай найз Германаас хэзээ хэзээгүй ирнэ.	··

1.2.2.6.2.8 "хаана ч/ хаанаас ч/ хаашаа ч/ хаагуур ч" = 'wherever/everywhere/nowhere'

a	Good friends are **everywhere**.	Сайн найз хаана ч бий.	··
b	Although (I) went into most shops and looked, (it) was **nowhere**.	Ихэнх дэлгүүрээр орж хайсан боловч хаана ч байсангүй.	·· ··
c	This is news that has**n't** been heard **anywhere**.	Энэ хаана ч дуулдаагүй мэдээ шүү.	··
d	That other book of mine must be **somewhere**!	Миний тэр ном хаана нэгэн газар л байх ёстой.	··
e	I met this person **somewhere**.	Би энэ хүнтэй хаа нэгэнтээ уулзсан.	··
f	We have to tackle this problem from every side. ("... **everywhere**.")	Бид энэ асуудлыг хаа хаагүй сайн анхаарах хэрэгтэй.	··
g	I haven't found my key anywhere.	Би түлхүүрээ хаанаас ч олоогүй.	··
h	We can go **anywhere** for summer vacation.	Бид энэ зуны амралтаар хаашаа ч явж болно.	··
i	**Whichever way** you go, it's OK.	Та хаагуур ч явсан болно.	··

1.2.2.6.2.9 "яаж ч" = "however, in every way, in no way"

a	**However** you **do** this, it's OK.	Чи үүнийг яаж ч хийсэн болно.	[illegible]
b	He can harm you in **all kinds of ways**.	Тэр таныг яаж ч чадна.	[illegible]
c	**However** I tried **to do** (it), I couldn't translate it.	Би яаж ч оролдоод үүнийг орчуулж чадсангүй.	[illegible]
d	He **can't** do **anything** to you.	Тэр таныг яаж ч чадахгүй.	[illegible]

1.2.2.6.2.10 "яа~ ч" = "to do whatever"

a	**No matter what happens**, I won't leave.	Яаж ч байсан би эндээс явахгүй.	[illegible]
b	Please come **no matter what happens**.	Чи яагаад ч гэсэн заавал ирээрэй.	[illegible]
c	It **absolutely** doesn't matter to me./I don't mind **at all**.	Би яасан ч хамаагүй.	[illegible]
d	**No matter what happens**, he'll never tell you a lie.	Тэр яалаа ч чамд худал хэлэхгүй.	[illegible]

2. ABSTRACT PARTS OF SPEECH

We have divided the abstract parts of speech into 4 subgroups:
1.) Postpositions
2.) Conjunctions
3.) Particles
4.) Interjections

These 4 groups also exist in English, but with the difference that English uses **pre**positions to express the Mongolian **post**positions.

2.1 POSTPOSITIONS

2.1.1 Characteristics

The postpositions are always **linked to the previous word,** which is a **nominal element.** Therefore, they appear with the following suffixes:
- **Zero-suffixes** (the postposition follows the word stem)
- **Case suffixes** (mainly genitive)
- **Noun Determining Suffixes** (NDS's)

In Mongolian, the postpositions are also called **'Suffix words'**. By them, certain **conditions and relationships** are expressed. The postpositions originally derived from nouns. That's why the **genitive CS** is the **predominant link** between the nominal element and the postposition.

If an RS (see 1.1.1.3) is added to the nominal element, it's done in the following ways:

–ø	+ **postposition**	+ RS	e.g. багш шиг-ээ
CS	+ RS	+ **postposition**	e.g. өөрийнхөө тухай
NDS	+ **postposition**	+ RS	e.g. явсан тухай-гаа

Postpositions can be divided into **two groups**:
• Original postpositions
• Adwords in postpositional function

Following, we'll give an **overview table of both groups** and then example sentences for all postpositions in the order of the suffix they require.

2.1.2 Systematic Classification

2.1.2.1 ORIGINAL POSTPOSITIONS

Even the 'original postposition' are, very strictly spoken, **declined forms**. This can be clearly seen with the following postpositions:

дагуу (along)	from: "дага–" (to follow)
гарүй (more than)	from: "гар–" (to pass by/over)
шахам (nearly)	from: "шаха–" (to press, to squeeze)
хүртэл (until)	from: "хүр–" (to reach)
ёсоор (according to)	from: "ёс" (law, principle)

Contrary to the adwords in postpositional function, these **original postpositions can never be used by themselves** (without a suffix and nominal element).

Abbreviations of table: **–ø** = Zero-suffix; **NDS** = Noun Determining Suffix; **G.** = Genitive-CS;

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Possible after the following suffix:	
a	гаруй		more than ...	–ø : page 285	
b	шахам		almost ... nearly...	–ø : page 285	
c	орчим		about ... approximately ...	–ø : page 285	
d	гэхэд		by	–ø : page 285	
e	хүртэл		until ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
f	бүр		each ... every ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
g	болгон		each ... every ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
h	тутам		each... every ... ... by ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
i	ёсоор		according to ... in conformity with ...	–ø : page 286	NDS : page 295
j	мэт		as ... as ... like	–ø : page 287	NDS : page 296
k	шиг		as ... as ... like ...	–ø : page 287	NDS : page 296
l	тулд		(in order) to ...	G. : page 287	
m	төлөө		for ...	G. : page 287	
n	турш		during ...	G. : page 288	
o	дагуу		according to ... along ...	G. : page 288	
p	чинээ		as big as ..., having the size of ...	G. : page 288	
q	дэргэд		at ... near ... by	G. : page 289	
r	хооронд		between ...	G. : page 289	
s	хажууд		beside	G. : page 289	
t	тухай		about ...	G. : page 291	NDS : page 296
u	талаар		on ... with regard to...	G. : page 292	NDS : page 296

2.1.2.2 ADWORDS IN POSTPOSITIONAL FUNCTION

Some adwords (mostly adverbs, but also some adjectives*) can be **used as postpositions**. In this way, they are closely **linked with a suffix to a nominal element**.

The adwords **f,i and** j originally require the genitive case but tend to lose this requirement. In today's Mongolian language both forms (gen. and -ø) are possible. But notice that the **n-stem** appears with the -ø suffix.

Overview:

	Cyrillic	Classical	English	Possible after the following suffixes:
a	дээр		above ...	-ø : page 285
b	доор		under ...	-ø : page 286
c	адил *		similar to... like ...	-ø: page 287 G.: p. 293 C.: p. 295
d	наана		on this side of ...	G. : page 289
e	цаана		on that side of ...	G. : page 289
f	дотор #		in(side) ... among ...	G. : page 289 #-ø: page 289
g	ард		behind ...	G. : page 290
h	урд		south of ... in front of ...	G. : page 290
i	уруу #		... down(wards)	G. : page 290 #-ø: page 289
j	өөд #		... up(wards)	G. : page 290 #-ø: page 289
k	дараа		after	G. : page 290
l	эсрэг *		against	G. : page 291
m	дунд *		in the middle of ... among ...	G. : page 291
n	ойролцоо *		near by ...	G. : page 291
o	-уур		all adverbs with this suffix	G. : page 291
p	гадна *		out(side) of ... apart from ...	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
q	хойно		north of ... after ...(time)	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
r	өмнө		before ...(time)	G. : page 292 Abl.: page 294
s	ойр *		close to ...	Dat. -Loc.: page 293
t	бусад*		other(s) than ...	Abl.: page 293
u	өөр *		other(s) than ...	Abl.: page 293
v	илүү *		more than ...	Abl.: page 293
w	хол *		far from ...	Abl.: page 294
x	-(г)ш		all adverbs with this suffix	Abl.: page 294

2.1.3 Usage of Postpositions

2.1.3.1 POSTPOSITIONS WITH ZERO-SUFFIX

Such postpositions follow the ***word stem*** (in Cyrillic in *italics)* **directly**, with the so-called zero-suffix, which **indicates the subordination of the postposition to the nominal element**.

2.1.3.1.1 "гаруй" = "more than ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	We came to Mongolia **more than** five years ago. ("We came to Mongolia and then it became more than 5 years.")	Бид Монголд ирээд 5 жил гаруй болж байна.	[illegible]
b	This car goes **more than** 60km/h.	Энэ машин цагт 60 гаруй километр явдаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.2 "шахам" = "almost ..., nearly ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	Now Mister Tseren is **almost** 60 years old and retired.	Цэрэн гуай одоо 60 шахам настай, тэтгэвэртээ суудаг.	[illegible]
b	In the fridge, there must be **almost** 2 liters of milk.	Хөргөгчинд 2 литр шахам сүү байх ёстой.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.3 "орчим" = "about ...; approximate ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	We'll be living in Mongolia for **about** 3 years.	Бид Монголд 3 жил орчим амьдарна.	[illegible]
b	I bought **appr.** 5 kilos of apples at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс таван кило орчим алим авсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.4 "гэхэд" = "by ..."

Always follows after "–ø".

a	It appears as if the plane will come **by** three o'clock.	Онгоц 3 цаг гэхэд ирэх болоттой.	[illegible]
b	**By** the end of the year, this job will probably be finished.	Энэ оны эцэс гэхэд энэ ажил дуусах байх.	[illegible]
c	**By** next spring, I hope that my Mongolian will have become quite good.	Ирэх хавар гэхэд миний монгол хэл овоо болно гэж найдаж байна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.5 "дээр" = "on ..."

Always follows after "–ø" (n-stem of word).

a	That other book, you know, is **on** the table.	Нөгөө ном чинь ширээн дээр байна.	[illegible]
b	(Someone) put the alarm clock **on** the TV.	Сэрүүлэгтэй цагийг телевизор дээр тавьжээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.6 "доор" = "under ..."

Always follows after "–ø" (n-stem of word). In colloquial language, some words with no hidden 'n' (*) could suddenly appear with one (**ex. b**).

a	What did someone just put **under** your pillow?	Чиний дэрэн доор сая юу хийсэн бэ?	[illegible]
b	My key is on the shelf **under** a book.	Миний түлхүүр тавиур дээр, номон доор бий. (ном*)	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.7 "хүртэл" = "until ...; to ..."

a	He'll be here **until** December.	Тэр 12 сар хүртэл энд байна.	[illegible]
b	(You) can go by train from Ulaanbaatar **to** Darkhan .	Улаанбаатараас Дархан хүртэл галт тэргээр явж болно.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.8 "бүр/болгон" = "each ...; every ..."

"болгон" is used more in colloquial language.

a	**Every** year I go to a resort to rest.	Би жил бүр/болгон амралтын газар явж амардаг.	[illegible]
b	**Every** person has to learn English well.	Хүн бүр/болгон англи хэлийг сайн сурах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
c	I bought a bag for **each** of my children.	Би хүүхэд бүрдээ/болгоноо нэг нэг цүнх авсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.9 "тутам" = "each ...; every ..."

Used for things that increase.

a	My Mongolian is getting better **every** year.	Миний монгол хэл жил тутам улам сайн болсоор байна.	[illegible]
b	In order to improve my Mongolian, I have lessons **every** day.	Би монгол хэлээ сайжруулахын тулд өдөр тутам хичээллэж байна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.10 "ёсоор" = "according to ...; in conformity with ..."

The word root is 'law' and therefore, this postposition is strong in its meaning!

a	Everything is carried out **according to** our plan.	Бүх юм бидний төлөвлөгөө ёсоор явагдаж байна.	[illegible]
b	**In conformity with** the judge's verdict he got all his money.	Тэр шүүхийн тогтоол ёсоор бүх мөнгөө авсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.11 "мэт" = "like ...; as ... as ..."

a	When two people are friendly, they are **as** strong **as** an iron wall.	Хоёр хүн эвтэй бол төмөр хэрэм мэт бат. (proverb)	[illegible]
b	When twenty people are unfriendly, they are **as** fragile **as** a mud wall.	Хорин хүн эвгүй бол шавар хэрэм мэт хэврэг. (proverb)	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.12 "шиг" = "like ...; as ... as ..."

a	There is probably no person **as** lazy **as** I am.	Над шиг залхуу хүн байхгүй байх.	[illegible]
b	I desire to become (**such**) a person **like** my teacher.	Би багш шигээ хүн болохыг хүсдэг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.1.13 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ..."

a	In Mongolia, there are many women with cheeks **as** red **as** apples.	Алим адил улаан хацартай хүүхэн Монголд олон бий.	[illegible]
b	This woman has a character **as** naive **as** a child.	Тэр эмэгтэй хүүхэд адил гэнэн зантай.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2 POSTPOSITIONS WITH GENITIVE CS

As mentioned in the introduction, the genitive CS is the **most widely used suffix** to link the postpositions to the nominal elements. See also explanations to the RS (page 108).

2.1.3.2.1 "тулд" = "(in order) to ..."

Always follows after genitive. Note that the sVDS "−хаар" has a similar meaning (see p. 166).

a	**In order to** come to Mongolia, you have to get a visa.	Монголд ирэхийн тулд виз авах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
b	**What** are you doing all this **for**? ("In order for what...")	Чи юуны тулд энэ бүхнийг хийж байна вэ?	[illegible]
c	**In order to** learn a foreign language well, you have to study it day by day.	Гадаад хэлийг сайн сурахын тулд түүнийг өдөр тутам үзэх хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
d	In world history, there are many people who devoted their lives **for** the benefit of their nations.	Дэлхийн түүхэнд ард түмнийхээ төлөө амьдралаа зориулсан хүн олон байдаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.2 "төлөө" = "for ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Jesus died **for** us.	Есүс бидний төлөө нас барсан.	[illegible]
b	I'll do everything **for** you.	Би таны төлөө бүхнийг хийнэ.	[illegible]

c	In his youth, Mister Dorj was fighting **for** his motherland.	Дорж гуай залуу на-сандаа эх орныхоо төлөө байлдаж явсан.	[illegible]
d	This person devoted his entire adult life to science. ("given **for...**)	Энэ хүн шинжлэх ухааны төлөө бүх ухамсарт амьдралаа зориулжээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.3 "турш" = "for ... (expressing time)"

Always follows after genitive. Note that the **sVDS** "-уут" (p. 170) stresses the **simultaneous** aspect of an action, but this postposition stresses more the **continuous** aspect.

a	I have been living in Mongolia **for** two years.	Би Монголд 2 жилийн турш амьдарч байна.	[illegible]
b	Every day, I have Mongolian language lessons **for** three hours.	Би өдөрт 3 цагийн турш Монгол хэлний хичээл хийдэг.	[illegible]
c	I have been traveling in the countryside **for** this whole summer.	Би энэ зуны турш хөдөө явсан.	[illegible]
d	I worked together with her **for** many years.	Би түүнтэй олон жилийн турш хамт ажиллаж байсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.4 "дагуу" = "according to ...; along(side) of ..."

Always follows after genitive. Word root is 'дага-, which menas 'to follow'.

a	I did everything **according to** what he said.	Би түүний хэлсний дагуу бүгдийг хийсэн.	[illegible]
b	She endeavors to speak Mongolian **according to** the rules.	Тэр монгол хэлний дүрмийн дагуу ярихыг хичээдэг.	[illegible]
c	Everything is being carried out **the way** we planned it.	Бүх юм төлөвлөсний дагуу явагдаж байна.	[illegible]
d	Many trees were planted **along** the road.	Замын дагуу олон мод тарьжээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.5 "чинээ" = "as big as ...; having the size of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	The white **as big as** a hare will defeat the black **as big as** a mountain.	Уулын чинээ харыг туулайн чинээ цагаан дийлнэ. (proverb)	[illegible]
b	Once upon a time there was a boy **as tall as** an elbow, and with a 'deel' **as big as** a sleeve. (fairy tale)	Эрт урьд цагт тохойн чинээ биетэй, ханцуйн чинээ дээлтэй нэгэн хүү байжээ.	[illegible]
c	A watermelon **the size of** a head grew.	Толгойн чинээ том шийгуа ургажээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.6 "дэргэд" = "at ...; near ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	A car came and stopped **at** his house.	Түүний байрны дэргэд нэг машин ирж зогслоо.	[illegible]
b	Our church building is **near** the American Embassy.	Америкийн элчингийн дэргэд манай цугласны байшин бий.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.7 "хооронд" = "between ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	**Between** these two mountains there are no 'ails'.	Энэ хоёр уулын хооронд айл алга.	[illegible]
b	I sit in our classroom **between** my two friends.	Би ангидаа хоёр найзынхаа хооронд суудаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.8 "хажууд" = "beside ...; next to ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	The garbage can is **beside** the door.	Хогын сав хаалганы хажууд бий.	[illegible]
b	The lady sitting **next to** him, is my grandmother.	Түүний хажууд сууж байгаа эмэгтэй бол миний эмээ.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.9 "наана" = "on this side of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Some families settled **on this side** of that lake.	Тэр нуурын наана хэдэн айл буужээ.	[illegible]
b	**On this side of** the forest there are a lot of mushrooms.	Энэ ой модны наана зөндөө мөөг бий.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.10 "цаана" = "on the other side of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	'Zuunmod', the center of the 'Töv aimag', is situated **on the other side of** 'Bogd' Mountain.	Богд уулын цаана Төв аймгийн төв Зуунмод хот бий.	[illegible]
b	I dug a deep hole **on the other side of** our yurt.	Би гэрийнхээ цаана нэг гүнзгий нүх ухсан.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.11 "дотор" = "in(side) ...; among ..."

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	He waited **in** the room.	Тэр өрөөн*(ий) дотор хүлээсэн. (* n-stem)	[illegible]

b	**Among** the Mongolians, there are many who speak German well.	Монголчуудын дотор германаар сайн ярьдаг хүн олон бий.	[illegible]
c	Is there milk **in** the fridge?	Хөргөгчин* дотор сүү бий юу? (*n-stem)	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.12 "ард" = "**behind ...**"

Always follows after genitive.

a	He sat **behind me**.	Тэр миний ард суусан.	[illegible]
b	**Behind** their house there is a beautiful garden.	Тэдний байшингийн ард гоё цэцэрлэг бий.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.13 "урд" = "**in front of ...; south of ...**"

Always follows after genitive.

a	Dorj was sitting **in front of** me. (context needed)	Дорж миний урд сууж байсан.	[illegible]
b	Some people are standing **in front of** the house./...**south of** the house.	Байшингийн урд хэдэн хүн зогсож байна.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.14 "уруу" = "**down(wards) ...**"

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	He ran quickly **down** the mountain.	Тэр уул(ын) уруу хурдан гүйсэн.	[illegible]
b	The water of the river flows **down** (the land).	Голын ус газр(ын) уруу урсдаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.2.15 "өөд" = "**up(wards) ...**"

Always follows after genitive. (In modern language tends to lose this requirement.)

a	She crept **up** the mountain, panting.	Тэр уул(ын) өөд амьсгаадан мөлхөв.	[illegible]
b	This horse can't go **uphill**.	Энэ морь газр(ын) өөд явж чадахгүй.	[illegible]

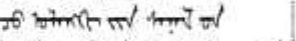
2.1.3.2.16 "дараа" = "**after ...**"

Always follows after genitive.

a	We like to go into the fresh air after our supper.	Бид оройн хоолныхоо дараа салхинд явах дуртай.	[illegible]
b	**After** three hours of lessons, I tend to be quite tired.	Би 3 цаг хичээл хийсний дараа нилээд ядардаг.	[illegible]
c	**After** I came to Mongolia for the first time, I was quite homesick.	Би анх Монголд ирснийхээ дараа нутгаа их санаж байсан.	[illegible]

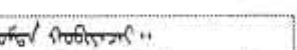
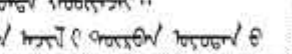
2.1.3.2.17 "эсрэг" = "against ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	In the world, people are fighting **against** war.	Дэлхийд хүмүүс дай-ны эсрэг тэмцэж байна.	
b	Although we were **against** this idea, it was decided in accordance with the opinion of the majority.	Бид энэ саналын эсрэг байсан боловч олонхийн саналын дагуу шийдвэрлэв.	

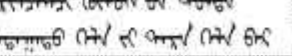
2.1.3.2.18 "дунд" = "among ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	(Someone) allotted this job to four students. ("distributed **among** ...")	Энэ ажлыг дөрвөн оюутны дунд хуваажээ.	
b	If you learn a foreign language **among** native speakers, you'll probably learn it fast.	Гадаад хэлийг тэр хэлээр ярилцагч хүмүүсийн дунд сурвал хурдан сурах байх.	

2.1.3.2.19 "ойролцоо" = "near ...; in the neighborhood of ..."

Always follows after genitive.

a	Many children were playing **in** our **neighborhood.**	Манай байшингийн ойролцоо олон хүүхэд тоглож байсан.	
b	We live **near** the 'Jukov' Museum.	Манайхан Жуковын музейн ойролцоо амьдардаг.	

2.1.3.2.20 Suffix "-уур" = Expressing Local Movement

Below are examples of adverbs that can take this suffix, thus forming a postposition with the genitive CS. "дээгүүр/ доогуур" can follow the word stem directly (-ø suffix; **ex.b**). Compare with pages 224-225 to understand the origin of this suffix.

a	The Tuul river flows **on this side of** 'Bogd' Mountain. (as seen from UB)	Туул гол Богд уулын наагуур урсдаг.	
b	Did you search for your key **under** the table?	Чи түлхүүрээ ширээний доогуур эрсэн үү? (ширээн доогуур)	

2.1.3.2.21 "тухай" = "about ..."

In colloquial language, "энэ/ тэр" (word stems without genitive CS) are also used in front of "тухай" (**ex. d-e**), but this is not allowed when these words refer to people.

a	I am very interested in books **about** Mongolia.	Би монголын тухай ном их сонирхдог.	
b	May I introduce myself briefly to you? ("May I have you briefly know **about** myself?")	Би танд өөрийнхөө тухай товч танилцуулж болох уу?	

c	He is a person who mis-judges me. ("...with a wrong understanding **about** me.")	Тэр миний тухай буруу ойлголттой хүн юм.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨᠢᠶᠡᠬᠦ᠌ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ᠌ ᠪᠤᠷᠤᠭᠤ᠌ ᠲᠦᠷᠦᠭᠦ᠌ ᠤᠯᠠᠭᠠᠯᠲᠠᠲᠠᠢ᠌ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ᠌ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃
d	I heard **about** this from him.	Би үүний (энэ) тухай түүнээс сонссон.	ᠪᠢ᠌ ᠡᠨᠡ᠌ᠶᠢᠨ᠌ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ᠌ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠡᠴᠡ᠌ ᠰᠤᠨᠰᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ᠃
e	I have been thinking **about** that.	Би түүний (тэр) тухай бодож байгаа.	ᠪᠢ᠌ ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨᠢ᠌ᠶᠢ᠌ (ᠲᠡᠷᠡ᠌) ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ᠌ ᠪᠣᠳᠤᠵᠤ᠌ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠭᠠᠠ᠃

2.1.3.2.22 "талаар" = "**on ...; with regard to ...**"

a	I don't know anything **on (the subject of)** Buddhism.	Би Бурханы шашны талаар юу ч мэдэхгүй.	ᠪᠢ᠌ ᠪᠤᠷᠬᠠᠨ᠌ ᠤ᠌ ᠱᠠᠱᠢᠨ᠌ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠷ᠌ ᠶᠤ᠌ ᠴ᠌ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠭᠦᠢ᠃
b	I have a few books **on** Mongolian history.	Надад монголын түүхийн талаар нилээд хэдэн ном бий.	ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠳ᠌ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ᠌ ᠤ᠌ ᠲᠦᠦᠬᠢᠶᠢᠨ᠌ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠷ᠌ ᠨᠢᠯᠡᠭᠡᠳ᠌ ᠬᠡᠳᠡᠨ᠌ ᠨᠣᠮ᠌ ᠪᠢ᠃
c	Are there other ideas **with regard to** this problem?	Энэ асуудлын талаар өөр санал байна уу?	ᠡᠨᠡ᠌ ᠠᠰᠤᠤᠳᠠᠯ᠌ᠤᠨ᠌ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠷ᠌ ᠥᠪᠡᠷ᠌ ᠰᠠᠨᠠᠯ᠌ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠌ᠠ᠌ ᠤᠤ᠃
d	He talks repeatedly **about** his country.	Тэр эх орныхоо талаар олонтоо ярьдаг.	ᠲᠡᠷᠡ᠌ ᠡᠬ᠌ ᠣᠷᠨᠤᠭᠠᠨ᠌ᠤ᠌ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠷ᠌ ᠣᠯᠠᠨᠲᠤᠭᠠ᠌ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃

2.1.3.2.23 "гадна" = "**out(side) of ...**"

a	Those two were standing **outside** the door talking for a long time.	Тэр хоёр хаалганы гадна удаан ярьж зогсов.	ᠲᠡᠭᠡᠨ᠌ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ᠌ ᠬᠠᠠᠯᠭᠠᠨᠢ᠌ ᠭᠠᠳᠨᠠ᠌ ᠤᠳᠠᠠᠨ᠌ ᠶᠠᠷᠢᠵ᠌ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠤᠪ᠃
b	My son is playing **outside** the house.	Манай хүү байшингийн гадна тоглож байна.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ᠌ ᠬᠦᠦ᠌ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠰᠢᠩᠭᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠌ ᠭᠠᠳᠨᠠ᠌ ᠲᠣᠭᠯᠤᠵ᠌ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠌ᠠ᠃

2.1.3.2.24 "хойно" = "**north of ...; after ...**"

Similar to "~ын дараа", but "хойно" needs some previous action (*) to relate to, when used with a temporal meaning.

a	Our house is situated **north of** the university.	Манай байр их сургуу-лийн хойно байдаг.	ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ᠌ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠷ᠌ ᠤᠨ᠌ᠤ᠌ ᠰᠤᠷᠭᠤᠤᠯᠢ᠌ ᠶᠢᠨ᠌ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠤ᠌ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠳᠠᠭ᠃
b	I will leave ten hours **after** he does*.	Би түүнээс* арван цагийн хойно явна.	ᠪᠢ᠌ ᠡᠷᠭᠡᠨ᠌ ᠵᠤᠭ᠌ ᠲᠤ᠌ ᠤᠳᠤᠬᠤ᠌ ᠰᠤᠨᠤᠭᠤ᠌ᠯ᠌ᠤ᠃
c	This morning, my son got up half an hour **after** I did*.	Өнөө өглөө манай хүү надаас* хагас цагийн хойно боссон.	ᠥᠨᠥᠭᠡ᠌ ᠵᠤᠭ᠌ ᠲᠤ᠌ ᠤᠳᠤᠬᠤ᠌ ᠪᠤᠰᠤᠭᠤᠯᠠᠨ᠃ ᠮᠠᠨᠠᠢ᠌ ᠬᠦᠦ᠌ ᠨᠠᠳᠠᠭᠠᠴᠠ᠌ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠴ᠌ ᠴᠠᠭᠢᠶᠢᠨ᠌ ᠬᠣᠶᠢᠨᠤ᠌ ᠪᠤᠰᠤᠭᠤᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.25 "өмнө" = "**in front of ...; before ...**"

When "~ын өмнө" has a temporal meaning, it expresses "**immediately before**" (**ex. b**). Compare with "~аас өмнө" (p.294): цагийн өмнө = "... hours ago"; цагаас өмнө = "before... o'clock"

a	There is a big goal **in front of** us.	Бидний өмнө том зорилт байна.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ᠌ᠢ᠌ ᠥᠮᠥ᠌ᠨᠥ᠌ ᠲᠣᠮ᠌ ᠵᠣᠷᠢᠯᠲ᠌ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ᠌ᠠ᠃
b	I didn't see my husband **before** the meeting.	Би нөхрийгөө хур-лын өмнө харсангүй.	ᠪᠢ᠌ ᠨᠥᠬᠥᠷᠢᠶᠢᠭᠡᠡ᠌ ᠬᠤᠷᠠᠯ᠌ᠤᠨ᠌ ᠥᠮᠥ᠌ᠨᠥ᠌ ᠬᠠᠷᠰᠠᠩᠭᠦᠢ᠃
c	I came four hours **ago**.	Би дөрвөн цагийн өмнө ирсэн.	ᠪᠢ᠌ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠥᠨ᠌ ᠴᠠᠭ᠌ ᠲᠤ᠌ ᠤᠳᠤᠬᠤ᠌ ᠨᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ᠃

2.1.3.2.26 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ...":

a	**Similar to** many Mongolians, he grew up near livestock.	Тэр олон монгол хүний адил малын дэргэд өссөн.	[illegible]
b	**Like** my friends, I believe that there is a true God.	Би найз нарынхаа адил жинхэнэ Бурхан байдаг гэдэгт итгэдэг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.3 POSTPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE-LOCATIVE CS

2.1.3.3.1 "ойр" = "close to ...; near ...":

Always follows after dative-locative.

a	Is your house **close to** the department store?	Танай байшин их дэлгүүрт ойр байдаг уу?	[illegible]
b	Which 'sum' is the **closest to** Ulaanbaatar?	Улаанбаатарт хамгийн ойр сум ямар сум бэ?	[illegible]

2.1.3.4 POSTPOSITIONS WITH ABLATIVE CS

2.1.3.4.1 "бусад" = "other than ...; except ...":

Always follows after ablative.

a	All people **except** you have already come.	Танаас бусад бүх хүн ирчихээд байна.	[illegible]
b	We work everyday **except** Sunday.	Ням гаригаас бусад бүх өдөр бид ажилладаг.	[illegible]

2.1.3.4.2 "өөр" = "**besides ...; other than ...**":

Always follows after ablative.

a	I have other money **besides** tögrögs.	Надад төгрөгнөөс өөр мөнгө байгаа.	[illegible]
b	We don't have a method **other than** this one.	Бидэнд үүнээс өөр арга байхгүй.	[illegible]

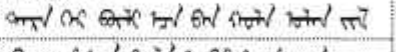
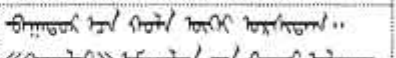
2.1.3.4.3 "илүү" = "**more than ...**":

Always follows after ablative.

a	He speaks Mongolian better than I. ("...**more** (good) **than** I.")	Тэр монголоор надаас илүү (сайн) ярьдаг.	[illegible]
b	Not **more than** 30 people fit into this hall.	Энэ танхимд 30-аас илүү хүн багтахгүй.	[illegible]

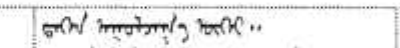
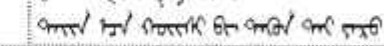
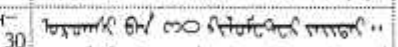
2.1.3.4.4 "холl" = "far from ..."

Always follows after ablative.

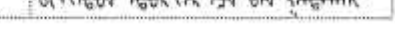
a	He lived **far from** his family for many years	Тэр гэр бүлээсээ холl олон жил амь дарсан.	
b	The resort 'Terelj' is situated not **far from** Ulaanbaatar.	"Тэрэлж" амралтын газар Улаанбаатараас холгүй оршдог.	

2.1.3.4.5 Suffix "–(г)ш" = Expressing Direction

Here are examples of adverbs taking this suffix with the ablative CS.

a	**Since** the war, I haven't seen him at all. ("**After** the war...")	Дайнаас хойш би түүнтэй ердөө уулзаагүй.	
b	The city 'Zuunmod' is 30 km **south of** Ulaanbaatar. ("...is with a distance of 30 km south of UB.")	Зуун мод хот Улаан–баатараас урагшаа 30 км зайтай.	
c	I didn't go **out of** my home for several days.	Би хэдэн өдөр гэрээ–сээ гадагш яваагүй.	

2.1.3.4.6 "гадна" = "apart from ..."

a	**Apart from** him, several people speak Mongolian.	Түүнээс гадна хэд хэдэн хүн монголоор ярьдаг.	
b	**Apart from** me, three people will go.	Надаас гадна гурван хүн явна.	

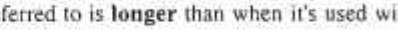
2.1.3.4.7 "хойно" = "after ..."

Note the "–аас хойш", which is more widely used.

a	I met him once **after** the war.	Дайнаас хойно би түүн–тэй нэг удаа уулзсан.	

2.1.3.4.8 "өмнө" = "before ..."

When used with the ablative CS, the **time span** referred to is **longer** than when it's used with genitive CS (compare with –ын өмнө: p. 292).

a	Please call me **before** 10 p.m.	Та оройн арван цагаас өмнө над руу утсаар яриарай.	
b	Who was teaching you **before** him? ("Who did you have teach you **before** him?")	Та түүнээс өмнө ямар хүнээр хичээл заалгаж байсан бэ?	
c	I came **before** 4 o'clock.	Би дөрвөн цагаас өмнө ирсэн.	

2.1.3.5 POSTPOSITIONS WITH COMITATIVE CS

2.1.3.5.1 "адил" = "similar to ...; like ..."

a	He desires to become an athlete **like** his older brother.	Тэр ахтайгаа адил тамирчин болохыг хүсдэг.	Бичиг үсэг биччихсэн ·· Ахиж нэг ч үсэг биш мэдэх шиг санагдсан
b	Human beings have been searching for intelligent beings **like** themselves.	Хүн төрөлхтөн өөртэй-гөө адил ухаантныг эрсээр байна.	Мэдэх шинжлэгдэх (хэлэлцэх биччэ ·· Дээрэ ахиулахгүй мэдэх чи биш

2.1.3.6 POSTPOSITIONS WITH NDS's

Some of the postpositions that usually take genitive or zero-suffix, could also be linked to the nominal element with an NDS. Then they form a conjunction (see pages 308-318) and as such could appear with a RS (see p. 296: last two postpositions).

2.1.3.6.1 "хүртэл" = "until ..."

When "хүртэл" follows an NDS, the *noun* is dropped (see parentheses).

a	Let me wait here **until** you come. ("...until *the time* of your coming.")	Чамайг ирэх (цаг) хүртэл би энд хүлээ байя.	Өнгөрэ ·· Энэнээ хэлэв (гэсэн) Өглөөнөөс би чамд биш
b	Please read everything **up to** the *page/lesson* the teacher taught.	Багшийн заасан (хуу-дас, хичээл) хүртэл нэгбүрчлэн уншаарай.	Өглөөнөөс хүлээлгэхээр чамайхсэн ·· Өнөөх нэг ч үсэгнээс (Эхлээд (Гэсэн)

2.1.3.6.2 "бүр/болгон"= "every time ...; each time ..."

*Notice that, in English, the noun (here '*time*') can't be dropped like in Mongolian.

a	**Every** *time* * I go to a resort, I like it very much. ("...it seems to me very nice.")	Намайг амралтын газар очих бүр/болгон их сайхан санагддаг.	(Өдөр) бүрэн эхлээд эхэлсэнээс ·· Гэнэт мэдэхээс нэг үсэгт өдөрт Өнгө
b	**Each** *time* * I visited his home, he gave me a gift.	Би тэднийд очих бүр/болгон тэр надад бэлэг өгдөг байсан.	Өчиг үнэ ёс өдөрт мэдэхээ өглөөнөөс ·· Өг өчөг ө ёс мэдэхээ Өнгө (Өдөр)

2.1.3.6.3 "тутам" = "each ..."

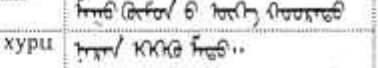
* see explanation above

a	**Each** *time* he talks about this, I understand better that I'm in the wrong.	Түүнийг энэ тухай ярих тутам би буруутай гэдгээ улам илүү ойлгодог.	Эдлэхэд мэдэлгээнээс ·· Өг Өдөрөө бүр Чөлөө үнэ үнэ Эдлэхэд Өдөрөө Өчөг (Эх Өдөөс сэдэхээ Өдөрөө

2.1.3.6.4 "ёсоор" = "the way ...; according to ..."

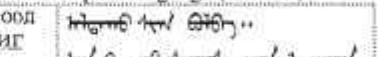
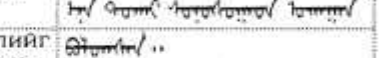
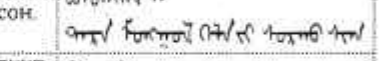
a	Everything turned out **the way** you said it would.	Бүх юм чиний хэлсэн ёсоор боллоо.	Өнгө гэнээ/ү зүгээ Чөлөөлөх сэдэлгээнээ Өдөрөө ··
b	Everything is being carried out **the way** it was planned.	Бүх юм төлөвлөсөн ёсоор явагдаж байна.	сэдэхээр Өнгө/ү ·· Өнгө гэнээ/ү Өдөгөөлөлтөө/ сэдэлгээнээ

2.1.3.6.5 "мэт" = "like ..."

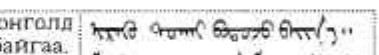
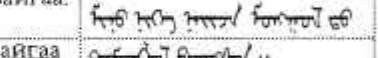
a	The word of a bad person is **like** the bite of a poisonous snake.	Муу хүний үг хорт могой хатгах мэт	
b	The word of a good person is **like** the warmth of the bright sun.	Сайн хүний үг хурц наран зэх мэт	

2.1.3.6.6 "шиг" = "like ..."

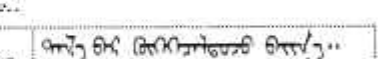
Note the new expression "~х шиг бол~" which is used in colloquial language (**ex. b-c!**).

a	(I) heard about this and almost fainted. ("... became **like** [someone] losing his consciousness")	Энэ тухай сонсоод ухаан алдах шиг болов.	
b	She learned Mongolian **excellently**.	Тэр монгол хэлийг сурах шиг болсон.	
c	Christiane is **the best at** baking cakes.	Христиана бялуу хийх шиг болдог.	

2.1.3.6.7 "тухай" = "about ..."

a	One of my friends is thinking **about** coming to Mongolia.	Миний нэг найз Монголд ирэх тухай бодож байгаа.	
b	I wrote a travelogue **about** my traveling in the countryside.	Би хөдөө явсан тухайгаа тэмдэглэл бичсэн.	

2.1.3.6.8 "талаар" = "on ...; with regard to ..."

a	One of my friends is busy organizing his journey to Mongolia. ("...is occupied **in regard to** his coming...")	Миний нэг найз Монголд ирэх талаар хөөцөлдөж байгаа.	
b	Please talk **about** your travels in the countryside.	Та хөдөө явсан талаараа ярич.	

2.2 CONJUNCTIONS

The conjunctions (Latin 'coniungere' = 'to join', 'to link', 'to connect') are words which **connect parts of a sentence or whole sentences**. Besides their connecting function, they can **reveal the relationship** between the elements they connect. Their position in the sentence is fixed.
In this book, we will **follow a syntactic classification,** but refer to other ways of classifying (e.g. semantic, morphological) where appropriate.

2.2.1 Coordinating Conjunctions

The coordinating conjunctions (Latin 'coordinare' = 'to add') **connect two equally important parts of speech or sentences.** None of the two parts is subordinated to the other. The parts may **logically demand** one another, but that's not subordination.

In this chapter, we will always **refer** to the following **three kinds of connections**:
- conjunctions which connect two **non-predicate parts** (e.g. subjects, objects)
- conjunctions which connect two **predicate parts** (gives a compound sentence)
- conjunctions which connect two **sentences or paragraphs**.

Examples in English:

• Conjunctions which connect two non-predicate parts:
2 subjects: *John* **and** *Frank* talk with each other.
2 objects: He knows **neither** *you* **nor** *me*.
2 attributes: I'll give you a *red* **and** a *blue* pencil.
2 adverbials: I **not only** play football *in summer*, **but also** *in winter*.

• Conjunctions which connect two predicate parts (= compound sentence):
Maggy *is sleeping*, **and** her mother *is cooking*.
The alarm clock *rings*, **but** he *doesn't hear* it.

• Conjunctions which connect two sentences:
You're far too late. **But** I hope you have a reason for it.
Unfortunately, he couldn't sing. **Nevertheless,** it was a nice concert.
Excuse me for not being able to come yesterday. I had a cold. **Besides,** we had visitors.

In Mongolian there is often no big difference between two predicate parts and two sentences. Whether there is a comma or a period, it doesn't matter a lot. Strictly grammatically speaking, there should be a period before a Proword-conjunction (see 2.2.3).

☞Attention:
Some of the Mongolian conjunctions don't give a conjunction in the English translation. Compare with the following parts in this book:
- cVDS's: -аад⁴,-ч/-ж, -н (see pages 157-160).
- Cardinal numerals (see page 237).

2.2.1.1 OVERVIEW OF COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

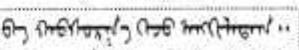
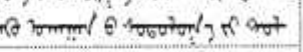
We could present a twofold classification in **original and derived** conjunctions, but for the following reasons we don't do that: conjunctions that look superficially like original conjunctions (e.g. "бөгөөд", "болон", etc.) would have to be strictly classified as 'derived' because of their origin of "verb + VDS". So, it's difficult to draw proper lines between 'original' and 'derived'. To us, it seemed more important that the following conjunctions **serve as conjunctions today**:

1	... ба ...	....	... and ...
2	... бөгөөд ... (болоод/ хийгээд/ агаад)	.... (، ،)	... and ... (The words in parentheses are rarely used and specialized)
3	...-гүй	....	... and ... (whether ... or ...)
4	... болон ...	....	... as well as ...
5	... ч, ...ч ...	.... ،	(although) both, ... and ...
6	..., (мөн) түүнчлэн ...	.... ، ( )	... as well as (also) ...
7	... , харин ...	.... ،	... , but ...
8	... , гэвч ...	.... ،	... , but ... ; ..., still, ...
9	..(зөвхөн) ...төдийгүй, мөн...	.... () ، ،	... not (only)... , but also...
10	...төдий биш, харин (бас)	، ()	... not (only)... , but (also)...
11	...-аар барахгүй, мөн ... ...-аар үл барам ...	.... ،	... not (only)... , but also...
12	... буюу... ... юм уу...	....	.. respectively ..(..or..)
13	... эсвэл (эсхүл)... [... үгүй бол...] [... нэг бол...] [... аль эсвэл...]	- - - () .... [.... ....] [.... ....] [.... ....]	... or ... (old form in parentheses) [if not ..., then ...]
14	... эсвэл..., эсвэл ...	.... ،	... (n)either ... (n)or ...
15	... байхад, харин ...	.... ،	..., where as ...
16	... байтугай ... (... бүү хэл ...) (... биттий хэл ...)	.... (.... ....) (.... ....)	... let alone ... ... not to mention ...
17	... гэхдээ ...	....	... but ...

2.2.1.2 USAGE OF COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

2.2.1.2.1 "ба" = "and"

- has **adversative** meaning, i.e., the two connected parts exclude each other.
- usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** **(ex. a-c)**
- almost exclusively used in **written language**
- first part of sentence is not declined (in **ex. c** evident: **ex. b**: "ы" in оюуны = derivational suffix)

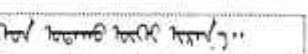
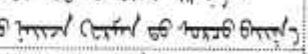
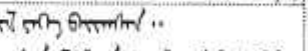
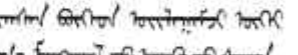
a	Scientific research is divided into *basic* **and** *applicable*.	Шинжлэх ухааны судалгааг тулгуур ба хавсарга гэж ангилдаг.	
b	The epoch of Genghis Khan's empire plays an important role in the history of the *spiritual* **and** *material* culture of the Mongolians.	Чингис хааны эзэнт гүрний үе монголчуудын оюуны ба эдийн соёлын түүхэнд чухал үүрэг гүйцэтгэдэг.	
c	Thousands of students study at the *Mongolian State University* **and** *other universities*.	Олон мянган оюутан Монгол Улсын Их Сургууль ба бусад дээд сургуулиудад сурдаг.	

☞ Attention! This is wrong:

My father is *nice* **and** *wise*.	Манай аав сайхан зантай ба ухаалаг.	- Манай аав бол сайхан зантай, ухаалаг хүн.
Baatar **and** *Dorj* must go now.	Баатар ба Дорж одоо явах ёстой.	- Баатар, Дорж хоёр одоо явах ёстой.

2.2.1.2.2 "бөгөөд" = "and"

- has an **additive** meaning
- usually connects **predicate parts** which demand each other **logically** (***verb*** in front of the conjunction demands an ***NDS*** **(ex. a-c)**
- used almost exclusively in **official or literary** language
- derived from the old auxiliary verb "bü–" + cVDS "–аад"

a	My friend *studies* in Germany **and** will come soon.	Миний найз Германд сурч байгаа бөгөөд удахгүй ирнэ.	
b	When I came to Mongolia for the first time, it *was* interesting **and** there were many things (I) didn't understand.	Анх Монголд ирэхэд сонин байсан бөгөөд ойлгомжгүй зүйл их байсан.	
c	I *will return* to my homeland in 1996 **and** it isn't clear when I will come back.	Би 1996 онд нутагтаа харих бөгөөд хэзээ буцаж ирэх нь тодорхойгүй байна.	
d	I love her **and** always think of her.	Би түүнд хайртай бөгөөд үргэлж түүнийг боддог.	

2.2.1.2.3 "-гүй" = "and; whether ... or"

- usually used with *opposite pairs* (**ex. a-d**)
- connects **non-predicate parts** (**ex. a-d**), but also **predicate parts** (**ex. e-f**)

a	We all, *young* **and** *old*, love this song.	Энэ дуунд манайхан хөг-шин залуугүй дуртай.	[illegible]
b	I worked *day* **and** *night*.	Би өдөр шөнөгүй ажилласан.	[illegible]
c	High trees grew on both sides of this mountain. (*"behind* **and** *in front of"*)	Уулын ар өвөргүй өндөр өндөр мод ургажээ.	[illegible]
d	Dulmaa reads all of the time. (*"... morning* **and** *evening"*)	Дулмаа бол өглөө үдэш-гүй ном уншиж суудаг.	[illegible]
e	I'll surely come, **whether** you *invite* me **or** *not*.	Би таныг урьсан уриагүй заавал ирнэ.	[illegible]
f	I will live in Mongolia **whether** I *learn* Mongolian **or** *not*.	Би монгол хэл сурсан сураагүй Монголд амьдарна.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.4 "болон" = "as well as"

- has an **additive** meaning
- usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-e**)
- the first part of the sentence is **not** [illegible] (**ex. a,b,c,e**; **ex. d**:"ын" = derivational suffix, therefore it doesn't drop in the word "дотоод").
- derived from verb "бол-" + cVDS "-н"

a	We received from you *a telegram* **as well as** *the letter of September 5*.	Бид танаас цахилгаан болон таны 9-р сарын 5-нд бичсэн захиаг хүлээн авсан.	[illegible]
b	Mongolians want to strengthen their multilateral relationship with *Germany* **as well as** *with other European countries*.	Монголчууд Герман болон Европын бусад орнуудтай олон талын харилцаагаа бэхжүүлэхийг хүсч байна.	[illegible]
c	He speaks Russian **and also** Chinese well.	Тэр орос болон хятад хэлээр сайн ярьдаг.	[illegible]
d	Many *national* **as well as** *foreign* representatives hold speeches in this meeting.	Энэ хуралд дотоодын болон гадаадын олон төлөөлөгч үг хэлэв.	[illegible]
e	Our guests went to the *Central Museum* **as well as** *to the department store*.	Манай зочид Төв Музей болон их дэлгүүрт очсон.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.5 "ч, ...ч ..." = "both, ... and ...; (although ... and ...)"

- usually connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-d**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** (**ex. e**: note the different translation; verb needs an NDS)
- **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. a,c and d** evident)
- compare with the meaning of the **particle** "ч" (pages 346-348)

a	He knows **both** *you* **and** *me* well.	Тэр намайг ч, танг ч сайн мэднэ.	[illegible]
b	My mother just bought **both** *bread* **and** *cake* at the market.	Ээж минь сая захаас талх ч, бялуу ч авсан.	[illegible]
c	He speaks well in **both** *Russian* **and** *Chinese*.	Тэр орсоор ч, хятадаар ч сайн ярьдаг.	[illegible]
d	You can meet these kinds of people in **both** *Mongolia* **and** *Germany*.	Та иймэрхүү хүмүүстэй Монголд ч, Германд ч тааралдаж болно.	[illegible]
e	(Although) I talked with him in **both** *Mongolian* **and** *English*, he didn't understand anything.	Би түүнтэй монголоор ярьсан ч, англиар ярьсан ч тэр юу ч ойлгоогүй.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.6 "(мөн) түүнчлэн" = "and also"

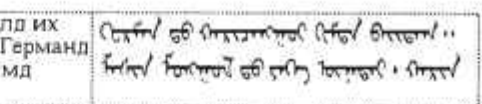
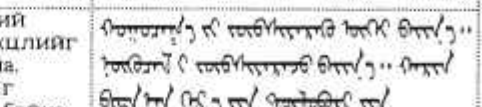
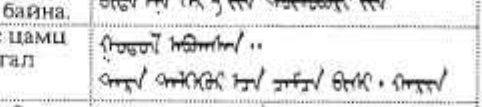
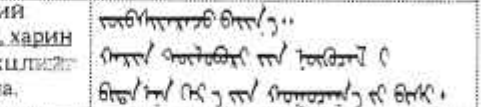
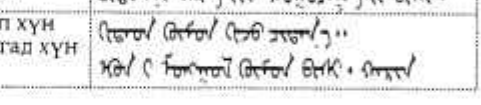
- has an **additive** meaning
- usually connects ***non-predicate parts***
- the first part of the sentence is **not** declined (in **ex. b** evident)

a	My father teaches *French* **and also** *some other languages* at a school.	Манай аав сургуульд франц хэл, (мөн) түүнчлэн бусад зарим хэл заадаг.	[illegible]
b	He came after having traveled *through Germany* **and also** *through some other countries*. (*"He traveled ... and then came."*)	Тэр Герман, (мөн) түүнчлэн өөр хэд хэдэн орноор аялаад ирлээ.	[illegible]

2.2.1.2.7 "харин" = "but"

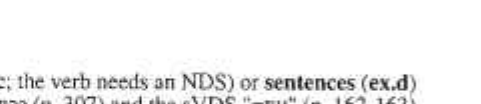
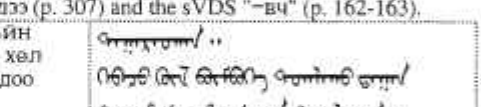
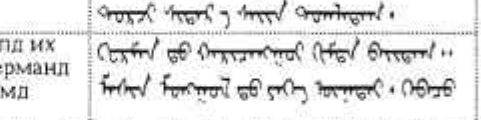
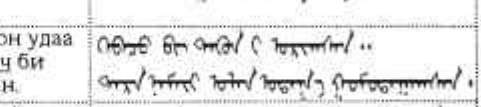
- has a **concessive** meaning (literal translation 'returning')
- very often connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**; the verb needs an NDS) or **sentences** (**ex.d**)
- similar to "гэвч" (see page 302), but not so strong in its concessive meaning
- when ***non-predicate parts*** are connected, the negative particle "биш" is needed (**ex. e-g**) and **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. f** evident)

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *isn't very good* in football.	Дорж шатар сайн тоглодог, харин хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо тааруухан.	[illegible]
b	My friend *speaks* Mongolian well, **but** he *can't write* a single word.	Манай найз монголоор сайн ярьдаг, харин нэг ч үг бичиж чадахгүй.	[illegible]

c	Cars *are very expensive* in Mongolia, but in Germany, they *are comparatively cheap*.	Машин Монголд их үнэтэй, харин Германд харьцангуй хямд байдаг.	
d	We *agree* with the payment conditions of this contract. **But** we *don't agree* with the duration.	Бид энэ гэрээний төлбөрийн нөхцлийг зөвшөөрч байна. Харин хугацааг зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	
e	At the shop, he bought **no** *shirt*, **but** he did buy *boots*.	Тэр дэлгүүрээс цамц биш, харин гутал авсан.	
f	Not with the *duration of this contract*, **but** with *the payment conditions* we agree.	Бид энэ гэрээний хугацааг биш, харин төлбөрийн нөхцлийг зөвшөөрч байна.	
g	Not *Mongolians*, **but** *Chinese* can do this.	Үүнийг монгол хүн биш, харин хятад хүн хийж чадна.	

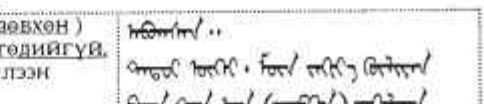
2.2.1.2.8 "гэвч" = "but; still"

- has a **concessive** meaning
- very often connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**; the verb needs an NDS) or **sentences** (**ex.d**)
- very similar to "харин" (see above), гэхдээ (p. 307) and the sVDS "-вч" (p. 162-163).

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *isn't very good* in football.	Дорж шатар сайн тоглодог, гэвч хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо тааруухан.	
b	Cars *are very expensive* in Mongolia, but in Germany, they *are comparatively cheap*.	Машин Монголд их үнэтэй, гэвч Германд харьцангуй хямд байдаг.	
c	He has offended me many times. **Still**, I invited him.	Тэр намайг олон удаа гомдоосон, гэвч би түүнийг урьсан.	
d	We *agree* with the payment conditions of this contract. **But** we *don't agree* with the duration.	Бид энэ гэрээний төлбөрийн нөхцлийг зөвшөөрч байна. Гэвч хугацааг зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	

2.2.1.2.9 "(зөвхөн) ...тэдийгүй, мөн" = "not (only), but also"

- has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not only that much, also')
- "зөвхөн" and "мөн" could be omitted; the main word is "тэдийгүй"
- mainly connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-d**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** (**ex. e**; an NDS is needed)
- **both** parts of sentence are declined (in **ex. b** evident)
- similar to next conjunction (p. 303); but here, the first statement is satisfactory, the second statement only **complements** the first one.

a	**Not only** did I receive a *telegram* from you, **but also** *a letter*.	Бид танаас (зөвхөн) цахилгаан тэдийгүй, мөн захиа хүлээн авсан.	

b	**Not only** do we disagree with *the payment conditions* of this contract, **but also** with *the duration*.	Бид энэ гэрээний (зөвхөн) төлбөрийн нөхцлийг тэдийгүй, мөн хугацааг зөвшөөрөхгүй байна.	
c	In my opinion, in order to study a foreign language, one has to **not only** devote *one's working time*, **but also** *one's free time*.	Миний бодлоор бол, гадаад хэлийг сурахын тулд (зөвхөн) ажлын цагаа тэдийгүй, мөн чөлөөт цагаа зориулах хэрэгтэй.	
d	**Not only** *did* he *pay* the *costs of his meal* **but also** *ours*.	Тэр (зөвхөн) өөрийн хоолны мөнгө тэдийгүй, мөн биднийхийг төлсөн юм.	
e	**Not only** *did* he *teach* me many things, **but** he **also** introduced me to many people.	Тэр надад их зүйл зааж өгсөн тэдийгүй, мөн олон хүнтэй танилцуулсан.	

2.2.1.2.10 "тэдий биш, (харин)" = "not only ... , but"

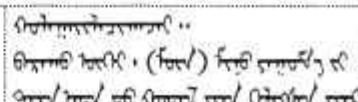
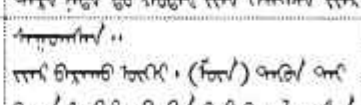
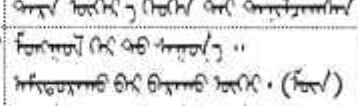
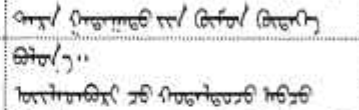
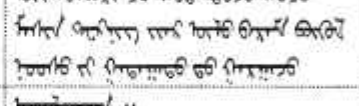
- has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not so much, but')
- always connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-b**)
- similar to previous conjunction (p. 302), but here, the first statement **is not satisfactory** and has to be complemented.
- both parts of the sentence are declined (evident in **ex. c**)

a	When you go by train to Moscow, you **not only** need *one or two days*, **but** *quite many*.	Галт тэргээр Москва ороход нэг хоёр тэдий биш, (харин) нилээд хэд хоног хэрэгтэй.	
b	People must **not only** live *in peace*, **but also** *well*.	Хүмүүс амар тайван тэдий биш, (харин) сайн сайхан амьдрах ёстой.	
c	In order to understand the Mongolians well, you have to live **not only** *in Ulaanbaatar*, **but also** *in the countryside*.	Та монголчуудыг сайн ойлгохын тулд зөвхөн Улаанбаатарт тэдий биш, харин орон нутагт амьдрах хэрэгтэй.	

2.2.1.2.11 "-аар барахгүй (мөн) ... -аар ул барам" = "not only ... no, also"

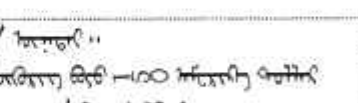
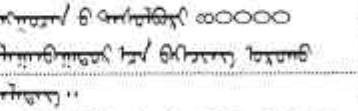
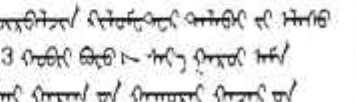
- has an **additive** meaning (literal translation 'not ending by ..., also')
- similar to тэдийгүй, мөн (p. 302) the second statement complements the first one
- always connects ***predicate parts*** (demanding an NDS)
- compare with the very similar conjunction "-аар ул барам" (**x. e-f**), which can also connect ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. e**)

a	He came to Mongolia and **not only** did he *learn* Mongolian well, he **also** *is writing* a Mongolian language textbook.	Тэр Монголд ирээд монгол хэл сайн сурч-наар барахгүй, (мөн) монгол хэлний сурах бичиг зохиож байна.	

b	**Not only** did he *tell* me *a lie*, he *has* **also** *stolen* my things.	Тэр надад худлаа хэлснээр барахгүй, (мөн) миний юмыг хулгайлчихжээ.	
c	**Not only** *did* he *get to know* another woman, he **also** *married* her.	Тэр өөр хүүхэнтэй танилцсанаар барахгүй, (мөн) түүнтэй суусан.	
d	**Not only** will that foreigner *live* in the countryside, he'll **also** *stay* in a Mongolian yurt.	Тэр гадаадын хүн хөдөө амьдрахаар барахгүй, монгол гэрт сууна.	
e	You can export wool abroad and buy **not only** *technical machines*, **but even** *whole factories*.	Ноосыг гадаадад гаргаж машин техникээр үл барам бүхэл үйлдвэр ч худалдан авч болно.	
f	**Not only** do I always *call* her, I **also** *meet* her from time to time.	Би түүнтэй үргэлж утсаар ярьдгаар үл барам хааяа уулздаг.	

2.2.1.2.12 "буюу; юм уу" = "respectively; or"

- had originally an **alternative** meaning, thus, the two connected elements don't exclude each other; they are one **and the same thing**, only expressed differently (**ex. a-c**)
- today most Mongolians use this conjunction almost like "эсвэл" which has an **adversative** meaning (**ex. d-g**)
- generally it could be said, that "буюу" is mainly used for ***non-predicate parts*** and "эсвэл" mainly for ***predicate parts***; moreover, "буюу" is **not used in interrogative sentences**
- sometimes **both** parts of the sentence are declined, sometimes only one (in **ex. g**, "эсвэл" demands a declension of both parts)
- "юм уу" is a colloquial form of "буюу" (**ex. h**)

a	The plane ticket from Ulaanbaatar to Beijing costs *80'000 tögrögs*, **respectively** *USD 150*.	Улаанбаатараас Бээжин орох онгоцны тасалбар 80.000 төгрөг буюу 150 ам. долларын үнэтэй.	
b	Sand makes out an area of *5,3* %, **respectively** *more than 7 million km²* of the dry land of our planet.	Манай гаригийн хуурай газрын 5,3 хувь буюу 7 сая гаруй ам дөрвөлжин километр талбайг элс эзэлдэг.	
c	*The year of the White Horse of the sexage-nary cycle*, **resp.** *1990*, has become a very special year in regards to the destiny of the Mongolians.	*XVII* жарны цагаан морин жил буюу 1990 он монголчуудын хувь заяанд нэн онцгой жил боллоо.	

d	I'd like to talk with you *in English* **or** *German*.	Би тантай англиар буюу (эсвэл) германаар ярьмаар байна.	Би танд англиар/германаар ярих хүсэлтэй байна.
e	I need a *two* **or** *three* room flat.	Надад хоёр буюу (эсвэл) гурван өрөө байр хэрэгтэй байна.	Надад хоёр/гурван өрөө (нэгдүгээр) хэрэгтэй
f	You can give the answer to this *orally* **or** *in written*.	Та үүний хариуг амаар буюу (эсвэл) бичгээр өгч болно.	(Нэгдүгээр) асуултанд аман/бичгээр хариулж
g	He'll come *on Friday* **or** *on Saturday*.	Тэр Баасан гариг(т) буюу (эсвэл) Бямба гариг(т) ирнэ.	Баасан/Бямба (өдөр) ирнэ
h	Next year, I'd like to go and see *the Khovd* **or** *the Uvs Aimag*.	Би дараа жил Ховдоор юм уу (эсвэл) Увс аймаг(т) очиж үзмээр байна.	Дараа жил Ховд/Увс руу очих хүсэлтэй

☛ Attention! wrong:

a	Do you believe *him* **or** *me*?	Чи түүнд буюу надад итгэж байна уу?	→ Чи түүнд итгэж байна уу эсвэл надад итгэж байна уу?
b	When will you fly? *Tomorrow* **or** *the day after*?	Чи хэзээ нисэх вэ? Маргааш буюу нөгөөдөр?	→ Чи хэзээ нисэх вэ? Маргааш уу эсвэл нөгөөдөр үү?

2.2.1.2.13 "эсвэл; эсхүл" = "or; if not, then"

- read the remarks to буюу on page 304! Literal translation: 'if (one) doesn't do'
- often connects ***interrogative sentences (predicate parts)*** (**ex. a-c**)
- in sentences with ***non-predicate parts***, "буюу" could also be used (**ex. d**)
- "эсхүл" is the old form; not widely used
- both parts of the sentence are declined(in **ex. g, i** evident)
- "эсвэл" can also appear together with "буюу" or "юм уу" (**ex. e-f**)
- other colloquial versions of "эсвэл" are "үгүй бол, нэг бол, аль эсвэл" (**ex. g-i**)

a	Do you believe him **or** not?	Чи түүнд итгэж байна уу эсвэл үгүй юу?	Түүнд итгэж байна уу, үгүй юу?
b	What kind of apples do you like? *Red* **or** *green* (ones)?	Та ямар алимд дуртай вэ? Улаанд уу эсвэл ногоонд уу?	Ямар/ямар алим дуртай вэ? Улаан/ногоон алим дуртай юу?
c	Do you like *red* (apples) **or** (do you like) *green* apples?	Та улаан алимд дуртай юу, эсвэл ногоон алимд дуртай юу?	Улаан/ногоон алим дуртай юу? Эсвэл ногоон/улаан алим дуртай юу?
d	I'll go *tomorrow* **or** *the day after*.	Би маргааш эсвэл (буюу) нөгөөдөр явна.	Явна./. Би маргааш, нөгөөдөр (өдөр) явна.
e	You can *talk* to me by this phone number or *contact* me through my friend Dorj.	Та надтай энэ утсаар ярих буюу эсвэл миний найз Доржоор дамжуулан харьцаж болно.	Холбогдоорой./Холбогдож болно. Энэ утсаар ярих эсвэл би/ Найз/ Эсвэл би/ Найзаар дамж холбоо
f	I'll go *tomorrow* **or else** *the day after*.	Би маргааш юм уу эсвэл нөгөөдөр явна.	Явна./. Би маргааш/нөгөөдөр явна. Үгүйбол
g	I'll marry Baatar. **If not, then** Dorj.	Би Баатартай үгүй бол Доржтой гэрлэнэ.	Гэрлэнэ./. Би Баатартай/ Эсвэл би/ Доржтой гэрлэнэ
h	I'll go today **or else** tomorrow.	Би өнөөдөр нэг бол маргааш явна.	Би өнөөдөр/ Үгүй бол/ маргааш явна./.

i	He'll come by train. **If not, then** by plane.	Тэр галт тэргээр аль эсвэл онгоцоор ирнэ.	·· ·

2.2.1.2.14 "эсвэл ... эсвэл" = "**either ... or**"

- has an **adversative** meaning (literal translation: twice 'if [one] doesn't do')
- connects ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. a-c**), sometimes ***predicate parts*** which are self-contained and therefore appear with a ***TTS*** (same tense) (**ex. d-e**)
- with common subject, the subject stands before the "эсвэл" (**ex. a, e**)
- **both** parts of the sentence are declined (in **ex. a-c** evident)

a	He is **either** *at his work* **or** *at home.*	Тэр эсвэл ажил дээрээ, эсвэл гэртээ бий.	·· ·
b	I intend to go to my homeland next year, **either** *in June* **or** *in September.*	Би дараа жил эсвэл 6-р сард, эсвэл 9-р сард нутагтаа буцах санаатай.	·· ·
c	We two can talk **either** *in English* **or** *in German.*	Бид хоёр эсвэл англиар, эсвэл германаар ярьж болох юм.	·· ·
d	**Either** you *marry* me **or** I *die.*	Эсвэл чи надтай гэрлэнэ, эсвэл би үхнэ.	·· ·
e	**Either** he *was ill* **or** he *told a lie.*	Тэр эсвэл өвдөж, эсвэл худлаа ярьжээ.	·· ·

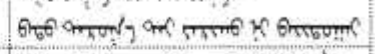
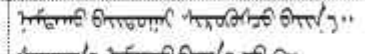
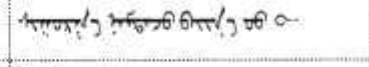
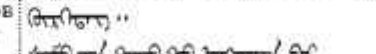
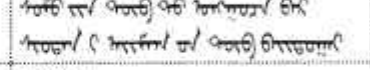
2.2.1.2.15 "байхад, харин" = "**whereas**"

- has an **additive** meaning; creates a **comparison** between two actions or things; general statements, therefore the NDS"-даг" (p. 144) is mainly used
- connects ***predicate parts*** (verb demands an **NDS**)

a	Some people like smoking, **whereas** others don't like it.	Зарим хүмүүс тамхи татах дуртай байхад, харин зарим нь дургүй.	·· ·
b	The Germans *are good at football*, **whereas** the Mongolians *are good at wrestling.*	Германчууд хөл бөмбөг тоглохдоо сайн байхад, харин Монголчууд бөх барилдахдаа сайн.	·· ·
c	In Mongolia, meat *is very cheap*, **whereas** in Europe *it's very expensive.*	Монголд мах маш хямд байхад, харин Европт маш үнэтэй.	·· ·
d	In England, *it rains all the time*, **whereas** in Mongolia, *it only rains in summer.*	Англид үргэлж бороо ордог байхад, харин Монголд зөвхөн зуны цагт бороо ордог.	·· ·
e	The Chinese *eat rice* every day, **whereas** the Germans *eat* a lot of *bread.*	Хятад хүмүүс өдөр бүр цагаан будаа идэг байхад, харин Герман хүмүүс талх их идэг.	·· ·

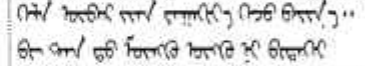
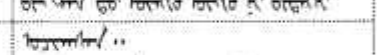
2.2.1.2.16 "байтугай" = "let alone; not to mention"

- connects ***predicate parts*** (**ex. a-b**) as well as ***non-predicate parts*** (**ex. c-d**)
- literal translation: 'may it be' (see page 183)
- only the second part of the sentence is declined (evident in **ex. c**)
- the СЬР "нь" has the function of a subject marker (see p. 372, 395)
- **similar expressions** in colloquial language: "биттгий хэл"/"бүү хэл"(**ex. e-f**)

a	Bat didn't meet the boss, **let alone** talked to him.	Бат даргатай ярих (нь) байтугай уулзаагүй байна.	
b	Does the storm calm down? **No way** does it calm down, it even increases!	Шуурга намдаж байна уу? Намдах нь байтугай ширүүсч байна.	
c	Post is delivered by plane to the 'sum' centres, **not to mention** the 'aimag' centres.	Шууданг аймгийн төв байтугай сумын төвд онгоцоор хүргэдэг.	
d	I drink no beer, **let alone** alcohol.	Би архи байтугай пиво уудаггүй.	
e	I can barely make life's ends meet, **let alone** give you money.	Би танд мөнгө өгөх (нь) биттгий хэл өөрөө яая гэж байна.	
f	He even went to America, **not to mention** Germany.	Тэр Германд бүү хэл Америкт очсон.	

2.2.1.2.17 "гэхдээ" = "but"

- connects ***predicate parts***
- very similar to гэвч (compare with page 302)

a	Dorj *plays* chess well, **but** he *doesn't take part* in competitions.	Дорж шатар сайн тоглодог, гэхдээ тэмцээнд ордоггүй.	
b	He *has offended* me many times, **but** I *don't think* badly about him.	Тэр намайг олон удаа гомдоосон, гэхдээ би муу юм боддоггүй.	

2.2.2 Subordinating Conjunctions

The subordinating conjunctions (Latin 'subordinare' = 'to subordinate') **connect a main clause with a subordinate clause.** The subordinate clause takes the **function of a part of the sentence** (e.g. subject clause, predicate clause, object clause, attribute clause, adverbial clause). Readers need to **pay special attention to the position** of the conjunction in the sentence as it is very different from English (see literal translation in the examples below).

Examples in English:

a) I knew ***that*** *he couldn't come.* (Main clause and *object clause)*
literal: *He come can not* ***that*** */* I knew.

b) Because *he was ill,* the meeting didn't take place. (Main clause and *adverbial clause)*
literal: *He sickness with* **because** */* meeting became not.

c) I will be here, ***until*** *I have finished my work.* (Main clause and *adverbial clause)*
literal: I *work of mine finish* ***until*** */* here be will.

In **Part IV** (page 359ff), we will talk in more detail about main and subordinate clauses, their functions, positions and peculiarities.

2.2.2.1 OVERVIEW OF SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Please read the explanation on page 297.
With this list, our main concern was to look at those words or analytical constructions that **serve as conjunctions today**. We'll not talk again about the **sVDS's** in general (page 161ff), but only consider those **sVDS's and postpositions that appear in an analytical construction**.

	Cyrillic	Classical	English
1	... гэ"	....	that
2	... "г гэж	....	so that
3	... эсэх	....	whether
4	... уу, үгүй юү гэдэг	....	whether ... or not
5	... юм шиг л	....	as if ...
6	... учир/...учраас	....	because ... Since ...
7	... тул	....	because ...
8	... "аас болж	....	because ... due to ...
9	... "хгүй + -(г)эр	....	without ... – ing ...
10	... "х гэж	....	(in order) to ...
11	... "х + -ын тулд	....	(in order) to ...
12	... "х + -ын өмнө	....	before ...
13	... "сан + -ы дараа	....	after ...
14	... "сан + -ы дагуу	....	the way ... according to ...
15	... "сан + -аас хойш	....	since ... after ...
16	... "х хүртэл	....	until ...
17	... байх үед ... "х + д ---> -хад	....	(at the time) when ...
18	... "х бүрд ... "х болгонд	....	each time ... every time ...
19	... "х + -тай зэрэг	....	the moment ... as soon as ...
20	... "(ж бай)х хооронд	....	while ...; before ...
21	... "х завсар ... "х зуур	....	in between ... while ...
22	(хэрэв)... -бал	( )....	if ...
23	(хэрэв)... "х тохиолдолд	( )	provided that ... in case that ...
24	(хэрэв) ... нөхцөлд	( )	under the condition that ... provided that ...
25	... хэдийгээр ... боловч	....	although ...
26	... "сан + -аар	....	the way ... / as ...

Page 311: "... болохоор"; Page 318: "... -х/-сан тухай/ талаар" *(added in 2nd edition)*

2.2.2.2 USAGE OF SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

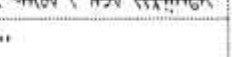
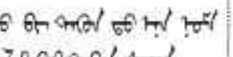
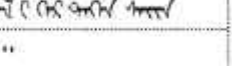
2.2.2.2.1 "гэ-" = "that"

- introduces **object clauses** or **attribute clauses** (**ex. d, i**)
- the English conjunction 'that' is expressed with the conjunction verb "гэ-"
- in **indirect speech**, usually "гэж" as a fixed form is used (**ex. a-b**)
- in **direct speech,** the conjunction "гэж" is used besides the quotation marks, because the verb has the original meaning 'to say', and therefore, the conjunction isn't omitted even if the 'that' is dropped in English (**ex.c**)
- if 'that' in English connects a subordinate clause with a main clause, the conjunction verb needs an **NDS** that can be declined; usually it is the NDS "–даг", thus forming "гэдэг" (**ex. d-i**)
- notice how **second hand information** is passed on to others (**ex. j-l**)

a	Dorj told me, **that** he would come tomorrow from the countryside.	Дорж маргааш хөдөөнөөс ирнэ гэж надад хэлсэн.	Дорж маргааш хөдөөнөөс ирнэ гэж надад хэлсэн.
b	I thought, **that** he might come to my home.	Түүнийг манай гэрт ирэх байх гэж би бодсон.	Би түүнийг манай гэрт ирэх байх гэж бодсон.
c	Someone shouted, "Help!"	«Туслаарай» гэж хэн нэгэн хүн хашгирсан.	«Туслаарай» гэж хэн нэгэн хүн хашгирсан.
d	What's the reason **that** he can't come?	Тэр ирж чадахгүй гэдгийн учир юу вэ?	Тэр ирж чадахгүй гэдгийн учир юу вэ?
e	I don't doubt **that** he can't come.	Тэр ирж чадахгүй гэдэг би эргэлзэхгүй байна.	Би түүнийг ирж чадахгүй гэдэг эргэлзэхгүй байна.
f	I knew **that** he couldn't come.	Тэр ирж чадахгүй гэдгийг би мэдэж байсан.	Би түүнийг ирж чадахгүй гэдгийг мэдэж байсан.
g	Everything depends **on whether** he can come or not.	Тэр ирж чадах уу, үгүй юу гэдгээс бүх юм шалтгаална.	Бүх юм түүнийг ирж чадах эсэхээс шалтгаална.
h	You have to get to know people **not by** what they say, **but by** what they do.	Хүнийг юу ярьж байна гэдгээр биш, юу хийж байна гэдгээр таних хэрэгтэй.	Хүнийг юу ярьж байна гэдгээр биш харин юу хийж байна гэдгээр таних хэрэгтэй.
i	I agree (**with** the opinion) **that** he can't do this.	Тэр үүнийг хийж чадахгүй гэдэгтэй би санал нэг байна.	Би түүнийг хийж чадахгүй гэдэгтэй санал нэг байна.
j	**I heard that** my friend has met his older brother.	Миний найз ахтайгаа уулзсан гэнэ.	Миний найз ахтайгаа уулзсан гэнэ.
k	I was **told**, **that** Dorj will come tomorrow.	Дорж маргааш ирнэ гэсэн.	Дорж маргааш ирнэ гэсэн.
l	I was **told that** Baatar does exercises every morning.	Баатар өдөр тутам биеийн тамир хийдэг гэлээ.	Баатар өдөр тутам биеийн тамир хийдэг гэлээ.

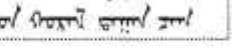
2.2.2.2.2 "–г гэж" = "so that"

- introduces **final clauses**
- compare with the meaning of the PTS "–г" (p. 181; *3rd person*) and "–х гэж" (p. 312)

a	The parents gave him the name 'Jargal' (happiness) **so that** *he* might be happy.	Эцэг эх нь түүнийг аз жаргалтай байг гэж түүнд "Жаргал" гэдэг нэр өгчээ.	
b	I gave *him* this book, **so that** *he* could study this topic well at home.	Энэ асуудлыг гэртээ сайн судлаг гэж би түүнд энэ номыг өгсөн.	
c	The invitations were handed out early, **so that** *the delegates* would come to their meeting in time.	Төлөөлөгчид хуралдаа цагтаа ирэг гэж урилгыг эрт тараасан.	

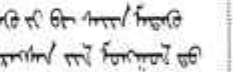
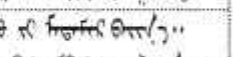
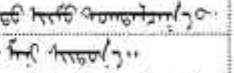
2.2.2.2.3 "эсэх" = "whether"

- introduces **subject clauses** (**ex. a**) or **object clauses** (**ex. b-c**)
- always takes an ***NDS*** (**ex. a-c**) or another *nominal element* (**ex. d**)
- could be declined, where necessary

a	It's not clear, **whether** he'll come tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш ирэх эсэх тодорхойгүй байна.	
b	I don't know exactly, **whether** she has been in Mongolia last year.	Тэр өнгөрсөн жил Монголд байсан эсэхий би сайн мэдэхгүй байна.	
c	I'd like to know **whether** there is such a system in Mongolia.	Би Монголд ийм тогтолцоо байдаг эсэхий мэдмээр байна.	
d	Our father will decide **whether** we must go tomorrow.	Бид нар маргааш явах ёстой эсэхий аав маань шийднэ.	

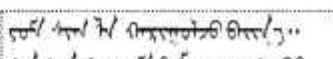
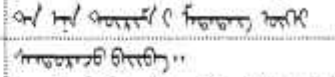
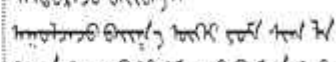
2.2.2.2.4 "... уу, үгүй юу гэдэг" = "whether ... or not"

- introduces **subject clauses** (**ex. a**) or **object clauses** (**ex. b-c**)
- always needs an ***NDS***
- could be declined where necessary

a	It's not clear, **whether** he came yesterday **or not.**	Тэр өчигдөр ирсэн уу, үгүй юу гэдэг тодорхойгүй байна.	
b	Please ask him, **whether** he can do this tomorrow **or not**.	Түүнээс маргааш үүнийг хийж чадах уу, үгүй юу гэдгий түүнээс асуугаарай.	
c	I don't know, **whether** there are such animals in Mongolia **or not**.	Ийм амьтан Монголд байдаг уу, үгүй юу гэдгий би мэдэхгүй.	

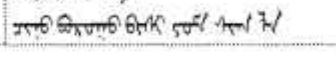
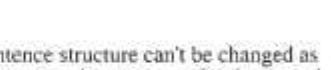
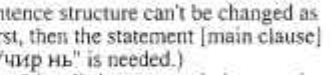
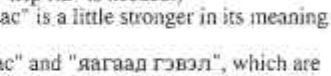
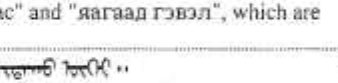
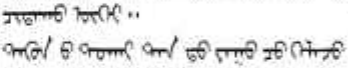
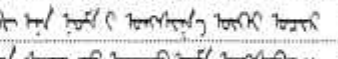
2.2.2.2.5 "юм шиг л" = "as if"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a-b)**

a	You're answering **as if** you don't know this rule.	Та энэ дүрмийг мэддэггүй юм шиг л хариулж байна.	
b	He was so nervous **as if** he had never met a woman before.	Тэр урьд нь эмэгтэй хүнтэй уулзаж байгаагүй юм шиг л сандарч байв.	
c	Don't behave **as if** you were innocent.	Чиний буруу биш юм шиг л битгий тэг.	

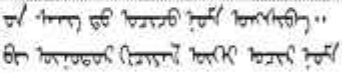
2.2.2.2.6 "учир ; учраас" = "because; since"

- introduces **causal clauses** (note that in Mongolian, the sentence structure can't be changed as in English. With "учир" or "учраас" the reason is said first, then the statement [main clause] follows. If one wants to write the main clause first, then "Учир нь" is needed.)
- "учир" and "учраас" can be used interchangeably; "учраас" is a little stronger in its meaning
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a, c-g)**
- compare with the conjunctions "учир нь", "тийм учраас" and "яагаад гэвэл", which are used, when the main clause comes first.

a	**Because** I haven't read this book, I can't tell you anything about it.	Би энэ номыг уншаагүй учир түүний тухай танд юу ч хэлж чадахгүй.	
b	**Because** I don't have school today, I went to the library and read a book.	Би өнөөдөр хичээлгүй учир номын санд очиж ном уншив.	
c	**Since** the tickets were sold out, I didn't see the film.	Билет дууссан учраас би кино үзсэнгүй.	
d	We couldn't go to the celebration **because** our babysitter didn't come.	Бидний хүүхдүүдийг хардаг эмэгтэй ирээгүй учраас бид нар баярт явж чадсангүй.	
e	**Because** the speaker got ill, the meeting didn't take place.	Илтгэгч өвдсөн учир хурал болсонгүй.	
f	I don't want to drink tea now **because** I drank a lot in the morning.	Би өглөө их цай уусан учир одоо цай уумаргүй байна.	
g	**Because** my father had a lot of work yesterday, he didn't meet me.	Өчигдөр аав их ажилтай байсан учир надтай уулзаагүй.	

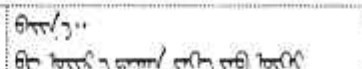
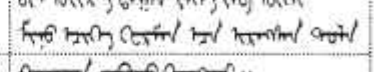
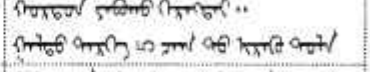
2.2.2.2.28 "болохоор" = "because; since" (added on later)

- introduces **causal clauses**
- always takes an ***NDS;*** can be used together with the RS.

a	**Because** I don't know Japanese I talked in Mongolian.	Би япон хэл мэдэхгүй болохоор монголоор ярьсан.	

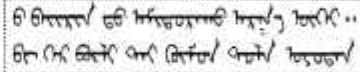
2.2.2.2.7 "тул" = "because"

- introduces **causal clauses**
- in function very similar to "учир"; the reason must be mentioned first
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a-b)**

a	**Because** my father came from Germany, I don't have much time these days.	Миний эцэг Германаас ирсэн тул би ойрдоо их завгүй байна.	
b	We have to go fast, **because** the train comes at 5 o'clock.	Галт тэрэг 5 цагт ирэх тул хурдан явах хэрэгтэй.	
c	**Because** I'm married, there's no way that I could live in the dormitory.	Би гэр бүлтэй хүн тул оюутны байранд амьдрах аргагүй.	

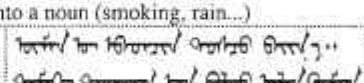
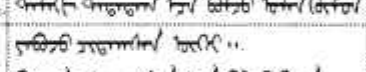
2.2.2.2.8 "-аас болж" = "due to"

- introduces **causal clauses** with a **negative** shade
- always takes an ***NDS*** **(ex. a-b)**
- in English, it's common to change the **predicate part** into a noun (smoking, rain...)

a	**Due to** smoking, many people are getting cancer.	Тамхи татдагаас болж олон хүн өмөн үү өвчин тусч байна.	
b	We couldn't go **due to** the rain.	Бороо орсноос болж бид явж чадсангүй.	

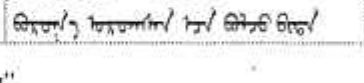
2.2.2.2.9 "-хгүй + -(г)ээр" = "without ...-ing"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- for affirmative sentences, compare with тул (p. 312) and the sVDS "-хаар" (p. 166).

a	We're able to finish this work **without** spend**ing** a lot of money.	Бид их мөнгө зарцуулахгүйгээр энэ ажлыг дуусгаж чадна.	
b	You can't learn a foreign language **without** study**ing** it well every day.	Гадаад хэлийг өдөр бүр үзэхгүйгээр сайн сурч чадахгүй.	
c	It's impossible to establish such a big factory **without** enlist**ing** foreign aid.	Гадаадын тусламж авахгүйгээр ийм том үйлдвэр байгуу-лах боломжгүй.	

2.2.2.2.10 "-х гэж" = "(in order) to"

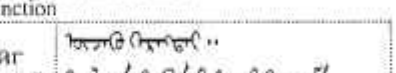
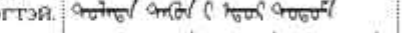
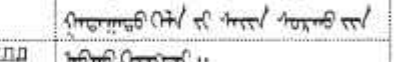
- introduces **final clauses**
- similar to the sVDS "-хаар" , which also expresses one **definite purpose**. The action is not continuing. Therefore, this conjunction is not used with verbs expressing a duration.
- only used with **common subjects**
- compare with the conjunction "-ын тулд" (p. 313), which is used for more **general statements** and can also be negated.
- compare with -г гэж (p. 310)

a	He went to America **to** learn English.	Тэр англи хэл сурах гэж Америк явсан.	

b	He came many times **in order to** meet you.	Тэр тантай уулзах гэж олон удаа ирсэн.	
c	I went to my friend's home **to** borrow money.	Би мөнгө зээллэх гэж найзындаа очив.	

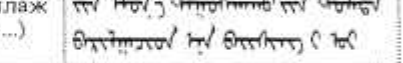
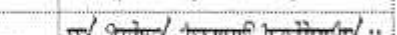
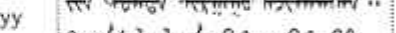
2.2.2.2.11 "–х + –ын тулд" = "(in order) to"

- introduces **final clauses**
- more general meaning (**ex. a-b**) than the sVDS"–хаар" (p. 166), which expresses a definite purpose. But sometimes the two conjunctions can hardly be differentiated (**ex. c**) In a negative sentence, "–хаар" can't be used even if the purpose is very definite (**ex. d**)
- always takes the future NDS "–х" to serve as a conjunction

a	**In order to** learn a foreign language well, you have to practise it every day.	Гадаад хэлийг сайн сурахын тулд түүнийг өдөр тутам үзэх хэрэгтэй.	
b	**In order to** come to Mongolia, you have to get a visa.	Монголд ирэхийн тулд виз авах хэрэгтэй.	
c	The construction workers are working day and night **in order to** finish this building before the anniversary.	Барилгачид энэ байшинг ойн өмнө дуусгахын тулд өдөр шөнөгүй ажиллаж байна.(.. дуусгахаар ...)	
d	He worked hard **to keep from** failing the exam. ("**in order** not **to**...")	Тэр шалгантанд унахгүйн тулд шургуу ажилласан.	

2.2.2.2.12 "–х + –ын өмнө" = "before"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- always takes the **future NDS** "–х" to serve as a conjunction, although the subordinate clause may be in the past (see **ex. a**)
- with **common subject,** the RS is used

a	**Before** we came to Mongolia, we didn't know Mongolian. ("**Before** our coming to Mongolia...")	Бид Монголд ирэхийнхээ өмнө монгол хэл мэддэггүй байсан.	
b	I brush my teeth in the evening **before** I go to sleep. ("**Before** my sleeping in the evening")	Би орой унтахынхаа өмнө шүдээ угаадаг.	
c	**Before** I go to the country-side I'll meet her. ("**Before** my going to the countryside...")	Би хөдөө явахынхаа өмнө түүнтэй уулзана.	

2.2.2.2.13 "–сан + –ы дараа" = "after"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- always takes the past *NDS* "–сан" to serve as a conjunction
- compare with "–санаас хойш"
- with **common subject,** the RS is used

a	**After** we came to Mongolia, we began to study Mongolian.	Бид Монголд ирсний-хээ дараа монгол хэл сурч эхэлсэн.	

b	**After** I get up in the morning, I do exercises.	Би өглөө боссоныхоо дараа биеийн тамир хийдэг	[illegible]
c	I'll meet you right **after** I get up tomorrow.	Би маргааш боссоныхоо дараа шууд тантай уулзана.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.14 "–сан + –ы дагуу" = "**the way; in accordance with**"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- always takes the ***past NDS*** "–сан" to serve as a conjunction
- very similar to "–санаар" (page 318) and "–сан(ы) ёсоор"

a	Everything happened **the way** I had thought it would.	Бүх юм миний бодож байсны дагуу болж өнгөрлөө.	[illegible]
b	(They) did this task **the way** the teacher had said.	Энэ даалгыг багшийнхаа хэлсний дагуу хийсэн.	[illegible]
c	The construction work finished in **accordance with** the time frame that had been given.	Барилгын ажил төлөвлөсний дагуу хугацаандаа дууссан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.15 "–сан + –аас хойш" = "**since; after**"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- the action of the subordinate clause indicates the **starting point of the time span**
- always takes the ***past NDS*** "–сан" to serve as a conjunction
- compare with "–саны дараа"(p. 313)

a	**Since** I saw you the last time, many years have passed.	Би тантай хамгийн сүүлд уулзсанаас хойш олон жил өнгөрчээ.	[illegible]
b	I haven't met him **since** we came to Mongolia.	Бид Монголд ирснээсээ хойш түүнтэй уулзаагүй.	[illegible]
c	One year **after** he got to know his wife, he married her.	Тэр эхнэртэйгээ танилцсанаас хойш нэг жилийн дараа гэр бүл болсон.	[illegible]
d	They lived many years in this town **after** the war was over.	Тэд нар дайн дууссанаас хойш олон жил энэ хотод амьдарсан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.16 "–х хүртэл" = "**until**"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- always takes the ***future NDS*** "–х" to serve as a conjunction
- very similar to the **limiting sVDS** "–тал" (p. 167)

a	I'll be here **until** I have finished my work.	Би ажлаа дуусах хүртэл энд байна.	[illegible]
b	We sat at the train station **until** the sun rose in the morning.	Бид галт тэрэгний буудал дээр өглөө нар мандах хүртэл суув.	[illegible]

c	**Until** you give me something, I won't go.	Чамайг надад юм өгөх хүртэл би явахгүй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.17 "байх үед; -х(а)д" = "**when; while**"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- "-х(а)д" is the short from of "байх үед". Only if the epoch ("үе") needs to be stressed, the conjunction "байх үед" is used (**ex. a-d**)
- with a **common subject,** the RS is used (**ex. d, i-j**) and the subject is in nominative and not in accusative case. In **ex.k** the RS is used on the object ("son"), which is also possible.

a	**While** you were sleeping at home, it was raining outside.	Чамайг гэртээ унтаж байх үед гадаа бороо орж байсан.	[illegible]
b	**When** I was ill, the children didn't do any homework.	Намайг өвчтэй байх үед хүүхдүүд ер гэрийн даалгавар хийгээгүй.	[illegible]
c	**When** Dorj was young, this young woman dated him often.	Доржийг залуу байх үед энэ хүүхэн байнга уулздаг байсан.	[illegible]
d	**When** I was young, I studied English very intensively.	Би залуу байх үедээ англи хэлийг шамдан сурсан.	[illegible]
e	**When** I entered the classroom, the students had (already) come.	Намайг анги орж ирэхэд оюутнууд ирчихсэн байв.	[illegible]
f	**When** he left his yurt, it was already dark. ("it was having become dark")	Түүнийг гэрээсээ гарахад гадаа харан-хуй болсон байлаа.	[illegible]
g	**When** I got up in the morning, it was already 9 o'clock.	Намайг өглөө босоход аль хэдийн 9 цаг болсон байв.	[illegible]
h	Father came, **when** we were just about to eat.	Биднийг хоолоо идэх гэж байхад аав ирлээ.	[illegible]
i	I got to know my wife, **while** I was a student.	Би оюутан байхдаа эх-нэртэйгээ танилцсан.	[illegible]
j	He will bring that other book, **when** he comes tomorrow.	Тэр маргааш ирэхдээ нөгөө номыг авчирна.	[illegible]
k	**When** her son came, Dulmaa was preparing a meal.	Хүүгээ ирэхэд Дулмаа хоол хийж байсан.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.18 "-х бүрд; -х болгонд" = "**each time**"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- "-х болгонд" is mainly used in the **colloquial** language
- with a **common subject,** the RS is used (**ex. b-d**)
- because the action is habitual, the *NDS* "-даг" is used.

a	**Each time** he comes to my home, I treat him to a nice meal.	Түүнийг манайд ирэх бүрд/ болгонд би амт-тай хоолоор дайлдаг.	[illegible]

b	**Each time** he meets me, he asks about you.	Тэр надтай уулзах бүрдээ / болгондоо чамайг асуудаг.	(Шийт/ бүтэн/) хүрэлт ирэхдээ/ .. энэ/ чи/ чи тухайгаа асуудаг
c	**Each time** I return to my homeland, I meet with my childhood friends.	Би нутагтаа очих бүрдээ / болгондоо багынхаа найз нартай уулздаг.	чи би .. (Шийт/ бүтэн/) би/ чи/ тэр/ төрөлх/ ёс ёсоор/ очдог/ найзтай уулздаг
d	**Each time** he came to school, he took a taxi.	Тэр хичээлдээ очих бүрдээ / болгондоо таксигаар ирдэг байсан.	явдаг/ .. (Шийт/ бүтэн/) сургуульд би такси/ явдаг/ сургуульдаа/ очдог байсан

2.2.2.2.19 "–х + –тай зэрэг" = "as soon as; the moment ..."

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- the word "зэрэг" means 'at the same time' and indicates the **main idea** of this conjunction: two actions happen **at the same time** or **shortly after each other**
- similar to the **sVDS** "–маг" (p. 164) which demands an immediate succession of actions
- with a **common subject,** the RS is used(**ex. d**)

a	**The moment** we sat down, the meeting started.	Биднийг суухтай зэрэг л хурал эхлэв.	эхлэв/ .. бидэнд/ с хэлэлцэх/ ажил/ суухад/
b	**As soon as** he leaves, all work will come to a standstill.	Түүнийг явахтай зэрэг бүх ажил унтарна.	унтарна/ .. ажил/ с гарах/ бүх/ ажил/
c	Please tell me **as soon as** your father comes.	Аавыгаа ирэхтэй зэрэг надад хэлээрэй.	хэлээрэй .. аав/ с би/ ирэх/ ажил/ гарах/ бо
d	**Whenever she happens to** see me she rattles away.	Тэр надтай уулзахтайгаа зэрэг хамаг юмаа тоочдог.	гарах/ бүгд/ гарах/ би/ харагдах/ .. энэ/ чи/ ирэх/ ажил/ гарах/

2.2.2.2.20 "–(ж бай)х хооронд" = "while; before"

- introduces **temporal clauses**
- when used with the progressive tense "–ж бай–", it indicates a progressive action (**ex. a-d**)
- with a **common subject**, the RS is used (**ex. d**)
- when used in the form "–х хооронд", the action is still in the **future** and hasn't or couldn't take place yet

a	**While** it **was** raining, I did my homework.	Бороо орж байх хооронд би гэрийнхээ даалгаврыг хийсэн.	ирэх/ тэр/ хичээлээ/ хийсэн/ үү /бичих/ .. бороо/ орох/ үүлэрхэг/ өдөр/
b	A thief stole two expensive coats from our flat **while** we **were** watching a video.	Биднийг видео үзэж байх хооронд хулгайч гэрээс 2 үнэтэй дээл авчихжээ.	хулгай/ .. хулгайч/ гэрээс/ 2/ үнэтэй/ дээл/ авах/ үүдэ/
c	**While** we **were** living in Mongolia, many things changed in Germany.	Биднийг Монголд амьдарч байх хооронд Германд их юм өөрчлөгджээ.	.. германд/ сүүлд/ ер/ их/ юм/ өөрчлөгдөх/ бидэнд/
d	**While** he **was** talking, he smoked.	Тэр ярьж байх хооронд тамхи татсан.	.. ярих/ тамхи/ татах/

e	**Before** I could give him the medicine, he died.	Намайг түүнд эм өгөх хооронд тэр нас барсан.	[illegible]
f	**Before** I could ask her, she wept.	Намайг юм асуух хооронд тэр уйлчихсан.	[illegible]
g	**Before** our parents come, we have to tidy up the flat.	Эзэж аав хоёрыг ирэх хооронд бид гэрээ янзлах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.21 "-х завсар; ... -х зуур" = "besides; while"

- introduces **temporal clauses**; literal translation 'in the.... gap/break of'
- compare with the "-х хооронд" (page 316) and the **sVDS** "-ингаа" (p. 171)

a	**Besides** having a job, I'm studying Mongolian. ("**In the gap of** doing my main work...")	Би үндсэн ажлаа хийх завсар монгол хэл сурч байна.	[illegible]
b	**While** he had been in the countryside, we moved into a new flat. ("**In the gap of** his going to the countryside and coming back ...")	Түүнийг хөдөө яваад ирэх завсар манайх шинэ байр-ранд орсон.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2.22 "(Хэрэв) ... -бал/-вал" = "if"

- introduces **conditional clauses**
- compare with the **conditional sVDS** "-вал" (p. 161)
- the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**If** you send your letter now, he'll receive it in 2 days.	(Хэрэв)та захиагаа одоо явуулбал тэр 2 өдрийн дараа түүнийг авна.	[illegible]
b	**If** you meet her, please ask her about this.	(Хэрэв) та түүнтэй уулзвал энэ тухай түүнээс асуугаарай.	[illegible]
c	**If** you go to the department store tomorrow, please buy me 1 kg of butter.	(Хэрэв) чи маргааш их дэлгүүрт очвол надад 1 кило цөцгийн тос аваарай.	[illegible]

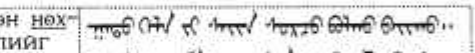
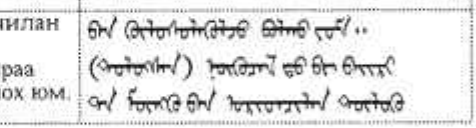
2.2.2.2.23 "(Хэрэв) ... -х тохиолдолд" = "provided that; in case"

- introduces **conditional clauses**
- very similar to -бал (above), but stronger in its meaning
- more used for **single situations** and not for general statements
- the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**Provided that** you give this book back on Monday, I'll loan it to you.	(Хэрэв) та энэ номыг нэгдэх өдөр буцааж өгөх тохиолдолд би түүнийг танд түр өгч болох юм.	[illegible]
b	**In case** you can't come, please call me well ahead.	(Хэрэв) чи ирж чадахгүй тохиолдолд над руу цаг тухайд нь утсаар ярианай.	[illegible]

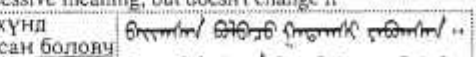
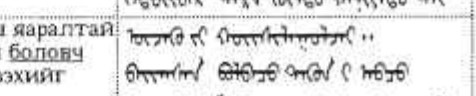
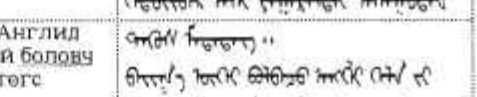
2.2.2.2.24 "(Хэрэв) ..нөхцөлд" = "provided that; under the condition that"

- introduces **conditional clauses**
- often used in official language
- the word "хэрэв (хэрвээ)" **intensifies** the meaning, but doesn't change it
- always used with an ***NDS***

a	**Provided that** one studies every day, one can probably learn a foreign language well.	Өдөр тутам үзсэн нөхцөлд гадаад хэлийг сайн сурч болох байх.	
b	**Under the condition that** you pay the money in advance, I will be able to rent my flat.	Та мөнгөө урьдчилан төлөх/төлсөн нөхцөлд би байраа хөлслүүлж болох юм.	

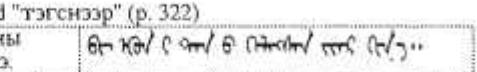
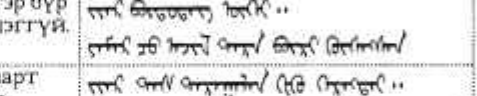
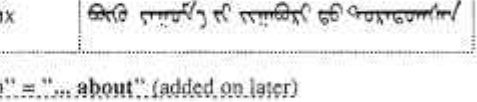
2.2.2.2.25 "Хэдийгээр ... боловч" = "although"

- introduces **concessive clauses**
- compare with the **concessive sVDS** "-вч" (p. 162)
- the word "хэдийгээр" **intensifies** the concessive meaning, but doesn't change it

a	**Although** he had a severe cold, he went outside.	Хэдийгээр тэр хүнд ханиадтай байсан боловч гадагш явсан.	
b	**Although** it was a very pressing problem, the discussion about it was postponed.	Хэдийгээр маш яаралтай асуудал байсан боловч түүнийг авч үзэхийг хойшлуулжээ.	
c	**Although** she has never been to England, she knows English perfectly.	Хэдийгээр тэр Англид очиж байгаагүй боловч англи хэлийг төгс мэддэг.	

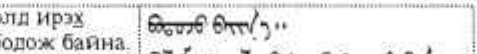
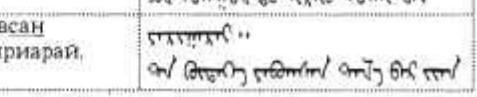
2.2.2.2.26 "-сан + -аар" = "the way; as"

- introduces **modal clauses**
- very similar to "-саны дагуу" (p. 314) and "тэгснээр" (p. 322)

a	I will do it **the way** you said.	Би үүнийг таны хэлснээр хийнэ.	
b	Work is not always carried out **the way** you want it to be.	Ямар ч ажил тэр бүр хүссэнээр бүтдэггүй.	
c	You have to do everything in order, **as** mentioned in the instructions.	Бүх юмыг зааварт дурдсанаар дэс дараа-лан хийх хэрэгтэй.	

2.2.2.2.27 "-х/-сан тухай/. талаар" = "... about" (added on later)

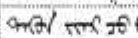
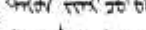
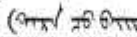
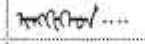
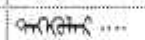
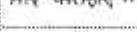
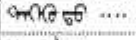
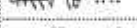
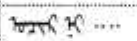
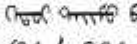
- introduces **object clauses**
- always takes the ***past or future NDS*** "-сан / -х"
- with common subjects the RS appears

a	Paul is thinking **about** coming to Mongolia.	Пол Монголд ирэх тухайгаа бодож байна.	
b	Please talk **about** your trip to the countryside. ("**about** your having gone ...")	Та хөдөө явсан талаараа ярианаа.	

2.2.3 Proword-Conjunctions

All of the following conjunctions contain a **proword** (mostly a demonstrative proword). That's why we call them 'proword-conjunctions'. Such conjunctions **refer to something which was mentioned before** (either one or more sentences). Therefore, such conjunctions are usually **placed at the beginning** of a new sentence. The only conjunction in this group that doesn't contain a demonstrative proword, is "учир нь". But the "нь" also refers to something mentioned before ("the reason *for it being* ...")

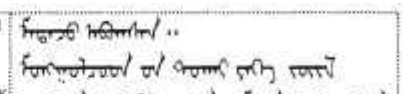
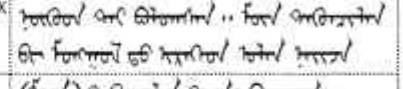
2.2.3.1 OVERVIEW OF PROWORD-CONJUNCTIONS

1	Мөн түүнчлэн ...	....	.... Moreover, ... and also ...
2	Түүнээс гадна...	....	.... Besides, ...
3	Түүгээр ч барахгүй ... (Тэр ч байтугай ...)	 .... 	.... Furthermore, ... On top of **that,** ...
4	Тэгээд ... Ингээд ...		.... Then ... . After **that** ... . And **so** ...
5	Тэгэхлээр ... Ингэхлээр...	....	.... Consequently, ...
6	Тэгсэнээр ... Ингэснээр ...	 .... 	.... By doing **this/that,** ... . As a result of **this/that,** ...
7	Эс тэгвэл ...	....	.... Otherwise ... . If not, ...
8	Тэгэхэд ...	....	.... "As ... doing that..."
9	Тийнхүү ...	....	.... Thus, ...
10	Тийм учраас ...		.... That's (the reason) why ... . For **this/that** reason, ...
11	Учир нь ...		... for ... ... because ...
12	Тийм болохоор...		.... Therefore, ...
13	Хэдий тийм болович ... (гэсэн ч гэсэн ...) (тэглээ ч гэсэн ...)	.... 	.... Nevertheless, ... Despite **this/that**, ...
14	Нөгөө талаас ...	....	.... On the **other** hand, ...
15	Яагаад гэвэл...		.... The reason for this is, ... for ...; ... because ...
16	Тэгсэн чинь ...	....	.... But, you know, ...

2.2.3.2 USAGE OF PROWORD-CONJUNCTIONS

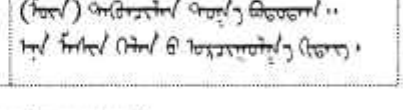
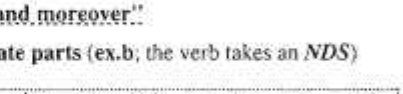
2.2.3.2.1 "(Мөн) түүнчлэн" = "Moreover; ... and also"

- usually connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**)
- when it connects two **predicate parts**, the verb takes an *NDS* and, instead of a period, there is a comma (**ex.b**)
- compare with p. 301 (non-predicate parts)

a	I came to Mongolia and made a lot of friends. **Moreover,** I learned many things about Mongolians.	Би Монголд ирээд олон найз нөхөдтэй болсон. Мөн түүнчлэн монголчуудын тухай их зүйл мэдэж авсан.	
b	This machine does language translations **and also** solves math problems.	Энэ машин хэлний орчуулга хийдэг, (мөн) түүнчлэн тоо боддог.	

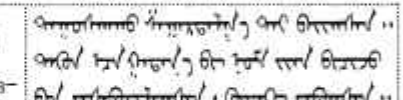
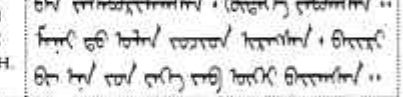
2.2.3.2.2 "Түүнээс гадна" = "Besides; ... and moreover"

- connects either two sentences (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex.b**; the verb takes an *NDS*)
- literal translation: 'outside of that'

a	This summer I was very busy. Many guests came to my home, I renovated my apartment, and I went to the countryside. **Besides,** I was required to finish writing my book.	Би энэ зун их завгүй байсан. Манайд олон зочид ирсэн, байраа засварласан, хөдөө явсан. Түүнээс гадна би номоо бичиж дуусгах шаардлагатай байсан.	
b	Because he had slept badly, **and moreover,** he hadn't eaten proper food, he looked tired all day long.	Тэр муу унтсан, түүнээс гадна олигтой хоол идээгүй учраас бүтэн өдоржин ядруу харагдсан.	

2.2.3.2.3 "Түүгээр ч барахгүй" = "Furthermore"

- connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex. b-c**; the verb takes an *NDS*)
- literal translation: 'by *that* it doesn't end'
- note the similar conjunction "тэр ч байтугай", which is even stronger in its meaning(**ex. d**); compare with page 307

a	I saw the president a couple of times. **Furthermore,** I met him once.	Би ерөнхийлөгчийг хэд хэдэн удаа харсан. Түүгээр ч барахгүй би нэг удаа түүнтэй уулзсан.	
b	I know him well, because I worked together with him for many years, and **furthermore,** I live in the same building.	Би түүнтэй олон жил хамт ажилласан, түүгээр ч барахгүй бид нар нэг байранд амьдардаг тул би түүнийг сайн мэднэ.	

c	Because he slept badly **and on top of that** hasn't eaten anything, it's no wonder he is tired.	Тэр муу унтсан, түүгээр ч барахгүй өгт хоол идээгүй учраас ядрах нь аргагүй.	[illegible]
d	He came to Mongolia and is living just like a Mongolian. **On top of that,** he took a Mongolian as his wife.	Тэр Монголд ирээд яг монгол хүн шиг амьдарч байна. Тэр ч байтугай монгол эхнэр авсан.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.4 "Тэгээд; Ингээд" = "Then; After that"

- always connects **two sentences**
- has either a **temporal** meaning (**ex. a-b**) or expresses that a particular situation is made use of (**ex. c-d**)
- literal translation: '(someone) does so and then' (compare with the sVDS "–аад": p. 159)

a	Yesterday I worked until very late. **Then** I went straight to bed.	Би өчигдөр маш орой болтол ажилласан. Тэгээд шууд унтсан.	[illegible]
b	Tomorrow I'll go together with my friend to a shop. **After that,** we both will eat at the Ulaanbaatar Hotel.	Би маргааш найзтайгаа хамт дэлгүүр явна. Тэгээд бид хоёр Улаанбаатар зочид буудалд хоол иднэ.	[illegible]
c	Yesterday I went together with my friend to a shop. **And so** we bought everything we needed.	Би өчигдөр найзтайгаа хамт дэлгүүрт очсон. Тэгээд бид хоёр бүх шаардлагатай зүйлээ худалдаж авсан.	[illegible]
d	Yesterday evening he came to my house. **And so** we chatted about the good old days until the wee hours.	Тэр өчигдөр орой манай гэрт ирсэн. Тэгээд бид хоёр шөнө дөл болтол хууч хөөрсөн.	[illegible]

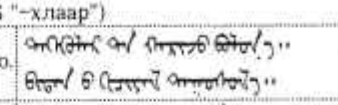
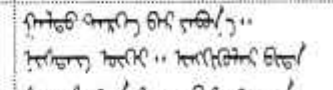
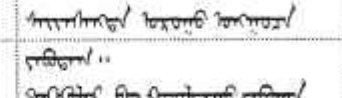
2.2.3.2.16 "Тэгсэн чинь" = "But, you know, .../ And then?" (added later on)

- always connects **two sentences**
- has a **temporal** meaning and also expresses that the 2nd action happened unexpectedly considering the first action.
- used to encourage others to keep on talking (e.g. after interruption) "Тэгсэн чинь?"

a	Yesterday I put my book here. **But, you know,** today it's not here.	Би өчигдөр номоо энд тавьсан. Тэгсэн чинь өнөөдөр байхгүй байна.	[illegible]
a	Yesterday I worked until very late. **But, you know,** I don't feel tired today.	Би өчигдөр маш орой болтол ажилласан. Тэгсэн чинь өнөөдөр ядрахгүй байна.	[illegible]

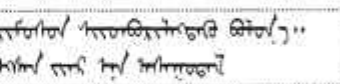
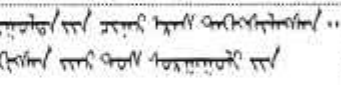
2.2.3.2.5 "Тэгэхлээр ; Ингэхлээр" = "**Consequently**"

- connects **two sentences**
- literal translation: 'by doing it so' (compare with the sVDS "~хлаар")

a	Our lesson is over. **Consequently,** you may go home.	Бидний хичээл дууслаа. Тэгэхлээр та харьж болно.	
b	There are no planes flying to Sainshand. **Consequently,** we'll go by train.	Сайншанд руу онгоц нисдэггүй. Ингэхлээр бид галт тэргээр явна.	
c	Our house is close to the school. **Consequently,** I walk there most of the time.	Манайх сургуульд ойрхон. Тэгэхлээр би голдуу явган явдаг.	

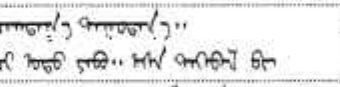
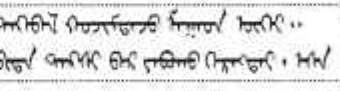
2.2.3.2.6 "Тэгснээр ; Ингэснээр" = "**By doing this/that**"

- connects a **longer paragraph** with a sentence.
- literal translation: 'by having done so'

a	**By doing that,** this problem will be solved once and for all.	Тэгснээр энэ асуудал бүрмөсөн шийдвэрлэгдэх болно.	
b	**As a result of this,** the teaching quality of that particular school improved considerably.	Ингэснээр тус сургуулийн сургалтын чанар эрс дээшилсэн.	

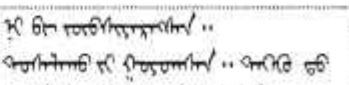
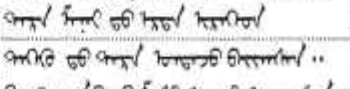
2.2.3.2.7 "Эс тэгвэл" = "**Otherwise; If not**"

- connects **two sentences** (**ex. a**) or two **predicate parts** (**ex.b**)
- literal translation: 'if (one) doesn't do this/that'
- compare with "эсвэл"

a	Go now. **Otherwise** I'll call the police.	Чи одоо яв. Эс тэгвэл би цагдаа дуудна.	
b	We have to take a taxi. **If not,** we'll probably be late.	Бид таксигаар явах хэрэгтэй. Эс тэгвэл хожимдож магадгүй.	

2.2.3.2.8 "Тэгэхэд" = "**As ... doing that**"

- connects **two sentences**
- the literal translation 'as ... doing that' is very clumsy in English. We would make one sentence instead, with a *clause expressing the* "тэгэ~".
- compare with "~хад" ('when'; 'as'; see p. 315)

a	**When** *he came to my home early and asked for help,* I agreed.	Тэр манайд эрт ирээд туслахыг гуйсан. Тэгэхэд нь би зөвшөөрсөн.	
b	**When** *I went very late to his home,* he was sleeping.	Би тэднийд маш орой очсон. Тэгэхэд тэр унтаж байсан.	

2.2.3.2.9 "Тийнхүү; Ийнхүү" = "Thus"

- connects a **longer paragraph** (more than one sentence) with a final statement sentence; but sometimes the conjunction has just the function of filling a gap

a	**Thus**, I spent my summer vacation in a very nice and funny way.	Ийнхүү би зуныхаа амралтыг маш хөгжөөнтэй сайхан өнгөрөөсөн.	[illegible]
b	**Thus**, at the end of a long discussion, they decided to go.	Тийнхүү удаан ярилцсаны эцэст тэд явахаар шийдсэн.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.10 "Тийм учраас" = "That's (the reason) why"

- connects usually **two sentences** or two whole **paragraphs**
- literal translation: 'from that reason'

a	Yesterday my car broke down. **That's why** I couldn't go to 'Nalaikh'.	Өчигдөр миний машин эвдэрсэн. Тийм учраас би Налайх явж чадаагүй.	[illegible]
b	Some children have beaten up my son. **For that reason,** he doesn't like to go to school any longer.	Зарим хүүхэд хүүг минь зодсон. Тийм учраас тэр сургуульдаа явах дургүй болсон.	[illegible]
c	I don't have school today. **That's why** I went to the library and read a book.	Би өнөөдөр хичээлгүй. Тийм учраас номын санд очиж ном уншив.	[illegible]
d	In shop No.1, there was no bread. **For that reason,** Dulmaa went to the department store.	[illegible]

2.2.3.2.11 "Учир нь" = "for; because"

- structurally, it connects **two sentences**, but it often appears after a comma, thus connecting **two predicate parts** (**ex. c-d**).
- compare with "учир" where the reason is mentioned first, whereas with "учир нь", the reason comes second (in the clause), like with "Яагаад гэвэл"
- the "нь" refers to the first (part of the) sentence (=statement) and could be translated with "(the reason) **for this being**".
- because the sentence or predicate part before this conjunction is complete, verbs with a ***TTS*** are used (e.g. "-на" in **ex. d-e**)

a	I can't do this now **because** I don't have time.	Би үүнийг одоо хийж чадахгүй. Учир нь би их завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	I can't tell you anything about this book **because** I haven't read it.	Би энэ номын тухай танд юу ч хэлж чадахгүй. Учир нь би түүнийг уншаагүй.	[illegible]
c	Today I went to the library and read a book, **for** we didn't have school.	Би өнөөдөр номын санд очиж ном уншсан, учир нь манайх хичээлгүй байсан.	[illegible]

2.3.2.1.2 Interrogative Particle "уу[2]/ юу[2]"

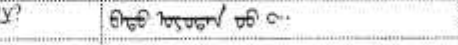
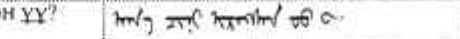
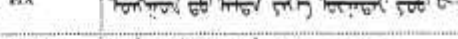
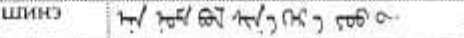
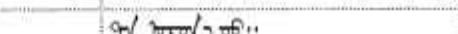
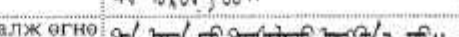
In the heading, we put 'particle' in singular, for although there are 4 forms altogether, it is in fact **one** particle, the sound "уу/ үү". But being a vowel, this particle sometimes needs an *inserted* "ю". In Cyrillic, there are two versions each, to **comply with vowel harmony** ("уу/ юу" and "үү/ юү"). In Classical Script, there are just the two versions and .

Thus, the following rule:

☛	**after long vowels and diphthongs**	---> юу/ юү
	after everything else	---> уу/ үү

This particle can be used to **express a polite request** and has its equivalent in English (ex. **i-j**). Notice the usage of this particle in the conjunction "...уу, үгүй юү" (**ex. k-l**).

Examples: (long vowels and diphthongs *in italics*)

a	Do you have bread at home?	Танайд талх байна уу?	
b	Is Bat a student?	Бат оюутан уу?	
c	Is Bat a doctor?	Бат эмч үү?	
d	Did your older brother come?	Ах чинь ирсэн үү?	
e	Are there books here?	Энд ном байгаа юу?	
f	Is this a pencil?	Энэ харандаа юу?	
g	Is gold very expensive in Mongolia?	Монголд алт их үнэтэй юү?	
h	Is this book the 'Shine Geree' (=New Testament)?	Энэ ном бол шинэ гэрээ юү?	
i	Would you please come in.	Та орно уу.	
j	Would you help me, please?	Та надад тусалж өгнө үү.	
k	Did he come or not?	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юү?	
l	I don't know **whether** he came **or not**.	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юү гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	

2.3.2.2 NEGATIVE PARTICLES

A sentence is turned from an affirmative into a negative sentence with the negative particles. Most of these particles are true particles and don't have any lexical meaning in themselves. But some (e.g. "үгүй, биш") could also be used as a **one-word sentence** and have some lexical meaning (e.g. 'No' as a reply to a question). Nevertheless, we have included them to the particles.

The negative particles could be divided into the following two subgroups (see also page 326):
- **postpositional** negative particles: they always follow **after** the word they negate
- **prepositional** negative particles: they always stand **before** the word they negate

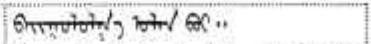
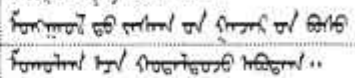
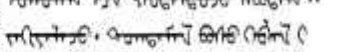
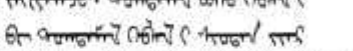
2.3.2.2.1 Negative Particle "биш"

It follows after ***nouns*** (**ex. a-c**), ***adjectives*** (**ex. d-g**), ***other parts of speech that serve as a noun*** (**ex. h-i**) or ***verb with an NDS*** (**ex. j-k**). Therefore it can be declined (**ex. l-m**). As an answer to a question, it can be used by itself (**ex. n**), and, by stressing the **final vowel** (only evident in Classical Script), its meaning is intensified (**ex. o**). The combination "биш" + "үү" = "бишүү" has an intensifying (**ex. p**) and sometimes even warning (**ex. q**) meaning. Notice the special usage together with the word "ямар" (**ex. r-t**).

a	This is **not** *a table*.	Энэ – ширээ биш.	[illegible]
b	I'm **not** *a teacher*, I am a student.	Би багш биш, оюутан байна.	[illegible]
c	I'm **not** *the person* responsible for this.	Би үүнийг хариуцдаг хүн биш.	[illegible]
d	I **don't** find this film very interesting. ("To me this film is of **no** great interest.")	Энэ кино надад их сонирхолтой биш байна.	[illegible]
e	I don't like him. ("I am **not** good to him.")	Би түүнд сайн биш.	[illegible]
f	My flat is **not** very far from here.	Манай гэр эндээс их хол биш.	[illegible]
g	Nowadays, you can see many **non**-Mongolians in the streets of Ulaanbaatar.	Улаанбаатарын гудамжинд монгол биш хүмүүс их үзэгдэх болжээ.	[illegible]
h	No, this is **not** *mine*.	Үгүй, энэ миний биш.	[illegible]
i	I speak German, **not** *Mongolian*.	Би монголоор биш, германаар ярьдаг хүн.	[illegible]
j	Mother doesn't just *sit* around, so make your meal yourself!	Ээж зүгээр суугаа биш, чи өөрөө хоол хий.	[illegible]
k	I **don't** *read* your books, so how should I know?	Би чиний ном уншдаг биш, яаж мэдэх юм бэ?	[illegible]
l	This book is not only an **un***interesting*, but also a totally unnecessary book.	Энэ бол сонирхолтой бишээр барахгүй шал хэрэггүй ном.	[illegible]
m	We didn't know that he doesn't like candies. ("...that he isn't with *pleasure* in candies.")	Түүний чихэрт дуртай бишийг бид нар мэдэхгүй байсан.	[illegible]
n	-Is that your *book*? -**No**.	–Тэр чиний ном уу? –Биш.	[illegible]
o	-Are you *Professor Dorj*? -**No, no**.	–Та профессор Дорж мөн үү? –Бишээ.	[illegible]
p	That's how it is! ("Is it **not** so?")	Ийм бишүү. (Ийм шүү дээ)	[illegible]
q	He came! ("Didn't he come?")	Тэр ирсэн бишүү.	[illegible]
r	***But*** he isn't Mongolian! How should he understand this?	Тэр ямар монгол хүн биш, үүнийг яаж ойлгох вэ дээ.	[illegible]
s	You're **not** believing me ***at all***!	Чи ямар надад итгэдэг биш дээ.	[illegible]
t	They're **not** the ones to ***ever*** give you money!	Тэд нар чамд ямар нэг мөнгө өгдөг биш дээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.2 Negative Particle "бус"

This particle has more **lexical** than grammatical meaning and serves almost like a derivational suffix. It is always added after *nouns* or *adjectives*. In English, the following lexical meanings can be expressed with this particle: **non**-smoker, **ill***egal*, **un***interesting*, **extra***ordinary*, etc. It can be declined (**ex. c**) and is widely used in literature.

a	In Mongolia there are many **non**-government organizations.	Монголд засгийн газрын бус байгууллага олон бий.	
b	I subscribe to the periodical publications through the post office, the **non**-periodical publications I buy at the kiosk.	Би тогтмол хэвлэлийг шуудангаар захиалж, тогтмол бус хэвлэлийг мухлагаас худалдаж авдаг.	
c	He lived abroad **ill***egally* for many years.	Тэр гадаад оронд олон жил хууль бусаар амьдарч байсан.	
d	Recently, that organization held its **extra**ordinary congress.	Саяхан тус байгууллага зэлжит бус их хурлаа хийв.	
e	You know, all of us are **non**-party members.	Бид бүгдээрээ намын гишүүн бус хүмүүс билээ.	

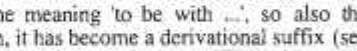
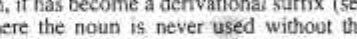
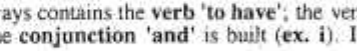
2.3.2.2.3 Negative Particle "(ү)гүй"

This particle has two main functions:

2.3.2.2.3.1 After Nouns

When the particle "–гүй" appears with a ***noun***, then it is translated as '**to be without** ...'. In the same way as the "–тай" suffix sometimes expresses the meaning 'to be with ...', so also the particle "–гүй" can express 'to be without'. In this function, it has become a derivational suffix (see page 50, No.2). This becomes very evident in **ex. g**, where the noun is never used without the particle "гүй".
When the English translation is '**no**', then the sentence always contains the **verb 'to have'**; the verb 'to be' demands the particle "биш"! With this particle, the **conjunction 'and'** is built (**ex. i**). In **poetry**, this particle is usually used **unshortened** (**ex. j**).

(nouns *in italics)*

a	I have **no** *time*. ("I'm being **without** *time*.")	Би завгүй байна.	
b	I have **no** *desire*. ("I'm being **without** *desire*.")	Би хүсэлгүй байна.	
c	I don't like 'bansh'-soup. (I'm **without** *pleasure* in 'bansh'-soup.")	Би банштай шөлөнд дургүй.	
d	I don't need bread. ("I'm **without** *necessity* of bread.")	Надад талх хэрэггүй.	
e	It musn't be that way! ("Such being **without** a *law*.")	Ийм байх ёсгүй!	
f	It's impossible for me to meet him. ("I **am without** *the possibility* of meeting him.")	Би түүнтэй уулзах боломжгүй.	
g	I did this accidentally. ("I did this **without** *thinking*.")	Би үүнийг санамсаргүйгээр хийсэн.	

h	What an unlucky person I am! ("person **without** *luck*")	Би ямар азгүй хүн бэ!	[illegible]
i	I worked day **and** night.	Би өдөр шөнөгүй ажилласан.	[illegible]
j	**To be without** *knowledge* is this life's suffering.	Эрдэм үгүй бол энэ насны зовлон.	[illegible]

2.3.2.2.3.2 After Verbs

The verbs always demand an NDS. These suffixes can either have the funcion of a **TTS** (**ex. a-g**), or they can serve as attributes (**ex. h-i**).
Note that this particle **is no true particle**, because it has a lexical meaning ('**absence, lack**'). Therefore it can be declined (**ex. j**). Together with *certain verbs, it can build* **new verbs**:
"үгүй бай–" = to be absent (**ex. k**)
"үгүй хий–" = to spend, to use up, to destroy (**ex. l**)
"үгүй бол–" =to die (**ex. m**).
The **unshortened** particle can be used by itself, meaning 'to not be, to not exist; no' (**ex. n-p**).
The expression "... –гүй (бол) болохгүй" can be translated as 'must' (**ex. q**).
Notice that this particle is used to build the **conjunction** 'whether ... or not' (**ex. r**).

a	He did**n't** come yesterday.	Тэр очигдөр ирсэнгүй.	[illegible]
b	I couldn't do this.	Би үүнийг хийж чадсангүй.	[illegible]
c	My older brother has**n't** left for the countryside.	Манай ах хөдөө явсангүй.	[illegible]
d	Smoking is **not** allowed here.	Энд тамхи татаж болохгүй.	[illegible]
e	I will probably never learn Chinese.	Би хятад хэлийг хэзээ ч сурэхгүй байх.	[illegible]
f	Don't you have bread?	Чамд талх байхгүй юу?	[illegible]
g	I don't get up early.	Би эрт босдоггүй.	[illegible]
h	People who don't smoke get few illnesses.	Тамхи татдаггүй хүнд өвчин бага туссаг.	[illegible]
i	There is no benefit in talking again and again to someone who doesn't understand me. ("No matter how often I talk with a person that doesn't understand me, it's without benefit.")	Намайг ойлгохгүй хүнтэй би хичнээн ярилаа ч нэмэргүй.	[illegible]
j	Many people came to my home in my **absence**.	Миний үгүйд олон хүн манайд очсон.	[illegible]
k	He *was* **absent** in yesterday's meeting.	Очигдрийн цуглаан дээр тэр үгүй байв.	[illegible]
l	We *spent* all our money within a few days.	Бид хэдхэн хоногийн дотор бүх мөнгөө үгүй хийсэн.	[illegible]

m	In the year of the Pig, the Great Khaan **deceased.**	Гахай жил Их Хаан үгүй болов.	ᠪᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠵᠢᠯ ᠤᠨ ᠲᠤᠮᠤᠨ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠠᠭᠠᠨ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠ᠃
n	**There is not** one person whatsoever who doesn't like money.	Мөнгөнд дургүй хүн нэг ч үгүй. (нэг ч байхгүй)	ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠳᠤᠷᠢᠭᠤᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠨᠢᠭᠡ ᠴᠢ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ᠃ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠪᠤᠷ ᠠᠪᠠᠬᠤ ᠳᠤᠷᠲᠠᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ
o	-Do you have a family? -**No**.	-Та гэр бүлтэй юү? -Үгүй.	- ᠲᠠ ᠭᠡᠷ ᠪᠦᠯᠲᠡᠶ ᠦᠤ᠃ - ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠪᠢᠳᠡᠨ ᠠᠪᠠᠬᠤ ᠲᠠᠢ ᠵᠠᠪ ᠃
p	-Do you speak Mongolian? -Oh, **no**!	-Та монголоор ярьдаг уу? -Үгүй дээ.	- ᠲᠠ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯᠤᠷ ᠤᠤ᠃ - ᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠳᠡᠭᠡᠭᠦᠷ ᠵᠠᠪ ᠃
q	I **must** go now.	Би яваҳгүй (бол) болохгүй.	ᠪᠢ ᠳᠥᠩ ᠬᠤᠭᠤᠴᠠᠭᠠ ᠪᠤᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠ᠃
r	I don't know whether he came or **not.**	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юү гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй.	ᠡᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠦᠤ ᠦᠭᠡᠢ ᠶᠤᠤ ᠭᠡᠵᠤ ᠪᠢ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠ᠃

2.3.2.2.3.3 *Note to the Word "алга"*

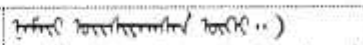
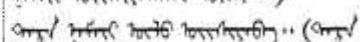
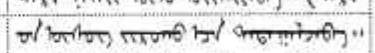
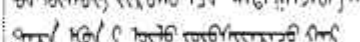
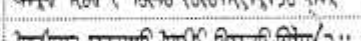
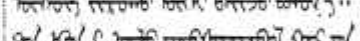
Similar to "үгүй", this particle also has **its own lexical** meaning, i.e., strictly speaking, it is **not a true particle**. It can't be declined. In **ex. c**, "алга" is part of a fixed expression. Together with the ***particle*** "даа" it expresses that one is joking or happy (**ex. d**). With the ***particle*** "л" it expresses 'still not' (**ex. e-f**).

a	I have **no** money.	Надад мөнгө алга.	ᠨᠠᠳᠤᠷ ᠳᠤ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ᠃
b	**There is nothing** to be afraid of.	Айж цочих юм алга.	ᠠᠶᠢᠵᠤ ᠵᠤᠪᠤᠭᠠᠨ ᠴᠢᠮᠠᠭᠲᠠᠢ ᠵᠢᠶᠠᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ᠃
c	My bag has **dis**appeared.	Миний цүнх алга болчихжээ.	ᠮᠢᠨᠢ ᠵᠤᠭᠰᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠴᠢᠵᠠᠶᠠ᠃
d	I don't have anything!	Надад юу ч алга даа.	ᠨᠠᠳᠤᠷ ᠳᠤ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠨ ᠴᠢ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠪᠠ᠃
e	He is **still not here.**	Тэр одоо хүртэл алга л байна.	ᠡᠷᠡ ᠤᠳᠤᠭᠠ ᠪᠤᠷᠲᠠᠯ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠶᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠃
f	**There is still no** news from him.	Түүнээс ойрдоо сураг алга л байна.	ᠶᠠ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠃ ᠡᠷᠡ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠴᠠ ᠣᠢᠷᠠᠳᠤ ᠰᠤᠷᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ

2.3.2.2.4 Negative Particle "ҮЛ"

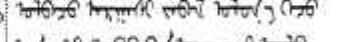
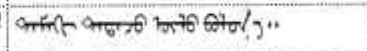
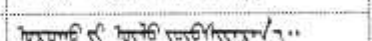
This particle is mainly used **before** verbs with an NDS, which are **attributes** to a ***noun*** (**ex. a-c**). In English there are many different translations. Furthermore, it can be used like "эс" before verbs with a VDS (**ex. e-g**). With some verbs (with a TTS; mainly "-на") it appears in a **fixed expression** in written language and has an official tone: бол- , зөвшөөр-, ойшоо-, ойлго- (**ex. h-i**).

a	Are there many **ill***iterates* in Mongolia? ("... letters **not** knowing *people*...")	Монголд бичиг үсэг үл мэдэгч хүн олон байна уу?	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠳᠤ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭ ᠦᠰᠡᠭ ᠦᠯ ᠮᠡᠳᠡᠭᠴᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠤᠯᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ ᠤᠤ᠃ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠴᠤ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠵᠦ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠵᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠤ ᠴᠢᠨᠠᠳᠤ
b	In this book (they) write about an **in**visible person. ("...**not** being seen *person*...")	Энэ номонд үл үзэгдэгч хүний тухай бичсэн байна.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮᠤᠨ ᠳᠤ ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠳᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠤ ᠲᠤᠬᠠᠢ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠪᠠᠢᠨᠠ᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ ᠳᠤ ᠴᠢᠨᠢ ᠦᠵᠡᠭᠳᠡᠬᠦᠢ ᠴᠢᠨᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠪᠢᠴᠢᠭᠰᠡᠨ
c	There is a **mis**understanding between them. ("... a *state* of **not** understanding each other...")	Тэдний хооронд үл ойлголцоо байдал бий болжээ.	ᠲᠡᠳᠡᠨᠢ ᠬᠤᠤᠷᠤᠨᠳ ᠦᠰᠦᠭᠯᠡᠯᠴᠡᠬᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠳᠠᠯ ᠪᠢᠢ ᠪᠣᠯᠵᠤ᠃ ᠠᠨᠳᠠ᠎ᠠ ᠪ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠣᠶᠢᠯᠭᠣᠯᠴᠠᠭᠤᠯᠴᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠤ

d	He **dis**respected me. ("He did**n't** respect me.")	Тэр намайг <u>үл</u> ойшоов. (Тэр намайг ойшоосонгүй.)	
e	He did**n't** agree with this and refused to sign.	Тэр үүнийг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрч гарын үсэг зурахаас татгалзав.	
f	If you do**n't** agree with this, you may not sign.	Та үүнийг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөр-вэл гарын үсэг зурахгүй байж болно.	
g	The boy/man thought that if he would **not** find his younger brother today, he would surely find him tomorrow.	Ах нь дүүгээ өнөөдөр <u>үл</u> олвоч маргааш заавал олно гэж бодлоо.	
h	Smoking is **forbidden**! (..."is **not** OK.")	Тамхи татаж <u>үл</u> болно!	
i	**No** Entry! ("Entering **not** allowed!")	Орохыг <u>үл</u> зөвшөөрнө!	

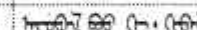
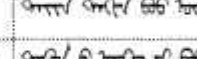
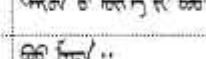
2.3.2.2.5 Negative Particle "эс"

This particle is mainly used **before** verbs with a VDS (**ex. a-c**), sometimes before verbs with a NDS (**ex. d**; because "үл мэдэгч" means 'illiterate', the "эс" is used in this context) or a TTS (mainly past, **ex. e-f**). **Ex. g** is very **colloquial** and belongs to the group of verbs with a TTS.

a	I was very surprised when he did**n't** come.	Түүнийг <u>эс</u> ирэхэд-эр би их гайхсан.	
b	The boy/man thought that if he would**n't** find his younger brother today, he would surely find him tomorrow.	Ах нь дүүгээ өнөөдөр <u>эс</u> олвоч маргааш заавал олно гэж бодлоо.	
c	I have decided to **not** give him an answer.	Би түүнд хариу <u>эс</u> өгэхээр шийдсэн.	
d	He was sitting there with an expression on his face as if he did**n't** know.	Тэр <u>эс</u> мэдэгч царай-лаад сууж байсан.	
e	Although I worked on this matter diligently for many days, they did**n't** agree.	Би энэ талаар олон хо-ноног хөөцөлдсөн боловч тэд нар <u>эс</u> зөвшөөрөв.	
f	Although the doctors were working nonstop for many days, they could**n't** save his life.	Эмч нар олон хоног нойр хоолгүй ажилла-сан боловч түүний амь насыг аварч <u>эс</u> чадлаа.	
g	Haven't I told you!	Би <u>эс</u> хэллээ чамд!	only colloquial language

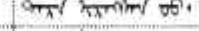
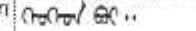
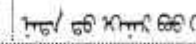
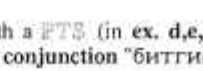
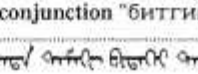
2.3.2.2.6 Negative Particle "бүү"

This particle is used **before** verbs with a PTS (in **ex.a,b,e,f,** there are zero-suffixes; compare with page 175ff). It's very similar to "биттий", but stronger in its meaning. Notice how this particle is used in **ex. e** (saying) and **f** (conjunction).

a	Don**'t** smoke here!	Энд тамхи бүү тат!	
b	Don**'t** do (whatever) you're afraid of, and don**'t** be afraid of (whatever) you do.	Айвал бүү хий, хийвэл бүү ай.	
c	If only there was **no** more war.	Дайн дахин бүү үзэгдэг.	
d	Don**'t** listen to his words.	Түүний үгийг бүү сонс	
e	I don**'t** have a clue whether he came or not.	Тэр ирсэн үү, үгүй юу, бүү мэд.	
f	I have two children, **not** to mention my wife.	Надад эхнэр бүү хэл хоёр хүүхэд бий.	

2.3.2.2.7 Negative Particle "биттий"

Similar to "бүү", this particle is used **before** verbs with a PTS (in **ex. d,e,h,** there are zero-suffixes; compare with page 175ff). It also appears in the **conjunction** "биттий хэл" (**ex. h**).

a	Please don**'t** smoke here.	Энд тамхи биттий татаарай.	
b	Please don**'t** tell this to others.	Үүнийг хүнд биттий хэлээрэй.	
c	Please do **not** go.	Чи биттий яваарай.	
d	Don**'t** worry!	Биттий санаа зов!	
e	Do **not** touch!	Гар биттий хүр!	
f	If only he wouldn**'t** come!	Тэр биттий ирээсэй.	
g	He is **not** to meet my friend.	Тэр миний найзтай биттий уулзаг.	
h	I can't speak Russian, **not** to mention English.	Би англиар биттий хэл оросоор ч ярьж чадахгүй.	

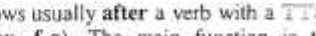
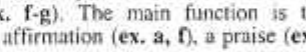
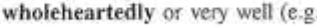
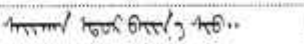
2.3.2.3 MODAL PARTICLES

Modal particles **intensify, moderate,** or else **change** statements according to the **present mood of the speaker**. Only from the whole context will it be clear what mood the speaker is in. So, often the given translation is only one of many possible ways to express that particular mood. In English, people would sometimes just raise the voice or say a normal statement with more determination or a particular expression of the face and not use an extra particle or word. Some particles can appear together. If so, their order is fixed. When the particles connect and equate two elements, they **serve as a copula**.

2.3.2.3.1 Modal Particle "шүү"

The particle "шүү" (not complying with vowel harmony) follows usually **after** a verb with a TTS (**ex. a-e**) or after a ***пошн*** in the function of a **copula** (**ex. f-g**). The main function is to **communicate something** to another person. This could be an affirmation (**ex. a, f**), a praise (**ex. b**), a rebuke (**ex. c**), a threat (**ex. d, g**), an information (**ex. e**), etc.

Notice that there is a particle "шүү[2]" which is used rarely and follows after ПОШН or verbs with an NDS (**ex. h-i**). It expresses that something **can't be done wholeheartedly** or very well (e.g. due to illness; **ex.h**), or it shows a **modest attitude** (**ex. i**).

a	Today is **really** a nice day.	Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байна шүү.	
b	You speak English very well **indeed**.	Та англиар сайн ярьж байна шүү.	
c	He **does** always remember you!	Тэр үргэлж чамайг бодож явдаг шүү.	
d	Hey, I will report you to the teacher!	Би чамайг багшид хэлнэ шүү.	
e	I **DID** drink tea!	Би цай уусан шүү.	
f	*This* is **really** a nice *animal!*	Энэ мөн сайхан амьтан шүү.	
g	*This* is my *book*, **you know!**	Энэ миний ном шүү.	
h	Well, (I) do my work **after a fashion**.	Ажлаа хийсэн шүү болж байна.	
i	I was in a hurry and made quickly **some sort of a** meal.	Би яараад нэг юм шүү юм хийчихлээ.	

2.3.2.3.2 Modal Particle "даа[4]"

This particle follows usually after verbs with a TTS (**ex. a-j**) or a PTS (**ex. k-m**). In the translation it's similar to "шүү", but communicating to others is not the main function. An exact meaning is often only clear from the whole context (e.g. **ex. m**). That's why we try to give in parentheses a context situation. In certain sentences, this particle, together with other words, forms a ***fixed expression*** (**ex. n,o**; see page 206). If it's used together with other particles, "даа" is always put at the end (**ex. p-q**).

a	-Today is really a nice day. -Yes, **indeed**, a really nice day! (2 old people, having a lot of time to talk)	–Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байна шүү! –Тийм байна. Үнэхээр сайхан өдөр байна даа.	
b	My! How hot it is here! (beginning of a conversation)	Энд мөн ч халуун байна даа.	

c	**Alas**, and now, what shall we do? (expression of sorrow)	Одоо бид нар яа**в** даа.	[illegible]
d	We shall return to our homeland, before we **even** have time to realize it.	Нэг л мэдэхэд бид нутагтаа очно доо.	[illegible]
e	The day we have been eagerly waiting for has **finally** come!	Хүсэн хүлээсэн өдөр маань ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
f	I thought you were going to cook! ("What has happened to your talking, 'I will cook.'?")	Хоол хийнэ гэсэн чинь яа**в**аа даа.	[illegible]
g	**But** I've given him money so many times! (reluctant to give again)	Би түүнд олон удаа мөнгө өгсөн дээ.	[illegible]
h	Yesterday he came **at last**. (happy about it)	Тэр өчигдөр ирлээ дээ.	[illegible]
i	He **may well** have come yesterday. (circumstancial evidence, e.g. car in front of the house)	Тэр өчигдөр ирж**сэ**н дээ.	[illegible]
j	He *came* yesterday! (relief; talking to oneself)	Тэр өчигдөр ирж**сэ**н дээ.	[illegible]
k	Oh, what shall I do now? (crisis, desperation)	Одоо яа**в**аа даа.	[illegible]
l	Take a good look at this!	Чи үүнийг сайн хар**ж** даа.	[illegible]
m	**Well then,** sit down. (reluctantly)/**Do** sit down, **please**. (very polite)	Та суу л даа.	[illegible]
n	**Well,** Dorj has come, **yes**. (...but...; no satisfactory result)	Доржирсэн байна л даа.	[illegible]
o	It has become late. We **must** go.	Цаг орой боллоо, явахаас даа.	[illegible]
p	I told you many times, **didn't I**? (a bit angrily)	Би чамд олон удаа хэлсэн шүү дээ.	[illegible]
q	**Isn't** that strange! I've told him many times**, haven't I**? (very surprised, stunned)	Би түүнд олон удаа хэлсэн юм даа. Мөн хачин юм даа.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.3 Modal Particle "аа⁴"

This particle has **four functions**:

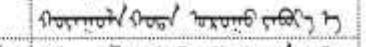
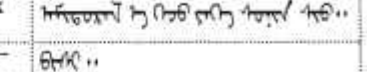
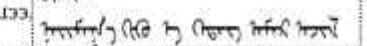
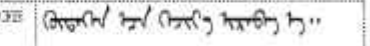
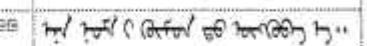
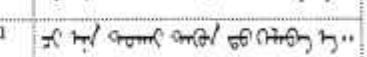
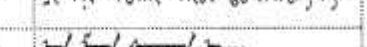
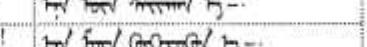
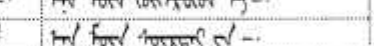
1.) It's placed **between** two repeated verbs with a PTS. **Reluctancy** or **indifference** is expressed when using a PTS of the 2nd person (**ex. a**). A **strong request** is expressed when using a PTS of the 1st person (**ex. b**).

2.) After ***nouns or verbs*** *with an NDS* and before "гэ-", it has the meaning '**as such**' (colloquial language; **ex. c-d**).

3.) In colloquial language, this particle is used after a verb with the TTS "-в" (**ex. e-f**) and canexpress a threat (**ex. g-h**). Compare with the PTS "-уузай", which is used for a formal, polite situation.

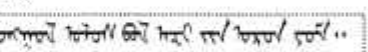
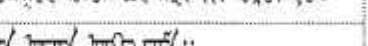
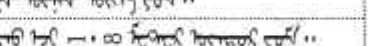
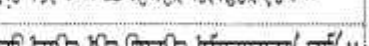
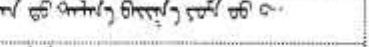
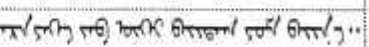
4.) After **adjectives** and mostly together with "мөн", it expresses enthusiasm (**ex. i-j**). After *long vowels and diphthongs*, this particle needs the inserted English consonant "**y**": "яа, еэ" (**ex.k-l**).

a	**Well,** come **then.** (reluctancy) You **may** come. (indifference)	Ир ээ ир.	[illegible]

b	**Come on, come on,** let's go together to town.	Хөөулаа хот руу явъя аа явъя.	
c	Life **as such** is very interesting, isn't it?	Амьдрал аа гэж их сонин шүү.	
d	Doing business **as such** is no easy job at all.	Наймаа хийх үү гэдэг амар ажил бишээ.	
e	Where **on earth** did you go?	Чи хаашаа явав аа?	
f	When **actually** did you come from the countryside?	Хөдөөнөөс хэзээ ирэв үү?	
g	**Woe betide you** if you give this book to others!	Энэ номыг хүнд өгөө өө!	
h	**Woe betide you** if you tell her about this!	Чи энэ тухай түүнд хэлээ үү!	
i	**Why, isn't** that nice!	Энэ мөн сайхан аа!	
j	**Why, isn't** that cute!	Энэ мөн хөөрхөн өө!	
k	**Why, isn't** that majestic!	Энэ мөн сүртэй ээ!	
l	**Why, isn't** that delicious!	Энэ мөн амттай яа!	

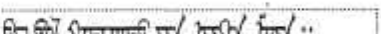
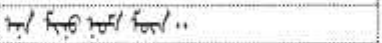
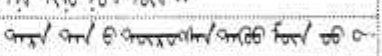
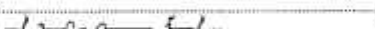
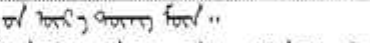
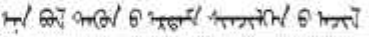
2.3.2.3.4 Modal Particle "юм"

This particle is widely used as an **intensifying copula** after a ***noun*** (**ex. a-b**), an ***adjective*** (**ex. c**) or as a particle after a verb with an NDS in TTS-function (**ex. d-h**). In combination with "байна" it indicates, that the thing being said, has just been found out (**ex. g**). In combination with "билээ", it points out that the experience has been made before (**ex. h**).

a	Mongolia **IS** an Asian country!	Монгол улс бол Азийн орон юм.	
b	That **IS** the truth!	Энэ үнэн үг юм.	
c	My mother is **really** 1.8 meters tall.	Миний ээж 1,8 м өндөр юм.	
d	**But** my parents live in the countryside!	Миний эцэг эх хөдөө амьдардаг юм.	
e	Do you have bread, **then**? (surprised)	Танд талх байгаа юм уу?	
f	Does he teach in Mongolian, **then**? (surprised)	Тэр монголоор заадаг юм уу?	
g	He has no time at all!	Тэр их завгүй байдаг юм байна.	
h	The Germans **really do** keep the time very strictly.	Германчууд цагийг их нарийн баримталдаг юм билээ.	

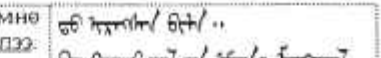
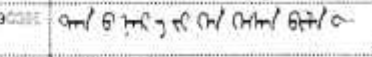
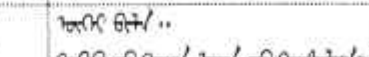
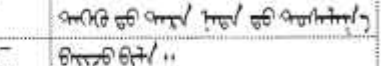
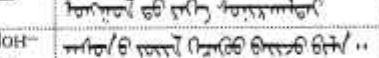
2.3.2.3.5 Modal Particle "мөн"

This particle **always** serves as a **copula,** thus, it always follows a ***noun*** **(ex. a-e)**. It's also used in ***fixed expressions*** **(ex. f-g)**.

a	I **AM** a foreigner!	Би бол гадаадын иргэн мөн.	
b	This **IS** my book!	Энэ миний ном мөн.	
c	Is she **really** your younger sister?	Тэр таны төрсөн дүү мөн үү?	
d	This is **indeed** the result of his scientific work.	Энэ бол түүний эрдэм шинжилгээний ажлын үр дүн мөн.	
e	This is a hotel! (I just found it out)	Энэ зочид буудал мөн байна.	
f	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.	
g	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас мөн л сайхан.	

2.3.2.3.6 Modal Particle "билээ /лээ"

This particle derived from the **defective auxiliary verb** "bü–" and is, therefore, no true particle. It expresses **statements** that **are remembered to be told** to others. In **ex. f-g,** it serves as a **copula** after a ***noun***. Usually it follows verbs with an NDS **(ex. a-c)** or the shortened form of "–жээ" → "–ж" **(ex. d-e)**. The particle "лээ" is the shortened form of "билээ" which explains why it is not complying with vowel harmony. It's rarely used, mainly in the modal construction "юм байна лээ" (see page 203).

a	**You know,** two years ago I came to Mongolia.	Би хоёр жилийн өмнө Монголд ирсэн билээ.	
b	What was your name **again**?	Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн билээ?	
c	**Oh yes, I remember,** he wasn't helping me at that time.	Тэгэхэд тэр надад туслаагүй билээ.	
d	**Oh yes,** it has been very interesting in Mongolia.	Монголд их сонир-холтой байж билээ.	
e	**Yes, I remember**, when you came to Mongolia, the food situation was very difficult.	Та нарыг ирэхэд Монголд хүнсний зүйл хэцүү байж билээ.	
f	**Oh yes,** that's a very good book.	Энэ бол маш сайн ном билээ.	
g	**Oh yes**, his wife is a very intelligent person.	Түүний эхнэр их ухаантай хүн билээ.	

2.3.2.3.7 Modal Particle "сан[4]"

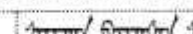
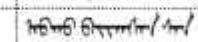
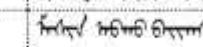
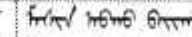
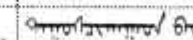
This particle derived from the defective auxiliary verb "а–" → "асан" and is, as such, **no true particle**. It usually follows after verbs with an NDS and has the following **functions**:

1.) Positive, yearning, sympathetic memories: follows a verb with the past NDS "–сан" or the indefinite present NDS "–даг" (**ex. a-c**).

2.) Subjunctive: strong imaginary desire (see pages 196-197):

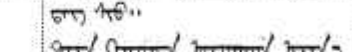
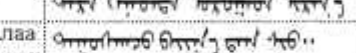
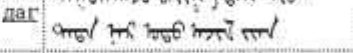
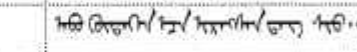
A) follows a verb with the future NDS "–х" and often together with "нэг сайхан" (**ex.d-e**). The expression "юмсан" is very similar, and it can be assumed that "юм" dropped. This particle can also be added to **nouns** (**ex. g**).

B) In **complex sentences of the past** (**ex. h-i**), this particle can be added to the main clause **or** to the subordinate clause. In colloquial language, it's often done in both clauses (**ex. h**).

a	When I was in Switzerland, it was **SO** nice!	Намайг Швейцарт байхад их сайхан байсансан.	
b	He's **just** been so very sad! (I'm interested in what has become of him)	Тэр их л уйтгартай байсансан.	
c	**Oh yes,** when I was in Germany, I always met him.	Би Германд байхдаа түүнтэй үргэлж уулздагсан.	
d	**How I 'd like to** eat Khuushuur **again**!	За, нэг сайхан хуушуур идэхсэн. (...идэх юмсан.)	
e	These days I'm very tired. **How I'd like to** sleep well!	Ойрдоо их ядарч байна. Нэг сайхан унтахсан. (...унтах юмсан.)	
f	If I **were** rich, I **would** buy a car.	Би баян хүн бол машин авахсан.	
g	If I **had** time, I **would** meet you.	Би завтайсан бол тантай уулзахсан.	
h	If I **had** been rich, I **would have** bought a car.	Би баян хүн байсан бол машин авах байсансан.	
		Би баян хүн байсансан бол машин авах байсан.	
		Би баян хүн байсансан бол машин авах байсансан.	
i	If you **hadn't** disturbed me, I **would have** finished this work by now.	Чамайг надад саад хийгээгүйсэн бол би энэ ажлыг дуусгачихаад байх байлаа.	

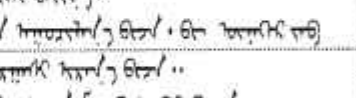
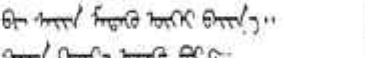
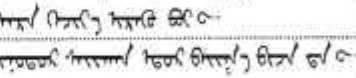
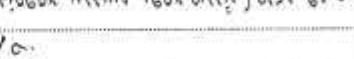
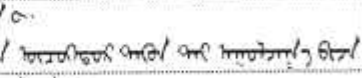
2.3.2.3.8 Modal Particle "даг4"

This particle has - like "сан" - derived from the defective auxiliary verb "а–" and is, as such, **no true particle**. It expresses that the speaker is quite sure about something and follows verbs with an NDS (**ex. a,c-f**) or the future TTS "–на" (**ex. b**). It can be used in combination with other particles, e.g. with "шүү" and expresses then that one **assumes** something for which there is **circumstancial evidence** (**ex. in parentheses**).

a	**I think** it will rain heavily tonight. (Tonight **it's likely to** rain heavily.)	Өнөө шөнө их бороо орох даг (шүү).	
b	**I think** he'll come now every minute. (**Probably** he'll come now every minute.)	Тэр гэнэт ороод ирэх дэг (шүү).	
c	They**'re likely to** finish their job now.	Тэд нар одоо ажлаа дуусгаж байгаа даг шүү.	
d	**Well then**, my father **seems to** have come from the countryside.	Аав хөдөөнөөс ирсэн дэг шүү.	
e	**Oh dear, it seems to** be over now.	Одоо өнгөрсөн дөг шүү.	
f	Well, that's about what was said. (very colloquial)	Тэгэж хэлж ярьсан юм даг уу даа.	

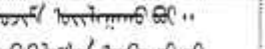
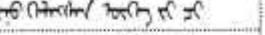
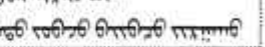
2.3.2.3.9 Modal Particle "биз"

This particle expresses an **assumption**. Following a verb with the TTS "–на", it expresses **indifference** (**ex. a-b**). Following a verb with an NDS, it could be translated using a **tag question** (**ex. c-e**). As a **copula**, it equates ***nouns*** or ***adjectives*** (**ex. f-g**). Sometimes the final vowel (only evident in Classical Script) **is stressed** (**ex. f**).

a	You will excuse me, **won't you**. I really don't have time.	Та уучилна биз. би үнэхээр завгүй байна.	
b	-When will he come? -I don't know exactly, **he might** come tomorrow.	–Тэр хэзээ ирэх вэ? –Би сайн мэдэхгүй байна. Маргааш ирэх биз.	
c	Today it's a nice day, **isn't it**?	Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байгаа биз дээ?	
d	You've met him, **haven't you**?	Та түүнтэй уулзаа биз дээ?	
e	You met him yesterday, **didn't you**?	Та өчигдөр түүнтэй уулзсан биз дээ?	
f	That's **probably** true.	Энэ үнэн бизээ.	
g	You're not Mr. Baatar, **are you**?	Та Баатар гуай биш биз?	

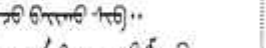
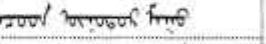
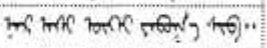
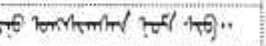
2.3.2.3.10 Modal Particle "бий/ вий"

Because this particle is, in Classical Script, **identical with the interrogative particle** "бэ/ вэ", the rule as to when which form is used can be looked up on page 327. When this particle follows a verb with an NDS, it expresses a feeling of **deep understanding (aha-experience; ex. a-e)**. As a **copula**, it equates words (**ex. e**). After a verb with the TTS "-на", it expresses something like an oath to oneself (**ex. f-g**).

a	**I'm sure that** you'll understand my words later.	Миний хэлсэн үгийг чи хожим ойлгох вий.	
b	**I'm sure that** a day of rejoicing will come, even though (you) are suffering now.	Одоо зовж байвч жаргах өдөр ирэх вий.	
c	**Aha,** that's what he does in my absence.	Тэр намайг эзгүйд ийм юм хийж явдаг вий.	
d	**Aha,** he has come to Ulaanbaatar.	Тэр Улаанбаатарт ирээд байгаа юм бий.	
e	**Aha,** that's what you used to say.	Чиний хэлдэг тэр вий.	
f	**Well then, let's see if he ever** gets money from me again!	Тэр надаас дахиад мөнгө авна вий.	
g	**Now see if** you **ever** try that again.	Чи үүнийг дахиад хийнэ вий.	

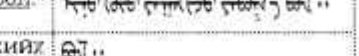
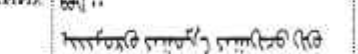
2.3.2.3.11 Modal Particle "шив"

This particle expresses an **assumption**. Exception is **ex. e**. It either follows verbs with an NDS (**ex. a-b**) or ***nouns*** in the function of a **copula** (**ex. c-g**). Together with the particle "даа", it expresses **disappointment** and **indifference** (**ex. f-g**).

a	Today, the Germans are playing badly, **I believe.**	Германчууд өнөөдөр муу тоглож байх шив.	
b	How nice, they've left, **I believe.**	Тэд нар ашгүй явсан шив.	
c	**I think,** this is the book I've read.	Энэ миний уншсан ном шив.	
d	**I think** that's my husband's teacher. (to be seen from far)	Энэ манай нөхрийн багш шив.	
e	This is **indeed** my husband's teacher. (after he has passed)		
f	**Oh no,** that's my husband's teacher.	Энэ манай нөхрийн багш шив дээ.	
g	**Oh no,** that's the film we've already seen.	Энэ үзчихсэн кино шив дээ.	

2.3.2.3.12 Modal Interrogative Particle "бол"

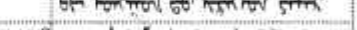
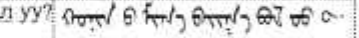
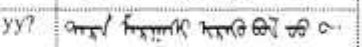
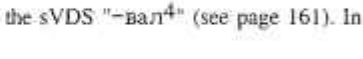
This particle is used with question words (**ex. a-c**) and without question words, but together with the interrogative particle "уу/ үү" (**ex. d-e**). It follows verbs with an NDS and expresses that the speaker is **wondering about something** (**ex. a-b**) or that he wants to know the opinion of others, but bears in mind, that the others don't know it themselves (**ex. d-e**).

a	How **might** my son be doing?	Миний хүү яаж явж бол.	
b	How **am** (I) **supposed to** do such a thing?/How **on earth** am I going to do such a thing?	Иймэрхүү юмыг яаж хийх бол.	
c	I was constantly thinking about what kind of people I **might** meet once I'd come to Mongolia.	Би Монголд ирээд ямар хүмүүстэй уулзах бол гэж дандаа боддог байсан.	
d	**I wonder if** there is mutton?	Хонины мах байгаа бол уу?	
e	**I wonder whether** he'll come tomorrow?	Тэр маргааш ирэх бол уу?	

2.3.2.3.13 Modal Conditional Particle "бол"

This particle expresses a **condition** and is very similar to the sVDS "−вал[4]" (see page 161). In case, the sVDS can't be used, this particle is used instead:
- after ***NDS's*** (e.g. past) (**ex. a-g**)
- after ***negation*** (**ex. c-d,j,m**)
- after ***nouns*** (**ex. h-j**)
- after ***adjectives*** (**ex. k**)

It also appears in **subjunctive sentences** (**ex. l-n**).

a	**If** you*'re* sick, have a doctor examine you.	Бие чинь өвдөж байгаа бол эмчид үзүүл!	
b	**If** that person ***knows*** Russian well, explain it in Russian!	Тэр хүн орос хэл сайн мэддэг бол чи оросоор тайлбарла!	
c	But **if** ***not***, explain it in English!	Хэрэв мэддэггүй бол англиар тайлбарла!	
d	**If**, then, you*'re* ***not going*** today, please come to my home in the evening.	Чи өнөөдөр явахгүй юм бол орой манайд очоорой!	
e	Please go **if** you ***have eaten*** your meal.	Хоолоо идсэн бол явааpай!	
f	**If** the teacher ***has come***, I want to go and meet him.	Багш ирсэн бол очиж уулзъя!	
g	**If** the shop ***is open***, I want to buy meat.	Дэлгүүр онгойсон бол мах авъя!	
h	**If** you ***have money***, then buy boots for your son.	Чи мөнгөтэй бол хүүдээ гутал аваач.	
i	**If** Yondon ***has a bicycle***, he'll give it to me.	Ендон дугуйтай бол надад өгнө.	

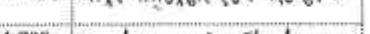
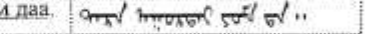
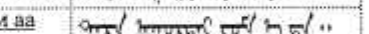
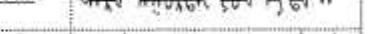
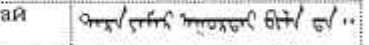
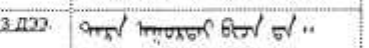
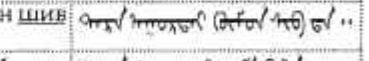
j	**If** you don't ***have a book***, then please take mine.	Та номгүй бол минийхийг аваач!	[illegible]
k	**If** you're ***small***, it's no use to play volleyball.	Чи намхан бол гар бөмбөг тоглоод нэмэргүй.	[illegible]
l	How ***could*** (he) buy such a coat **if** (he) ***didn't*** have money?	Мөнгөгүй байсан бол ийм дээл яаж авах вэ?	[illegible]
m	**If** you ***hadn't woken*** me up in the morning, I'***d have been*** late for school.	Өглөө чамайг сэрээгээгүй (сэн) бол би хичээлээс хожимдох байжээ.	[illegible]
n	**If** I ***had come*** earlier, I'***d have met*** the teacher.	Эрт ирсэн (сэн) бол багштай уулзах байжээ.	[illegible]

2.3.2.3.14 Comparison of Modal Particles

1.) Single particles:

a	He is an angry person. (neutral statement)	Тэр ууртай.	[illegible]
b	**I tell you,** he is an angry person. (warning)	Тэр ууртай шүү.	[illegible]
c	**But** he is an angry person. (one is worried a bit)	Тэр ууртай даа.	[illegible]
d	**Why, isn't** he an angry person!	Тэр мөн ууртай яа.	[illegible]
e	He **IS** an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм.	[illegible]
f	He **is indeed** an angry person. ("мөн" can't follow an adjective)	Тэр ууртай хүн мөн.	[illegible]
g	**Oh yes,** he is an angry person. (I remember it)	Тэр ууртай билээ.	[illegible]
h	**Well, yes,** he is sort of an angry person. ("сан" usually has a positive meaning; therefore better together with "бага зэрэг")	Тэр бага зэрэг ууртайсан.	[illegible]
i	**Oh dear, he seems to be** an angry person.	Тэр нилээд ууртайдаг.	[illegible]
j	He is an angry person, **isn't he**?	Тэр ууртай биз.	[illegible]
k	**Aha,** he is such an angry person! ("бий" can't follow an adjective)	Тэр тийм их ууртай хүн бий.	[illegible]
l	**I think** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай хүн шиг.	[illegible]
m	**I wonder whether** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай бол уу?	[illegible]
n	**If** he is an angry person, I don't want to meet him.	Тэр ууртай бол би түүнтэй уулзмаар-гүй байна.	[illegible]

2.) Combinations of particles:

a	**I told you,** he is an angry person! (You should have known better)	Тэр ууртай шүү дээ.	
b	**My,** he **really** is an angry person! (You couldn't know)	Тэр ууртай юм шүү дээ.	
c	**Yes,** he **really** is an angry person!	Тэр ууртай юм даа.	
d	**He seems to be** an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм аа даа.	
e	**Don't you know**, what angry person he is!	Тэр ямар ууртай билээ дээ.	
f	He is an angry person, **then, isn't he**?	Тэр ууртай биз дээ.	
g	He **might** be angry, **you know**.	Тэр уурлах вий дээ.	
h	**I think, you know, that** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай хүн шиг дээ.	
i	**Yes indeed,** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юм билээ.	
j	**But** he isn't an angry person! (Why did he have a heart attack?)	Тэр уургүй юмсан.	
k	**I know for sure that** he is an angry person.	Тэр ууртай юмдаг.	
l	He **seems to be** an angry person, **doesn't he**?	Тэр ууртай юм шиг?	
m	**You know,** he **really is** a very angry guy! (for situations, where someone is pleading with words and gesture)	Тэр их ууртай юм байна шүү дээ.	

2.3.2.4 FOCUS PARTICLES

The focus particles **form** together with the word they follow, **the focus of the sentence**. It's this focus that gets the **attention**. Some of these focus particles can **express the relationship** they have to the **contextual statement of the whole sentence**. This statement, resp. the theme of the sentence, is sometimes given without being expressed in words. The focus particles indicate whether the focus of the sentence **include** (= additive) or **exclude** (= restrictive) other things.

Examples:

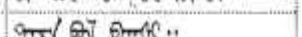
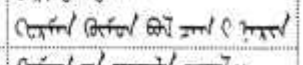
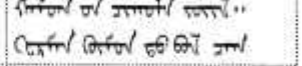
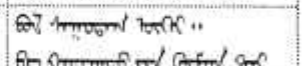
1.) ***BAATAR*** is ill.	Баатар бол өвчтэй байна.	-> **neutral** focus particle
2.) Also *Baatar* is ill.	Баатар ч өвчтэй байна.	-> **additive** focus particle
3.) Only *Baatar* is ill.	Баатар л өвчтэй байна.	-> **restrictive** focus particle

Explanation:
In all of the above sentences, Baatar is the focus. But from the **context** it's clear that there are **other people** involved. The question then is: Are the others ill or not? i.e., how is the relationship between Baatar (and the theme 'illness') and the other people? The additive particle "ч" indicates, that there are other ill people besides Baatar. Baatar is included. Such sentences are, therefore, translated as 'also/even'. The restrictive particle "л" indicates that the others are not ill. Baatar is excluded. Therefore, it's translated as 'only, solely, alone'.

We refer at this place to the **publication** of **Mr. Mizuno Masanori** *"Particles in Modern Mongolian: ч, л"*, which tackles the problems of the focus particles in a very detailed manner.

2.3.2.4.1 Neutral Focus Particle "бол"

This particle has 2 functions:
1.) It serves as a **copula** and **subject indicator**. It can be omitted in colloquial language, because the sentence structure is made clear by either intonation or a pause (**ex. a-c**).
2.) Subjects (**ex. d**) or objects (**ex. e-f**) are **emphasized** with it; rarely attributes (**ex. g**).

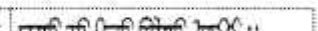
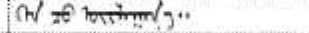
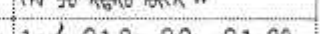
a	I **am** a Mongolian.	Би (бол) монгол хүн.	
b	She **is** a teacher.	Тэр (бол) багш.	
c	This **is** very correct.	Энэ (бол) маш зүйтэй.	
d	**The Germans** keep strictly to the time.	Герман хүн бол цагийг нарийн баримталдаг.	
e	**For the Germans,** time is the most precious thing.	Герман хүнд бол цаг хамгийн чухал зүйл.	
f	**To a foreigner** I won't get married.	Би гадаадын хүнтэй бол суухгүй.	
g	**The mountain's** summit, **the water's** source, that's the MPRP!	Уулсын бол оргил нь Усны бол боргил нь МАХН билэ.	

2.3.2.4.2 Additive Focus Particle "ч"

The focus particle "ч" has a **wide usage**. We'll list here the most important functions:

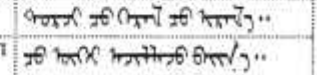
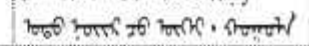
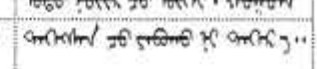
2.3.2.4.2.1 Part of Indefinite Prowords

Most **indefinite prowords** are built with the particle "ч" (**ex. a-c**). Words like "нэг, ганц", etc. often appear together with this particle (**ex. d-e**).

a	It's not allowed to do ***anything***.	Юу ч хийж болохгүй.	
b	***Everybody*** understands (that).	Хэн ч ойлгоно.	
c	***Nobody*** *will* eat (this).	Хэн ч идэхгүй.	
d	I don't have ***any (at all)***.	Надад нэг ч байхгүй.	
e	***Not even*** a single person came!	Ганц ч хүн ирээгүй.	

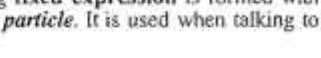
2.3.2.4.2.2 Part of Conjunctions

For **ex. a-b**, see page 301 (the particle emphasizes both parts equally); for **ex. c-d**, see p. 324.

a	**Both,** ***Dorj*** **and** ***Gerel,*** came.	Дорж ч Гэрэл ч ирлээ.	
b	(I am) working now like mad. ("... working **neither** having ***sleep*** **nor** ***food***.")	Одоо нойр ч үгүй, хоол ч үгүй ажиллаж байна.	
c	***Nevertheless***, it's better to go. ***(Even though it happened this way...)***	Тэгсэн ч явах нь дээр.	
d	***Although*** he came, the situation hasn't changed.	Тэр ирсэн ч гэсэн байдал өөрчлөгдөөгүй.	

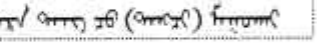
2.3.2.4.2.3 Part of Modal Constructions

Together with adwords, adjectives and this particle, the following **fixed expression** is formed with the structure being: ***adword + particle*** "ч" ***+ adjective + modal particle***. It is used when talking to oneself and not to communicate something.

a	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.	
b	***Boy,*** the winter of 1991 has been ***very hard indeed.***	1991 оны өвөл тун ч хэцүү байсан шүү.	
c	**Oh dear,** he ***really*** did something ***too awful!***	Тэр даан ч (дааниг) муухай хэрэг хийж дээ.	

2.3.2.4.2.4 Expressing "... would ('d) better ..."

In this function, the particle appears together with a verb with a PTS.

a	It has become late. You'd **better** sleep.	Цаг орой боллоо. Та ч унт даа.	
b	**I'd better** go.	Би ч явъя. (Би явсан нь дээр.)	
c	**He'd better** go.	Тэр ч яваг.	

2.3.2.4.2.5 Expressing "even/ too"

The particle is widely used in this function. A common translation would be 'even/too', but that's not always the most appropriate one. The reader should keep in mind what is written about the **general meaning** of this additive particle. In these examples, **different** parts of speech are the **focus** of the sentences.

Explanation to the examples:

ex. a-f: it depends on the context, whether '**even**' (хүртэл) or '**also**' ("бас") is meant.
ex. g: **double usage** intensifies the meaning
ex. h: often followed by "гэсэн"; this changes the meaning only slightly
ex. i-l: often the particle simply **emphasizes** the focus; in English this would be achieved with intonation
ex. m-n: the particle indicates that something **follows.** The statement is **in relationship** with whatever follows (**additive**); see opposite meaning with particle "л"

a	**Also/Even *you*** didn't come today.	Онөөдөр та ч ирсэнгүй.	
b	**Also/Even *today*** you didn't come.	Онөөдөр ч та ирсэнгүй.	
c	**Even/Also** this ***book*** is good.	Энэ ном ч сайн.	
d	**Even/Also *this*** book is good.	Энэ ч ном сайн.	
e	**Even/Also *I*** will go.	Би ч явна. (Би бас явна./ Би хүртэл явна.)	
f	**Even/Also *I*** will go to Mongolia.	Би ч Монголд очно. (Би бас Монголд очно./ Би хүртэл Монголд очно.)	
g	***I* too** want to go to the 'sum'.	Би ч бас өнөөдөр суман дээр очъё.	
h	**Also *I*** speak a bit of German.	Би ч гэсэн Германаар жаахан ярьдаг.	
i	***THIS HERE*** is OK. (there could be a worse situation)	Энэ ч гайгүй.	
j	If ***I*** had been there, I would have saved **even *Dorj***.	Би ч тэнд байсансан бол Доржийг ч аварч болох байсансан.	
k	Not ***ALL OF US*** are good. There are also bad people in our group.	Бид цөмөөрөө ч сайн биш. Манай группэд бас муу хүн байгаа.	
l	Listen then, ***I*** know you and ***YOU*** know me.	Би ч таныг танина, та ч намайг танина шүү дээ.	
m	I worked ***A LOT***. Now I'm very tired.	Их ч ажиллалаа. Одоо их ядарлаа.	
n	I've seen ***SO MANY*** things. ...	Би их ч юм үзлээ.	

2.3.2.4.2.6 Comparison of Functions

a	Let *me* go **too**.	Би ч явъя.	
b	*I* also want to go.	Би ч бас явъя.	
c	**Even** *I* want to go.	Би ч явъя.	
d	**Even** *I* want to go.	Би ч хүртэл явъя.	
e	*I'd* **better** go.	Би ч явъя.	
f	**Both**, *YOU* **and** *I* will go.	Би ч та ч явна.	
g	***Everybody*** may go. (***Whosoever***)	Хэн ч явж болно.	
h	***Nobody*** may go.	Хэн ч явж болохгүй.	
i	***Even if*** I ***went***, the situation wouldn't change.	Би явсан ч гэсэн байдал өөрчлөгдөхгүй.	
j	***Nevertheless,*** I'll go.	Тэгсэн ч би явна.	
k	***Boy,*** I ***really*** went to a ***terrific*** town.	Би мөн ч гоё хотод очсон доо.	
l	I've gone ***VERY*** far! ...	Би их ч хол явлаа. ...	

2.3.2.4.3 Restrictive Focus Particle "л"

The focus particle "л" has a **wide usage** . We'll look into the most important functions.

2.3.2.4.3.1 Functions

Explanations to the examples:

ex. a-f: different parts of speech are the ***focus*** of the sentence

ex. g-l: the particle is part of a **fixed expressions,** using mainly **verbs** with a VDS; sometimes the meanings vary only slightly and make only sense within the whole context.

ex. m-n: meaning 'I for my part ...'/What concerns me ...'

ex. p: compare with ex. 3a-b of the following table

ex. q: compare with ex. 4a-b of the following table

ex. r-t: note the ***construction***: interrogative proword + "л" + "...-в гэж"

a	**Only** this ***book*** is good.	Энэ ном л сайн.	
b	**Only** ***this*** book is good.	Энэ л ном сайн.	
c	**Only** *I* want to go./Let *me* go **alone**.	(Ганцхан) би л очъе.	
d	Today **only** ***you*** didn't come.	Өнөөдөр та л ирсэнгүй.	
e	**Only** ***today*** you didn't come.	Өнөөдөр л та ирсэнгүй.	
f	The whole day he reads **only** ***books***. He doesn't do anything else.	Тэр өдөржин ном л уншдаг. Өөр юу ч хийдэггүй.	
g	He ***just came*** here, took a book and left.	Тэр энд ирээд л ном аваад явлаа.	
h	He ***keeps coming*** to this place.	Тэр энд ирээд л байна.	

i	***Well yes,*** he ***has come*** here, ***(but ...)***	Тэр энд ирсэд (д) байна д даа.	ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠢ ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠣᠷᠣᠭ᠋ᠰᠤᠨ ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨ (ᠳᠠ) ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ
j	I***'m still reading*** this book.	Би энэ номыг уншсаар д байна.	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠶᠢᠮᠠ᠎ᠶᠢᠭ ᠤᠩᠰᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠣᠮ᠎ᠢᠶᠠ ᠤᠩᠰᠢᠵᠤ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ
k	He ***came here.*** (indifferent attitude)	Тэр энд ирсэн д байна.	ᠣᠨᠳᠤ ᠪᠤᠭᠤ ᠢᠷᠡᠭᠰᠡᠨ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
l	***Well then, sit down.*** (reluctantly/***Please do sit down.*** (very polite)	Та суу д даа.	ᠴᠢ ᠤᠳᠠᠭ᠎ᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠤᠢ᠃᠃
m	**Well,** ***I*** can't translate this.	Би д үүнийг орчуулж чадахгүй юм байна.	ᠡᠨᠡᠬᠦ ᠵᠢᠨᠢᠶᠡ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃ ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠬᠢ ᠵᠤ ᠴᠢᠳᠠᠬᠤᠭᠦᠢ ᠪᠤᠯᠤᠭᠠᠵᠤ
n	***I* for my part** will leave tomorrow.	Би д маргааш явна.	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠮᠠᠷᠭᠠᠰᠢ ᠶᠠᠪᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
o	***This,*** **exactly *THIS*** (I) probably need.	Энэ, энэ д хэрэгтэй байж магадгүй.	ᠡᠨᠡᠬᠦ᠃᠃ ᠡᠨᠡ᠂ ᠡᠨᠡ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠪᠣᠯᠪᠠᠽᠤᠷ ᠪᠠᠢᠬᠤ ᠭᠤᠶᠤ᠎ᠠ
p	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас мөн д сайхан.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠤᠪᠴᠠᠰᠤᠨ ᠭᠤᠵᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
q	***So,*** I've seen ***a lot of*** things. (talking is over)	Би их д юм үзлээ.	ᠪᠢ ᠤᠴᠤᠨ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠦᠵᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
r	***I can't imagine someone*** giving him money.	Хэн д түүнд мөнгө өгөв гэж.	ᠬᠡᠨ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳᠡ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠥ ᠥᠭᠪᠡ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠭᠤ᠃᠃
s	***Now,*** Dorj ***will not*** find ***a single thing.***	Дорж юу д олж ирэв гэж.	ᠳᠣᠷᠵ ᠶᠤ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠣᠯᠵ ᠢᠷᠡᠪᠡ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠭᠤ᠃᠃
t	***It's impossible that*** he ***should*** be a solid person.	Тэр ямар д олигтой хүн байв гэж.	ᠪᠤᠰᠤᠳᠠᠭ ᠪᠠᠭᠤ᠃᠃ ᠣᠨᠳᠤ ᠬᠦᠮᠦᠨ ᠵᠢ ᠶᠠᠮᠠᠷ ᠪᠠᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ

2.3.2.4.3.2 Comparison with Particle "ч"

1a	Let ***ME*** go **too./Even *I*** want to go./***I'd* better** go.	Би ч явъя.	ᠪᠢ ᠵᠡ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
1b	**Only *I*** want to go./Let ***ME*** go **alone./*I* for my part** want to go.	Би д явъя.	ᠪᠢ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠶᠠᠪᠤᠭ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
2a	***Everybody*** may go.	Хэн ч явж болно.	ᠬᠡᠨ ᠵᠡ ᠶᠠᠪᠵᠤ ᠪᠣᠯᠣᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
2b	***I can't imagine someone*** giving him money.	Хэн д түүнд мөнгө өгөв гэж.	ᠬᠡᠨ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠲᠡᠭᠦᠨᠳᠡ ᠮᠥᠩᠭᠥ ᠥᠭᠪᠡ ᠭᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠭᠰᠠᠨ ᠪᠠᠭᠤ᠃᠃
3a	***Wow,*** this dress ***is terrific indeed!***	Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠤᠪᠴᠠᠰᠤᠨ ᠭᠤᠵᠠ ᠵᠡ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
3b	***Well,*** this dress ***is also nice.***	Энэ хувцас мөн д сайхан.	ᠡᠨᠡ ᠬᠤᠪᠴᠠᠰᠤᠨ ᠭᠤᠵᠠ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠬᠠᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
4a	I've seen ***A LOT OF*** things. (one starts talking)	Би их ч юм үзлээ.	ᠪᠢ ᠤᠴᠤᠨ ᠵᠡ ᠦᠵᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
4b	***So,*** I've seen ***A LOT OF*** things. (theme finished)	Би их д юм үзлээ.	ᠪᠢ ᠤᠴᠤᠨ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠦᠵᠡᠵᠦ ᠪᠠᠢᠨ᠎ᠠ᠃᠃
5a	All of us are not good.	Бид цөмөөрөө сайн биш.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠵᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢჰ᠃᠃
5b	Not ***ALL OF US*** are good.	Бид цөмөөрөө ч сайн биш.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠵᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ ᠵᠡ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢჰ᠃᠃
5c	***ALL OF US*** are not good.	Бид цөмөөрөө д сайн биш.	ᠪᠢᠳᠡ ᠵᠡᠭᠦᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ ᠲᠤᠭᠠᠨ ᠨᠠᠷ ᠰᠠᠶᠢᠨ ᠪᠢᠰᠢჰ᠃᠃

2.4 INTERJECTIONS

The interjections (Latin 'interiectio' = 'to throw in between') are a group of words that have **no lexical or grammatical meanings in themselves.** They are not, like other words, integrated in the sentence, but could stand almost anywhere (see Latin name). Usually though, they are placed at the beginning of the sentence or build a sentence on their own. They can be **repeated** or **combined** with other interjections or particles. All true interjections are **passive roots**, i.e., they haven't derived from other words. On the contrary, **other words have derived** from them (e.g. "урай" [hurrah] → "урайла–" [to shout hurrahs]; "ёо" [ouch!] → "ёоло–" [to moan, to groan]). Their **main function** is to **express human feelings**. Furthermore, and that's **very important in Mongolia**, interjections are used in every day life of **animal husbandry**.

2.4.1 Interjections of Emotions

These interjections can be divided into **semantic subgroups.** One and the same interjection can have many different translations, as people are free to use such **abstract** words according to their mood and liking (just imagine the English interjection 'ah' and everything it expresses).
For these reasons, there are **no fixed rules** and the following table is only meant to be a rough guideline. In this table we have also included interjections that are **not true interjections** because they are members of another group of parts of speech (e.g. "яанаа" = verb, "тийм дээ" = proword + particle). But they function like interjections. We have marked such interjections with an asterisk (*). Grammar is not very important when talking about emotions, therefore, we advise the learner not to try to study the **Mongolian grammar** with this chapter!

2.4.1.1 OVERVIEW OF INTERJECTIONS OF EMOTIONS

1. Understanding, Exclamation:

аа	

2. Agreement, Pleasure

за	уухай (ухай)	ай даа	аяа
өөе	тийм дээ *	ашгүй дээ *	

3. Pity, Affection, Regret

эвий	хөөрхий *	хай даа	өө
иш	зайлуул *	халаг	

4. Calling; Attracting Attention

хөөе	хүүе	хөөш	эй

5. Surprise, Astonishment

ооё	хөөх	үгүй *	ер *	оо–ёо–е	хүүш

6. Difficulty, Despair, Pain

ёо	ёх	яанаа *

7. Laughter, Joy, Happiness

ха ха	гялай	урай	яамай
хий хий	гоё *	ай хө	

8. Disgust, Dislike, Anger

паа(х)		пөө(х)		пий-пай		пэй	
пээ(х)		пүү(х)		ез харлаа *		түй	
аа-лаа-лаа		аа-яа-яа		ишш			

9. Feeling Temperatures

халхай		халцгай		тий тий	

10. Displeasure, Disagreement

чаваас		яалаа гэж *		юу гэж *		ээ	
балар		үгүй шүү *		явчихав аа *			

11. Causing an Action

май		аа		ишш/чшш		байз *		эй дээ	

12. Fear, Terror

ий		айжий		айжуу	

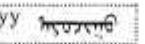
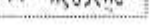
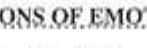
13. Lullaby

бүүвэй	

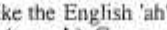
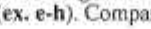
2.4.1.2 USAGE OF INTERJECTIONS OF EMOTIONS

2.4.1.2.1 Expresssing 'Understanding/Exclamation'

This interjection is very **widely used,** like the English 'ah'. It expresses **understanding** (**ex. a-d**) and all kinds of different **exclamations** (**ex. e-h**). Compare with the interjection "aa" on page 357.

a	**Oh**, I see.	Аа, тийм үү?	
b	**Yes**, exactly right!	Аа, яг зөв!	
c	**Yes,** that'll do!	Аа, энэ харин болно!	
d	**Ah,** I just found out the reason for it.	Аа, одоо сая учрыг нь олллоо!	
e	**Oh**, what a beautiful place!	Аа, мөн сайхан газар юм аа!	
f	**Oh I see,** what have you just said?	Аа, чи юу гэнэ ээ?	
g	**Well,** I don't know!	Аа, бүү мэд!	
h	**OK, OK,** I won't forget it!	Аа, аа, яасан ч мартахгүй!	

2.4.1.2.2 Expresssing 'Agreement/Pleasure'

a	**OK**, let's do that!	За, тэгье!	
b	**Enough**, let's stop!	За, болъё!	
c	**OK,** that'll do. (could be slightly angrily)	За, за, болно!	

d	**There you are!** (could be slightly angrily)	За, хар л даа!	[illegible]
e	**Well**, never mind!	За, тэр ч тийм!	[illegible]
f	**Well then,** let's go to sleep now.	За хөө, одоо унтах уу даа!	[illegible]
g	**That's good**, you came back!	Ухай даа, чи яваад ирэв үү!	[illegible]
h	**Oh good,** you know him, then?	Ухай, ухай, та түү-нийг таньдаг юм уу?	[illegible]
i	**Well**, my child, try hard! (not necessarily one's own child)	Ай даа, хүү минь, хичээгээрэй!	[illegible]
j	**Exactly**, you're right!	Ай даа, таны хэлдэг зөв дөө!	[illegible]
k	**Wow**, that's terrific!	Аяа, үнэхээр сайхан даа!	[illegible]
l	**Oh**, what a beautiful land!	Аяа, ямар сайхан нутаг вэ!	[illegible]
m	**Yeah**, what is it?	Өөе, юу гээв?	[illegible]
n	**Oh**, please take a seat here. (upon seeing the guests, one rejoices)	Өөе, та нар наашаа суу!	[illegible]
o	**That's how it is!** Let's stop talking about this now.	Тийм дээ, одоо энэ тухай яриагаа дуусгая!	[illegible]
p	**Yes, you're right!** How long then should (I) make (my) old mother suffer!	Тийм дээ, хэдий болтол хөгшин эхээ зовоохов дээ.	[illegible]
q	**Wonderful!** You came back! (wish came true)	Ашгүй дээ, та яваад ирэв үү!	[illegible]
r	**Wonderful!** That's the book I wanted to buy.	Ашгүй дээ, би энэ номыг олж авъя гэж бодож байсан юм.	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.3 Expresssing 'Pity/Affection/Regret'

The interjections of the first group (**ex. a-i**) express a mixture of **affection and pity** and are not used for tragic circumstances. The interjections of the second group (**ex. j-l**) express **deep regret** and are often used in connection with death.

a	**Oh**, my poor son is probably having a hard time! ("ядра–" not in literal meaning)	Эвий, муу хүү минь ядарч яваа байх даа!	[illegible]
b	**Oh**, who on earth would take something like that upon himself! ("what kind of human seed...")	Эвий, ямар хүний үр ингэж яваа юм бол доо!	[illegible]
c	**Bother!** Everything spilled!	Иш, бүр асгачихлаа!	[illegible]
d	**What a shame**! And I trusted him so much! (the meaning of "чаавааc" is dominant)	Иш чаавааc, би түүнд маш их итгэж байсан юм!	[illegible]

e	**The poor thing**! Some time in the future (she)'ll make it!	Хөөрхий дөө, хэзээ нэг хүний зэрэгт хүрнэ дээ!	[illegible]
f	**Oh, the poor guy,** he's totally wretched! ("ядра–" not in literal meaning)	Хөөрхий зайлуул, тэр их ядарч дээ!	[illegible]
g	**Oh, poor** thing! ("animal")	Хөөрхий амьтан !	[illegible]
h	**Oh, the poor thing,** (she) seems to be homesick.	Зайлуул, гэрээ сана–сан юм шиг байна!	[illegible]
i	**Oh, the poor thing**! Where, then, might his own flock be?	Зайлуул, ижил сүрэг нь хаана яваа юм бол доо!	[illegible]
j	**Oh no**, this can't be true! ("what shall we say then!")	Хай даа, юу гэх вэ дээ!	[illegible]
k	**Oh no,** what a pity, the nice lad!	Ээ халаг, хайран сайхан залуу!	[illegible]
l	**Oh,** what a pity!	Өө, ямар азгүй юм бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.4 Expresssing 'Calling/Attracting Attention'

Used to call a person far away (**ex. a-d**) and to attract the attention of others (**ex. e-h**). These interjections can be used **interchangeably** among themselves.

a	**Hey!** That's forbidden!	Хөөе, тэгэж болохгүй!	[illegible]
b	**Hey**, come here!	Хөөе , чи наашаа ир!	[illegible]
c	**Hey,** Dooorj!	Хүүе, Дорж оо!	[illegible]
d	**Hey**, is Dorj with you?	Хүүе , наана чинь Дорж байна уу?	[illegible]
e	**Hey**, what did I tell you!	Хөөш, би чамд юу гэж хэллээ!	[illegible]
f	**Hey,** don't you have ears! ("Do you have ears?")	Хөөш, чамд чих байна уу!	[illegible]
g	**Hey**, we're over here!	Эй, бид нар энд байна!	[illegible]
h	**Hey**, that's enough of what you're doing there!	Эй, наадах чинь бүр болохоо байлаа!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.5 Expresssing 'Surprise/Astonishment'

The interjections in **ex. a-d** are used among good friends and express **slight mockery**.

a	**Wow**! How elegant you've become!	Ооё, чи чинь ямар мундаг болчихоо вэ!	[illegible]
b	**Wow**! I'd never thought that you would speak Mongolian that well.	Ооё, би чамайг мон–голоор ийм сайн ярь–даг гэж бодсонгүй!	[illegible]
c	**THAT'S what it is!** Well, then, just take me and go!	Оо–ёо–ё, тэгвэл чи на–майг аваад яв л даа!	[illegible]

d	**Oh, I see!** Is this then so important to you? (argument)	Оо-ёо-ё, энэ чинь тийм чухал юм уу?	[illegible]
e	**What?** For so many years have you been living in Mongolia?!	Хөөх, та Монголд тийм олон жил амь-дарч байгаа юм уу?	[illegible]
f	**Oh my gosh!** How do you live with such a small salary?	Хөөх, ийм бага цалингаар яаж амьдарч байна вэ?	[illegible]
g	**For heaven's sake!** Where on earth did you come from!	Хүүш, чи чинь хаа-наас гараад ирэв ээ!	[illegible]
h	**Oh my gosh!** What are you doing, then?	Хүүш, чи яаж байгаа юм бэ!	[illegible]
i	**I don't believe it!** What a strange guy you are!	Үгүй, чи ямар сонин хүн бэ!	[illegible]
j	**I don't believe it!** YOU're the kind of person who hangs around such a place!	Үгүй ер өө, чи энд ингэж явдаг хүн биш!	[illegible]
k	**Can you believe that!** He's never satisfied, what!	Хөө ер өө, ямар их даварсан амьтан бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.6 Expresssing 'Difficulty/Despair/Pain'

The interjection "ёх" (**ex. b-c**) can be included into this group when remembering that after **despair, relief** usually follows (**ex. c**).

a	**Ouch!** Someone has stomped on my foot!	Ёо ёо, хөл гишгэчихлээ!	[illegible]
b	He said, "**Ah!**" and stretched several times.	Тэр «ёх!» гэж хэлээд хэдэн удаа суниав.	[illegible]
c	**Oh, well then**, now I'm at ease!	Ёх, ингэж нэг санаа амардаг юм байж!	[illegible]
d	**Oh shoot!** I've totally forgotten his order!	Яанаа, би түүний за-хисныг таг мартчихаж!	[illegible]
e	**Dear me!** How terrible this is!	Яанаа, яасан аймаар юм бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.7 Expresssing "Laughter, Joy, Happiness"

Male laughter (**ex. a-b**); female laughter (**ex. c**); mostly used by children (**ex. d-f**).

a	**Haha,** that's where you've been.	Ха ха, чи чинь энд байсан юм уу?	[illegible]
b	Suddenly he started laughing in a loud voice, "**Haha!**"	Тэр гэнэт «Ха ха!» гэж чанга инээв.	[illegible]
c	**Hihi**, you're such a funny guy, you really are.	Хий хий, ямар сонин амьтан бэ, чи чинь!	[illegible]

d	**Great!** It has been decided that I go.	Гялай гялай, миний явах шийд гарчихжээ!	[illegible]
f	**Yippee,** I'll go with Daddy!	Гоё гоё, би аавтайгаа явна!	[illegible]
g	**Hurrah,** now we've become totally free.	Урай, бид нар одоо бүрэн чөлөөтэй болсон!	[illegible]
h	**Hurrah!** They're coming tomorrow? How nice!	Урай, тэд нар маргааш ирэх үү? Ямар гоё вэ!	[illegible]
i	**Hup, two, three, four,** we are the loyal soldiers of the People's Party, **hup, two, three, four!**	Ай хө, ай хө, ардын намын журамт цэргээ хө хө! (from a song)	[illegible]
j	**Terrific!** I heard that she found a job.	Ямай даа, тэр ажилд орсон гэнэ.	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.8 Expresssing 'Disgust/Dislike/Anger'

In Mongolian, **disgust and pity** are sometimes very close (**ex. c, d, e**). In **ex. j and l,** the predicate dropped, therefore the accusative case suffix is at the end of the sentence.

a	**Ugh!** I didn't imagine that you were such a person!	Паа, би чамайг ийм хүн гэж бодсонгүй!	[illegible]
b	**Ugh!** What kind of smell is *that*?	Паах, энэ юуны үнэр вэ?	[illegible]
c	**For heaven's sake!** So you have lost all your money?	Пэээ, чи тэгээд бүх мөнгөө алдчихсан юу?	[illegible]
d	**Oh no,** you mean, you haven't met her then?	Пээх, чи түүнтэй тэгээд уулзаагүй хэрэг үү?	[illegible]
e	**Good night,** I've completely forgotten (this).	Пөө, би бүр мартчихаж!	[illegible]
f	**Bloody murder**, what kind of terrible smell is that?	Пөөх, ямар муухай өмхий үнэр вэ?	[illegible]
g	**Ugh,** that can't be!	Пүү, ёстой хэрэг алга аа!	[illegible]
h	**Darn**, what an unreliable guy you are!	Пүүх, чи ч ёстой алдаг нөхөр юм аа!	[illegible]
i	**Ugh,** I can't stand it any longer here! (because of smell, heat, etc.)	Пий-пай, энд ч ёстой байж суухын арга алга аа.	[illegible]
j	**Bother**, now [look] at that! (disappointed, slightly angry)	Ишш, байж байгаа царайг нь ээ!	[illegible]
k	**Darn**, what a wicked, lying beast you are!	Түй, ямар сүнсгүй худал ярьдаг амьтан бэ!	[illegible]
l	**Dear me**! (Look) at this child!	Пэй, энэ хүүхдийн байж байгааг!	[illegible]

m	**Oh boy**! Surely this child is showing us what a 'mess' is!	Аа-лаа-лаа, энэ хүүхэд ч ёстой нэг заваарахыг үзүүлж өгөө шив дээ!	[illegible]
n	**You lucky dog!** You've got it made!	Аа-яа-яа, чи ч ёстой гарч өгч дээ!	[illegible]
o	**Dear Lord!** How on earth did (you) get into such a predicament? (pityful)	Ээ харлаа, яаж яваад ийм юманд орчихдог байна аа!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.9 Expresssing 'Feelings of Temperatures'

Such interjections tend to be used **repeatedly**.

a	**Ouch!** I've burned my hand!	Халхай халхай, гар түлчихлээ!	[illegible]
b	**Ouch!** Is this tea hot!	Халцгай халцгай, яасан халуун цай вэ!	[illegible]
c	**Brr!** I'm cold!	Тий тий, хөлдөж үхлээ!	[illegible]
d	**Brr!** What a bad, cool day it is today!	Тий тий, өнөөдөр мөн ч зэвүүн өдөр байна даа!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.10 Expresssing 'Displeasure/Disagreement'

a	**Oh heck**, you've grown up that much and still you can't eat properly!	Чаавааас, ийм том болчихоод хоолоо ч идэж чадахгүй юм!	[illegible]
b	**Oh bother,** see, all our plans came to nothing!	Ээ балар аа, ингээд хамаг төлөвлөгөө нурлаа шүү дээ!	[illegible]
c	**Why, of course** I'll help you! (slightly angrily)	Яалаа гэж, би чамд туслалгүй яахав!	[illegible]
d	**Really,** you don't need to try to change my mind.	Үгүй шүү, чи намайг ятгаад хэрэггүй!	[illegible]
e	**What's this supposed to be**! That's my best friend, you know!	Юу гэж, тэр чинь миний хамгийн сайн найз байхгүй юу!	[illegible]
f	**What's the matter**! Why should you get so worked up!	Яачихав аа, юундаа уурлаад байгаа юм бэ!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.11 Expresssing 'Causing an Action'

Different appeals are expressed with one word: 'to take' (**ex. a-b**); 'to wait' (**ex. c-d**; rather impolite); 'to be quiet' (**ex. e**); 'to answer' (**ex. f-h**); 'to take heed to an advice' (**ex. i**).
Compare "aa" in the **ex. f-h** with the interjection "aa" on page 351.

a	**Here**, take this and off with you!	Май, үүнийг аваад хурдан явж үз!	[illegible]
b	**Here**, come on take this!	Май, үүнийг ав ав!	[illegible]
c	**Wait a minute**, I know it!	Байз, би мэдэж байна!	[illegible]
d	**For heaven's sake!** I don't have time. Wait a minute.	Байз, би завгүй байна. Жаахан хүлээж бай.	[illegible]
e	**Hush,** a baby is sleeping in this room.	Чимээ (ишш), энэ өрөөнд нялх хүүхэд унтаж байна.	[illegible]
f	Is Dorj there? **Eh**?	Дорж тэнд байна уу, аа?	[illegible]
g	Can we go? **Eh**?	Бид нар явж болох уу, аа?	[illegible]
h	**I beg your pardon**. What did you say?	Аа? Юу гэнэ ээ?	[illegible]
i	**Now listen**, if you're not very careful it's going to be difficult. (warning)	Эй дээ, тун болгоомжтой явахгүй бол хэцүү шүү!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.12 Expresssing 'Fear/Terror'

Such interjections are mainly used when **dealing with children**.

a	**Boo**, a ghost! ("rock ghost")	Ий, хадны мангаа!	[illegible]
b	**Ugh,** how steep it goes down here!	Ий, ямар аймаар эгц уруу вэ!	[illegible]
c	**Hey**, you're not allowed to take this!	Айжий, үүнийг авч болохгүй!	[illegible]
d	**Hey**, this man here is going to tell you off!	Айжуу, айлын аав загнана шүү!	[illegible]

2.4.1.2.13 Expresssing 'Lullaby'

a	**Hushaby,** sleep baby sleep! ("..... do sleep! my goggle-eyed seed, do sleep.")	Бүүвэй, бүүвэй, унт даа! Бүлтгэр үр минь, нойрс доо!	[illegible]

2.4.2 Interjections of Husbandry

Because the Mongolians have been engaged in animal husbandry **for centuries**, there are **numerous interjections** that deal with animals. Here is only a selected list:

2.4.2.1. OVERVIEW OF INTERJECTIONS OF HUSBANDRY

They can be divided into the following groups:
- Interjections to call animals
- Interjections to drive animals
- Interjections of miscellaneous usage

Such interjections could **vary** from 'aimag' to 'aimag' or even from 'sum' to 'sum'.

2.4.2.1.1 Interjections to Call Animals

a	cattle	өөв өөв	
b	camels	тоор тоор	
c	cattle and camels	хаа	
d	cattle and camels	хөч	
e	goats	зуу зуу	
f	goats	цүү цүү	
g	goats	чээг чээг	
h	mares	гуруй	
i	horses	хайя хайя	
j	horses	хөөр хөөр	
k	sheep and lambs	хоолбой хоолбой	
l	chickens	гүд гүд	

2.4.2.1.2 Interjections to Drive Animals

a	horses	чү чү	
b	dogs	туу туу	
c	dogs	жов жов	
d	goats	чаа чаа	
e	cattle and camels	хөж хөж/ хаа хөж	

2.4.2.1.3 Interjections of Miscellaneous Usage

a	used when milking the sheep (so that they are quiet) or to cause the ewes to feed the lambs	тойг тойг	
b	used to separate sheep and lambs, cows and calves.	гүүргий гүүргий	
c	used to stop a cart	тар тар	
d	used to cause camels to lie down	сөг сөг	
e	used to cause camels to get up	хөөг	
f	used to cause camels to urinate	шээр шээр	

Part IV:

Syntax

Chapter 1:

Kinds and Types of Sentences

pages 360-366

Chapter 2:

Relationship between Words

pages 367-370

Chapter 3:

Relationship between Parts of a Sentence

pages 371-388

Chapter 4:

Relationship between Clauses

pages 389-400

Chapter 5:

Punctuation

pages 401-405

In this Part IV, we talk about **syntax** (Greek 'syntaxis' = 'composition, order'), which is how to compose a sentence. This part is **very important** for English speaking people, as Mongolian and English languages **differ a great deal** in syntactic structure. Without a basic knowledge of the Mongolian syntax, it's impossible to learn the language properly.

Important:
Right at the beginning we have to give **a clear definition of 'predicate'**, as different languages define this term very differently.

In English, the predicate is defined as

'the *part of a sentence* which makes a **statement about the subject**'

My son *is ill.*
Does your father *work in the garden today?*
I *really like him a lot.*

This means that object, attributes and adverbials are **all part of the predicate**.

In Mongolian, however, the definition is different (like the German definition):

☞ **The predicate is 'the *verbal part of a sentence* which makes the statement about the subject'**

My son *is* ill.
Does your father *work* in the garden today?
I really *like* him a lot.

This means that objects, attributes and adverbials are **NOT part of the predicate**, but **closely linked** with it, as is the subject.

As you read on, **please keep this definition in mind**!

1. KINDS AND TYPES OF SENTENCES

1.1 Kinds of Sentences

Each and every verbal statement has **its intention**. The speaker wants to declare, ask, command, threaten, praise, shout, etc. Based on the intention, we can divide the sentences into **different kinds**. Each of these sentences **can also be negated** by using **negative particles** (see pages 328ff) and **verbs which** usually take an **NDS** (see pages 139ff).

1.1.1 Declarative Sentences

Affirmative sentences are built with verbs with a ***TTS*** **(ex. a-c)**. **Negative sentences** take verbs with an **NDS (ex. e-g)**. **A period** (brit. 'full stop') follows the declarative sentences.

a	We came to Mongolia in 1993.	Бид нар 1993 онд Монголд ирсэн.	
b	My younger sister read that book.	Миний дүү тэр номыг уншив.	
c	The day after tomorrow I will go to the countryside.	Би нөгөөдөр хөдөө явна.	

d	Tomorrow I want to buy a jacket at the shop.	Би маргааш дэлгүүрээс хүрэм авах гэсэн юм.	[illegible]
e	He hasn't come.	Тэр ирээгүй.	[illegible]
f	I won't come to the meeting tomorrow.	Би маргааш хуралд очихгүй.	[illegible]
g	He didn't eat his meal.	Тэр хоолоо идсэнгүй.	[illegible]
h	This is not a teacher.	Энэ – багш биш.	[illegible]

1.1.2 Interrogative Sentences

Affirmative interrogative sentences are built in two ways:
• with ***interrogative particles*** (see pages 327-328) and verbs with an **NDS**: **ex. a-f**
• with some ***modal particles***: (see pages 335ff): **ex. g-h**
Negative sentences are built with verbs with an **NDS** (**ex. i-j**).
Interrogative sentences close with a **question mark.**

a	Where are you going now?	Чи одоо хаачих вэ?	[illegible]
b	What, then, is there?	Тэнд юу байгаа юм бэ?	[illegible]
c	What time today will (we) gather?	Өнөөдөр хэдэн цагт цуглараx юм (бэ)?	[illegible]
d	Can you speak Mongolian?	Та монгол хэлээр ярьж чадаx уу?	[illegible]
e	My son, did you eat your meal?	Хүү минь, хоолоо идсэн үү?	[illegible]
f	Do you need this book?	Энэ ном танд хэрэгтэй юу?	[illegible]
g	When ***might*** he have met his friend?	Тэр найзтайгаа хэзээ уулзсан бол?	[illegible]
h	You'll come, ***won't you***?	Чи ирнэ биз?	[illegible]
i	Why aren't you going?	Чи яагаад яваxгүй байна вэ?	[illegible]
j	Didn't you go to the meeting?	Чи хуралд очсонгүй юу?	[illegible]

1.1.3 Imperative Sentences

Imperative sentences are mostly built in the following two ways:
• with verbs with a **PTS** (p. 175ff): **ex. a-e**
• with the help of ***modal constructions***: **ex. f-i**
Negative sentences can be built in both ways (**ex. e,g,i**) and also differently (**ex. j-k**).
Imperative sentences are closed with an **exclamation mark**.

a	Go now quickly!	Та нар одоо түргэн явцгаа!	[illegible]
b	Go there, **please**!	Чи тийшээ яваарай!	[illegible]
c	**Please** read me this paragraph!	Надад энэ сэдвийг уншиж өгвөч!	[illegible]
d	Go away from here!	Эндээс явж үз!	[illegible]

e	**Please** do not go!	Чи биттгий яваарай!	[illegible]
f	Tomorrow, I *need* to have a tooth pulled!	Би маргааш шүдээ авахуулах хэрэгтэй!	[illegible]
g	You *shouldn't* do that!	Чи тэгэх хэрэггүй!	[illegible]
h	I *must* learn Mongolian!	Би монгол хэл сурах ёстой!	[illegible]
i	You *mustn't* go there!	Чи очих ёсгүй!	[illegible]
j	Entrance forbidden!	Орохыг үл зөвшөөрнө!	[illegible]
k	Woe betide you if you give this book to others!	Энэ номыг хүнд өгөв өө!	[illegible]

1.1.4 Exclamatory Sentences

Exclamatory sentences are used to express different emotions. They are mostly built in these three ways:

- like declarative sentences, but having a different *intonation* (the vowel of the last syllable of the sentence is pronounced *long* (**ex. a-d;** note that in **ex. d,** the last vowel is evident only in Classical Script; when emphasized, it shows in Cyrillic too)
- having the form of interrogative sentences with *question words* (**ex. e-g**)
- with *particles* (**ex. h**)

Exclamatory sentences could be **negative (ex. d,g)**. They end with an **exclamation mark**.

a	The car CAME!	Машин ирлээ шүү!	[illegible]
b	Sambuu already LEFT!	Самбуу аль хэдийн явсан!	[illegible]
c	I wanted to go too!	Би ч гэсэн явах юмсан!	[illegible]
d	I'm **NOT** a liar!	Би худал ярьдаг хүн бишээ!	[illegible]
e	*When* will my younger brother have become like that!	Миний дүү хээзээ ийм болж чадах вэ!	[illegible]
f	*What* a beautiful horse!	Ямар сайхан морь вэ!	[illegible]
g	*What* an unlucky person I am!	Би ямар азгүй хүн бэ!	[illegible]
h	*Why*, isn't that nice!	Энэ мөн сайхан аа!	[illegible]

1.2 Types of Sentences

There are different types of sentences depending on their **form or structure**. A sentence is a complicated thing and can be looked at from **different perspectives**. In syntax, the fourth perspective below is the **most important** one:

Overview:

1. Has the sentence **one or two components?**	**Sentence with one component:** Одоо хүйтэрч байна. (only predicate)	**Sentence with both components:** Дүү минь хичээлдээ явсан. (subject and predicate)
2. Is the sentence **complete or incomplete**?	**Incomplete sentence:** Байна.	**Complete sentence:** Миний ах гэртээ байна.
3. Is the sentence **short or extended**?	**Short sentence:** Ээж дуулж байна. (without object, attribute, adverbial)	**Extended sentence:** Ээж өглөө бүр гал тогооны өрөөнд дуулдаг.
4. Is the sentence **simple or combined**?	**Simple sentence:** Би даарахгүй байна. (one predicate)	**Combined sentence:** Би даарч байвч гэртээ харьмааргүй байна. (two predicates)

1.2.1 One-Component and Two-Component Sentences

Each sentence has two major components: **predicate and subject**. Sometimes though, one or the other component could be omitted out of **pragmatic or stylistic** reasons.

1.2.1.1 ONE-COMPONENT SENTENCES (ELLIPSIS)

When either the subject or the predicate component is omitted, it's called 'ellipsis' (meaning: 'omission'). There are three subgroups:
- Sentence without subject component
- Sentence without predicate component
- Word-Sentences

1.2.1.1.1 Sentences without Subject Component

In the following cases, the subject can be left out:

1.2.1.1.1.1 Subject and Predicate are one and the same

This is **not often** the case, usually with verbs in regard to the weather like "бороошиг" (to rain), "зунших" (to become summer), "ганших" (to be a draught), "хүйтрэх" (to become cold), "дулаарах" (to become warm), etc. In English, the ***correlate*** *"it"* takes the place of the omitted subject.

a	*It* rained a lot in summer.	Зундаа их бороошив.	[illegible]
b	Now *it* gets colder.	Одоо хүйтэрч байна.	[illegible]

1.2.1.1.1.2 Generalization

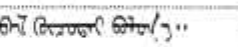
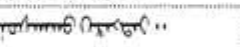
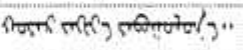
The subject is omitted because it can't be defined. Such one-component sentences are widely used in **proverbs** and **sayings**. The verbal predicate takes an **NDS**.

a	To lead somebody by the nose. ("to hold a snake by someone's hands")	Хүний гараар могой бариулах.	[illegible]

b	Don't count your chickens before they're hatched. ("to take off the boots without having seen water; to tuck up the skirt without having seen a mountain")	Ус үзээгүй байж гутал тайлах. Уул үзээгүй байж хормой шуух.	
c	– to have 10 hourly lessons each week	–Долоо хоног бүр арван цагийн хичээл хийх.	

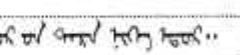
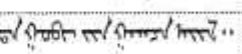
1.2.1.1.1.3 Context allows Subject to be Omitted

The subject may be omitted when a verb suffix (**PTS**) indicates who the subject is (**ex. a-b**), or when the whole context of the conversation is clear without mentioning the subject. Omitting the subject is a very common thing to do in Mongolian, but impossible in English. That's why we sometimes, in the translation, give a subject in parentheses (**ex. c**), use either the neutral 'one' (**ex.d**) or the 2nd person singular 'you' (**ex. e**), or even put the sentence into the passive voice (**ex. f**).

a	Labor for your motherland!	Эх орныхоо төлөө хөдөлмөрлөгтүн! (2nd person)	
b	Let's learn a foreign language!	Гадаад хэл сурцгаая! (1st person)	
c	When (**people**) carry heavy loads, (**they**) become strong.	Хүнд ачаа өргөвөл хүчтэй болно.	
d	When **one** runs up a mountain, **one** gets tired quickly.	Уул өөд гүйхлээр хурдан ядардаг.	
e	When **you** start a work, **you** have to finish it.	Ажил эхэлбэл дуусгах хэрэгтэй.	
f	Tomorrow, two letters **will be sent** with Bat.	Маргааш Батаар хоёр захиа явуулна.	

1.2.1.1.2 Sentences without Predicate Component

Such sentences appear often in poems, titles, newpaper heading, etc. They are a **widely used stylistic element** of language.

a	On a day in the fall 1991.	1991 оны намрын тэр нэг өдөр.	
b	A single yurt in the midst of Gobi's snowy steppe.	Цасан талын дунд говийн ганц айл.	

1.2.1.1.3 Word-Sentences

There aren't too many words which can build a sentence on their own: "за, үгүй, мөн, биш, тийм, зүйтэй, худлаа, зөв, буруу, нээрээ, магадгүй, болзошгүй," etc.

a	Right.	Тийм ээ.	
b	Maybe.	Магадгүй.	
c	Indeed.	Нээрээ.	

1.2.1.2 TWO-COMPONENT SENTENCES

These are simple subject + predicate sentences which form the normal sentence pattern. Since they are discussed throughout the book, we will not do so here.

1.2.2 Complete and Incomplete Sentences

Sometimes, it's important to talk in detail and make complete sentences. Other times, it's more important to be brief and therefore make incomplete sentences.

1.2.2.1 COMPLETE SENTENCES

From a structural point of view, this is the normal sentence, but it **isn't used for dialogue**!

a	-Is your older brother here? **-My older brother is here.**	–Ах чинь байна уу? –Манай ах байна.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
b	-Who is going in this car? **-We're going in this car.**	–Энэ машинаар хэн явах вэ? –Энэ машинаар бид нар явна.	- [illegible] - [illegible]

1.2.2.2 INCOMPLETE SENTENCES

In everyday **dialogues**, it's not common to make whole sentences. But such incomplete sentences may not be taken out of their context. Contrary to the one-component sentence, this incomplete sentence could be turned into a complete sentence (see examples above).

a	-Is your older brother here? **-Yes**. (**"Is."**)	–Ах чинь байна уу? –Байна.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
b	-Who is going in this car? **-We** (are).	–Энэ машинаар хэн явах вэ? –Бид нар.	- [illegible] - [illegible]
c	-Have you eaten? **-Yes**. (**"Eaten."**)	–Та хоолоо идсэн үү? –Идсэн.	- [illegible] - [illegible]

1.2.3 Short and Extended Sentences

Depending on whether the sentence is **made up of only the main parts of the sentence**, or is extended with other parts, we speak of a 'short' or an 'extended' sentence.

1.2.3.1 SHORT SENTENCES

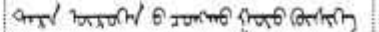
A short sentence is made up of **subject** and ***predicate*** only.

a	Father *came*.	Аав ирсэн.	[illegible]
b	Mother *asked*.	Ээж асуусан.	[illegible]

1.2.3.2 EXTENDED SENTENCES

An extended sentence is made up of subject, predicate *, and one or more **assistant parts** of the sentence, such as an ***object***, **adverbial** or **attribute**.

a	How do you knead *the dough for the 'buuz'*?	Чи буузны гурил яаж зуурдаг вэ?	[illegible]

b	The window **of that room** has **nice** curtains.	Тэр өрөөний цонх гоё хөшигтэй.	
c	Please bring ***me*** **2 kg of *potatoes from the shop***.	Та надад дэлгүүрээс хоёр кило төмс авчраарай.	
d	Will you go ***to the violin concert*** **at the *Music and Dance Middle* School today**?	Та өнөөдөр Хөгжим Бүжгийн Дунд Сургуульд зориулсан концерт үзэх үү?	

* see definition of 'predicate' on page 360

1.2.4 Simple and Combined Sentences

In syntax, the division into simple and combined sentences is the most crucial. That's why a whole chapter (pages 389ff) is given to these two forms of sentences. Here, we will just mention them briefly and not talk about special features.

1.2.4.1 SIMPLE SENTENCES

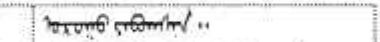
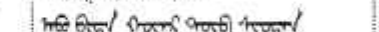
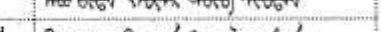
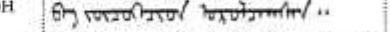
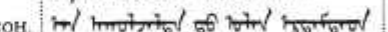
A simple sentence is made up of **not more than one *subject* and predicate part** each. In other words, a simple sentence doesn't have two or even more subjects or predicates.

a	***My older sister*** **went** together with me.	Миний эгч надтай хамт явав.	
b	**Do *you*** **know** the name of that mountain?	Чи тэр уулын нэрийг мэдэх үү?	

1.2.4.2 COMBINED SENTENCES

The combined sentence is made up of **more than one subject or predicate part**. There are the following possibilities:

- one **predicate part**, more than one ***subject part***: **ex. a-b** (compare with 3.2.3. on page 385)
- one ***subject part***, more than one **predicate part**: **ex. c-d** (compare with 3.2.3. on page 385)
- more than one **predicate** and more than one ***subject part***: **ex. e-f**

a	***Father and I*** **went** to the central post office.	Аав бид хоёр төв шуудан руу явсан.	
b	***Many scholars and actors*** **took part** in this meeting.	Энэ уулзалтад олон эрдэмтэд ба жүжигчид оролцсон.	
c	***I*** **returned** home and **took** a shower.	Би гэртээ хариад усанд орсон.	
d	***He*** **likes hunting** and **fishing**.	Тэр ан хийж загас барих дуртай.	
e	***Father*** **is reading** the newspaper and ***mother*** **is cooking** a meal.	Аав сонин уншиж, ээж хоол хийж байна.	
f	Although ***it**** **is very cold** outside, ***I'm*** **not cold**. (* this subject doesn't show in Mongolian)	Гадаа маш хүйтэн боловч би даарахгүй байна.	

2. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN WORDS

The smallest unit of a sentence is a word. Therefore, syntax really begins where single words are connected. This can be done in various ways, either in a **parallel relationship** (the words are equal, no subordination = **coordinate words**), or in an **unparallel relationship** (the words are unequal, there is subordination = **subordinate words**).

2.1 COORDINATE WORDS

As mentioned before, such coordinate words are of equal importance and none is subordinate to the other.

2.1.1 Free Coordinate Words

'Free coordinate words' are a group of words that are free in the way they are combined with each other. The first word can be combined with different words.

2.1.1.1 WITHOUT CONJUNCTION WORDS

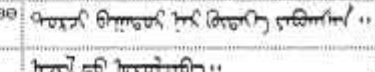
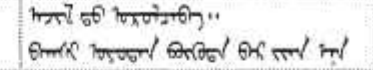
Many of the Mongolian 'coordinate words' can be combined without using a conjunction word. That's usually impossible in English, where we need the ***conjunction 'and'***. Different parts of speech can be combined: adjectives (**ex. a,c**), nouns (**ex. b,d**), verbs (**ex. e**). The latter always take a *cVDS* (pages 157ff).

a	This is a **big, brown** table.	Энэ бол том бор ширээ.	
b	I bought **a book *and* a notebook** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс ном, дэвтэр авлаа.	
c	She did this job **quickly *and* qualitatively well.**	Тэр энэ ажлыг хурдан чанартай хийжээ.	
d	He treated us to Mongolian hospitality with **meat*, milk tea *and* (other) milk products.** (*one or more big pieces of boiled meat)	Тэр бидний монгол маягаар сүүтэй цай, бүхэл мах, цагаан идээгээр дайлав.	
e	The child ran towards me, **screaming *and* waving.**	Хүүхэд над руу хашгиран, даллан гүйлээ.	

2.1.1.2 WITH CONJUNCTION WORDS

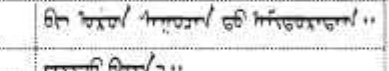
As mentioned above, a conjunction word is not always needed. If it's used anyway (like in **ex. a**), then it is meant to emphasize something.
The following word categories could serve **as *conjunction words*:**
a) conjunctions: **ex. a,b**
b) numerals: **ex. b**
c) plural suffix "нар": **ex. c**
d) reflexive words (see p. 263): **ex. d**
e) so called 'listing words' like "тэргүүтэн, зэрэг, сэлт, гэх мэт": **ex. e-f**

a	This table is **big *and* brown.**	Энэ бол том бөгөөд бор ширээ.	
b	**Father *and* I** bought **a book *and* a notebook** at the shop.	Аав бид хоёр дэлгүүрээс ном болон дэвтэр авлаа.	

c	**Dorj, Baatar, *and others*** went to the countryside.	Дорж Баатар нар хөдөө явсан.	
d	***Everyone*, teachers *and* students**, helped with this job.	Багш оюутан бүгдээрээ энэ ажилд оролцов.	
e	He speaks many languages, ***like* English, German, *etc.***	Тэр англи герман зэрэг олон хэлээр ярьдаг.	
f	He treated us to Mongolian hospitality with ***many things starting with* milk tea, meat *and* milk products.**	Тэр бидний монгол маягаар сүүтэй цай, бүхэл мах, цагаан идээ тэргүүтнээр дайлав.	

2.1.2 Bound Coordinate Words

'Bound coordinate words' are a group of words which are combined with each other in a fixed form. So the **order cannot be changed** and the different words **cannot be exchanged with synonyms**. Such 'bound coordinate words' mostly have **a new lexical meaning** (see page 57). Verbs that appear as bound coordinate words take a *ɕVDS* **(ex. c-d)**.

a	I live in an **apartment**. ("dwelling, living quarters")	Би орон сууцанд амьдардаг.	
b	The **whole society** talks about this. ("above and below")	Энэ тухай дээр дооргүй ярьж байна.	
c	I **changed** my clothes. (to wear chang*ingly*)	Би хувцасаа сольж өмссөн.	
d	I **received** a gift. ("to take wait*ingly*")	Би бэлэг хүлээн авсан.	

2.2 SUBORDINATE WORDS

When a group of words are **structurally linked** with each other and **one of the words dominates**, they are called 'subordinate words'. According to the dominating word we talk about **noun dominated words** and **verb dominated words**. Some subordinate words are linked together with a suffix or a postposition (= indirect subordinate words), others are linked without any help (= direct subordinate words). 'Linked' doesn't imply that the words have to be adjacent (see **ex. b**). In English, **prepositions** play an important role in building such subordinate words.

Example in English:

a) **Father's coat** *hangs in the wardrobe.*

b) Yesterday, I *gave* **my brother** *an apple.*

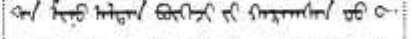
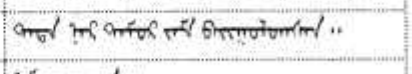
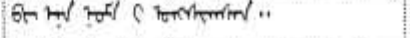
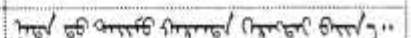
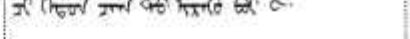
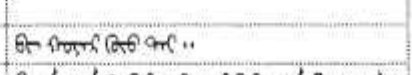
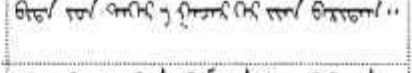
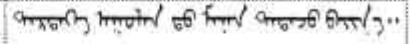
Father's coat = noun dominated words
to hang in the wardrobe = verb dominated words
my brother = noun dominated words
to give an apple = verb dominated words
to give my brother = verb dominated words

2.2.1 Direct Subordinate Words

Although there is **no visible conjunction** to link the words, we **need a suffix** to show that there is a **subordination**. Such an invisible suffix is called a **zero-suffix** and marked "**–ø**". Compare with II:1.2.2.

Direct subordinate words are always made up of ***adwords***:

- ***adword*** **to noun:**
  noun as adword, with n-stem (**ex. a-b**; see also page 58)
  noun as adword, **without n-stem (ex. c-d)**
  proword as adword (**ex. e-f**)
  numeral as adword (**ex. g-h**; see also page 236)
  adverb as adword (**ex. i-j**)
- ***adword*** **to adjectives** (**ex. k-l**; see also page 219f)
- ***adword*** **to verbs** (**ex. m-n**; see also page 221ff)

a	My father made a ***wooden*** **table.**	Миний аав модон ширээ хийсэн.	
b	Have you seen my ***gold*** **ring?**	Та миний алтан бөгжийг харсан уу?	
c	They built a ***rail*****way.** (**"*iron*way"**)	Тэд нар төмөр зам байгуулсан.	
d	My friend lives in the **city *of Ulaanbaatar*.**	Найз минь Улаанбаатар хотод амьдардаг.	
e	I read ***this*** **book.**	Би энэ номыг уншсан.	
f	I need ***such*** **a pencil.**	Надад тийм харандаа хэрэгтэй байна.	
g	At what time will you come? (**"*how many* o'clock"**)	Чи хэдэн цагт ирэх вэ?	
h	I have ***two*** **sons.**	Би хоёр хүүтэй.	
i	In summer, we set up our yurt on an ***elevated*** **place.**	Бид зун дээр газар гэрээ барьдаг.	
j	The **mountain *over there*** **is covered with mist.**	Тэртээ уулаад манан татаж байна.	
k	The mother sewed a shirt from ***light*** **blue** cotton material.	Ээж цагаан шэнхэр даавуугаар цамц оёсон.	
l	For me, this was a ***brand*** **new** thing.	Энэ бол миний хувьд шинэ зүйл байсан.	
m	He screamed ***loudly***.	Тэр чанга хашгирав.	
n	I will ***always*** **remember** her.	Би түүнийг ямагт дурсдаг.	

2.2.2 Indirect Subordinate Words

Indirect subordinate words are linked with a **suffix** or a **postposition**. 2/3 of all subordinate words belong to this category.

2.2.2.1 WITH SUFFIXES

These could serve as linking *suffixes*:
- all CS's (page 78ff) except nominative: **ex. a-d**
- the NDS's (p. 139ff): **ex. e**
- the AwDS's (p. 151ff): **ex. f**
- the sVDS's (p. 156ff): **ex. g**

a	I took **the man's book**.	Би ахын номыг авсан.	[illegible]
b	My son is **good *in* mathematic**.	Миний хүү тоонд сайн.	[illegible]
c	She **did** this **job** quickly.	Тэр энэ ажлыг хурдан хийсэн.	[illegible]
d	Mongolia is **rich *in* livestock**.	Монгол орон малаар баян.	[illegible]
e	I met **the person *who* came** from Germany.	Би Германаас ирсэн хүнтэй уулзсан.	[illegible]
f	My father is **a person *that one would like* to have as a friend.**	Миний аав бол ханилмаар хүн.	[illegible]
g	I **understood** this sentence ***as soon as*** (I) **read** (it).	Би энэ өгүүлбэрийг уншмагц ойлгосон.	[illegible]

2.2.2.2 WITH POSTPOSITIONS

For more information about postpositions, see page 282ff.

a	**I shall wait** for you ***until*** **five o'clock.**	Би таныг таван цаг хүртэл хүлээнэ.	[illegible]
b	What **do** you **know *about* this person**?	Та энэ хүний талаар юу мэдэх вэ?	[illegible]
c	He speaks **German *besides* English**.	Тэр англиас гадна германаар ярьдаг.	[illegible]

3. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PARTS OF A SENTENCE

The different parts of a sentence are **related** to each other. Depending on the relationship we distinguish:
- **main parts of a sentence**; subject and predicate* (they dominate)
- **assistant parts of a sentence**; object, attribute, adverbial (they are dominated)
- **independent parts of a sentence**; e.g. interjections (they have no structural relationship)
- **coordinate parts of a sentence**; a combination of at least two parts of a sentence (see 3.2)

* see definition of 'predicate' on page 360

3.1 Parts of a Sentence

In Mongolian, the different parts of a sentence are divide into 'main' and 'assistant' parts.

3.1.1 Main Parts of a Sentence

The main parts of a sentence are **subject and predicate**.

3.1.1.1 SUBJECTS

The subject is usually in the **nominative case**, which has a **zero-suffix (–ø)**. From the contextual structure, the subject is linked to the predicate. Both parts **complement** each other.

3.1.1.1.1 Question Words for Subjects

With the question words "хэн? юу?" ***(who or what?)*** we ask for the subject.

a	–***Who*** came? –**Father** came.	–Хэн ирсэн бэ? –Аав ирсэн.	- -
b	–***What*** is going on here? –**A meeting** is taking place.	–Энд юу болж байна вэ? –Цуглаан болж байна.	- -

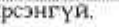
3.1.1.1.2 Omission of Subjects

Quite often, the subject is **omitted** in Mongolian because it is clear from the context who is meant. In English, this is not possible! Compare with page 363.

a	(**We/I/They**) came to Mongolia three years ago.	Монголд ирээд 3 жил болж байна.	
b	Although (**I**) tried very hard, (**I**) wasn't successful.	Маш их хичээсэн боловч амжсангүй.	

3.1.1.1.3 Parts of Speech as Subjects

All kinds of parts of speech can serve as **subjects:** nouns (**ex. a**), prowords (**ex. b**), adjectives (**ex. c**), numerals (**ex. d**), verbs with an NDS (**ex. e**).
Note: In order to use an adjective or a numeral in a **noun function**, the ***CbP*** "нь" is needed. (see page 106 and **ex c,d** below).

a	**Baatar** didn't come.	Баатар ирсэнгүй.	
b	**She** is playing violin.	Тэр хийл тоглож байна.	

c	**The good** *(one)* has to sing.	Сайн нь дуулах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
d	**The three** *(of them)* came from Germany.	Гурав нь Германаас иржээ.	[illegible]
e	**This pupil** went on vacation.	Энэ сурагч амралтаараа явсан.	[illegible]

3.1.1.1.4 Subject Indicators/Markers

Very often, *a word* (**ex. c**), *a particle* (**ex. b,e**), *a suffix* (**ex.f**) *a CbP* (**ex.d**) **or** *a comma* (**ex. a**) accompanies the subject as a subject indicator or subject marker. This is important because Mongolian proper names have meanings and, thus, often get mixed up with other parts of speech, e.g.:

- confusing subjects with objects (**ex. a-c**)
- confusing subjects with attributes (**ex. d-f**)

The sentences in parentheses are what would be understood without the indicator.

a	Tsetseg (= "flower") picked fruits. (Someone picked flowers and fruits.)	Цэцэг, жимс түүв.	[illegible]
b	*Only* Tsetseg (= "flower") picked fruits. (Someone picked flowers and fruits.)	Цэцэг л жимс түүв.	[illegible]
c	A woman (= "a wife *person*") came, followed by her child. (Someone came, followed by his wife and child.)	Эхнэр хүн хүүхдээ дагуулан ирэв.	[illegible]
d	*Our* Chuluun (= "stone") built a fence. (Someone built a stone fence.)	Чулуун маань хашаа барьжээ.	[illegible]
e	*Even* Chuluun (= "stone") built a fence. (Someone built a stone fence.)	Чулуун ч хашаа барив.	[illegible]
f	The wrestlers took their wrestling jackets. (Someone took his strong wrestling jacket.)	Бөхчүүд зодгоо авав.	[illegible]

3.1.1.1.5 Complements of Subjects

When the subject is **equated to a** noun or an adjective, it is important **to use subject indicators** to avoid confusion, emphasize the subject, or clarify the meaning of the sentence. Such indicators could be:

"бол" (**ex. a-b**), "гэдэг нь" (**ex. c**), the **CbP's** (**ex. d**), **comma** or **dash** (**ex. e;** in talking, there is a pause) or the **CbP** "чинь" in function of a **focus** particle (**ex. f-g**). If "чинь" in this function is combined with the particle(s) "шүү (дээ)", the focusing is even stronger.

The sentence in parentheses is what would be understood without the indicator.

a	This **is** a doctor. (This person's doctor.)	Энэ бол хүний эмч.	[illegible]
b	**I** am rich.	Би бол баян.	[illegible]
c	The *so called* 'buuz' is a meat dish.	Буузгэдэг нь махтай хоол юм.	[illegible]
d	*My* father is tall.	Аав минь өндөр.	[illegible]
e	Mongolia – an Asian country.	Монгол – Азийн орон.	[illegible]
f	My younger brother, **you know**, is an intelligent man.	Миний дүү чинь ухаалаг хүн.	[illegible]
g	His homeland, **you know**, is far away.	Түүний нутаг чинь хол шүү дээ.	[illegible]

3.1.1.2 PREDICATES

The predicate (Latin 'praedicare' = 'to declare loudly') means 'the declared thing'. Please read the explanations on page 360. Here is the definition of a Mongolian predicate again:

> **The predicate is 'the *verbal part of a sentence* which makes the statement about the subject'**

3.1.1.2.1 Question Words for Predicates

With the question words "яа–? юу хий–?" *(to do what?)* we ask for the predicates. Notice that objects and adverbials are part of the answer, as they are very closely linked to the predicate.

a	-*What happened* to you yesterday? -I **had** a headache.	–Чи өчигдөр яасан бэ? –Миний толгой өвдсөн.	- [illegible] .. - [illegible]
b	-*What did* you *do* yesterday? -I **lay** on my bed.	–Чи өчигдөр юу хийсэн бэ? –Би орондоо хэвтсэн.	- [illegible] .. - [illegible]
c	-*What do* you *do* when you have a headache? -I **take** medicine **and lie down.**	–Толгой өвдөхөд та яадаг вэ? –Би эм уугаад хэвтдэг.	- [illegible] .. - [illegible]
d	-*What will happen* if Bat comes tomorrow? -**Give** him this book, **please.**	–Маргааш Батыг ирвэл яах вэ? –Чи түүнд энэ номыг өгөөрэй.	- [illegible] .. - [illegible]

The predicates can be **divided into two groups** according to their structure:

3.1.1.2.2 Simple Predicates

Simple predicates are predicates that are made up of ***a full verb***, which takes a *TS* (see page 175ff)

3.1.1.2.2.1 One Full Verb

a	***Please write*** this other letter quickly.	Та нөгөө захиагаа хурдан бичээрэй.	[illegible] ..
b	***Go up*** the stairs!	Шатаар гар! (–ø)	[illegible] –
c	Yesterday, he ***took*** an exam.	Тэр өчигдөр шалгалт өгчээ.	[illegible] ..
d	I ***get up*** early in the morning.	Би өглөө эрт босдог.	[illegible] ..

3.1.1.2.2.2 Compound Full Verb

The first full verb takes a *cVDS*, the second verb a **TS**.
As mentioned on pages 157-158, such combinations give **new meanings** (in English **one** new verb).

a	I **bought** a new car. ("to take trad*ingly*")	Би шинэ машин худалдаж авлаа.	[illegible] ..
b	He **vouched** for me. ("to guarantee confirm*ingly*")	Тэр намайг батлаж даасан.	[illegible] ..

3.1.1.2.3 Compound Predicates

Compound predicates are predicates that are made up of **two or more verbs**: the **first one** is a **full verb** expressing the lexical meaning and the other words could be **auxiliary, modal, or modifying verbs** which have only a grammatical function. That gives **three subgroups**:

3.1.1.2.3.1 Full Verbs and Auxiliary Verbs

The tense is expressed with the help of the **auxiliary verbs.** The **full verb** always takes a VDS, the last of the auxiliary verbs a ***TS*** **(ex. a-b)**. In a general tense context (e.g. professions, character traits, etc.) the auxiliary verb functioning as a copula **may be dropped**. Then we get something like a '**noun-predicate**', which is the actual Mongolian name. In English we call such phenomena 'complements'. Compound predicates can be made up of **different parts of speech (ex. c-e)**.

a	I **was writing** a letter yesterday at this time.	Би өчигдөр өдийд захиа бичиж байсан.	Өчигдөр өдөржин би захиа бичиж байсан.
	I'**m writing** a letter now.	Би одоо захиа бичиж байна.	Би одоо захиа бичиж байна.
	I **shall be writing** a letter at this time tomorrow.	Би маргааш өдийд захиа бичиж байх болно.	Маргааш өдөржин би захиа бичиж байх болно.
b	I **was** a teacher.	Би багш байсан.	Би багш байсан.
	I (**am**) a teacher.	Би багш (байна).	Би багш (байна).
	I **shall be** a teacher.	Би багш байх болно.	Би багш байсаар байх болно.
c	The wind **was** quite **strong**. (= adjective)	Салхи нилээд хүчтэй байлаа.	Маш хүчтэй салхи байлаа.
d	I **am** the director of this school. ("The director of this school **is me**.")(= pronoun)	Энэ сургуулийн захирал нь би байна.	Би захирал. Энэ сургуулийн захирал би.
e	"The lives of the neighbors (**are**) **one.**" (= numeral) meaning: neighbors must help each other.	Айл хүний амь нэг. (proverb)	Айл бүрийн амь нэг.

3.1.1.2.3.2 Full Verbs and Modal Verbs/Constructions

The **modal verb** "чада–" is always used with a full verb taking the *cVDS* "**–ж/–ч**" **(ex. a-c)**; the **modal constructions**, due to their noun origin, demand a verb with the *NDS* "**–х**" **(ex. f-g)**. With the **auxiliary verbs,** either mood **(ex. b)** or tense is expressed **(ex. e, g)**.

a	**Are** you **able to do** this?// **Can** you **do** this?	Та үүнийг хийж чадах уу?	Та үүнийг хийж чадах уу?
b	I **would have been able to do** this./I **could have done** this.	Би үүнийг хийж чадах байсан.	Би үүнийг хийж чадсаар байлаа.
c	I **was able to do** this.	Би үүнийг хийж чадсан.	Би үүнийг хийж чадлаа.
d	I **need** money. ("Money is with necessity to me.")	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй.	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй.
e	I **needed** money.	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй байсан.	Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй байлаа.
f	I **like playing** chess. ("I'm with pleasure in playing chess.)	Би шатар тоглох дуртай.	Би шатар тоглох дуртай.

g	When I was small, I **didn't like playing** chess.	Би бага байхдаа шатар тоглох дургүй байсан.	[illegible]

3.1.1.2.3.3 Full Verbs and Modifying Verbs

The first verb is always a **full verb**, which expresses the lexical meaning and takes a cVDS. The second verb is one of the **modifying verbs**. Tense (**ex. b,e**) is expressed with **auxiliary verbs**.

a	**May** we **go** now? ("**Will** we **become going**?")	Бид нар одоо явж болох уу?	[illegible]
b	If you had come early, we **would have been allowed to go**.	Та нар эрт ирсэнсэн бол, бид нар явж болох байсан.	[illegible]
c	He **brought** me to the airport.	Тэр намайг онгоцны буудал дээр гаргаж өгсөн.	[illegible]
d	I **wrote down** everything he said. ("I **took** writ*ingly* ...")	Би түүний хэлснийг бүгдийг бичиж авав.	[illegible]
e	He **had** always **told** me about this. ("He **was** talk*ingly* **giving**.")	Тэр надад энэ тухай ярьж өгдөг байсан.	[illegible]

3.1.2 Assistant Parts of a Sentence

Assistant parts of a sentence are **objects, attributes, and adverbials**. With these assistant parts, **extended sentences** are built. Short sentences do not contain assistant parts. Objects and adverbials are dominated by predicates; attributes by the word they are attributed to.

3.1.2.1 OBJECTS

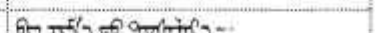
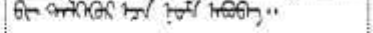
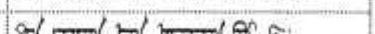
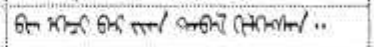
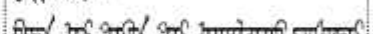
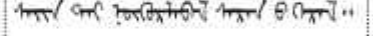
The object (Latin 'obicere' = 'to throw against') is placed 'against' the subject. Mongolian objects **need either a case suffix** (6 to choose from; nominative is reserved for the subject; genitive builds attributes) **or a postposition**. The verb (rarely an adjective in predicate function) determines which case or which postposition is needed (see Chapter 2 of the Appendix).

Example in English:
to ask **whom**? (accusative); to give **to whom**? (dative); to take **from whom** (prepositional case); to believe **in whom**? (prepositional case); to go **through what**? (prepositional case), etc.
The examples on the next page show the **different possible objects**. Sometimes there could be an **overlap with adverbials** (**ex. k**):

dative-locative (**ex. a-b**)
instrumental (**ex. g-h**)
postpositional object (**ex. m-n**)
accusative (**ex. c-d**)
comitative (**ex. i-j**)
ablative (**ex. e-f**)
directive (**ex. k-l**)

3.1.2.1.1 Parts of Speech as Objects

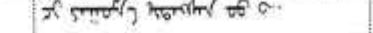
All **concrete parts of speech**, with the exception of adverbs, can build objects: nouns (**ex. a,c,g,h,k,l,n**); adwords (**ex. d,j**); prowords (**ex. b,e,f,i,m**).

a	I love **my mother**. ("I am with love **for my mother.**")	Би ээждээ хайртай.	
b	Let me help **you**!	Би чамд туслая!	
c	I bought **a book** at the shop.	Би дэлгүүрээс ном авав.	
d	Gerel took **two**.	Гэрэл хоёрыг авсан.	
e	I'd like to ask **her**. ("from her")	Би түүнээс асуумаар байна.	
f	**What** are you afraid **of**?	Та юунаас айдаг вэ?	
g	I had **my older sister** make me a 'deel'.	Би эгчээрээ дээл хийлгэсэн.	
h	Are you going to call? ("to talk **through the wire**?")	Та утсаар ярих уу?	
i	We were supposed to meet **him**. ("to meet **with** ...")	Бид нар түүнтэй уулзах ёстой байсан.	
j	To be friends with the good is moonshine. (proverb) ("If you are friends **with the good** it is moonshine.")	Сайнтай нөхөрлөвөл сарны гэрэл.	
k	I have to get **to the market**.	Би зах руу очих хэрэгтэй.	
l	The children ran **towards their mother.**	Хүүхдүүд ээж рүүгээ гүйв.	
m	Did you think **about this**?	Чи үүний тухай бодсон уу?	
n	He talked in detail **about his work.**	Тэр ажлынхаа талаар дэлгэрэнгүй ярив.	

The objects are in close relationship to the verbs expressing the predicate. So, according to the twofold division of the verbs in **transitive** and **intransitive** verbs, we can divide the objects into **direct** and **indirect objects**.

3.1.2.1.2 Direct Objects

Transitive verbs always demand **a direct object**, which is in the accusative case (**ex. a**). On pages 87-89, we explained thoroughly when the suffix can be dropped (**ex. b,f;** zero- suffix). In general statements, the direct object can sometimes be omitted (**ex. c**). When the **object is unknown** in a specific situation, the word "юм" (=thing) must be used. To omit the unknown object (as in English) is not possible (**ex. d**). Transitive verbs can also have ***indirect objects*** beside their direct objects (**ex. e-f**).

a	Who *chopped* **this wood**?	Энэ модыг хэн хагалсан бэ?	
b	I can *chop* **wood**.	Би мод хагалж чадна.	
c	He *reads* fast.	Тэр хурдан уншдаг.	
d	*Have* you *eaten* (**something**)?	Чи юм идсэн үү?	
e	I *made* **this table** *from* ***wood***.	Би энэ ширээг модоор хийсэн.	

f	I *had* **my older sister** *make* me **a 'deel'**.	Би эгчээрээ дээл хийлгэсэн.	[illegible]

3.1.2.1.3 Indirect Objects

Intransitive verbs can't have direct objects, but only **indirect objects** which could be in any case other than accusative, nominative, or genitive (**ex. a-b**). Often, *transitive verbs* have an indirect object as well as a ***direct one*** (**ex. c-d**). On pages 78-100, there are many examples for different objects with their CS's.

a	Let me *help* **you**.	Би чамд туслая.	[illegible]
b	Please *talk* **with me** on the phone **about this**.	Над [illegible] үүний тухай утсаар яриарай.	[illegible]
c	*Did* you *give* **her** ***a gift***?	Чи түүнд бэлэг өгөв үү?	[illegible]
d	I *have* **a Monglian teacher** *teach* me ***English***.	Би монгол багшаас англи хэл заалгадаг.	[illegible]

3.1.2.2 ATTRIBUTES

Attributes (Latin 'attribuere' = 'to allot to') are **not independent parts of a sentence**; they depend on another part of the sentence. Characteristics, sizes, colors, masses, materials, etc are expressed with attributes (compare with page 212ff). They usually appear together with *subjects* (**ex. a-c,f,k**) or *objects* (**ex. b,e,g,i,j**), rarely with *adverbials* (**ex. h**). Attributes are often found in complements of subjects (**ex. d,f,k**). They are placed **right before** the word they describe.

Attributes are built in the following ways:
- **with adwords**
  - nouns with n-stem serving as adjectives (**ex. b-c**)
  - nouns with derivational suffix "–тай" serving as adjectives (**ex. d**)
  - adjectives with adwords (**ex. e-f**)
  - numerals (**ex. i-j**)
- **with prowords** (**ex. g-h**)
- **with nouns in genitive case** (**ex. g**)
- **with the CbP's** (**ex. b**)
- **with verbs taking an NDS** (**ex. k**)

Attributes could be made up of several words (**ex. e-g,j**).

a	Don't you like **red** *flowers*?	Танд улаан цэцэг таалагддаггүй юу?	[illegible]
b	**My** *father* made a **wooden** *chair*.	Аав минь модон сандал хийсэн.	[illegible]
c	Have you ever traveled by *ship*? ("**water** *vessel*")	Та усан онгоцоор явж үзсэн үү?	[illegible]
d	A rider came. ("*person* **with horse**")	Морьтой хүн ирэв.	[illegible]
e	This is **too unnecessary** a *work*!	Энэ дэндүү дэмий ажил юм.	[illegible]
f	You gave a **totally wrong** *answer*.	Чи тэс буруу хариу өгсөн.	[illegible]
g	**That** *student* is **my younger brother's** *friend*.	Тэр оюутан бол миний дүүгийн найз.	[illegible]

h	Read **these** *books*!	Эдгээр номыг уншаарай!	[illegible]
i	The evening party went on for **two** *hours*.	Үдэшлэг хоёр цаг үргэлжлэв.	[illegible]
j	Do you have **many Mongolian** *friends*?	Та олон монгол найзтай юу?	[illegible]
k	Will you go to the countryside **next** *year*?	Та ирэх жил хөдөө явах уу?	[illegible]

3.1.2.3 ADVERBIALS

Adverbials, (Latin 'ad verbum' = 'to the word/verb'), describe the **conditions under which the action, which is expressed in the sentence, takes place**. It is **difficult to draw a line between adverbials and adverbial clauses**. Sometimes in English, an adverbial has to be translated with an adverbial clause. This matter is not yet resolved in Mongolian studies. For the student it's not a very important problem. So we won't get involved in it here.

Adverbials can be divided into the following **semantic groups**:
1.) Local adverbials (place)
2.) Temporal adverbials (time)
3.) Modal adverbials (mode; way of behaving)
4.) Causal adverbials (reason)
5.) Final adverbials (intention)
6.) Conditional adverbials (condition)
7.) Concessive adverbials (concession)

3.1.2.3.1 Local Adverbials

Local adverbials can be divided into **three subgroups** :

3.1.2.3.1.1 Showing Place

Such adverbials answer the **question** "хаа(на)?"(**where?**)
They can be **built** like this:
- with adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
- with nouns with ***dative-locative CS's*** (**ex. c**)
- with ***postpositions*** (**ex. d**)

a	The children are playing **outside**.	Хүүхдүүд гадаа тоглож байна.	[illegible]
b	**Here** is a hotel.	Энд зочид буудал байна.	[illegible]
c	I live ***in*** **a 3 room flat.**	Би 3 өрөө байранд амьдардаг.	[illegible]
d	He's lying ***on*** **the bed**.	Тэр орон дээр хэвтэж байна.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.1.2 Showing Direction

Such adverbials answer the **questions** "хаашаа? хаанаас? хаа хүртэл?" **(to where? from where? until where?).**
They can be **built** like this:
- with *modified* adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
- with *declined* nouns: - with ablative CS's (**ex. c**)
  - with dative-locative CS's (**ex. d**)
  - with postpositions (**ex. e**)

a	Don't run **around**, please!	Ийш тийш биттий гүйгээрэй.	[illegible]
b	He came ***from*** **the north.** (meaning "Russia" most of the time)	Тэр хойноос ирсэн.	[illegible]
c	My son came ***from*** **(his) school.**	Миний хүү сургуулиасаа ирсэн.	[illegible]
d	When did he come ***to*** **Mongolia?**	Тэр Монголд хэзээ ирсэн бэ?	[illegible]
e	We went by car ***as far as*** **Darkhan.**	Бид машинаар Дархан хүртэл явсан.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.1.3 Showing Local Movement

Such adverbials answer the **question** "хаагуур?" **(where abouts? which way?).**
They can be **built** like this:
- with *modified* adverbs (**ex. a-b**)
- with *declined* nouns: instrumental CS's (**ex. c**)
  postpositions (**ex. d**)

a	The birds are flying **above.**	Шувуу дээгүүр нисч байна.	[illegible]
b	**In the north,** someone is going ***around*** driving his cattle.	Хойгуур мал туусан хүн явж байна.	[illegible]
c	Many people promenade ***along*** **the bank of the Tuul river.**	Туул голын хөвөөгөөр олон хүн зугаалж байна.	[illegible]
d	TheTuul river flows ***south of the*** **city Ulaanbaatar.**	Туул гол Улаанбаатар хотын урдуур урсдаг.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.2 Temporal Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "хэзээ? хэдийд? хэдийгээс? хэдий хүртэл?" **(when? about when? from when on? until when?)**

They show two things:

3.1.2.3.2.1 Showing Moment of Action

They can be **built** like this:
- with temporal adverbs (**ex. a**)
- with *declined* nouns: dative-locative CS's (**ex. b**)
  instrumental CS's (**ex. c**)
  postpositions (**ex. d-e**)
- with some of the proword-conjunctions (**ex. f**)

a	He never has time. ("**always** no time")	Тэр үргэлж завгүй байдаг.	[illegible]

b	Please come ***at*** **4 o'clock.**	Чи 4 цагт ирээрэй.	[illegible]
c	I left ***in*** **the light of the dawn.**	Би үүрийн гэгээгээр мордсон.	[illegible]
d	Drink this medicine ***after*** **the meal**.	Чи энэ эмийг хоолны дараа уу.	[illegible]
e	Do you go to church ***every*** **Sunday**?	Чи бүтэн сайн одер бүр цуглаанд явдаг уу?	[illegible]
f	**Then** we both left.	Тэгээд бид хоёр явсан.	[illegible]

3.1.2.3.2.2 Showing the Beginning or the End of an Action

- Beginning: adverb or noun with *ablative CS's* (**ex. a-b**) or with *postpositions* (**ex. c**)
- End: with *postpositions* (**ex. d-e**)

a	I'm on vacation ***from*** **tomorrow** ***onward***.	Би маргаашаас амарна.	[illegible]
b	I will start my job ***on*** January **1st**. ("... enter my job ***from*** ...")	Би 1 сарын нэгнээс ажилдаа орно.	[illegible]
c	***From*** **now** ***on*** I won't make this mistake again. ("***from*** **this** ***on***...")	Үүнээс хойш би энэ алдааг давтахгүй.	[illegible]
d	He was ill ***until*** **recently**.	Тэр саяхан болтол өвчтэй байсан.	[illegible]
e	***By*** **the end of this year**, this work might be finished.	Энэ оны эцэс гэхэд энэ ажил дуусах байх.	[illegible]

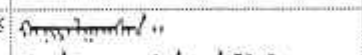
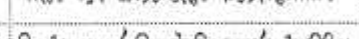
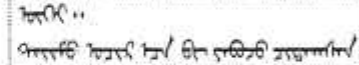
3.1.2.3.3 Modal Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яаж? ямар байдалтай? хир зэрэг?" **(how? in what way? to what degree?)** and thus express **different ways** in which actions happen.
They can be **built** like this:
- with modal adverbs (**ex. a**)
- with adjectives + *instrumental-CS's* (**ex. b**)
- with *cVDS's* (**ex. c**)
- with *sVDS's* (**ex. d-e**)
- with the postpositions "мэт, шиг, адил" (**ex. f**)

a	A meal **bubbles** on a fire. ("boils '**por por**'")	Гал дээр хоол пор пор буцлана.	[illegible]
b	He had a cold smile. ("He smiled **cold*ly***.")	Тэр хүйтнээр инээсэн.	[illegible]
c	He came running. ("He **runn*ingly*** came.")	Тэр гүйж ирлээ.	[illegible]
d	Everyone gave a thunderous applause. ("All people clapped the hands ***until*** **it thundered.**"")	Бүх хүмүүс нижигнэтэл алга ташив.	[illegible]
e	He sat into his car, **laugh*ing***.	Тэр инээсээр машиндаа суув.	[illegible]
f	He stands ***like*** **a victorious hero**. ("having-won-hero")	Тэр ялсан баатар мэт зогсоно.	[illegible]

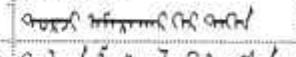
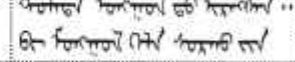
3.1.2.3.4 Causal Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яагаад? ямар учраас? юунаас? яаснаас? юунд?" (**why? for what reason? due to what?**) and thus explain the reason of the action.
They can be **built** like this:
- with *NDS's + dative-locative-CS's* (**ex. a-b**)
- with the conjunction "–аас бол–", whereas "бол–" could also be dropped (**ex. c-d**)
- with the *cVDS* "–аад" (**ex. e**)
- with some of the *proword-conjunctions* (**ex. f**)
- with the *instrumental CS's* (**ex. g**)

a	**Out of anger** his face became red. ("*in* his having become angry")	Тэр уурласандаа царай нь улайв.	
b	She cried **from being afraid**. ("*in* her being afraid")	Тэр айхдаа уйлсан.	
c	***Because*** he **had been cold**, he got the flu.	Тэр даарснаас болж ханиалгасан.	
d	***Because of*** **him** we were late.	Түүнээс болж бид хожимдсон.	
e	**I was so afraid**, I couldn't move. ("I **was afraid *and then*** couldn't move.")	Би айгаад хөдөлж чадаагүй.	
f	***For this reason*** I couldn't go.	Тиймээс би явж чадсангүй.	
g	***Due to*** **the fire catastrophe**, we became homeless.	Түймрийн гайгаар бид орон гэргүй болов.	

3.1.2.3.5 Final Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яах гэж? яахаар? юуны тулд?" (**what for? to do what?**) and thus show the **purpose** or the **intention** of an action. Usually such sentences have an **adverbial clause**, but some could be considered as final adverbials.
They can be **built** like this:
- with the *sVDS* "–хаар" (**ex. a**)
- with the postposition "–ын тулд" (**ex. b**)
- with the construction "–х гэж" (**ex. c**)

a	Dorj returned home ***in order to*** **rest**.	Дорж амрахаар гэртээ харьсан.	
b	I came to Mongolia ***to*** **study the Mongolian language**.	Би монгол хэл сурахын тулд Монголд ирсэн.	
c	I came to Mongolia ***to*** **study the Mongolian language**.	Би монгол хэл сурах гэж Монголд ирсэн.	

3.1.2.3.6 Conditional Adverbials

They answer the **questions** "яавал? ямар бол? юу бол? хэн бол?" (**under what condition?**) and thus show the **conditions** under which an action happens. But all such sentences form, strictly speaking, an **adverbial clause**.

a	**Otherwise** I'll go, you know!	Эс тэгвэл би явна шүү.	

3.1.2.3.7 Concessive Adverbials

They answer the question "**despite who or what?**" and explain why the action happens anyway. There are only a few such adverbials, as it is **common to make an adverbial clause**.

a	**Nevertheless,** I did invite him.	Хэдий тийм болович би түүнийг урьсан.	[illegible]
b	**Nevertheless,** I did give him money.	Тэгглээ ч гэсэн би түүнд дахиад мөнгө өгсөн.	[illegible]
c	**Nevertheless,** he didn't take a leave.	Гэсэн ч гэсэн тэр чөлөө аваагүй.	[illegible]

3.1.3 Placement of the Parts of a Sentence

Taking the following two example sentences, we want to **derive a few basic rules** for the placement of the parts of a sentences:

Example A (simple): Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.

Би	өчигдөр	гэртээ	хичээлээ	сайн	давтсан.
I	yesterday	at home	my lesson	well	reviewed
subject	temporal adv.	local adverbial	object	modal adv.	predicate

Example B (more complicated): Each Sunday, in his own home, my (older) brother does the English language lesson very seriously together with his Japanese friends.

Миний ах	бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр	өөрийн хөө гэрт	япон найз нартайгаа	англи хэлний хичээл	маш шаргуу	хийдэг.
My (older) brother	each Sunday	in own home	with his Japanese friends	the English language lesson	very seriously	does
subject with attribute	temporal adverbial with attribute	local adverbial with attribute	indirect object with attribute	direct object with attribute	modal adverbial with attribute	predicate

1. ☛ The predicate is always at the end.

Examples: (predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	He went to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явав.	[illegible]
c	He didn't go to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явсангүй.	[illegible]
d	He has to go to the shop.	Тэр дэлгүүр явах хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]
e	Did he go to the shop?	Тэр дэлгүүр явсан уу?	[illegible]

2. ☛ The subject is always before the predicate.

Examples: (subjects/predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	I was ill.	Би өвчтэй байсан.	[illegible]
c	He made a table.	Тэр ширээ хийсэн.	[illegible]
d	The sun rose.	Нар мандлаа.	[illegible]

e	Is he ill?	Тэр өвчтэй байна уу?	[illegible]

3. ☛ The object is always between subject and predicate.

Examples: (subjects/*objects*/predicates)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed *my lesson* well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	I bought *a book*.	Би ном авлаа.	[illegible]
c	Bat is making *a table*.	Бат ширээ хийж байна.	[illegible]
d	May I go there *with my friend*?	Би найзтайгаа очиж болох уу?	[illegible]
e	I couldn't write *that other letter*.	Би нөгөө захиаг бичиж чадаагүй.	[illegible]

4. ☛ The attribute is always in front of the word it describes.

Examples: (*attributes*/describing word:
ex. b: subject; **ex. c:** predicate; **ex. d:** object; **ex. e:** attribute; **ex. f:** adverbial)

a	*Each Sunday*, *in his own* home, *my (older)* brother does *the English language* lesson *very* seriously together with his *Japanese* friends.	Миний ах бүтэн сайн өдөр бүр өөрийнхөө гэрт япон найз нартайгаа англи хэлний хичээл маш шаргуу хийдэг.	[illegible]
b	*My* (older) brother left.	Миний ах явсан.	[illegible]
c	He is Mongolian. ("*Mongolian* person.")	Тэр бол монгол хүн.	[illegible]
d	Take *this* pen.	Чи энэ үзгийг ав.	[illegible]
e	I have a *brand* new car.	Надад цоо шинэ машин бий.	[illegible]
f	You learned Mongolian *very* well.	Чи монгол хэлийг маш сайн сурсан.	[illegible]

5. ☛ The modal adverbial is always in front of the predicate.

Examples: (modal adverbial/predicate)

a	Yesterday at home, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
b	This student learned well.	Тэр оюутан сайн сурав.	[illegible]
c	He drives his car carefully.	Тэр машинаа болгоомжтой жолоодлог.	[illegible]
d	He stands like a victorious hero.	Тэр ялсан баатар мэт зогсоно.	[illegible]

6. ☛ The temporal adverbial is always before the local adverbial.

Examples: (temporal adverbial/*local adverbial*)

	Yesterday *at home*, I reviewed my lesson well.	Би өчигдөр гэртээ хичээлээ сайн давтсан.	[illegible]
a	We learn Mongolian *at home* every day.	Бид өдөр бүр гэртээ монгол хэл сурдаг.	[illegible]
b	I bought a book *at the shop* yesterday.	Өчигдөр би дэлгүүрээс ном авлаа.	[illegible]
c	The whole evening, she reviewed her lesson *in the library*.	Тэр бүхэл орой номын сан хичээлээ давтав.	[illegible]

3.2 Coordinate Words as Parts of a Sentence

3.2.1 Characteristics

When talking about the parts of a sentence, 'coordinate words' refer to a group of words which have the **same function** in the sentence or in other words, parts of a sentence which are made up of more than one component. It could be further explained as a **merging of two or more simple sentences** which have common elements. (compare with page 367)

Example:
Peter goes to school. **Susan** goes to school. **I** go to school. = **Peter, Susan, and I** go to school.
The common element (to go to school) links the three subjects which otherwise have no relationship together.

Coordinate words as parts of a sentence can belong to **two groups**:

1.) Coordinate words which are of *one* semantic group.
Such coordinate words can be built with all five parts of a sentence.
e.g. Тэр англи, германаар ярьдаг. He speaks **English** and **German**.
(both **indirect objects** are **languages** = one and the same semantic group)

2.) Coordinate words which are of *different* semantic groups.
Such coordinate words can be built with objects, attributes and adverbials.
e.g. Тэр надтай англиар ярьдаг. He talks with me ***in English***.
(the **two indirect objects** belong to **different** semantic groups)

The following table shows what is possible and impossible when building coordinate words as part of a sentence:

	coordinate words of *one* semantic group:	**coordinate words of *different* semantic groups:**
1. order	**is free:** Тэр герман, англиар ярьдаг. Тэр англи, германаар ярьдаг.	**is bound:** Миний хоёр ном энд байна. (wrong: Хоёр миний ном ...)
2. grammatical form (e.g. suffixes)	**is the same:** Тэр германаар ярьдаг. Тэр англиар ярьдаг.	**is different:** Тэр надтай англиар ярьдаг.
3. conjunction	**is possible:** Тэр англиар ба германаар ярьдаг.	**is impossible**
4. question word	**one is sufficient:** Юугаар ярьдаг вэ?	**more than one is needed:** Хэнтэй/ юугаар ярьдаг вэ?

5. grammatical suffix	**is needed with last word only:** Тэр герман (-ø) , англиар ярьдаг.	**is needed with every word:** Тэр надтай англиар ярьдаг.
6. reflexive words or listing-word	**is possible:** Тэр англи, герман зэрэг хэлээр ярьдаг. Баатар, Болд бид бүгд явсан.	**is impossible**
7. enumerating intonation	**is possible:** Тэр англи, германаар ярьдаг. (Comma or pause in intonation)	**is impossible**

3.2.2 Coordinate Subjects

Coordinate subjects can be **built like this**:
- with reflexive words like "бүгд, цөм" (**ex.b**)
- with listing-words like "дөрвүүл"
- with cardinal numerals like "дөрөв" (**ex. a**)

Note that a ***declension*** is only needed with the last word (e.g. plural suffix in **ex. b**).

a	**Bold, Baatar, Dorj, and Tulag** went to the lesson.	Болд, Баатар, Дорж, Тулга дөрөв хичээлдээ явав.	[illegible]
b	During the National Holiday **everybody, herdsmen, workers and officials** take a rest.	Үндэсний баяраар малчин, ажилчин, албан хаагчид цөм амардаг.	[illegible]

3.2.3 Coordinate Predicates

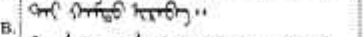
Sentences with coordinate predicates have a **common subject**. They are **built like this**:
- with *cVDS's* (**ex. a**)
- with the *sVDS "-саар"* (**ex.b**).

The last predicate expresses tense (**ex. a-c,e**) or person (**ex. d**). The ***auxiliary verbs*** follow the last predicate (**ex. c,f**), but could, if need be, follow the other predicates as well (**ex. e**).

a	Dorj **watered** his sheep **and** gathered his horses.	Дорж хонио услаад, адуугаа хураав.	[illegible]
b	I ***kept*** **think*ing*** that I would meet him, (but) I couldn't.	Би түүнтэй уулзана гэж бодсоор ьможсангүй.	[illegible]
c	Mother ***is*** **cook*ing*** the meal and sing*ing* a song.	Ээж хоол хийж дуу дуулж байна.	[illegible]
d	Please **make** dinner ***and then*** clean your room.	Чи хоол хийгээд өрөөгөө цэвэрлээрэй.	[illegible]
e	I ***was*** **help*ing*** you, ***am*** **help*ing*** you, and will help you.	Би танд тусалж байсан, тусалж ч байна, тусалж ч болно.	[illegible]

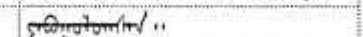
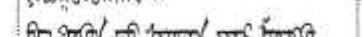
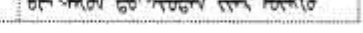
3.2.4 Coordinate Objects

Coordinate objects of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b**;
Coordinate objects of **different semantic groups**: **ex. c**: *dative-locative*; instrumental accusative

a	**Cattle, horses, camels, sheep, and goats** are the five kinds of livestock.	Үхэр, адуу, тэмээ, хонь, ямаа таван хошуу мал гэнэ.	
b	We came together **with Süren, Khishigt, and Ochir.**	Бид Сүрэн, Хишигт, Очир нартай хамт ирэв.	
c	I sent money ***to her*** **by post.**	Би түүнд шуудангаар мөнгө явуулсан.	

3.2.5 Coordinate Attributes

Coordinate attributes of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b**;
Coordinate attributes of **different semantic groups**: (**ex. c**: Note the **order** on page 214)

a	(They) built **wooden, stone, and brick** houses in rows.	Мод, чулуу, туйлуун байшингуудыг эгнүүлэн барьжээ.	
b	I have bought an **explanatory**, a **multi-language, and** an **orthografic** dictionary at the book shop.	Би номын дэлгүүрээс тайлбар толь, олон хэлний толь, зөв бичгийн толь худал-даж аваад байна.	
c	I saw **the man's four fat, brown** horses.	Би ахын дөрвөн тарган бор морийг харсан.	

3.2.6 Coordinate Adverbials

Coordinate adverbials of **one semantic group**: **ex. a-b** (suffix with the last adverbial)
Coordinate adverbials of **different semantic groups**: **ec. c** (suffix always needed: causal adv. "to"; temporal adv. "yesterday" (–ø); local adv. "from Germany".

a	I lived in **England, Mongolia, and Switzerland.**	Би Англи, Монгол, Швейцарьт амьдарч байсан.	
b	**Day** and **night, morning** and **evening**, (they) constantly remember with a longing.	Өдөр шөнө, өглөө үдэшлүүд мөрөөдөн санагалзана.	
c	My friend came **yesterday** from **Germany** to take part in a meeting.	Миний найз хуралд оролцохоор өчигдөр Германаас ирсэн.	

3.3 Independent Parts of a Sentence

Independent parts of a sentence:
- are **not integrated** into the sentence structure
- have **no syntactic relationship** to the rest of the sentence
- **appear freely** anywhere in the sentence (beginning, middle, end)
- are **separated** from the rest of the sentence by **commas**

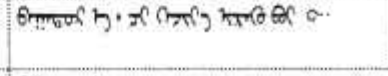
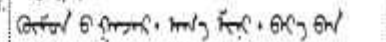
Example:

Ах минь, чи яагаад явахгүй юм бэ?	**My brother,** why won't you go, then?
Яагаад, ах минь, чи явахгүй юм бэ?	Why, then, **my brother,** won't you go?
Чи яагаад явахгүй юм бэ, ах минь?	Why won't you go, then, **my brother**?

There are **four subgroups**:
- Attention parts
- Inserted parts
- Interjections
- Response parts

3.3.1 Attention Parts

They can be **built** like this:
- using the particle "аа" (**ex. a**)
- using the СЬР "минь" (**ex. b**)
- using special names to call animals (**ex. c**)
- using interjections (**ex. d**)

a	**Baaaatar***, when will you come? (*calling for him)	Баатар аа, чи хэзээ ирэх вэ?	
b	Take care abroad, **my brother**! ("In people's place, ... think about your body.")	Хүний газар, ах минь, биеэ бодоорой.	
c	**Bankhar*, Bankhar,** come here. (*name for dogs)	Банхар банхар, нааш ир!	
d	**Hey, my friend**, please do not go!	Хөөе, найз минь, битгий яваач дээ!	

3.3.2 Inserted Parts

With the inserted parts, the speaker has a chance **to comment on** what is being said. The following words (many look like mini sentences) are often used as inserted parts. They usually appear at the **beginning** of the sentence. Some of them also serve as adverbials:

бодвол	probably ("if one thinks")
миний бодлоор	in my opinion,
миний бодоход	in my opinion
нэгдүгээрт	first
эн тэргүүнээ	first of all
нэг талаар	on one hand
нөгөө талаар	on the other hand
өөрөөр хэлбэл	in other words
нэг үгээр хэлэхэд	in one word
товчоор хэлэхэд	briefly said
эндээ гэж хэлэхэд	in private
мэдээжийн хэрэг	of course
үүнд дурдсанаар	according to this
дам сонсвол	having heard that ...
нэг мэдэхнээ	unexpectedly

завшаанаар	fortunately
аз болоход	by chance
аз дутахад	unfortunately
харамсалтай нь	regrettably
ядаж	at least
дор хаяж	at least
наад зах нь	at least
адаглаад	at least
цаад зах нь	at most
үнэндээ	as a matter of fact
нээрээ	really, indeed
чухамдаа	in reality
яриагүй	not worth mentioning
ихэнхдээ	as a whole
ерөнхийдөө	in general

Examples:

a	**In other words**, I don't have time now!	Өөрөөр хэлбэл, би одоо завгүй байна.	[illegible]
b	**Really**, I can't give you work!	Нээрээ, би чамайг ажилд оруулж чадахгүй шүү.	[illegible]
c	**Of course**, I won't talk to anyone about this.	Мэдээжийн хэрэг, би энэ талаар хэнтэй ч ярихгүй.	[illegible]
d	**At least**, you need a period of 4 months for this.	Наад зах нь, үүнд дөрвөн сарын хугацаа хэрэгтэй.	[illegible]

3.3.3 Interjections

Interjections make up a big percentage of the independent parts of a sentence.

a	**Brr**, how cold it is!	Тий тий, ямар хүйтэн юм бэ!	[illegible]
b	**Ugh**, what a terrible smell!	Пөөх, ямар муухай үнэр вэ!	[illegible]

3.3.4 Response Parts

Response parts which could also be word-sentences (see page 364) are **separated by commas** if they serve as independent parts of a sentence.

a	-Will you come to the meeting? **-Yes**, I'll come with Dorj.	–Та хуралд очих уу? –Тэгнэ, Доржтой хамт очно.	[illegible]
b	-Are you a foreigner? **-That's right**, I'm a German.	–Та гадаадын хүн үү? –Тийм ээ, би герман хүн.	[illegible]

4.2.1 Characteristics of Subordinate Clauses

As evident above, there are many differences between a Mongolian and an English subordinate clause. We shall now talk about these differences.

4.2.1.1 FORM AND TENSE OF PREDICATES

The predicate of a *subordinate clause* can be **built in the following ways**:
- **with a cVDS: ex. a**
- **with an undeclined NDS: ex. b-d**
- **with a declined NDS: ex. e**

a	Let me wait here ***until the teacher comes.***	Багшийг иртэл би энд хүлээж байя.	[illegible]
b	***What he said*** is right.	Түүний хэлсэн нь зөв байна.	[illegible]
c	That's ***what you always say***.	Энэ бол чиний хэлдэг.	[illegible]
d	Please don't forget the words ***I said***.	Миний хэлсэн үгийг битгий мартаарай.	[illegible]
e	Do listen to ***what I tell you!***	Миний хэлэхийг сонсож бай!	[illegible]

The ***predicate of the subordinate clause*** expresses a *tense*, which is not absolutely independent from the tense of the **predicate** of the **main clause**. The past (**ex. a-b**), present (**ex. c-e**) or future (**ex. f-h**), being expressed by the ***predicate*** *of the subordinate clause*, has to be seen in the light of the tense of the main clause.

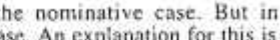
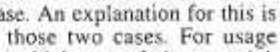
a	I **knew** *that he had left for the countryside*.	Түүний хөдөө явсныг би мэдсэн.	[illegible]
b	I **know** *that he left for the countryside*.	Түүний хөдөө явсныг би мэдэж.	[illegible]
c	I **knew** *that he was staying in the countryside*.	Түүний хөдөө явж. би мэдсэн.	[illegible]
d	I **know** *that he is staying in the countryside*.	Түүний хөдөө явж. би мэдэж.	[illegible]
e	We **arrived** in time, *having been traveling without a stop*.	Бид зогсолтгүй явсаар цагтаа очсон.	[illegible]
f	*As soon as Dad comes*, I'**ll go**.	Аавыг ирмэгц би явна.	[illegible]
g	*As soon as Dad came*, I **went**.	Аавыг ирмэгц би явсан.	[illegible]
h	I **knew** *that he would leave for the countryside*.	Түүний хөдөө явахыг би мэдсэн.	[illegible]

4.2.1.2 FORM OF SUBJECTS

In an English subordinate clause, the subject is always in the nominative case. But in Mongolian, the subject could also be in **genitive or accusative** case. An explanation for this is not easy, as there is no relationship between the subject and those two cases. For usage however, there are a **few guidelines** as to which subject takes which case. It is essential, however, to **differentiate** between **two common** subjects and **two different** subjects.

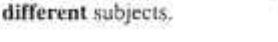
4.2.1.2.1 Common Subjects

The subjects of the main clause and the subordinate clause are **one and the same**. Therefore, the subject needs to be mentioned **only once**, usually in the *subordinated clause* which precedes. It is in nominative case. By adding the **RS** to the predicate of the subordinate sentence, the **unity of the two subjects** is further **emphasized**.

a	*As soon as I came from my lessons,* I had lunch.	Би хичээлээс ирмэгцээ цайгаа уусан.	
b	He lived in the countryside, *until he was old.* ("until his having become old")	Тэр настай болтлоо хөдөө суусан.	

4.2.1.2.2 Different Subjects

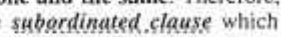
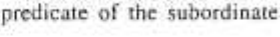
If the subjects of the main clause and the subordinate clause are **not the same**, the subject of the clause appears in either **genitive or accusative case**. Logically there can't be an RS (**ex. a-b**). **Example b** shows that the **declined** subject of the subordinate clause **alone** is proof enough, that the subjects are not the same. It would be wrong to translate "Dorj thought *that he had won.*" That would be in Mongolian "Дорж ялсан гэж санасан" and is an example for common subjects.

a	*When I returned home,* the others continued their talking.	Гэртээ гэртээ харихад бусад нь яриагаа үргэлжлүүлжээ.	
b	(People) thought *that Dorj had won.*	Дорж ялсан гэж санасан.	

Whether the subject is in genitive or accusative case depends to a large extent on the **form of the predicate** of the subordinate clause:

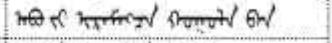
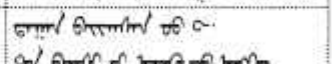
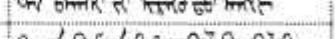
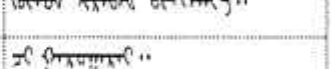
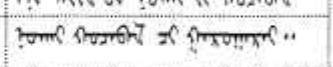
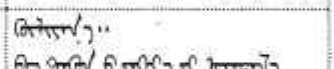
4.2.1.2.2.1 *Subjects in Genitive Case*

If the predicate of the subordinate clause is built with an **undeclined NDS, the** subject **is usually in** genitive case. That happens often in *attribute clauses* (**ex. a-b**) or in subordinate clauses with a nominal element (e.g. *subject clauses* = **ex. c**). Many *object clauses* have the structure of an attribute clause and demand also a genitive case subject (**ex. d**).

a	The flowers *I planted,* grew very beautifully.	Миний тарьсан цэцэг маш гоё ургажээ.	
b	Did you see the car *he drives*?	Түүний унадаг машиныг та харсан уу?	
c	*What you said* is right.	Таны хэлсэн чинь зөв байна.	
d	I don't agree *with what you said.*	Би таны хэлсэнтэй санал нийлэхгүй байна.	

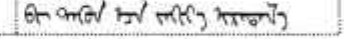
4.2.1.2.2.2 Subjects in Accusative Case

If the predicate of the subordinate clause is built with a **sVDS**, the subject of the subordinate clause is usually in accusative case. If the subject is **indefinite** (compare with the hierarchy list of accusative case on page 89), the suffix is dropped and appears as **zero- suffix** (–ø). See **ex. e, g and i**.
Most ***adverbial clauses*** are built this way. Note that some sVDS can only be used in sentences with a common subject (e.g. "–саар").

a	***If my older brother comes,*** I will go.	Ахыг ирвэл би явна.	
b	Let's eat our dinner ***as soon as Father comes.***	Аавыг ирмэгц хоолоо идэцгээе.	
c	Were you in your classroom ***when the teacher came?***	Та багшийг ирэхэд ангидаа байсан уу?	
d	I will tell (you) ***if that person comes,***	Тэр хүний ирвэл би хэлье.	
e	I will tell (you) ***if someone comes,***	Хүн(–ø) ирвэл би хэлье.	
f	***If the dog of this family barks,*** you go out please.	Энэ айлын нохойг хуцвал чи гараарай.	
g	***If a dog barks,*** you go out please.	Нохой(–ø) хуцвал чи гараарай.	
h	I will wait ***until his letter arrives.***	Би түүний захиаг иртэл хүлээнэ.	
i	I will wait ***until a letter comes from him.***	Би түүнээс захиа(–ø) иртэл хүлээнэ.	

4.2.1.2.2.3 Subjects in Accusative or Genitive Case

In ***object clauses***, the subject can be in genitive or accusative case. Some linguists have given the following rule, which we are not too happy with, but lack a better explanation at this point:
Predicate of subordinate clause = **transitive verb**: subject tends to be in genitive case (**ex. a**).
Predicate of subordinate clause = **intransitive verb**: subject tends to be in accusative case (**ex. b**).

a	All saw ***that Bat caught the horse.***	Батыг морь барихыг бүгдээрээ харав.	
b	We didn't know ***that you had come.***	Таныг ирснийг бид мэдсэнгүй.	

4.2.1.2.2.4 Basic Rules

Here is a **summary** of what has been said so far:

	Subjects are ...	Conditions:	Subjects are in ... case	Often used in ... clauses
1. ☛	common		nominative + RS	
2. ☛	different	undeclined NDS	genitive	attribute (subject, predicate)
		transitive verb	genitive	object
		VDS or declined NDS	accusative	adverbial
		intransitive verb	accusative	object
		indefinite subject	"–ø" accusative	adverbial
3. ☛	no rule without exception!			

We want to include in this book some thoughts from a **study** of **Mizuno Masanori**, *"Preference Ordering of Subject Form in Modern Mongolian"* (Tokio University Linguistic Papers, March 1995):
In colloquial language, **people very often go against the rules** mentioned above. We will list here some sentences where the subject could be in more than just one case. Mr. Masanori has developed a **preference ordering**, which we mark in the following way: **"N>G>A"**. This means, nominative is best, followed by genitive and accusative case. Such a preference ordering depends on the following **criterias**:

- connective potentiality between phrases
- avoidance of syntactic ambiguity
- subject contrastivity between the different two clauses
- quality of clauses
- avoidance of case form collision

1.) N>G>A

Гал(ын) ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?
Гал(ыг)ын ирсэн гэж үнэн үү? — Is it true *that Gal(-ø) came?*
Гал(ыг)ын ирсэн гэж үнэн үү?

2.) N>A>G

Дорж энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ. — I've just found out
Дорж(ийг) энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ. — *that Dorj bought this book.*
Дорж(ийн) энэ номыг авсныг би сая мэдлээ.

3.) G>N>A

Миний ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?
Би(ний) ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү? — Have you seen the car *I came with?*
Намай(н) ирсэн машиныг та үзсэн үү?

4.) G>A>N

Чиний ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.
Чамай(г) ирснийг би сая мэдлээ. — I've just found out *that you came.*
Чи(н) ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.

5.) A>N>G

Намай(г) иртэл чи хүлээж бай.
Би(г) иртэл чи хүлээж бай. — Keep waiting, *until I come!*
Миний иртэл чи хүлээж бай.

6.) A>G>N

Чамай(г) сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ. — I've just found out
Чиний сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ. — *that you came to school.*
Чи(н) сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.

4.2.2 Classification of Subordinate Clauses

Every part of a sentence could be **extended to a subordinate clause**. Thus, we talk about subject clauses, predicate clauses, object clauses, attribute clauses, and adverbial clauses. Many such clauses are built with **subordinating conjunctions** (see page 307ff) or with a **sVDS**.

4.2.2.1 SUBJECT CLAUSES

Subject clauses, which don't occur frequently, have the **function of the subject** in the main clause and answers the question **'who or what?'** (хэн? юу? ясан нь?). The subject is usually in **genitive case** (**ex. a-c**). Often, the **CbP** "нь" serves as a **subject indicator** and marks the subject clause. **In ex. d,** "шас орох" is a **fixed expression**, therefore, the subject is not declined. Note, that in the English main clause, the *correlate 'it'* must appear for the missing subject, which is actually expressed in the subject clause that follows (an exception is **ex. d**, where the whole clause is expressed like a noun).

a	*It* is right *that he left.* (**Who or what** is right?)	Түүний явсан нь зөв.	
b	*Your leaving* hit the bull's eye. (**Who or what** hit the bull's eye?)	Чиний явсан чинь оножээ.	
c	*It* isn't clear, *whether he'll come tomorrow.* (**Who or what** isn't clear?)	Түүний маргааш ирэх эсэх тодорхойгүй байна.	
d	*The snow* was the main reason for the delay of the flight (**Who or what** was the cause ...?)	Шас орсон нь нислэг хойшлох гол шалтгаан болов.	
e	*It* would be better *to lie down at home for some days.* (**Who or what** would be better?)	Гэртээ хэд хоног хэвтсэн нь дээр.	

4.2.2.2 PREDICATE CLAUSES

The *predicate clause* has the **function of the predicate** in the main clause. In most cases, it's a **nominal** predicate, **a subject complement.** This subordinate clause is the only kind of clause which is **placed after the main clause**. Its subject is usually in **genitive case** (**ex. a-b**). Predicate clauses are **rare.**

a	This is *what you always say.*	Энэ бол чиний хэлдэг.	
b	That (you) learned the Mongolian language, *is the fruit of your efforts.*	Монгол хэл сурсан нь та нарын хичээсний.	
c	That well is *(a well) that has water.* (common sentence in the countryside, where not every well has water)	Тэр худаг бол ус гардаг.	

4.2.2.3 OBJECT CLAUSES

The *object clause* has the **function of an object** in the main clause and answers questions like **'who? whom? about what?', etc.** (юу/г? юунд? юуны тухай? юуны талаар? яахыг?). Having this function, it is declined. Often, such a **declension** results in an English translation using **relative pronouns** (..., that... ..., which...). Object clauses have subjects:

- in **nominative** (with common subjects and the use of the ЯБ: **ex. a-c**)
- often in **genitive**, because the sentence structure is similar to an attribute clause (**ex. d-g**);
- rarely in **accusative** (**ex. h**).

a	I'm faithful *to what I told you.* (**To whom or what** am I faithful?)	Би чамд хэлсэндээ үнэнч.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
b	Bat hadn't let me know *when he came back.* (**What** didn't Bat let me know?)	Бат хэзээ ирснээ надад хэлээгүй.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
c	Why are you not doing (it) *according to what you said?* (Why are you not doing **what**?)	Та яагаад хэлсэн дагуу[illegible] хийхгүй байна вэ?	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
d	I'd like to ask quite a lot of things *in regard to what you have written.* (**About whom or what** would I like to ask?)	Би [illegible] бичснээс нилээд юм асуумаар байна.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ·· [illegible]
e	I don't agree *with what you said.* (**With what** do I not agree?)	Би [illegible] хэлсэнтэй санал нийлэхгүй байна.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ·· [illegible]
f	We didn't know *that you had come.* (**Who or what** didn't we know?)	[illegible] ирснийг бид мэдсэнгүй.	[illegible] ·· [illegible]
g	I knew *that he couldn't come.*	[illegible] ирж чадахгүй гэдгийг би мэдэж байсан.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ·· [illegible]
h	I've just found out *that you came to school.*	[illegible] сургууль дээр ирснийг би сая мэдлээ.	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ·· [illegible]

4.2.2.4 ATTRIBUTE CLAUSES

The *attribute clause* has the **function of an attribute** in the main clause and answers questions like **'what kind of? which?'** (ямар? аль? яасан?). As a rule, the subject is in **genitive case** and the predicate is built with an **undeclined NDS**.

a	It's time *that I went home.* (**What kind of time** is it?)	[illegible] гэртээ харих цаг болов. (attribute to subject)	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ··
b	This is something *(that) you always say.* (**What kind of** something?)	Энэ бол [illegible] хэлдэг үг. (attribute to predicate)	[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] ··
c	I brought the horse *which you ride.* (**What kind of horse** did I bring?)	Би [illegible] унадаг морийг авчирлаа. (attribute to object)	[illegible] ·· [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
d	Let's wait until the teacher *(that) we met* comes.	[illegible] тааралдсан багшийг иртэл хүлээцгээе.(attribute to adverbial)	[illegible] [illegible] ·· [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

4.2.2.5 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

The *adverbial clause* has the **function of an adverbial** in the main clause and answers questions like **'why? when? where? how?', etc.** (яагаад? хэзээ? хаана? яаж?). These clauses are **widely used** and can be **built in several ways**:

- common subjects → subject in nominative (+ RS) **(ex. a-b)**
- predicate with a **sVDS** → subject in accusative **(ex. c-e)**
  (in **ex. e,** "намар бол-" is a fixed expression, therefore, no accusative suffix)
- predicate with **declined NDS** * → subject usually in nominative **(ex. f-i)**
- predicate with **instrumental-case-declined NDS** → subject in genitive **(ex. j-l)**

(* declined: with "бол/болович" or subordinating conjunctions)

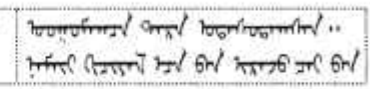
a	*As soon as I start reading a book,* I forget everything. (**When** do I forget ....?)	Би ном уншиж эхэлмэгцээ бүх юмыг мартдаг юм.	....
b	*As soon as I get there,* I'll write you a letter. (**When** will I write you a letter?)	Би очмогцоо чамд захиа бичнэ.	....
c	*When the teacher comes,* please go to your lesson. (Go **when** to your lesson?)	Багшийг ирэхлээр хичээлдээ очоорой.	....
d	(Someone) was beaten *until the dry stick broke apart.* (**How** was someone beaten?)	Хуурай модыг хугартал зоджээ.	....
e	*When it becomes autumn,* the plants wither, and it gets cool. (**When** do the plants wither?)	Намар болохлоор ногоо гандаж, сэрүүн болдог.	....
f	*If that person knows Russian well,* (then) explain it in Russian! (Explain it in Russian **under what condition**?)	Тэр хүн орос хэл сайн мэддэг бол чи оросоор тайлбарла!	....
g	*Although he hadn't talked with me about this,* I knew it. (**Despite what** did I know?)	Тэр надад энэ тухай яриагүй болович би мэдсэн.	....
h	*Because my father has come from Germany,* I don't have a lot of time these days. (**Why** do I not have a lot of time?)	Манай аав Германаас ирсэн тул би ойрдоо их завгүй байна.	....
i	*Because our father didn't come,* we couldn't go. (**Why** couldn't we go?)	Манай аав ирээгүй учраас бид нар явж чадсангүй.	....
j	Baatar wrote this letter *the way the teacher had suggested it.* (**How** did he write this letter?)	Баатар энэ захиаг багшийн зөвлөснөөр бичив.	....
k	I'll do this *the way you said it.* (**How** will I do it?)	Би үүнийг таны хэлснээр хийнэ.	....
l	We went *where you had gone.* (**Where** did we go?)	Та нарын явснаар бид явсан.	....

4.3 Extended Combined Sentences

The extended combined sentence, in Mongolian called "mixture sentence", is a **combination of complex and compound sentences**. Such combinations could be:

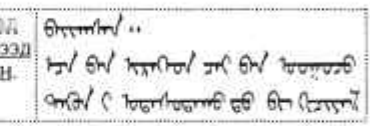
1.) The subordinated clause of a complex sentence is made up of a compound sentence:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*As soon as I come from my lessons and had lunch,* **he called.**	Намайг хичээлээсээ ирж цайгаа уумагц тэр утасдсан.	

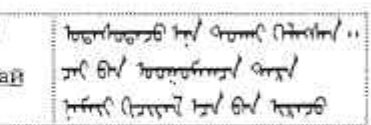
2.) The compound sentence is the main clause of a complex sentence:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*When he called,* **I had just come from my lessons and was having lunch.**	Түүнийг утасдахад би хичээлээсээ ирээд цайгаа ууж байсан.	

3.) Both, main and subordinate clause, are made up of compound sentences:

main clause/*subordinate clause*

a	*As soon as I come from my lessons and had lunch,* **he called and told (me) about this.**	Намайг хичээлээсээ ирж цайгаа уумагц тэр утасдаж энэ тухай хэлсэн.	

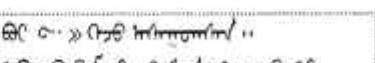
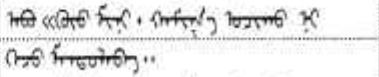
4.4 Speech

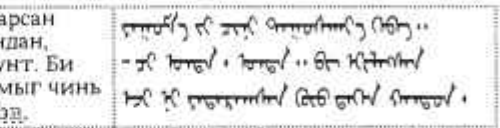
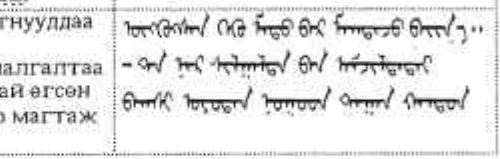
In order to use speech in Mongolian, the **conjunction verb** "гэ-" is needed (page 210). Direct and indirect speech have some **characteristics** which we have listed below:

	direct speech	**indirect speech**
a	written **with quotation marks** (or dash)	written **without quotation marks**
b	subject is in **nominative**	subject is in **accusative**

4.4.1 Direct Speech

A **speech** that has the **actual words quoted,** is called *'direct speech'*. The subject is in **nominative case and, usually, at the beginning of the sentence.** Direct speech is either put in **quotation marks** (**ex. a-b**) or the new line is marked with a **dash** (**ex. c-d**). The conjunction verb "гэ-", which could be declined in different ways, serves as the conjunction between the speech and the other part of the sentence.

a	A man asked, ***"My son, where are you about to go?"***	Аав:"Хүү минь, хаачих нь вэ?" гэж асуусан.	
b	Baatar met his friend and greeted him, ***"Hi, what's new with you?"***	Баатар найзтайгаа уулзаад "Сайн уу? Сонин юутай?" гэж мэндлэв.	

c	A woman addressed her tired son and said, ***"Go to sleep. Let me finish the thing you started."***	Эзж нь ядарсан хүүдээ хандан, – Чи унт, унт. Би эхэлсэн юмыг чинь дуусгая гэв.	
d	The teacher addresses his students, praising them saying things like, ***"You did your exams very successfully."***	Багш оюутнуудаа хандан, – Та нар шалгалтаа амжилттай өгсөн гэж мэтээр магтаж байна.	

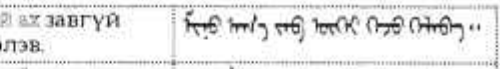
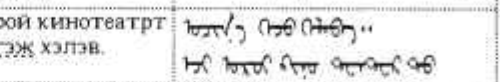
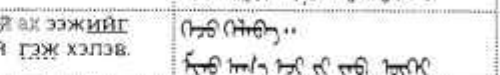
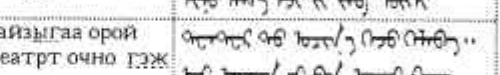
4.4.2 Indirect Speech

Indirect speech is **not quoted with the actual words** of the person who said it, but a **rendering of that person's speech.** In English, subjunctive is used to express indirect speech. In Mongolian, the transformation of speech is easier **because the *actual speech* changes less**.

Direct: This child said, ***"I go home."***
Энэ хүүхэд "Би гэртээ харина" гэж хэлсэн.
Indirect: This child said, ***(that) it would go home.***
Энэ хүүхэд гэртээ харина гэж хэлсэн.

Direct: Mother called, ***"Come here!"***
Эзэж "нааш ир!" гэж дуудсан.
Indirect: Mother called me to come (to her).
Эзэж намайг нааш ир гэж дуудсан.

If the two subjects are **common**, the subject has to be mentioned only **once**, usually in the main clause (**ex. a-b**). With two **different subjects**, the order of words in the sentence is:
1.) subject of the main clause (in nominative)
2.) indirect speech clause (subject in accusative)
3.) ***conjunction verb*** "гэ-"
4.) predicate of the main clause (e.g. said, shouted, answered)

a	My older brother said, ***(that) he had no time.***	Миний ах завгүй гэж хэлэв.	
b	Mother said, ***(that) she would go to the cinema in the evening.***	Ээж орой кинотеатрт очно гэж хэлэв.	
c	My older brother said, ***(that) the mother had no time.***	Миний ах ээжийг завгүй гэж хэлэв.	
d	Mother said, ***(that) her friend would go to the cinema in the evening.***	Ээж найзыгаа орой кинотеатрт очно гэж хэлэв.	

4.4.3 Transformation of Speech

In order to transform ***direct speech into indirect speech***, there are **4 basic rules**:

1. ☞ **Quotation marks** are dropped (**all examples**)
2. ☞ Subject changes from nominative case to accusative case (**all examples**)
3. ☞ Missing subject must be expressed (**ex. b**)
4. ☞ **Dative or ablative case object** becomes one and the same with the subject (**ex. c-d**)
5. ☞ ChP or personal pronouns become RS –аа (**ex. e**)

a	My older brother said, ***"Mother has no time."***	Миний ах: "Ээж завгүй" гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]
	My older brother said, ***(that) Mother had no time.***	Миний ах [illegible] завгүй гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]
b	Mother called, ***"Come here!"***	Ээж "Наашш ир!" гэж дуудав.	[illegible]
	Mother called me to come (to her).	Ээж [illegible] нааш ир гэж дуудав.	[illegible]
c	The teacher asked me: ***"How old are you?"***	Багш надаас: "Чи хэдэн настай вэ?" гэж асуув.	[illegible]
	The teacher asked me, ***how old I was.***	Багш [illegible] хэдэн настай вэ гэж асуув.	[illegible]
d	The teacher told me: ***"Make sure you read this book."***	Багш надад "Чи энэ номыг заавал уншаарай" гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]
	The teacher told me ***to make sure that I read this book.***	Багш [illegible] энэ номыг заавал уншаарай гэж хэлэв.	[illegible]
e	A woman asked, ***"My son, what time is it?"***	Ээж нь: "Хүү минь, цаг хэд болж байна?" гэж асуув.	[illegible]
	A woman asked ***her son what time it was.***	Ээж нь [illegible] цаг хэд болж байна гэж асуув.	[illegible]

5. PUNCTUATION

The **sentence structure is organized** with the help of different **marks and dots**. In oral language, the same thing is achieved by intonation and pauses.

5.1 Punctuation in Classical Script

In Classical Script there is a **division in marks and dots**.

5.1.1 Dots

dots:	᠃	᠂	;	᠄	⋮	·
names:	period (Am.) full stop (Br.)	comma	semi-colon	colon	omission dots	"round dot"
usage:	Marks the end of a declarative sentence.	Marks pauses in the sentence and divides co-ordinate words, parts of sentence and clauses.	Divides independent clauses.	Emphasizes the announce-ment of the following part or sentence.	Marks a part that is omitted.	Marks a division.
ex:	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠬᠠᠯᠬᠠ ᠪᠠᠨ ᠵᠤᠭ ᠪᠤᠶᠠ᠃	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠄	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠲᠠᠪᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠲᠠᠪᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠂ ᠵᠢᠷᠭᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃	ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯ ᠮᠣᠩᠭᠣᠯ ᠤᠯᠤᠰ ᠤᠨ ᠬᠡᠯᠡ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠨᠢᠭᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠬᠣᠶᠠᠷ ᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠭᠤᠷᠪᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠳᠥᠷᠪᠡᠳᠦᠭᠡᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠲᠠᠪᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃ ᠵᠢᠷᠭᠤᠭᠠᠳᠤᠭᠠᠷ ᠵᠠᠰᠠᠭ ᠲ᠋ ᠪᠣᠯᠤᠨ᠃

5.1.2 Marks

marks:	?	!	» «	( )	—	-
names:	question mark	exclamation mark	quotation marks (Am.) inverted commas (Brit.)	parentheses (Am.) brackets (Brit.)	dash	hyphen
usage:	Marks the end of an interrogative sentence.	Marks the end of an exclamatory sentence.	Marks speeches and quotations.	Marks an inserted explaining part.	Marks an inserted explaining part.	Marks local or temporal beginnings and ends.
ex:	Чи явсан уу?	Сайхан явна уу!	Эмээ: «Чи хаашаа явна вэ?» гэв.	Чи (Цэрэн) хаашаа явна вэ?	Эмээ — Чи хаашаа явна вэ?	1996—2000 он

5.2 Punctuation in Cyrillic Script

The punctuation in Cyrillic is more or less the same as in English. However, some comma rules are different and the quotation marks «...» are not known in English.

5.2.1 Period (Am.)/Full stop (Brit.)

Periods mark the **end of declarative sentences** and are used in **abbreviations**.

Би явсан.	Тэр ирээгүй.	I went.	He hasn't come.
Д. Цэрэн	А. Баяр	D. Tseren	A. Bayar

5.2.2 Question marks

Question marks are put at the **end of interrogative sentences**.

Чиний дүү ирсэн үү?	Did your younger sister come?
Чи ирнэ биз?	You'll come, won't you?
Чи хэзээ ажиллах вэ?	When will you work?

5.2.3 Exclamation marks

Exclamation marks are put at the end of **exclamatory** and **imperative sentences**, but often they are dropped in Mongolian because a particle has taken the function of them (**ex.b**).

Надад туслаач!	Please help me!
Ээж чинь ирлээ шүү.	Your mother came!
Нааш ир!	Come here!
Ямар сайхан юм бэ!	How nice this is!

5.2.4 Commas

Commas are used to show the **pauses** in the sentences. Here a few **basic rules.**
Commas are needed when:

1. ☞ Listing *coordinate elements* without conjunction words

(Attention: In English with conjunction "and" much better.)

Хэнтий, Хангай, Саяны өндөр сайхан нуруунууд. (coordinate subjects)	The high beautiful mountain ranges of ***Khentii, Khangai, and Sayan.***
Би дэлгүүрээс ногоон, улаан, шар, цэнхэр цаас авлаа.(coordinate adjectives)	I bought ***green, red, yellow, and blue*** paper at the shop.
Би Англи, Швейцарь, Герман, Монголд амьдарч байсан. (coordinate adverbials)	I lived ***in England, Switzerland, Germany, and Mongolia***.
Би танд тусалж байсан, тусалж байна, туслах болно. (coordinate verbs)	I ***helped***, I ***help***, and ***will help*** you.

No comma with:
- ***words* of different semantical groups:** Би дэлгүүрээс шинэ чухал үнэтэй ном авлаа.
- ***Word combinations*:** Хүмүүс энх тайвныг хүсдэг.

2. ☞ Separating *independent parts of a sentence*

Болд оо, нааш ир дээ!	***Booold***, come here!
Чи энэ улирлаар амжилттай, өөрөөр хэлбэл, онц сурч чадна шүү.	This term, you can study successfully, ***in other words***, with the grade A.
Паа, би чамайг ийм хүн гэж бодсонгүй!	**Ugh,** I wouldn't think that you were such a person!
Үгүй, би ээжтэйгээ маргааш уулзахгүй.	**No,** I won't meet my mother tomorrow.

No comma if the independent part is emphasized. Then an exclamatory mark is demanded.
Халхай, халхай! Гар түлчихлээ. (***Ouch, ouch!*** I burned my hand.)

3. ☞ Marking compound-sentence *clauses* that are separated by intonation

Би сайхан хоол идсэн, миний хүүхдүүд юу ч идээгүй.	***I had a nice meal, my children didn't have any.***
Харьсан шувуу ирдэг, явсан хүн эргэдэг.	***Migratory birds come back, people that have left, return.***

4. ☞ Marking pauses in long sentences whith clauses that are linked with a *cVDS.*

clause 1 + conjunction	Өглөөний нар оргин гарч ирэхэд
clause 2 + *VDS + comma*	голын эхэн дэх саруул хөндий гэрэлтэж,
clause 3 + *VDS + comma*	ариун агаар татан,
clause 4 + conjunction	үнэхээр зуны амьсгал мэдрэгдэх бөгөөд
clause 5 + *VDS + comma*	дэргэдэх цэцэг өвсөнд нимгэн цагаан хяруу гялтганаад,
clause 6 + subj. indicator	тэртээ ойд ногооны үниар залгалдах юм
clause 7+ **period**	даруй нүүдэлчин малчин хүний сэтгэлийг хөдөлгөнө.

5. ☞ Avoiding confusion

Очигдөр чамаас авсан номыг олсон. (They) found the book which had been taken from you yesterday.	Очигдөр, чамаас авсан номыг олсон. ***Yesterday,*** (they) found the book which had been taken from you.
Цэцэг жимс түүв. (Someone) picked flowers ('tsetseg') and berries.	Цэцэг, жимс түүв. ***Tsetseg*** picked berries.

6. ☞ Changing the word order

Би энэ номыг чинь авлаа шүү. I bought ***this book, you know***!	Би авлаа шүү, энэ номыг чинь. I bought it, ***this book, you know!***
Та бол дээдийн дээд, хаадын хаан. ***You are*** the Highest, King of all kings.	Дээдийн дээд, хаадын хаан, Та. The Highest, King of all kings, ***you are.***

5.2.5 Semi-colon

Semi-colons are used when the pause is bigger than with a comma, but not big enough to put a period. They are often used in **resolutions, laws, etc**. and not often in literature.

(from a contract)

II. Гэрээг цуцлах: 1. Монгол судлаач хүндэтгэх шалтгаанаар тус улсаас бүрмөсөн буцах болбол; 2. Монгол улсын хууль дүрмийг ноцтой зөрчвөл; (гэх мэт)	II. Cancellation of contract: 1. If the Mongolist is forced to leave this country due to serious reasons; 2. If he significantly violates the laws and regulations of Mongolia; etc.

5.2.6 Colon

Colons are used to **emphasize the announcements** of the following parts. They are widely used in ***direct speech, quotations, and listing things:***

Баатар надад: "Чи багштайгаа уулзах хэрэгтэй" гэж хэлэв.	Baatar told me, ***"You have to go and see your teacher."***
Есүс: "Би бол Ертөнцийн Эзэн-Эцэг тийш очих ганцхан зам мөн" гэж хэлэв.	Jesus said, ***"No one comes to the Father except through me."***
Оюутан бүр бүртгүүлэхдээ дараах зүйлийг авчрах: 150 ам.доллар, 2 хувь зураг, тодорхойлолт, оршин суух зөвшөөрөл.	Each student is to bring the following items for registration: USD 150, 2 passport photos, references, proof-of-residence permit.

5.2.7 Quotation marks (Am.)/Inverted commas (Brit.)

Quotation marks are used for ***direct speech***, for ***quotations***, and in order to **emphasize** ***particular words*** which are used in a non-literal sense.
There are two possible forms: "..." and «...». The latter is not known in English.

Болд: "Эзэж маань орой ирнэ" гэж хэллээ.	Bold said, "***My mother will come in the evening***."
Мөн ч «гавшгай» ажилладаг хүн байна даа.	Why! He is someone working so '***efficiently***'!
«Өсөхөөс сурсан үндэсний хэл Мартаж болшгүй соёл Үхтэл орших төрөлх нутаг Салж болшгүй орон» (Д.Нацагдорж)	***"The national language learned while being raised*** ***Is a culture that (I) can't ever forget*** ***The homeland (I) live in until (I) die*** ***Is a place that (I) can't ever leave"*** (D. Natsagdorj)

5.2.8 Omission dots

Omission dots (three dots) are used to replace a ***part that is omitted***.

Бат: "Миний аав ... " гэж хэлэнгүүт ухаан алдлаа.	When Bat was just saying, "My father ... ", he lost his consciousness.

5.2.9 Parentheses (Am.)/Brackets (Brit.)

Parentheses are used **to insert words** or whole parts of sentences that serve as an ***explanation*** or a ***complement***:

Манай багш (Ц. Болдбаатар) Франц улсад монгол хэл заадаг байгаа.	Our teacher ***(Ts. Boldbaatar)*** is teaching Mongolian in France.
Өнөөдөр (есөн сарын нэгэнд) бүх хүүхдүүд хичээлдээ явна.	Today ***(September 1st)***, all children will go to school.

5.2.10 Dash and Hyphen

There is a **long** line for intellectual pauses (**dash**) and a **short** line for connections (**hyphen**).

Dashes can follow ***subjects*** to **mark them** (instead of another subject indicator), or they can replace the **quotation marks** in **direct speech**. If so, they are put at the beginning of a new line.

Чанар – манай ажлын гол үзүүлэлт.	***Quality*** – the main characteristic of our work.
Эзэж нь хүүдээ хандан, –Би чамтай хамт явах уу? гэхэд хүү нь, –Үгүй, би ганцаараа явж чадна гэв.	When the woman addressed her son and asked, "Shall I go with you?", the son answered. "No, I can go alone."

Hyphens are used to **connect** ***two words, numbers and their suffixes***, and also to connect ***personal names***: if the second of two names begins with a vowel, then a hyphen is put in between them. In literature, ***words of similar meaning*** are equated using a hyphen.

Улаанбаатар-Дарханы төмөр замыг тэр жил байгуулжээ.	The railway ***Ulaanbaatar-Darkhan*** was built in that year.
5-р сарын 24-нд	On May 24th ("5th month")
XIII-XIV зууны үед монголчууд дэлхий даяар маш алдартай байжээ.	In the **13-14th** century, the Mongolians were very famous throughout the world.
Болд-Эрдэнэ, Бат-Оргил, Говь-Алтай	***Bold-Erdene, Bat-Orgil, Gov'-Altai***
Эх орон-Монголоо зоргоолтгүй чимье.	Let's decorate our ***motherland, Mongolia,*** unceasingly.

Part V:

Appendix

1.List of Passive Roots
pages 407-410

2. List of Some Phrasal Verbs
pages 411-412

3. List of Inflectional Suffixes
pages 413-417

4. Structural and Functional System of Relational Suffixes
pages 418-421

5. Mongolian Equivalent of English Tense System
page 422

6. Table of Contents in Mongolian
pages 423-437

7. Index: English-German-Mongolian
pages 438-448

1. LIST OF PASSIVE ROOTS

The following list is a complement to p. 35. It contains most passive roots of the Mongolian language. On the top right hand side of every passive root table, we gave the **'general meaning'**.

1.		нэг- (ний-)	**one, to be one**
a		нэг (эн)	one
b		нэгд-	to be united
c		нэгдэл	union, solidarity
d		нэгж	unit
e		нэгжи-	to search
f		нэгжлэг	search
g		нэгтгэ-	to unite, to unify
h		нэгэнт	once, already
i		нэжгээд	one each
j		нийгэм	society
k		нийлбэр	sum, confluence
l		нийлмэл	mixed, compound
m		нийлэг	synthetic, compound
n		нийлэ-	to come together
o		нийслэл	capital
p		нийт	all, total
q		нийц	agreement, harmony
r		нийцэ-	to correspond, to conform

2.		хо-	**two**
a		хоёр	two
b		хоёрхон	only two
c		хоёул	the two of ...
d		хос	pair, couple
e		хосло-	to unite into pairs
f		хослол	pairing
g		хосгүй	matchless

h		холбо-	to join
i		холбоо	tie, liason
j		холбоос	link, hyphen
k		холбогдо-	to have to do with
l		холбоот	union
m		холбооч ин	post and telegraph worker
n		хорши-	to mix, to combine
o		хоршоо	cooperative
p		хоршоролол	cooperativization
q		хорь	twenty
r		хошой	double (e.g. gold medal winner)
s		хооронд	between
t		холи-	to mix
u		хольц	mixture
v		хоч	nick name
w		холимог	mixed, alloyed

3.		гу-	**three**
a		гуч	thirty
b		гуч (ач гуч)	great- (e.g. -grand daughter)
c		гуна	3 year old male ox
d		гунж	3 year old female cow
e		гуттаар	the third (literary)
f		гурав	three
g		гурвалжин	triangle
h		гурвал	trio
i		гурамсан	three- (e.g. three-horse carriage)
j		гурвуул	the three of ...

4.		дэ-	**high, on**
a		дээр	on, above
b		дээрдэ-	to improve
c		дээд	high,supreme, upper
d		дээдэс	ancestors, aristocrats

e		дээш	up(wards), more than
f		дээшлэ-	to go up, to progress
g		дээгүүр	above, over
h		дээрэлхүү	arrogant, insolent
i		дээрэм	robbery, pillage
j		дээрэмдэ-	to rob, to plunder
k		дээвэр	roof, covering
l		дээрэнгүй	arrogant, haughty
m		дээрэлхэ-	to be overbearing
n		дэл	mane,horsehair
o		дэв	rank, order
p		дэвэ-	to flap the wings
q		дэвши-	to develop, to make progress
r		дэвжи-	to grow strong
s		дэвхэр-	to leap,to jump
t		дэнж	hillock,terace
u		дэндүү	too,excessively
v		дэндэ-	to exceed the norm
w		дэгжин	elegant, fashionable
x		дэгжи-	to thrive, to prosper
y		дэмжлэг	support, help

5.		до-	**below, under**
a		доор	below, under
b		доод	lower, bottom
c		доогуур	underground
d		доош	down(wards)
e		доошло-	to droop
f		дор	below, under
g		доогло-	to mock
h		дордо-	to be too low, to worsen
i		дорой	weak, feeble
j		доройто-	to be weak, to deteriorate
k		доромжлол	humiliation, insult

6.		дот-	**inside**
a		дотор	inner, internal,
b		дотно	intimate, kindred (inside)
c		дотогш	in(wards)
d		дотоод	interior, domestic
e		дотуур	inner, within

7.		га-	**outer**
a		гадна	outside (of) exterior
b		гадаа	outside
c		гадагш	out of
d		гадуур	outside, exterior
e		гадарга (гадаргуу)	surface
f		гадар	the outside
g		гадаад	external,foreign
h		гадарла-	to cover with a surface

8.		цаа-	**other side**
a		цаана	farther,beyond
b		цаад	situated on the other side
c		цаадахь	situated beyond
d		цааш	away from, farther
e		цаашла-	to go farther, to go on
f		цаагуур	along the other side

9.		наа-	**this side, here**
a		наана	on this side, closer to here
b		наад	situated on this side
c		наадахь	that nearest on this side, the very
d		нааш	this way, hither, closer

e		наашла–	to approach
f		наагуур	along this side, superficially
g		наагуурда–	to be too close, to be too superficial

10		хой–	north, behind
a		хойно	in the north, in the back
b		хойт	back, rear, northern
c		хойш	north(wards) back(wards)
d		хойгуур	along the back
e		хойтон	the next year
f		хоймор	the rear part of a yurt
g		хойч	future, descendants
h		хойшло–	to be postponed
i		хойшлуул–	to postpone

11		ца–	white
a		цаас	paper
b		цагаан	white
c		цагаа	milk products
d		цагаада–	to be rehabilitated
e		цагаала–	to greet at New Year
f		цагаач	emigrant, vagabond
g		цайвар	whitish, pale
h		цай–	to dawn, to grow light
i		цайра–	to turn pale, to fade
j		цайлган	innocent
k		цал (буурал)	totally white

12		бая–	rich
a		баян	rich
b		баялаг	riches, wealth
c		баяс–	to rejoice
d		баячууд	the rich
e		баяжи–	to become rich
f		баяр	joy, gladness
g		баяртай	good-bye
h		баярла–	to be happy

13		сай–	good
a		сайн	good, well
b		сайхан	nice, nicely
c		сайжра–	to improve
d		сайд	minister
e		сайрха–	to boast, to brag
f		сайда–	to improve a relationship
g		сайтар	well, thoroughly
h		сайтай	having good quality
i		сайшаа–	to praise, to award
j		сайшаал	award, approval
k		сайчууд	elite, best workers

14		ноё–	prince, lord
a		ноён	prince, lord
b		ноёло–	to dominate
c		ноёлог	lordly,haughty
d		ноёрхо–	to oppress

15		хожи–	late
a		хождо–	to be late
b		хожи–	to win
c		хожигдо–	to loose
d		хожим	after, then
e		хожимдо–	to be late
f		хожуу	late, tardy
g		хожоо	profit, benefit

16		ул–	red
a		улаан	red
b		улаавтар	reddish
c		улбар	orange reddish

d		улай–	to blush, to confess
e		улайра–	to become red
f		улайлга–	to make ashamed
g		улангас–	to become ferocious
h		улалза–	to appear red
i		улаагана	red currant

17		ха–	... off
a		хада–	to mow
b		хадуур	sickle
c		хадлан	hay cutting
d		хаза–	to bite
e		хажи–	to hem
f		хаса–	to subtract
g		хасуур	chisel
h		хаши–	to fence off
i		хашаа	fence, hedge

18		да–	over-
a		дава–	to overcome
b		давaa	mountain pass
c		давуу	outstanding
d		дара–	to press, to crush
e		дайла–	to make war, to entertain
f		дайра–	to hit, to attack
g		дайн	war
h		дайчин	warrior, militant
i		дайчла–	to mobilize
j		дайсан	enemy

19		ов–	to heep
a		овоо	stone heep
b		овооло–	to accumulate
c		овооро–	to crowd
d		овор	appearance, figure
e		оволзо–	to move up and down

20		ог–	abrupt
a		огдгор	short (for skirt)
b		огдой–	to be short
c		огцом	steep, quick-tempered
d		огтол–	to cut (off)
e		огцор–	to be fired

The following 4 passive roots are particles, which appear with other words:

21		бута–	fragmented
a		бутал–	to crumble
b		бутра–	to scatter
c		бутач	illegitimate child
d		бутархай	fraction

22		хага–	broken
a		хагара–	to break (intr.)
b		хагарал	breaking, split
c		хагархай	splinter, chip
d		хагас	half, semi-
e		хагасла–	to divide in half
f		хагал–	to break (tr.)
g		хагаца–	to separate
h		хагацал	separation

23		суга–	... out
a		сугара–	to come off
b		сугал–	to pull out, to draw lots
c		сугалаа	lot, lottery

24		няц–	asunder
a		няц	crushed
b		няца–	to retreat
c		няцаа–	to repulse
d		няцра–	to be crushed
e		няцал–	to crush

2. LIST OF SOME PHRASAL VERBS

We have tried to list the most important Mongolian verbs that take another case than in English:

1	ай– to be afraid	хэнээс? юунаас? **of** whom? **of** what?	Нохойноос битгий ай! Don't be afraid **of** the dog!
2	айлчла– to visit (as a guest)	юунд? whom? what?	Төлөөлөгчид Америкт айлчлав. The representatives visited America.
3	анхаар– to pay attention	хэнийг? юуг? **to** whom? **to** what?	Та энэ асуудлыг анхаарах хэрэгтэй. You should pay attention **to** this matter.
4	асуу– to ask	хэнээс? юунаас? whom? what?	Та багшаас асуугаарай. Please ask the teacher.
5	багшла– to teach	хэнд? whom? (Acc.)	Тэр надад олон жил багшилсан. He taught me for many years.
6	баярла– to thank	хэнд? юунд? whom?	Танд баярлалаа. Thank you.
7	баярла– to be glad	хэнд? юунд? **about** what?	Үүнд би баярлаж байна. I am glad **about** this.
8	болгоомжло– to watch out to be careful	хэнээс? юунаас? **for** what? **of** what?	Хулгайчаас болгоомжил! Watch out **for** thieves! Be careful **of** cars!
9	гайха– to be surprised	юунд? **by** what?	Чи үүнд битгий гайх. Don't be surprised **by** this.
10	гомдо– to be offended	хэнд? юунд? **by** whom? **by** what?	Тэр чамд гомджээ. He was offended **by** you.
11	гуй– to beg (ask strongly)	хэнээс? юунаас? whom?	Түүнээс битгий гуй! Don't beg him.
12	гуниглa– to be sad	юунд? **about** what?	Чи юунд гуниглаа вэ? Why are you sad? ("What are you sad **about**?")
13	гэмши– to regret to repent	юунд? what? **of** what?	Би үүнд гэмшиж байна. I regret this. I repent **of** this.
14	гэрлэ– to get married	хэнтэй? **to** whom	Тэр багштайгаа гэрлэсэн. She got married **to** her teacher.
15	далла– to wave	юугаар? **with** what?	Эмээ алчуураар далласан. The grandmother waved **with** a headscarf.
16	дурла– to fall in love to like/to desire	хэнд? юунд? with whom? what?	Би нэг бүсгүйд дурласан. Үүнд битгий дурлаарай. I fell in love **with** a young woman. Don't desire this.
17	итгэ– to believe to trust	хэнд? юунд? (**in**) whom?(**in**) what? whom?	Би танд итгэж байна. I believe you. (I believe **in** you.) I trust you.
18	ичи– to be ashamed to be embarrassed	хэнээс? юунаас? **before** whom? **about** what?	Би түүнээс ичиж байна. Би хамарнаасаа ичиж байна. I am ashamed **before** him. I am embarrassed **about** my nose.
19	заа– to teach	хэнд? whom?	Би түүнд англи хэл заадаг. I teach **him** English.
20	зөвлө– to take advice	хэнтэй? **from** whom?	Би багштайгаа зөвлөе. Let me take advice **from** my teacher.
21	зөвшөөрө– to agree	юуг? **with** what?	Би түүний хэлснийг зөвшөөрч байна. I agree **with** what he said.

22	мөрөөдө- to dream	хэнийг? юуг? **about** what?	Би Америк явахыг мөрөөдөж байна. I dream **about** going to America.
23	найда- to trust	хэнд? юунд? (**in**)whom? (**in**)what?	Би өөртөө найдаж байна. I trust myself.
24	нөлөөлө- to influence	хэнд? юунд? whom? what?	Тэр надад их нөлөөлсөн. He has influenced me a lot.
25	ол- to find	хаанаас? where?	Би түлхүүрээ хаанаас ч олоогүй. I haven't found my key anywhere.
26	өвд- to be ill	юугаар? **with** what?	Миний зээж өмөн үүгээр өвдсөн. My mother was ill **with** cancer.
27	сонго- to be elected (English prefers passive voice)	юугаар? what?	Бид түүнийг Улсын Их Хурлын гишүүнээр сонгосон. He was elected a member of the Great National 'Khural' (by us).
28	сонирхо- to take interest	хэнийг? юуг? **in** whom? **in** what?	Тэр энэ номыг их сонирхсон. He took great interest **in** this book.
29	сонс- to listen	юуг? **to** what?	Тэр үргэлж радио сонсдог. He always listens **to** the radio.
30	таларха- to thank	хэнд? юунд? whom? **for** what?	Би танд талархаж байна. Намайг урьсанд талархаж байна. I thank you. Thank you **for** inviting me.
31	уйд- to be bored	хэнээс? юунаас? **with** what?	Би чамаас уйдаж байна. I am bored **with** you.
32	утасда- to call/ to phone	хэн руу? юу руу? whom?	Над руу утасдаарай. Call/phone me, please.
33	уурла- to be angry	хэнд? юунд? **with** whom? **about** what?	Эзэж надад уурласан. Тэр үүнд маш их уурласан. The mother was angry **with** me. He was very angry **about** that.
34	уя- to tie	хэнээс? юунаас? **to** whom? **to** what?	Би морио модноос уясан. I tied my horse **to** the tree.
35	хоцор- to be (too) late	хэнээс? юунаас? **for** what?	Би хурлаас хоцорсон. I was late **for** the meeting.
36	хөгжимдө- to play (instrument)	юугаар? what?	Чи юугаар хөгжимдөг вэ? What instrument do you play?
37	хүлээ- to wait	хэнийг? юуг? **for** whom? **for** what?	Та хэнийг хүлээж байна вэ? Whom are you waiting **for**?
38	яара- to hurry	юунд? **to** what?	Чи юунд яарсан бэ? What were you hurrying **to**?
39	ядра- to be tired	юунд? **from** what?	Би ажилдаа ядарч байна. I am tired **from** my work.

3. LIST OF INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES

In this list, we've tried to give **all the inflectional suffixes** of the Mongolian language in **Cyrillic alphabetical order**. We use, as also throughout the book, the following **abbreviations** and guidelines:

AsS = **A**spect **S**uffix
AwDS = **A**dword **D**etermining **S**uffix
AwS = **A**dword **S**uffix
CbS = **C**ase-bound **S**uffix
CS = **C**ase **S**uffix
cVDS = co-ordinating **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
NDS = **N**oun **D**etermining **S**uffix
NuS = **Nu**meral **S**uffix
PS = **P**lural **S**uffix
PTS = **P**erson-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
RS = **R**eflexive **S**uffix
sVDS = subordinating **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
TTS = **T**ense-bound **T**erminating **S**uffix
VDS = **V**erb **D**etermining **S**uffix
VoS = **Vo**ice **S**uffix

a) Suffixes having **more than one form**, are listed with all forms, but **only with the basic form** we've given the name and the Classical Mongolian Script version.

–аараа^{4}		**PTS (demand)**	
–ээрэй		**–аараа^{4}**	

b) Suffixes taking an **inserted vowel** (e.g. "–(а)гтун") are not listed. But suffixes taking an **inserted consonant (not to be confused with hidden "н" or "г"!)** are listed like this:

–(г)ийн		**–ийн**	
–(х)аа^{4}		**–аа^{4}**	

c) Only a few Cyrillic suffixes are **not added directly** to the stem. With such suffixes, we write an exclamation mark instead of a dash:

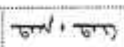
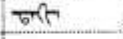
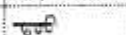
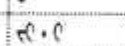
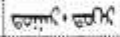
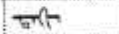
(!) нар		**PS**	

d) Zero-suffixes are also important suffixes, as they show an existing subordination that is not written. They are marked like this:

–ø	**–ø**	**PTS (command)**	

The suffixes which are written in **bold letters** are the most important ones, as they represent the **basic forms**.

Suffixes Cyrillic/Classical		name/ basic suffixes	page
–ø	–ø	AsS(ordinary)	131
–ø	–ø	VoS (active)	116
–ø	–ø	PTS (command)	177
а			
–аа[4]		RS	108
–аа[4]		VoS (causative)	121
–аа[4]		NDS (progressive present)	145
–аад[4]		cVDS (anterior)	159
–аад[4]		NuS (approximate)	247
–аар[4]		CS (instrumental)	93
–аарай[4]		PTS (demand)	179
–аас[4]		CS (ablative)	90
–аасай[4]		PTS (hope)	182
–аач[4]		PTS (request)	178
б			
–бал[4]		sVDS (conditional)	161
–балз[2]		AsS (repetitive)	135
–бол		–бал[4] (sVDS)	161
–бөл		–бал[4] (sVDS)	161
–бэл		–бал[4] (sVDS)	161
–бэлз		–балз[2] (AsS)	135
в			
–в		AwS (intensifying)	219
–в		TTS (past tense)	186
–вал[4]		sVDS (conditional)	161
–валз[2]		AsS (repetitive)	135
–вол		–вал[4] (sVDS)	161
–вөл		–вал[4] (sVDS)	161
–втар[4]		AwS (diminutive)	218
–втор		–втар[4] (AwS)	218
–втөр		–втар[4] (AwS)	218
–втэр		–втар[4] (AwS)	218
–вэл		–вал[4] (sVDS)	161
–вэлз[2]		–валз[2] (AsS)	135
–вч		sVDS (concessive)	162
г			
–г		PTS (permission)	181
–г		CS (accusative)	86
–га[4]		VoS (causative)	120
–(г)аа[4]		–аа[4] (RS/NDS)	
–(г)аад[4]		–аад[4] (cVDS/NuS)	
–(г)аар[4]		–аар[4] (CS)	93
(г)аарай[4]		–аарай[4] (PTS)	179
–(г)аас[4]		–аас[4] (CS)	90
(г)аасай[4]		–аасай[4] (PTS)	182
–(г)аач[4]		–аач[4] (PTS)	178
–галз[2]		AsS (repetitive)	135
–гана[4]		AsS (repetitive)	135
–гд		VoS (passive)	124
–(г)ийн		–ийн (CS)	79
–го		–га[4] (VoS)	120
–гоно		–гана[4] (AsS)	135
–гө		–га[4] (VoS)	120
–гөнө		–гана[4] (AsS)	135
–ггун[2]		PTS (appeal)	181
–ггүн		–ггун[2] (PTS)	181
–(г)уу–эй[2]		–уузай[2] (PTS)	180
–(г)ууг[2]		–ууг[2] (VDS)	170
–(г)ууш–тай[2]		–ушгтай[2] (AwDS)	154
–гч		NDS ('doer')	149
–гэ		–га[4] (VoS)	120
–гэлз		–галз[2] (AsS)	135
–гэнэ		–гана[4] (AsS)	135
д			
–д		PS	75
–д		CS (dative-locative)	83
–д		VoS (passive)	124

−даг⁴		**NDS (indefinite present)**	**144**
−дахь		**NuS (ordinal)**	**241**
−дог		−даг⁴ (NDS)	144
−дөг		−даг⁴ (NDS)	144
−дугаар²		**NuS (ordinal)**	**241**
−дуу²		**AwS (diminutive)**	**218**
−дүгээр		−дугаар² (NuS)	241
−дүү		−дуу² (AwS)	218
−дэг		−даг⁴ (NDS)	144
−дэх		**NuS (ordinal)**	**241**
е			
−е		**PTS (intention)**	**175**
ё			
−ё		**PTS (intention)**	**175**
ж			
−ж		**cVDS (simultaneous)**	**157**
−жээ		**TTS (past tense)**	**185**
з			
−з(а)на⁴		**AsS (temporary)**	**132**
−з(о)но		−з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
−з(ө)нө		−з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
−з(э)нэ		−з(а)на⁴ (AsS)	132
и			
−иа²		−аа⁴ (RS/NDS)	
−иад²		−аад⁴ (cVDS/NuS)	
−иарай²		−аарай⁴ (PTS)	179
−иач²		−аач⁴ (PTS)	178
−ий		**CS (genitive)**	**79**
−ийг		**CS (accusative)**	**86**
−ийн		**CS (genitive)**	**79**
−иар²		−аар² (CS)	93
−иас²		−аас⁴ (CS)	90
−иасай²		−аасай⁴ (PTS)	182
−иуд²		−уул² (PS)	73
−иузай²		−уузай² (PTS)	180
−иул²		−уул² (VoS/NuS)	
л			
−л		**AsS (repetitive)**	**135**
−лаа⁴		**TTS (past tense)**	**187**
−лга⁴		**VoS (causative)**	**119**
−лго		−лга⁴ (VoS)	119
−лгө		−лга⁴ (VoS)	119
−лгэ		−лга⁴ (VoS)	119
−лд		**VoS (adversative)**	**127**
−лз		**AsS (repetitive)**	**135**
−лоо		−лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
−лөө		−лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
−лтай³		**AwDS (worthwhile)**	**155**
−лтой		−лтай³ (AwDS)	155
−лтэй		−лтай³ (AwDS)	155
−лтүй		−лтай³ (AwDS)	155
(!)луу²		**CS (directive)**	**99**
(!)лүү		(!)луу² (CS)	99
−лц		**VoS (communal)**	**126**
−лээ		−лаа⁴ (TTS)	187
м			
−маа−жин⁴		**sVDS (excluding)**	**172**
−маар⁴		**AwDS (wish)**	**151**
−магц⁴		**sVDS (succeeding)**	**164**
−м(гүй)		**AwDS (worthwhile)**	**155**
−могц		−магц⁴ (sVDS)	164
−моо−жин		−маажин⁴ (sVDS)	172
−моор		−маар⁴ (AwDS)	151
−мөгц		−магц⁴ (sVDS)	164
−мөө−жин		−маажин⁴ (sVDS)	172
−мөөр		−маар⁴ (AwDS)	151
−мэгц		−магц⁴ (sVDS)	164

-мээ -жин		-маажин[4] (sVDS)	172
-мээр		-маар[4] (AwDS)	151
Н			
-н		cVDS (associative)	158
-н		CS (genitive)	79
-на[4]		TTS (present/ future)	190/ 191
(!) нар		PS	74
-нгаа[4]		sVDS (opportunity)	171
-нгоо		-нгаа[4] (sVDS)	171
-нгөө		-нгаа[4] (sVDS)	171
-нгуут[2]		sVDS (succeeding)	170
-нгүүт		-нгуут[2] (sVDS)	170
-нгээ		-нгаа[4] (sVDS)	171
-(н)ууд[2]		-ууд[2] (PS)	73
-(н)үүд		-ууд[2] (PS)	73
О			
-оо		-аа[4] (RS/VoS/NDS)	
-оод		-аад[4] (cVDS/NuS)	
-оор		-аар[4] (CS)	93
-оос		-аас[4] (CS)	90
-оосой		-аасай[4] (PTS)	182
-ооч		-аач[4] (PTS)	178
Ө			
-өө		-аа[4] (RS/VoS/NDS)	
-өөд		-аад[4] (cVDS/NuS)	
-өөр		-аар[4] (CS)	93
-өөс		-аас[4] (CS)	90
-өөсэй		-аасай[4] (PTS)	182
-өөч		-аач[4] (PTS)	178
Р			
(!)руу[2]		CS (directive)	99
(!)рүү		руу[2] (CS)	99

С			
-с		PS	75
-саар[4]		sVDS (progressive)	168
-сан[4]		NDS (past tense)	143
-сон		-сан[4] (NDS)	143
-соор		-саар[4] (sVDS)	168
-сөн		-сан[4] (NDS)	143
-сөөр		-саар[4] (sVDS)	168
-сугай[2]		PTS (decision)	176
-сүгэй		-сугай[2] (PTS)	176
-схий		AsS (quick)	132
-сэн		-сан[4] (NDS)	143
-сээр		-саар[4] (sVDS)	168
Т			
-т		CS (dative-locative)	83
-т		VoS (passive)	124
-таа[4]		NuS (multiplying)	249
-тай[3]		CS (comitative)	97
-тал[4]		sVDS (limiting)	167
-той		-тай[3] (CS)	97
-тол		-тал[4] (sVDS)	167
-тоо		-таа[4] (NuS)	249
-төл		-тал[4] (sVDS)	167
-төө		-таа[4] (NuS)	249
-тугай[2]		PTS (blessing)	183
-түгэй		-тугай[2] (PTS)	183
-тэй		-тай[3] (CS)	97
-тэл		-тал[4] (sVDS)	167
-тээ		-таа[4] (NuS)	249
У			
-ууд[2]		PS	73
-уузай[2]		PTS (admonition)	180
-уул[2]		VoS (causative)	118

-уул^2		NuS (collective)	244
-уур^2		AwS (movement)	224
-уут^2		sVDS (succeeding)	170
-ууш-тай^2		AwDS (necessity)	154
Ү			
-ҮҮд		-ууд^2 (PS)	73
-ҮҮзэй		-уузай^2 (PTS)	180
-ҮҮл		-уул^2 (VoS/NuS)	
-ҮҮр		-уур^2 (AwS)	224
-ҮҮт		-уут^2 (sVDS)	170
-ҮҮш-тэй		-ууштай^2 (AwDS)	154
Х			
-х		CbS (Possessive/Local)	101/102
-х		NDS (future tense)	147
-(х)аа^4		-аа^4 (RS)	108
-хаар^4		sVDS (intending)	166
-хан^4		CbS (collective)	103
-х(и)		CbS (attributive)	104
-хлаар^4		sVDS (logically succeeding)	165
-хлоор		-хлаар^4 (sVDS)	165
-хлөөр		-хлаар^4 (sVDS)	165
-хлээр		-хлаар^4 (sVDS)	165
-хон		-хан^4 (AwDS)	103
-хоор		-хаар^4 (sVDS)	166
-хөн		-хан^4 (AwDS)	103
-хөөр		-хаар^4 (sVDS)	166
-хүйц^2		AwDS (possibility)	153
-хүйц		-хүйц^2 (AwDS)	153
-хэн		-хан^4 (AwS)	103
-хээр		-хаар^4 (sVDS)	166

Ц			
-цгаа^4		AsS (collective)	134
-цгоо		-цгаа^4 (AsS)	134
-цгөө		-цгаа^4 (AsS)	134
-цгээ		-цгаа^4 (AsS)	134
Ч			
-ч		cVDS (simultaneous)	157
-чих		AsS (completed)	133
-чуул^2		PS	74
-чуул^2		PS	74
-чҮҮд		-чуул^2 (PS)	74
-чҮҮл		-чуул^2 (PS)	74
-чээ		TIS (past tense)	185
Ш			
-(г)ш		AwS (direction)	223
-шгүй		AwDS (negative)	155
Ъ			
-ъё		-ё (PTS)	175
-ъя		-я (PTS)	175
Ы			
-ы		CS (genitive)	79
-ыг		CS (accusative)	86
-ын		CS (genitive)	79
Ь			
-ье		-е (PTS)	175
Э			
-ээ		-аа^4 (RS/VoS/NDS)	
-ээд		-аад^4 (cVDS/NuS)	
-ээр		-аар^4 (CS)	93
-ээс		-аас^4 (CS)	90
-ээсэй		-аасай^4 (PTS)	182
-ээч		-аач^4 (PTS)	178
Я			
я		PTS (intention)	175

4. THE STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL SYSTEM OF RELATIONAL SUFFIXES

In the introduction to Part III on page 71, we mentioned a **system**, after which the inflectional suffixes are categorized. We believe it's important to have a good idea of this system in order to be able to build syntagmas and sentences. Especially to Western people who are used to a completely different sentence structure, this system should prove helpful. To understand the following two tables, their system chart and all abbreviations, we explain here briefly the terminology which has been used:

Inflectional suffixes:
Inflectional suffixes give the word no lexical, but a **grammatical** meaning

Relational suffixes:
Relational suffixes are those inflectional suffixes which can **express a relationship** between words.

Sentence:
A sentence is an independent **unit of speech** which has one common intonation.

Syntagma:
Syntagma is a **particular part** of a sentence:
e.g. 'to give to someone'; 'to put on the table'; 'to be good in math'.
Syntagmas are **built through relationships between words**. Such relationships are expressed by suffixes.

Adwords:
Adwords **describe** nouns, verbs or adwords. Adjectives, adverbs, and numerals belong to the category of adwords.

They can be used
- **nominal** (Aw^N) as in: a **good** horse, **three** books,
- **verbal** (Aw^V) as in: to sing **well**, to go **twice**

Relational Suffixes which build Syntagmas: Table 1 (compare with page 421)

No. in table	Abbreviations	Explanations	Examples	Category	Page
1.1	**Aw-W**	**adword - word**		**adwords**	**211ff**
1.2	**N-W**	**noun -word**		**CS's**	**78ff**
1.3	**V-W**	**verb - word**		**DS's**	**139ff**
1.1.1	Aw-Aw	adword - adword	изн (*-ø1*) сайн маш (*-ø1*) харамсалтай	**adwords**	**211ff**
1.1.2	Aw-N/V	adword - noun/ verb	сайн (*-ø2*) морь сайн (*-ø2*) дуула-	**adjectives/ adverbs**	**212ff** **221ff**
1.1.3	Aw-N	adword - noun	өндөр (*-ø3*) хүн хар (*-ø3*) машин	**adjectives**	**212ff**
1.1.4	Aw-V	adword - verb	сайтар (*-ø4*) бодо- дандаа (*-ø4*) ажилла-	**adverbs**	**221ff**
1.2.1	N-N	noun - noun	ахын ном ширээний хөл	**direct case** genitive	**79ff**
1.2.2	N-Aw^{N}	noun - adword in nominal function	усны тунгалаг нарны эрт	**direct case** genitive	**79ff**
1.2.3	N-V	noun - verb	хүнд өг- хүнийг хара- хүнээс асуу- хүнээр хийлгэ- хүнтэй ява- хүн руу очи-	**indirect cases**	**83ff** **86ff** **90ff** **93ff** **97ff** **99ff**
1.2.4	N-Aw^{V}	noun - adword in verbal function	тоонд сайн уснаас гүн малаар баян бидэнтэй сайн говь руу муу	**indirect cases**	**83ff** **90ff** **93ff** **97ff** **99ff**
1.3.1	V-N	verb - noun	явсан хүн явдаг хүн яваа хүн явах хүн явагч хүн	**NDS's**	**143** **144** **145** **147** **149**
1.3.2	V-Aw^{N}	verb - adword in nominal function	явмаар сайхан явахуйц чухал явуштай гоё явашгүй муухай үзэлгүй муухай ангам халуун	**AwDS's**	**151** **153** **154** **155** **155** **155**
1.3.3	V-V	verb - verb	худалдаж ав- гүйн гар- очоод уулза- ирвэл ява- яаравч ажилла- ирмэгц уулза- явахлаар ирэ- сурахаар яв- ухтэл ай- явсаар ирэ- ирэнгүүт унта- явангаа ярь- сурмаажин мэдэ-	**VDS's**	**157** **158** **159** **161** **162** **164** **165** **166** **167** **168** **170** **171** **172**
1.3.4	V-Aw^{V}	verb - adword in verbal function	ирвэл сайн явавч муу явахлаар хол сурмаажин чухал	**VDS's**	**161** **162** **165** **172**

Relational Suffixes which build Sentences: Table 2 (compare with page 421)

	Explanation	Examples	Page
2.	**syntactic part - subject**		
2.1	**syntagma - subject (RS)**	Би ээжтэйгээ хамт явсан.	**108ff**
		Би хичээлээс ирмэгцээ цайгаа уусан.	**173**
2.2	**predicate - subject**		**371ff**
2.2.1	Person-bound Terminating Suffixes (**PTS's**)		**175ff**
2.2.2	Tense-bound Terminating Suffixes (**TTS's**)		**184ff**
2.2.1.1	PTS's of 1st person	Би явъя.	**175**
		Хөдөө аж ахуйг хурдан хөгжүүлсүгэй!	**176**
2.2.1.2	PTS's of 2nd person	Гар! (~**ø**)	**177**
		Чи яваач.	**178**
		Номоо уншаарай!	**179**
		Гал гаруузай!	**180**
		Та суугтун!	**181**
2.2.1.3	PTS's of 3rd person	Тэр үзвэл үзэг!	**181**
		Тэд ирээсэй!	**182**
		Манай орон мандтугай!	**183**
2.2.2.1	TTS's of past tense	Би хоолоо идсэн.	**184**
		Орой болжээ.	**185**
		Аав хөдөө явав.	**186**
		Тэр явлаа.	**187**
2.2.2.2	TTS's of present tense	Өвөл цас ордог.	**188**
		Надад талх байгаа.	**189**
		Ус хөлддөгийг бид мэднэ.	**190**
2.2.2.3	TTS of future tense	Би маргааш явна.	**191**

Table 1: Relational Suffixes which build Syntagmas

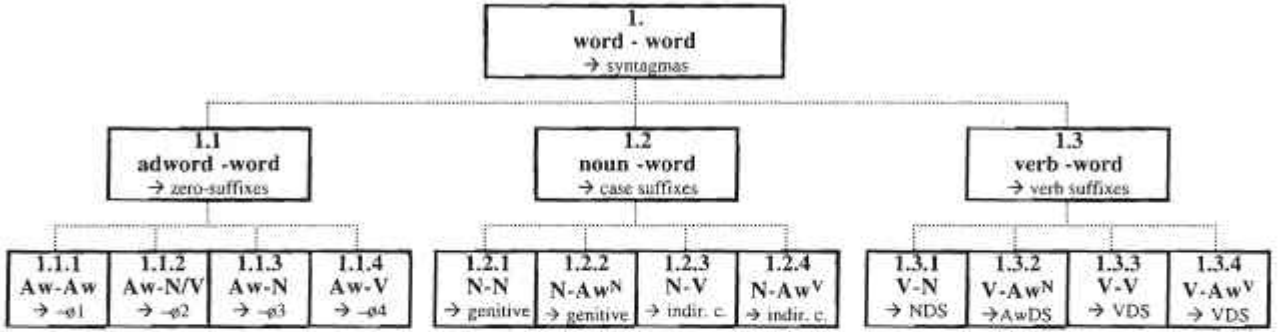
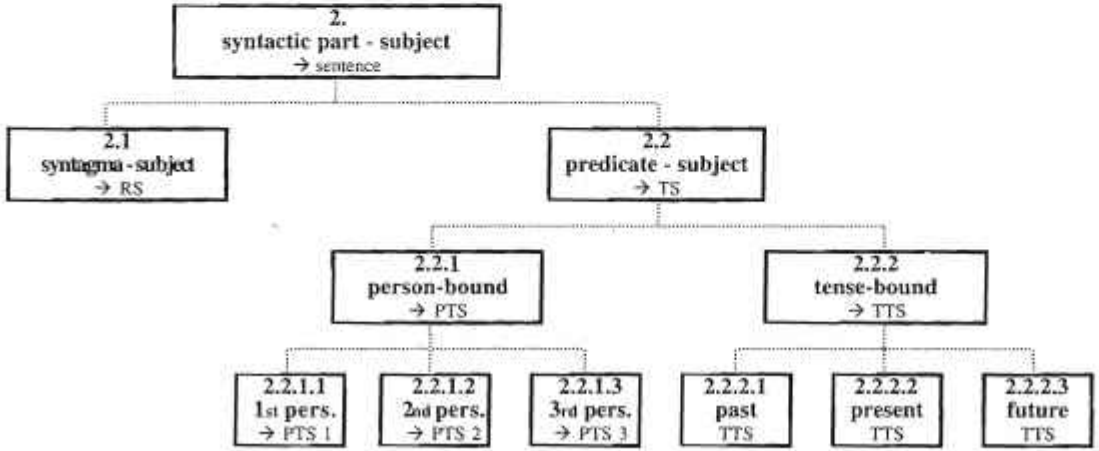


Table 2: Relational Suffixes which build Sentences



5. MONGOLIAN EQUIVALENT OF ENGLISH TENSES

As you study this chart, please **refer to the following paragraphs in Part III** of this book: p. 136 (analytically expressed aspects); p. 139 (NDS's); p. 184 (TTS's); p. 374/195 (building compound predicates) Exceptions are marked with "!!"

	PRESENT ОДОО ЦАГ -даг, (-на)	*PAST* ӨНГӨРСӨН ЦАГ -сан, -жэ, -лаа, -в	*FUTURE* ИРЭЭДҮЙ ЦАГ -на -х (болно)	*FUTURE IN THE PAST* ӨНГӨРСНИЙ ҮҮД-НЭЭС ИРЭЭДҮЙ ЦАГ -х байсан
INDEFINITE ТОДОРХОЙГҮЙ	•Би бичдэг. *I write.* •Та бичдэг үү? *Do you write?* •Би бичдэггүй. *I don't write.*	•Би бичсэн. *I wrote.* •Та бичсэн үү? *Did you write?* •Би бичсэнгүй. *I didn't write.*	•Би бичнэ. *I shall write.* •Та бичих үү? *Will you write?* •Би бичихгүй. *I shall not write.*	•Би бичих байсан. *I should write.* •Та бичих байсан уу? *Should you write?* •Би бичихгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't write.*
-ж бай- *PROGRESSIVE* ҮРГЭЛЖЛЭХ	•Би бичиж байна. *I'm writing.* •Та бичиж байна уу? *Are you writing?* •Би бичихгүй байна. *I'm not writing.*	•Би бичиж байсан. *I was writing.* •Та бичиж байсан уу? *Were you writing?* •Би бичиж байсангүй. *I wasn't writing.*	•Би бичиж байх болно. *I shall be writing.* •Та бичиж байх уу? *Will you be writing?* •Би бичиж байхгүй. *I shall not be writing.*	•Би бичиж байх байсан. *I should be writing.* •Та бичиж байх байсан уу? *Should you be writing?* •Би бичиж байхгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't be writing.*
-чихсан бай- *PERFECT* ТӨГС	•Би биччихсэн байна. *I have written.* •Та биччихсэн байна уу? *Have you written?* •Би бичээгүй байна. *I haven't written.* !!	•Би биччихсэн байсан. *I had written.* •Та биччихсэн байсан уу? *Had you written?* •Би бичээгүй байсан. *I hadn't written.* !!	•Би биччихсэн байх болно. *I shall have written.* •Та биччихсэн байх уу? *Will you have written?* •Би бичээгүй байх болно. *I shall not have written.* !!	•Би биччихсэн байх байсан. *I should have written.* •Та биччихсэн байх байсан уу? *Should you have written?* •Би бичээгүй байх байсан. *I shouldn't have written.* !!
-саар бай- *PERFECT PROGRESSIVE* ТӨГС ҮРГЭЛЖЛЭХ	•Би бичсээр байна. *I have been writing.* •Та бичсээр байна уу? *Have you been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байна. *I haven't been writing.*	•Би бичсээр байсан. *I had been writing.* •Та бичсээр байсан уу? *Had you been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байсан. *I hadn't been writing.*	•Би бичсээр байх болно. *I shall have been writing.* •Та бичсээр байх уу? *Will you have been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байх болно. *I shall not have been writing.*	•Би бичсээр байх байсан. *I should have been writing.* •Та бичсээр байх байсан уу? *Should you have been writing?* •Би бичихгүй байсаар байх байсан. *I shouldn't have been writing.*

6. TABLE OF CONTENTS IN MONGOLIAN

Монгол гарчиг

// ХЭСЭГ : Удиртгал (х. 1–40)

1. Монгол хэл, түүний хувьсал хөгжил (х. 2)

1.1 Монгол хэлний ерөнхий шинж (х. 2)
1.2 Олон монгол хэл аялгуу (х. 2)
1.3 Сонгодог бичгийн хэл хийгээд орчин цагийн утга зохиолын хэл (х. 3)

2. Монгол бичгийн цагаан толгой (х. 4)

2.1 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгой (х. 4)
2.1.1 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгойн тойм хүснэгт (х. 4)
2.1.2 Олон дуудлагат цагаан толгой (х.5)
2.1.3 Уйгуржин бичгийн цагаан толгойн нарийвчилсан хүснэгт (х.6)
2.1.4 Эгшиг авиа (х. 7)
2.1.4.1 Эгшгийн зохицол
2.1.4.2 Эгшгийн хувьсал
2.1.4.2.1 Эгшгийн ижилсэл
2.1.4.2.1.1 Дэвшин ижилсэх
2.1.4.2.1.2 Ухран ижилсэх
2.1.4.2.2 Урт эгшгийн үүсэл
2.1.4.2.2.1 Авианы нийлэмжээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.2.2 Богино эгшгээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.2.3 Нийлмэл эгшгээс үүсэх нь
2.1.4.2.3 Хос эгшгийн үүсэл
2.1.4.2.3.1 Үгийн дундах хос эгшиг
2.1.4.2.3.2 Үгийн эцсийн хос эгшиг
2.1.4.2.4 Балархай эгшиг
2.1.4.2.4.1 Эгшиг сулрах нь
2.1.4.2.4.2 Эгшиг гээгдэх нь
2.1.5 Гийгүүлэгч авиа (х. 13)
2.1.5.1 Чанга, сул гийгүүлэгч
2.1.5.2 Дэвсгэр үсэг
2.1.5.3 Эр үгэн дэх зөөлөн гийгүүлэгч
2.1.5.4 Гийгүүлэгчийн хувьсал
2.1.6 Үеийн бүтэц (х. 15)
2.1.7 Гадаад үгийн галиг (х. 16)
2.1.7.1 Галигийн хүснэгт
2.1.7.2 Галигийн жишээ
2.1.8 Зөв бичгийн дүрэм (х. 17)
2.1.8.1 Залгаврыг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.1.8.2 Жийрэглэх эгшгийг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.1.8.2.1 Ерөнхий дүрэм
2.1.8.2.2 Тайлал

2.2 Кирилл бичгийн цагаан толгой (х.19)
2.2.1 Эгшиг авиа (х. 20)
2.2.1.1 Эгшгийн ангилал
2.2.1.2 Эгшиг зохицох ёс
2.2.2 Гийгүүлэгч (х. 21)
2.2.2.1 Хатуу, зөөлөн гийгүүлэгч
2.2.2.2 Гийгүүлэгчийн ангилал
2.2.2.2.1 Эгшигт гийгүүлэгч
2.2.2.2.2 Заримдаг гийгүүлэгч

2.2.2.3 Гийгүүлэгчийн байр
2.2.3 Тэмдэг (х. 21)
2.2.3.1 Хатуугийн тэмдэг
2.2.3.2 Зөөлний тэмдэг
2.2.4 Үеийн бүтэц (х. 22)
2.2.5 Дүрмүүд (х. 22)
2.2.5.1 Зөв дуудах дүрэм
2.2.5.2 Зөв бичих дүрэм
2.2.5.2.1 Үндсэн дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2 Хувилгалын дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2.1 Гол дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.2.2 Тайлал дүрмүүд
2.2.5.2.3 «-ла» дагаврыг зөв бичих дүрэм
2.2.5.2.3.1 «-ла» дагаврын тайлал дүрэм
2.2.5.2.4 Зөөлний тэмдэг «и» болох дүрэм
2.2.5.2.5 «-ж/-ч» нөхцлийн дүрэм
2.2.5.2.6 Том үсгийн дүрэм
2.2.5.2.7 Үг товчлох дүрэм
2.2.5.2.8 Үг таслах дүрэм

2.3 Цагаан толгойнуудын харьцуулсан хүснэгт (х. 31)

3. Монгол хэлний үгийн бүтэц (х. 33)

3.1 Язгуур (х. 33)
3.1.1 Идэвхтэй (амьд) язгуур
3.1.2 Идэвхгүй (үхмэл) язгуур

3.2 Үндэс (х. 36)

3.3 Залгавар (х. 37)
3.3.1 Үг бүтээх залгавар (дагавар)
3.3.2 Үг хувилгах залгавар (нөхцөл)
3.3.2.1 Нэр үгийг хувилгах нөхцөл
3.3.2.2 Үйл үгийг хувилгах нөхцөл

II ХЭСЭГ: Үгсийн сан (х. 41–68)

1. Үг бүтэх ёс (х. 41)

1.1 Дагавар залгаж үг бүтэх нь (х. 42)
1.1.1 Нэр үг бүтэх нь (х. 42)
1.1.1.1 Нэр үг, тэмдэг нэрээс нэр үг бүтэх нь
1.1.1.2 Үйл үгээс нэр үг бүтэх нь
1.1.2 Тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь (х. 49)
1.1.2.1 Нэр үг, тэмдэг нэрээс тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь
1.1.2.2 Үйл үгээс тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь
1.1.3 Үйл үг бүтэх нь (х. 54)

1.2 Нийлмэл үгээр үг бүтэх нь (х. 57)
1.2.1 Хоршоо нийлмэл үг
1.2.2Хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.2.1 Хамжсан хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.2.2 Найрсан хавсраа нийлмэл үг
1.2.3 Давтсан хоршоо нийлмэл үг
2. Үгсийн сангийн бүрэлдэхүүн (х. 60)

2.1 Өвөрмөц хэллэг (х. 60)

2.2 Ижил үгс (х. 62)

2.2.1 Үгсийн сангийн ижил үгс
2.2.1.1 Үгсийн сангийн анхдагч ижил үгс
2.2.1.2 Үгсийн сангийн үүсмэл ижил үгс
2.2.2 Үгзүйн ижил үгс
2.2.2.1 Үгзүйн анхдагч ижил үгс
2.2.2.2 Үгзүйн үүсмэл ижил үгс

2.3 Ойролцоо үгс (х. 63)
2.3.1 Найруулгын ойролцоо үгс
2.3.2 Гадаад хэлнээс орсон ойролцоо үгс
2.3.3 Нутгийн аялгууны ойролцоо үгс
2.3.4 Цээрлэсэн ойролцоо үгс

2.4 Ёс заншлын үгс (х. 65)

2.5 Зээлдсэн үгс (х. 66)
2.5.1 Монголжсон харь үгс
2.5.2 Янз бүрийн хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.1 Самгард, уйгур хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.2 Араб, Перс хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.3 Хятад, манж хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.4 Төвд хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс
2.5.2.4 Европын хэлнээс зээлдсэн үгс

III ХЭСЭГ: Үг зүй (х. 70– 358)

I. Бодит үгсийн аймаг (х. 72)

1.1. Жинхэнэ үгсийн аймаг (х. 72)

1.1.1 Нэр үг (х. 72)

1.1.1.1 Нэр үгийн олон тоо (х. 72)
1.1.1.1 Олон тооны нөхцөл (ОТН)
1.1.1.1.1 «–ууд²» ОТН
1.1.1.1.2 «–чууд², –чуул²» ОТН
1.1.1.1.3 «нар» ОТН
1.1.1.1.4 «–д» ОТН
1.1.1.1.5 «–с» ОТН
1.1.1.2 ОТН–гүйгээр олон тооны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.2.1 Тоо илтгэсэн үгээр олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.2.2 Үгсийг давтан олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.2.3 Үйл үгийн айгаар олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.2.4 Багц ойлголтоор олны утгыг илтгэх нь
1.1.1.2.5 Хийсвэр ойлголт
1.1.1.2 Нэр үгийн тийн ялгал (х. 78)
1.1.1.2.1 Тийн ялгалын нөхцөл (ТЯН)
1.1.1.2.1.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 78)
1.1.1.2.1.1.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгалд буй асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.2 Харьяалахын тийн ялгал (х. 79)
1.1.1.2.1.2.1 Нөхцлүүд (–ын, –ийн, –ы, –ий, –н), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.2.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.2.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.3 Өгөх оршихын тийн ялгал (х. 83)
1.1.1.2.1.3.1 Нөхцлүүд (–д, –т), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.3.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.3.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.4 Заахын тийн ялгал (х. 86)
1.1.1.2.1.4.1 Нөхцлүүл (–ыг, –ийг, –г), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.4.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.4.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.1 Үл ялгах ёс

1.1.1.2.1.4.3.2 Ялгах ёс
1.1.1.2.1.4.3.3 Хэрэглээний шатлал
1.1.1.2.1.5 Гарахын тийн ялгал (х. 90)
1.1.1.2.1.5.1 Нөхцлүүд (–аас[4]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.5.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.5.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.6 Үйлдэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 93)
1.1.1.2.1.6.1 Нөхцлүүд (–аар[4]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.6.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.6.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.7 Хамтрахын тийн ялгал (х. 97)
1.1.1.2.1.7.1 Нөхцлүүд (–тай[3]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.7.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.7.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.1 Жинхэнэ хамтрахын тийн ялгал
1.1.1.2.1.7.3.2 Хуурамч хамтрахын тийн ялгал
1.1.1.2.1.8 Чиглэхийн тийн ялгал (х. 99)
1.1.1.2.1.8.1 Нөхцлүүд (руу[2], луу[2]), залгах дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.1.8.2 Асуух үгс
1.1.1.2.1.8.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.2.1.8.4 Чиглэхийн тийн ялгалын шинэ хэлбэр
1.1.1.2.2 Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох залгавар (ТЯЗ) (х. 101)
1.1.1.2.2.1 Хамаатуулах утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (–х)
1.1.1.2.2.2 Үсгийн сангийн "гэр" гэсэн утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (–х)
1.1.1.2.2.3 Үсгийн сангийн "хүмүүс" гэсэн утга илэрхийлэх ТЯЗ (–хан[4])
1.1.1.2.2.4 Харьцааны утгыг өөрчлөгч хэлзүйн хэрэглүүр болох ТЯЗ (–х/–хи)
1.1.1.2.3 Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох сул үг (ТЯС) (х. 106)
1.1.1.2.3.1 ТЯС (минь, чинь, тань, маань, нь), дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.2.3.2 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.3 Эгэх нөхцөл «–аа[4]» (ЭН) (х. 108)
1.1.1.3.1 Эгэх нөхцлийн үүрэг
1.1.1.3.2 ЭН, дүрэм, жишээ
1.1.1.3.3 Хэрэглэх нь
1.1.1.3.4 ТЯС–тай харьцуулах нь

1.1.2 Үйл үг (х. 113)

1.1.2.1 Үйл үгийн хувилал
1.1.2.1.1 Үйл үгийн хэвийн нөхцөл (ХэН) (х. 115)
1.1.2.1.1.1 Үйлдэх хэв (–ø)
1.1.2.1.1.2 Үйлдүүлэх хэв
1.1.2.1.1.2.1 «–уул[2]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.2 «–лга[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3 «–га[4], –аа[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.1 «–га[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.3.2 «–аа[4]»
1.1.2.1.1.2.4 Үйлдүүлэх хэвийн үүргүүд
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Эс тусах хэлбэрийг тусах хэлбэр болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.2 Тусах хэлбэрийг үйлдүүлэх хэв болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.2.4.3 Тусах хэлбэрийг үйлдэгдэх хэв болгох нь
1.1.2.1.1.3 Үйлдэгдэх хэв «–гд»
1.1.2.1.1.4 Үйлдэлцэх хэв «–лц»
1.1.2.1.1.5 Үйлдэлдэх хэв «–лд»
1.1.2.1.1.6 Үйл үгийн хэвийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.1.7 Үйл үгийн хэвийн нөхцлийг давхар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.2.1.2 Үйл үгийн байдлын нөхцөл (БН) (х. 131)
1.1.2.1.2.1 Байдлыг нийлэг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь (БН–тэй)
1.1.2.1.2.1.1 «–схий»: хоромхон үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.2 «–зана[4]»: түр үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.3 «–чих»: төгс үйлдэх

1.1.2.1.2.1.4 «-цгаа⁴»: олноор үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.5 «-л»: давтан үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.1.6 «-лз, балз²/ валз², галз², гана⁴»: давтан үйлдэх
1.1.2.1.2.2 Байдлыг задлаг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.2.1.2.2.1 «-ж/ ч бай-»: Үргэлжлэх байдал
1.1.2.1.2.2.2 «-(чих)аад⁴ бай-/ -(чих)сан⁴ бай-»: Төгс байдал
1.1.2.1.2.2.3 «-саар⁴ бай-»: Төгс үргэлжлэх байдал
1.1.2.1.2.3 Хэвийн ба байдлын нөхцлийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.3 Үйл үгийн төлөв (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1 Тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТоН) (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1.1 Нэр үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (НТоН) (х. 139)
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 НТоН-ийн үүрэг
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.2 Өнгөрсөн цагт НТоН «-сан⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.3 Тодорхойгүй одоо цагт НТоН «-даг⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.4 Үргэлжлэх одоо цагт НТоН «-аа⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.5 Ирээдүй цагт НТоН «-х»
1.1.2.1.3.1.1.6 Үйлдэгчийг заах НТоН «-гч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2 Тэмдэг үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТТоН) (х. 151)
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Хүсэх ТТоН «-маар⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.2 Чадавхи заах ТТоН «-хуйц²»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.3 Санал болгох ТТоН «-уушгай²»
1.1.2.1.3.1.2.4 Бусад ТТоН «-шгүй, -лгай³, -лгүй, -м, -мгүй»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3 Үйл үгийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (УТоН) (х. 156)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох УТоН (ЗэУТоН)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.1 Зэрэгцэх ЗэУТоН «-ж/-ч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.2 Хам ЗэУТоН «-н»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.3 Урьдчилах ЗэУТоН «-аад⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.1.4 ЗэУТоН-ийг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2 Захируулан холбох УТоН (ЗаУТоН)
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.1 Болзох ЗаУТоН «-бал⁴, -вал⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.2 Дутагдах ЗаУТоН «-вч»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.3 Бэлтгэх ЗаУТоН «-магц⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.4 Дагалдах ЗаУТоН «-хлаар⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.5 Зорилгын ЗаУТоН «-хаар⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.6 Үгтуулах ЗаУТоН «-тал⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.7 Үргэлжлэх ЗаУТоН «-саар⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.8 Далимдах ЗаУТоН «-нгуут²»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.9 Дашрамдах ЗаУТоН «-нгаа⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.10 Онцгойлох ЗаУТоН «-маажин⁴»
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.11 ЗаУТоН-ийн дараа эгэх нөхцөл хэрэглэх нь
1.1.2.1.3.1.3.2.12 ЗаУТоН-ийн нэгттэсэн хүснэгт
1.1.2.1.3.2 Төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ТөН) (х. 175)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1 Биеэр төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (БТөН) (х. 175)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.1 Хүсэх БТөН «-я³» (I бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.2 Даалган хүсэх БТөН «-сугай²» (I бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.3 Шууд захирах БТөН «-ø» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.4 Тулган шаардах, гуйн хүсэх БТөН «-аач⁴» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.5 Сануулан хүсэх, зөвлөн захирах БТөН «-аарай⁴» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.6 Сэрэмжлүүлэн сануулах БТөН «-уузай²» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.7 Хүндэтгэн захирах БТөН «-гтун³» (II бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.8 Тушаах, зөвшөөх БТөН «-г» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.9 Гүнээ хүсэх БТөН «-аасай⁴» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.1.10 Ерөөн хүсэх БТөН «-тугай²» (III бие)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2 Цагаар төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ЦТөН) (х. 184)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.1 НТоН «-сан⁴» ЦТөН-ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (ерөнхий өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.2 ЦТөН «-жээ/ -чээ» (өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.3 ЦТөН «-в» (өнгөрсөн цаг)

1.1.2.1.3.2.2.4 ЦТөН «-лаа⁴» (өнгөрсөн цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.5 НТоН «-даг⁴» ЦТөН-ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (тодорхойгүй одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.6 НТоН «-аа⁴» ЦТөН-ийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь (үргэлжлэх одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.7 ЦТөН «-на⁴» (одоо цаг)
1.1.2.1.3.2.2.8 ЦТөН «-на⁴» (ирээдүй цаг)
1.1.2.2 Үйл үгийг үүргээр нь ангилах нь (х. 192)
1.1.2.2.1 Гол үйл үг (х. 192)
1.1.2.2.1.1 «Бай-» гол үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.1.1.1 «Бай-»-г англи хэлэнд "there are"-гаар буулгах нь
1.1.2.2.1.1.2 «Бай-»-г англи хэлэнд "to be"-гээр буулгах нь
1.1.2.2.1.2 «Бол-» гол үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2 Туслах үйл үг (х. 194)
1.1.2.2.2.1 «Бай-» туслах үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2.1.1 Холбогчийн үүргээр (нэр үг, тэмдэг үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.1.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн бүтээх үүргээр (үйл үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.1.3 Хүсэх төлөв илэрхийлэх үүргээр
1.1.2.2.2.2 «Бол-» туслах үйл үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.2.2.2.2.1 Холбогчийн үүргээр (нэр үг, тэмдэг үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.2.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн бүтээх үүргээр (үйл үгийн дараа)
1.1.2.2.2.3 Дутмаг туслах үйл үг
1.1.2.2.2.3.1 «ажээ, атал, аваас»
1.1.2.2.2.3.2 «бий, буй, билээ»
1.1.2.2.3 Баймж үйл үг ба баймж бүтэц (х. 201)
1.1.2.2.3.1 Баймж үйл үг «чада-»
1.1.2.2.3.2 Баймж бүтэц
1.1.2.2.3.2.1 «... -х ...-тай/-гүй»
1.1.2.2.3.2.2 «... -байх(аа)»
1.1.2.2.3.2.3 «... юм байна»
1.1.2.2.3.2.4 «... байлтай/байлгүй»
1.1.2.2.3.2.5 «...-сан бол-»
1.1.2.2.3.2.6 «... -х гэсэн юм»
1.1.2.2.3.2.7 «... бололтой»
1.1.2.2.3.2.8 «... -х юмсаң/... -хсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.9 «... -сан юмсаң»
1.1.2.2.3.2.10 «... -сансаң/... -дагсан»
1.1.2.2.3.2.11 «... -хаас даа»
1.1.2.2.3.2.12 Баймж бүтэц ба баймж залгаврыг хооронд нь харьцуулах нь
1.1.2.2.4 Гол үйл үгийг баймж уттаар хэрэглэх нь (х. 208)
1.1.2.2.4.1 «-ж/-ч бол-» баймж үйл үг
1.1.2.2.4.2 Бусад баймж үйл үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.2.2.5 Холбоос үйл үг «гэ-» (х. 210)

1.1.3 Тэмдэг үг (х. 211)

1.1.3.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг (х. 211)
1.1.3.1.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн тодорхойлолт
1.1.3.1.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн өгүүлбэрдэх үүрэг
1.1.3.1.2.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг тодотголын үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.3.1.2.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үг өгүүлэхүүний үүргээр хэрэглэгдэх нь
1.1.3.1.3 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн дараалал
1.1.3.1.3.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн дарааллын зүй тогтол
1.1.3.1.4 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.1 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн ерийн зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.2 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн харьцуулсан зэрэг
1.1.3.1.4.2.1 Гарахын т/я-тай нэр үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.2 Гарахын т/я-тай нэрийн тэмдэг үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.3 «адил, шиг, мэт, чинээ» гэсэн дагавар үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.2.4 «илүү, арай» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.3 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн давуу зэрэг

1.1.3.1.4.3.1 «хамгийн, туйлын» гэсэн үгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.4.3.2 Харьяалахын т/я–тай давтан хэрэглэсэн нөхүүгээр илэрхийлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5 Нэрийн тэмдэг үгийн уттыг өөрчлөх нь
1.1.3.1.5.1 Тэмдэг үг бүтээх залгавар (ТҮЗ) залгаж өөрчлөх нь
1.1.3.1.5.1.1 Бууруулах ТҮЗ «–хан[4]»
1.1.3.1.5.1.2 Бууруулах ТҮЗ «–(а)втар[4] , –дуу[2]»
1.1.3.1.5.1.3 Эрчимжүүлэх ТҮЗ «–в»
1.1.3.1.5.2 Тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.1 «маш, нэн, тун, даан» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.2 «хэтэрхий, дэндүү, дээнч» гэсэн тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.1.5.2.3 Бусад тэмдэг үгээр эрчимжүүлэх нь
1.1.3.2 Үйлийн тэмдэг үг (х. 221)
1.1.3.2.1 Анхдагч үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.2 Идэвхгүй язгуурт үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.2.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.2.2.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.2.3 Үйлийн тэмдэг үг бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.1 ТҮЗ –аар бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.1.1 Чиг заах ТҮЗ «–(г)ш»
1.1.3.2.3.1.2 Хөдлөл заах ТҮЗ «–уур[2]»
1.1.3.2.3.2 Үгс хоршиж бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.3.3 Тэмдэг үгээр бүтээх нь
1.1.3.2.4 Үйлийн тэмдэг үгийн утгазүйн ангилал
1.1.3.2.4.1 Орон байр заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.4.2 Цаг хугацаа заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.2.4.3 Байдал, шинж тэмдэг заасан үйлийн тэмдэг үг
1.1.3.3 Тооны үг (х. 234)
1.1.3.3.1 Тооны үг, тэдгээрийн нөхцлийн (ТҮН) хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2 Үндсэн тооны үг (х. 234)
1.1.3.3.2.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2.2 Үндсэн тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.1 Нийлмэл үндсэн тооны үгийг бүтээх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.2 Үндсэн тооны үгийг тодотголын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.3 Үндсэн тооны үгийг холбоосын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.2.2.4 Үндсэн тооны үгийн өргөн хэрэглээ
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.1 Огноо
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.2 Цаг
1.1.3.3.2.2.4.3 Утас
1.1.3.3.2.3 Үндсэн тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.2.3.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.2.3.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.3.3 Дэс тооны үг (х. 240)
1.1.3.3.3.1 Дэс тооны үг үүсгэх «–дугаар[2], –дахь/–дэх» дагавар
1.1.3.3.3.2 Дэс тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.3.2.1 Сар (–дугаар[2])
1.1.3.3.3.2.2 «–дугаар[2]»-ыг хэрэглэх бусад жишээ
1.1.3.3.3.2.3 Гариг (–дахь, –дэх)
1.1.3.3.3.2.4 «–дахь/–дэх»-ийг хэрэглэх бусад жишээ
1.1.3.3.3.2.5 Хаяг (–дугаар[2], –дахь/–дэх)
1.1.3.3.3.2.6 Ром тоог «–дугаар[2]»-ын үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.4 Хам тооны үг (х. 244)
1.1.3.3.4.1 Хам тооны үг бүтээх «–уул[2]» дагавар
1.1.3.3.4.2 Хам тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.4.3 Хам тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.4.3.1 Хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.4.3.2 Жишээ
1.1.3.3.5 Тойм тооны үг (х. 246)
1.1.3.3.5.1 Тойм тооны үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.5.2 Тойм тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.2.1 Тойм тооны үг үүсгэх «–аад[4]» дагавар

1.1.3.3.5.2.2 «гаруй, илүү, шахам, орчим» гэсэн дагавар үгсийг тойм тооны үгийн уттаар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.2.3 Тооны үгийг хоршиж тойм тооны үгийн уттаар хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.5.3 Тойм тооны үгийг хувилгах нь
1.1.3.3.6 Давтах тооны үг (х. 249)
1.1.3.3.6.1 Давтах тооны үгийн хүснэгт
1.1.3.3.6.2 Давтах тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.6.2.1 Давтах тооны үг үүсгэх «–таа⁴» дагавар
1.1.3.3.6.2.2 «дахин, удаа» гэсэн үгсийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.7 Хязгаарлах тооны үг (х. 250)
1.1.3.3.7.1 Хязгаарлах тооны үг үүсгэх «–хан⁴» дагавар
1.1.3.3.7.2 Хязгаарлах тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.8 Түгээл тооны үг (х. 251)
1.1.3.3.8.1 Түгээл тооны үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.1.3.3.9 Тооны үгийг тоо бичлэгт хэрэглэх нь (х. 252)
1.1.3.3.9.1 Аравтын бутархай
1.1.3.3.9.2 Энгийн бутархай
1.1.3.3.9.3 Хувь
1.1.3.3.9.4 Дөрвөн аргын тоо
1.1.3.3.9.4.1 Нэмэх
1.1.3.3.9.4.2 Хасах
1.1.3.3.9.4.3 Үржүүлэх
1.1.3.3.9.4.4 Хуваах

1.2. Төлөөний үг (х. 255)

1.2.1 Төлөөний үгийн бүтэцзүйн ангилал (х. 255)
1.2.1.1 Нэрийн төлөөний үг
1.2.1.2 Үйлийн төлөөний үг
1.2.1.3 Тэмдгийн төлөөний үг
1.2.2 Төлөөний үгийн уттазүйн ангилал (х. 256)
1.2.2.1 Биеийн төлөөний үг (х. 256)
1.2.2.1.1 Биеийн төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.1.2 Биеийн төлөөний үгийн хувилал
1.2.2.1.3 Биеийн төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.1.3.1 «би»
1.2.2.1.3.2 «чи»
1.2.2.1.3.3 «та»
1.2.2.1.3.4 «тэр»
1.2.2.1.3.5 «бид (нар)»
1.2.2.1.3.6 «та нар»
1.2.2.1.3.7 «тэд (нар)»
1.2.2.2 Хамаатуулах төлөөний үг (х. 260)
1.2.2.3 Эгэх төлөөний үг (х. 261)
1.2.2.3.1 Эгэх төлөөний үгийг тийн ялгалаар хувилгах нь
1.2.2.3.2 Эгэх төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.1 Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.2 Харьяалахын тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.2.3 Бусад тийн ялгалд хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.3.3 Бусад эгэх төлөөний үгс
1.2.2.4 Заах төлөөний үг (х. 264)
1.2.2.4.1 Заах төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.4.2 Заах төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.4.2.1 «энэ/ тэр/ эдгээр/ тэдгээр/ эд (нар)/ тэд (нар)»
1.2.2.4.2.2 «ийм/ тийм/ иймэрхүү/ тиймэрхүү»
1.2.2.4.2.3 «өнөө(төх)/ нөгөө(төх)/ өнөөдүүл/ нөгөөдүүл»
1.2.2.4.2.4 «өдий/ төдий/ өчнөөн/ төчнөөн»
1.2.2.4.2.5 «ингэ–/ тэгэ–»
1.2.2.5 Асуух төлөөний үг (х. 268)
1.2.2.5.1 Асуух төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт

1.2.2.5.2 Асуух төлөөний үгийг харьцуулах нь
1.2.2.5.3 Асуух төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.5.3.1 «хэн»
1.2.2.5.3.2 «юу(н)»
1.2.2.5.3.3 «ямар»
1.2.2.5.3.4 «аль/алин»
1.2.2.5.3.5 «хэд(эн)»
1.2.2.5.3.6 «хичнээн»
1.2.2.5.3.7 «хэзээ/хэдийд»
1.2.2.5.3.8 «хаа(на)»
1.2.2.5.3.9 «хаашаа»
1.2.2.5.3.10 «хаанаас»
1.2.2.5.3.11 «хаагуур»
1.2.2.5.3.12 «хэр»
1.2.2.5.3.13 «хэрхэн»
1.2.2.5.3.14 «яаж»
1.2.2.5.3.15 «яагаад»
1.2.2.5.3.16 «хэрхи-»
1.2.2.5.3.17 «яа-»
1.2.2.5.3.18 Давтан хэрэглэж олон тооны утгыг илэрхийлэх нь
1.2.2.6 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг (х. 276)
1.2.2.6.1 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийн хүснэгт
1.2.2.6.2 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийг хэрэглэх нь
1.2.2.6.2.1 «хэн ч»
1.2.2.6.2.2«юу ч»
1.2.2.6.2.3 «ямар ч»
1.2.2.6.2.4 «аль ч»
1.2.2.6.2.5 «хэд(эн) ч»
1.2.2.6.2.6 «хичнээн ч»
1.2.2.6.2.7 «хзээ ч/хэдийд ч»
1.2.2.6.2.8 «хаана ч/хаанаас ч/хаашаа ч/хаагуур ч»
1.2.2.6.2.9 «яаж ч»
1.2.2.6.2.10 «яа- ч»

2. Хийсвэр үгсийн аймаг (х. 282)

2.1. Дагавар үг (х. 282)

2.1.1 Дагавар үгийн тодорхойлолт (х. 282)
2.1.2 Дагавар үгийн бүтэцзүйн ангилал (х. 282)
2.1.1.1 Жинхэнэ дагавар үг
2.1.1.2 Тэмдэг үгийг дагавар үгийн үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
2.1.3 Дагавар үгийг хэрэглэх нь (х. 285)
2.1.3.1 Тэг нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 285)
2.1.3.1.1 «гаруй»
2.1.3.1.2 «шахам»
2.1.3.1.3 «орчим»
2.1.3.1.4 «гэхэд»
2.1.3.1.5 «дээр»
2.1.3.1.6 «доор»
2.1.3.1.7 «хүртэл»
2.1.3.1.8 «бүр/болгон»
2.1.3.1.9 «тутам»
2.1.3.1.10 «ёсоор»
2.1.3.1.11 «мэт»
2.1.3.1.12 «шиг»
2.1.3.1.13 «адил»
2.1.3.2 Харьяалахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 287)
2.1.3.2.1 «тулд»
2.1.3.2.2 «төлөө»
2.1.3.2.3 «турш»

2.1.3.2.4 «дагуу»
2.1.3.2.5 «чинээ»
2.1.3.2.6 «дэргэд»
2.1.3.2.7 «хооронд»
2.1.3.2.8 «хажууд»
2.1.3.2.9 «наана»
2.1.3.2.10 «цаана»
2.1.3.2.11 «дотор»
2.1.3.2.12 «ард»
2.1.3.2.13 «урд»
2.1.3.2.14 «уруу»
2.1.3.2.15 «өөд»
2.1.3.2.16 «дараа»
2.1.3.2.17 «эсрэг»
2.1.3.2.18 «дунд»
2.1.3.2.19 «ойролцоо»
2.1.3.2.20 «-уур» дагавартай үгс
2.1.3.2.21 «тухай»
2.1.3.2.22 «талаар»
2.1.3.2.23 «гадна»
2.1.3.2.24 «хойно»
2.1.3.2.25 «өмнө»
2.1.3.2.26 «адил»
2.1.3.3 Өгөх оршихын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 293)
2.1.3.3.1 «ойр»
2.1.3.4 Гарахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 293)
2.1.3.4.1 «бусад»
2.1.3.4.2 «өөр»
2.1.3.4.3 «илүү»
2.1.3.4.4 «хол»
2.1.3.4.5 «(г)ш» дагавартай үгс
2.1.3.4.6 «гадна»
2.1.3.4.7 «хойно»
2.1.3.4.8 «өмнө»
2.1.3.5 Хамтрахын т/я-ын нөхцлийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 295)
2.1.3.5.1 «адил»
2.1.3.6 НТоН-ийн дараа хэрэглэгдэх дагавар үг (х. 295)
2.1.3.6.1 «хүртэл»
2.1.3.6.2 «бүр/болгон»
2.1.3.6.3 «тутам»
2.1.3.6.4 «өсөөр»
2.1.3.6.5 «мэт»
2.1.3.6.6 «шиг»
2.1.3.6.7 «тухай»
2.1.3.6.8 «талаар»

2.2 Холбоос үг (х. 297)
2.2.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үг (х. 297)
2.2.1.1 Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.1.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.1.2.1 «ба»
2.2.1.2.2 «бөгөөд»
2.2.1.2.3 «-гүй»
2.2.1.2.4 «болон»
2.2.1.2.5 «ч, ...ч»
2.2.1.2.6 «(мөн) түүнчлэн»
2.2.1.2.7 «харин»
2.2.1.2.8 «гэвч»
2.2.1.2.9 «(зөвхөн) тодийгүй, мөн»
2.2.1.2.10 «тодий биш, (харин)»

2.2.1.2.11 «–аар барахгүй, (мөн)»
2.2.1.2.12 «буюу/юм уу»
2.2.1.2.13 «эсвэл (эсхүл)»
2.2.1.2.14 «эсвэл ... эсвэл»
2.2.1.2.15 «байхад, харин»
2.2.1.2.16 «байтугай/биттий хэл/бүү хэл»
2.2.1.2.17 «гэхдээ» (нэмсэн)
2.2.2 Үгсрүүлан холбох холбоос үг (х. 307)
2.2.2.1 Үгсрүүлан холбох холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.2.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.2.2.1 «гэ–»
2.2.2.2.2 «–г гэж»
2.2.2.2.3 «эсэх»
2.2.2.2.4 «...үү, үгүй юү гэдэг»
2.2.2.2.5 «юм шиг л»
2.2.2.2.6 «учир / учраас»
2.2.2.2.7 «тул»
2.2.2.2.8 «–аас болж»
2.2.2.2.9 «–хгүй + –(г)ээр»
2.2.2.2.10 «–х гэж»
2.2.2.2.11« –х + –ын тулд»
2.2.2.2.12 «–х + –ын өмнө»
2.2.2.2.13 «сан + –ы дараа»
2.2.2.2.14 «–сан + –ы дагуу»
2.2.2.2.15 «–сан + –аас хойш»
2.2.2.2.16 «–х хүртэл»
2.2.2.2.17 «байх үед/–х(а)д»
2.2.2.2.18 «–х бүрд/–х болгонд»
2.2.2.2.19 «–х + –тай зэрэг»
2.2.2.2.20 «–ж байх хооронд»
2.2.2.2.21 «–х завсар/–х зуур»
2.2.2.2.22 «(Хэрэв) ...–бал/–вал»
2.2.2.2.23 «(Хэрэв) ...–х тохиолдолд»
2.2.2.2.24 «(Хэрэв) ... нөхцөлд»
2.2.2.2.25 «Хэдийгээр ... боловч»
2.2.2.2.26 «–сан + –аар»
2.2.2.2.27 «–х/–сан тухай/ талаар» (нэмсэн)
2.2.2.2.28 «болохоор» (нэмсэн)
2.2.3 Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үгс (х. 319)
2.2.3.1 Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үгийн хүснэгт
2.2.3.2 Жишээ ба тайлбарууд
2.2.3.2.1 «(Мөн)түүнчлэн»
2.2.3.2.2 «Түүнээс гадна»
2.2.3.2.3 «Түүгээр ч барахгүй»
2.2.3.2.4 «Тэгээд/Ингээд»
2.2.3.2.5 «Тэгэхлээр/Ингэхлээр»
2.2.3.2.6 «Тэгсэнээр/Ингэснээр»
2.2.3.2.7 «Эс тэгвэл»
2.2.3.2.8 «Тэгэхэд нь»
2.2.3.2.9 «Тийнхүү/Ийнхүү»
2.2.3.2.10 «Тийм учраас»
2.2.3.2.11 «Учир нь»
2.2.3.2.12 «Тийм болохоор»
2.2.3.2.13 «Хэдий тийм боловч»
2.2.3.2.14 «Негөө талаас»
2.2.3.2.15 «Яагаад гэвэл»
2.2.3.2.16 «Тэгсэн чинь» (нэмсэн)

2.3 Сул үг (х. 326)
2.3.1 Сул үгийн хүснэгт (х. 326)

2.3.2 Сул үгийн уттазүйн ангилал (х. 327)
2.3.2.1 Асуух сул үг (х. 327)
2.3.2.1.1 «бэ/ вэ»
2.3.2.1.2 «уу²/ юу²»
2.3.2.2 Үгүйсгэх сул үг (х. 328)
2.3.2.2.1 «биш»
2.3.2.2.2 «бус»
2.3.2.2.3 «(ү)гүй»
2.3.2.2.3.1 Нэр үгийн дараа хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.2.3.2 Үйл үгийн дараа хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.2.3.3 «алга» гэсэн үгийн тухайд
2.3.2.2.4 «үл»
2.3.2.2.5 «эс»
2.3.2.2.6 «бүү»
2.3.2.2.7 «битгий»
2.3.2.3 Баймж сул үг (х. 335)
2.3.2.3.1 «шуу²»
2.3.2.3.2 «даа⁴»
2.3.2.3.3 «аа⁴»
2.3.2.3.4 «юм»
2.3.2.3.5 «мөн»
2.3.2.3.6 «билээ/ лээ»
2.3.2.3.7 «сан⁴»
2.3.2.3.8 «даг⁴»
2.3.2.3.9 «биз»
2.3.2.3.10 «бий/ вий»
2.3.2.3.11 «шив»
2.3.2.3.12 «бол» (шалтгааны)
2.3.2.3.13 «бол» (асуух)
2.3.2.3.14 Баймж сул үгийг харьцуулах нь
2.3.2.4 Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг (х. 345)
2.3.2.4.1 Завсрын сул үг «бол»
2.3.2.4.2 Нэгтгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «ч»
2.3.2.4.2.1 Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үгийн бүрэлдэхүүнд хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.2 Холбоос үгийн дотор хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.3 Баймж бүтцийн дотор хэрэглэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.4 «... дээр» гэдэг утгыг илэрхийлэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.5 «бас» гэдэг утгыг илэрхийлэх нь
2.3.2.4.2.6 Нэгтгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үгийн үүргийг харьцуулах нь
2.3.2.4.3 Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «л»
2.3.2.4.3.1 Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үгийн үүрэг
2.3.2.4.3.2 Төвлөрүүлэх сул үг «ч»-тэй харьцуулах нь

2.4 Аялга үг (х. 350)
2.4.1 Сэтгэлийн хөдөлгөөн илэрхийлсэн аялга үг (х. 350)
2.4.1.1 Товчоолсон ерөнхий хүснэгт
2.4.1.2 Жишээ, тайлбарууд
2.4.1.2.1 «аа»
2.4.1.2.2 «за, уухай, ай даа, аяа, өөе, тийм дээ, ашгүй дээ»
2.4.1.2.3 «эвий, иш, хөөрхий, зайлуул, хай даа, халаг, өө»
2.4.1.2.4 «хөөе, хүүе, хөөш, эй»
2.4.1.2.5 «ооё, оо–ёо–ё, хөөх, хүүш, үгүй, ер»
2.4.1.2.6 «ёо, ёх, яанаа»
2.4.1.2.7 «ха ха, хий хий, гялай, гоё, урай, ай хө, яамай»
2.4.1.2.8 «паа(х)⁴, пий–пай, ишш, түй, пэй, аа–лаа–лаа, аа–яа–яа, ээ харлаа»
2.4.1.2.9 «халхай, халцгай, тий тий»
2.4.1.2.10 «чааваас, балар, ээ, яалаа гэж, үгүй шүү, юу гэж, яачихав аа»
2.4.1.2.11 «май, байз, ишш/ чишш, аа, эй дээ»
2.4.1.2.12 «ий, айжий, айжуу»
2.4.1.2.13 «бүүвэй»

2.4.2 Алгуус амьтны холбогдолтой аялга үг (х. 358)
2.4.2.1 Товчоолсон ерөнхий хүснэгт
2.4.2.1 Урьж дуудах аялга үгс
2.4.2.2.2 Хөөж туух аялга үгс
2.4.2.2.3 Малын зан үйлтэй холбогдолтой аялга үгс

IV ХЭСЭГ: Өгүүлбэрүүд (х. 359–405)

1. Өгүүлбэрийг аймаглах нь (х. 360)

1.1 Өгүүлбэрийг хэлэх зорилгоор нь аймаглах нь (х. 360)
1.1.1 Хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр
1.1.2 Асуух өгүүлбэр
1.1.3 Захирах өгүүлбэр
1.1.4 Анхааруулах өгүүлбэр

1.2 Өгүүлбэрийг бүтэц, зохион байгуулалтаар нь аймаглах нь (х. 363)
1.2.1 Нэг ба хоёр бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр (х. 363)
1.2.1.1 Нэг бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1 Өгүүлэхүүн хэсэггүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн өгүүлэхүүнд шингэх нь
1.2.1.1.1.2 Эзэн биегүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.1.1.3 Хам бүтцэнд өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь
1.2.1.1.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн хэсэггүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.2 Хоёр бүрэлдэхүүнт өгүүлбэр
1.2.1.3 Өгүүлбэр үг
1.2.2 Төгс ба төгс бус өгүүлбэр (х. 365)
1.2.2.1 Төгс өгүүлбэр
1.2.2.2 Төгс бус өгүүлбэр
1.2.3 Хураангүй ба дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр (х. 365)
1.2.3.1 Хураангүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.3.2 Дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр
1.2.4 Энгийн ба нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (х. 366)
1.2.4.1 Энгийн өгүүлбэр
1.2.4.2 Нийлмэл өгүүлбэр

2. Үгсийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 367)

2.1 Үгийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 367)
2.1.1 Үгийг чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 367)
2.1.1.1 Үгийг аялгаар чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
2.1.1.2 Үгийг холбоосоор чөлөөтэй зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
2.1.2 Үгийг чөлөөтэй бус зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 368)

2.2 Үгийг захируулан холбох нь (х. 368)
2.2.1 Үгийг шууд захируулан холбох нь (х. 369)
2.2.2 Үгийг шууд бус захируулан холбох нь (х. 370)
2.2.2.1 Үгийг нөхцлөөр холбох нь
2.2.2.2 Үгийг дагавар үгээр холбох нь

3. Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 371)

3.1 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүд (х. 371)
3.1.1 Өгүүлбэрийн гол гишүүд (х. 371)
3.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн (х. 371)
3.1.1.1.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний асуулт
3.1.1.1.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь
3.1.1.1.3 Үгсийг өгүүлэгдэхүүний үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
3.1.1.1.4 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний илтгэгч
3.1.1.1.5 Өгүүлэгдэхүүний тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2 Өгүүлэхүүн (х. 373)

3.1.1.2.1 Өгүүлэхүүний асуулт
3.1.1.2.2 Энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.2.1 Нэг үйл үгээр илэрсэн энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.2.2 Нийлмэл үйл үгээр илэрсэн энгийн өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3 Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.1 Гол үйл үг ба туслах үйл үгээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.2 Гол үйл үг ба баймж үйл үг/баймж бүтцээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.1.2.3.3 Гол үйл үг ба тодотгол үйл үгээр бүтсэн нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн
3.1.2 Өгүүлбэрийн дэд гишүүд (х. 375)
3.1.2.1 Тусагдахуун (х. 375)
3.1.2.1.1 Үгсийг тусагдахууны үүргээр хэрэглэх нь
3.1.2.1.2 Шууд тусагдахуун
3.1.2.1.3 Шууд бус тусагдахуун
3.1.2.2 Тодотгол (х. 377)
3.1.2.3 Байц (х. 378)
3.1.2.3.1 Орны байц
3.1.2.3.1.1 Байр илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.1.2 Зүг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.1.3 Орон дахь хөдөлгөөнийг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.2 Цагийн байц
3.1.2.3.2.1 Үйл хөдлөлийн агшинг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.2.2 Үйл хөдлөлийн эхлэл, төгсгөлийг илэрхийлэх нь
3.1.2.3.3 Дүрийн байц
3.1.2.3.4 Шалтгааны байц
3.1.2.3.5 Зорилгын байц
3.1.2.3.6 Болзолын байц
3.1.2.3.7 Дутагдах байц
3.1.3 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн байрлал (х. 382)

3.2 Үгсийг өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдийн үүргээр зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь (х. 384)
3.2.1 Тодорхойлолт
3.2.2 Өгүүлэгдэхүүнийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.3 Өгүүлэхүүнийг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.4 Тусагдахууныг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.5 Тодотголыг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь
3.2.6 Байцыг зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь

3.3 Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүдтэй хэлзүйн холбогдолгүй үгс (х. 387)
3.3.1 Хандсан үгс
3.3.2 Оруулсан үгс
3.3.3 Аялга үгс
3.3.4 Хариулт үгс

4. Өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэхүүн хэсгүүдийн хоорондын харьцаа (х. 389)

4.1 Энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (зэрэгцүүлэн холбох нь) (х. 389)
4.1.1 Нөхцлөөр холбох нь
4.1.2 Аялгаар холбох нь
4.1.3 Холбоос үгээр холбох нь
4.2 Хавсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр (захируулан холбох нь) (х. 390)
4.2.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн онцлог (х. 391)
4.2.1.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэхүүний хэлбэр ба цаг
4.2.1.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүний хэлбэр
4.2.1.2.1 Гол өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүнтэй ижил байх
4.2.1.2.2 Гол өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүнээс өөр байх
4.2.1.2.2.1 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн харьяалахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь
4.2.1.2.2.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн заахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь

4.2.1.2.2.3 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийн өгүүлэгдэхүүн харьяалах буюу заахын т/я-аар хэлбэржих нь
4.2.1.2.2.4 Үндсэн дүрэм
4.2.2 Гишүүн өгүүлбэрийг аймаглах нь (х. 395)
4.2.2.1 Өгүүлэгдэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.2 Өгүүлэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.3 Тусгадахуун гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.4 Тодотгол гишүүн өгүүлбэр
4.2.2.5 Байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр

4.3 Холимог өгүүлбэр (х. 398)

4.4 Шууд ба шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг (х. 398)
4.4.1 Шууд хөндлөнгийн үг
4.4.2 Шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг
4.4.3 Шууд хөндлөнгийн үгийг шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг болгон хувиргах нь

5. Цэг цэглэл (х. 401)

5.1 Уйгуржин монгол бичгийн цэг цэглэл (х. 401)
5.1.1 Цэгүүд
5.1.2 Тэмдгүүд

5.2 Кирил монгол бичгийн цэг цэглэл (х. 402)
5.2.1 Цэг
5.2.2 Асуултын тэмдэг
5.2.3 Анхаарлын тэмдэг
5.2.4 Таслал
5.2.5 Цэгтэй таслал
5.2.6 Тодорхойлох цэг
5.2.7 Хашилт
5.2.8 Цуваа цэг
5.2.9 Хаалт
5.2.10 Зураас

V ХЭСЭГ: Хавсралт (х. 406-448)

1. Идэвхгүй (үхмэл) язгуурын жагсаалт (х.407)

2. Монгол англи хэлний үл тохирох үйл үгийн захирах байдал (х.411)

3. ОЦМХ-ний нөхцлийн жагсаалт (х. 413)

4. ОЦМХ-ний харьцааны бүтээврийн бүтэц үүргийн тогтолцоо (х.418)

5 Англи, монгол хэлний цагийн тогтолцооны дүйлгэсэн хүснэгт (х.422)

6. Номын монгол гарчиг (х. 423)

7. Хэрэглэсэн англи-герман-монгол нэр томъёоны жагсаалт (х. 438)

7. INDEX: ENGLISH-GERMAN-MONGOLIAN

We use the following abbreviations:

For Nouns:

N .....Noun
NS.....Noun Suffix
P .....Plural
PS.....Plural Suffix
C.....Case
CS .....Case Suffix
CbS .....Case-bound Suffix
CbP .....Case-bound Particle

For Verbs:

V .....Verb
VS .....Verb Suffix
Vo.....Voice
VoS .....Voice Suffix
As.....Aspect
AsS.....Aspect Suffix
DS.....Determining Suffix
NDS .....Noun Determining Suffix
VDS .....Verb Determining Suffix
cVDS....coordinating VDS
sVDS....subordinating VDS
AwDS....Adword Determining Suffix
TS.....Terminating Suffix
PTS .....Person-bound Terminating Suffix
TTS .....Tense-bound Terminating Suffix

For Adwords:

Aw .....Adword
AwS.....Adword Suffix
Nu .....Numeral
NuS.....Numeral Suffix

General:

RS .....Reflexive Suffix
-ø .....Zero-Suffix

English	German	Mongolian	Pages
A A A A	**A A A A**	**A A A A**	**A**
Ablative case	Ablativ Fall	Гарахын тийн ялгал	**90ff**, 215f, 293f
Abstract part of speech	Abstrakte Wortart	Хийсвэр үгсийн аймаг	**282ff**, 71
Accusative case	Akkusativ Fall	Заахын тийн ялгал	**86ff**, 107, 393,
Active root	Aktive Wurzel	Идэвхтэй язгуур	**33ff**
Active voice	Aktive Handlungsart	Идэвхтэй хэв	**116**
Additive focus particle	Additive Fokus Partikel	Нэгтгэн төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	276, **346ff**, 372
Adjective	Adjektiv	Тэмдэг нэр	**212ff**
Adjective-building	Adjektivbildung	Тэмдэг нэр бүтэх нь	**49ff**
Admonition-PTS	Ermahnungs-PSS	Сэрэмжлүүлэн сануулах БТөН	**180**
Adverb	Adverb	Дайвар үг	**221ff**, 284
Adverbial clause	Adverbialsatz	Байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр	310-319, **397ff**
Adverbial	Adverbialbestimmung	Байц	**378ff**
Adversative voice	Adversative Handlungsart	Үйлдэлдэх хэв	**127f**
Adword	Beiwort	Тэмдэг үг	**211ff**
Adword suffix (AwS)	Beiwort-Suffix	Тэмдэг үгийн залгавар (ТҮЗ)	**218f, 223f**
Adword determining suffix (AwDS)	Beiwortbestimmendes Suffix (BbS)	Тэмдэг үгийг тодотгон хилбох нөхцөл (ТТоН)	**151ff**
Alphabet	Alphabet	Цагаан толгой	**4, 19**, 31
Analytically expressed aspect	Analytische Zustandsart	Байдлыг задлаг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь	**136ff**
Anterior-VDS	VbS der Vorzeitigkeit	Зэрэгцүүлэх ҮТоН	**159**, 209, 321
Appeal-PTS	Aufrufs-PSS	Хүндэтгэн захирах БТөН	**181**
Approximate numeral	Näherungszahl	Тойм тооны үг	**246ff**
Aspect suffix (AsS)	Zustandsartsuffix (ZS)	Байдлын нөхцөл (БН)	**131ff**
Assimilation	Assimilation	Ижилсэл	**7**
Assistant part of a sentence	Neben-Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн дэд гишүүн	**375ff**
Associative-VDS	VbS der Verknüpfung	Хам ҮТоН	**158**, 210
Attention part	Aufmerksamkeitswort	Хандсан үг	**387**
Attribute	Attribut	Тодотгол	**377**
Attribute clause	Attributsatz	Тодотгол гишүүн өгүүлбэр	309, **396**
Attributive Adjective	Attributives Adjektiv	Тэмдэг нэр тодотгол болох нь	**213**
Attributive CbS	Attributives FgS	Тодотгох ТЯЗ	**104**
Auxiliary verb	Hilfsverb	Туслах үйл үг	**194ff**
B B B B	**B B B B**	**B B B B B**	
Bagarasada (code-word)	Bagarasada (Kennwort)	Багарсад (түлхүүр үг)	**13**, 17
Basic vowel	Grundvokal	Үндсэн эгшиг	**20**

Blessing-PTS	Segens-PSS	Ерөөн хүсэх БТөН	**183**, 307
Bound coordinate words	Gebundene Wortreihe	Чөлөөт бус зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**368**
Brackets (Br.)—> Parentheses (Am)			
C C C C C C C C C C C C			
Cardinal numeral	Kardinale, Grundzahl	Үндсэн тооны үг	**234ff**
Case-bound suffix (CbS)	Fallgebundenes Suffix (FgS)	Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох залгавар (ТЯЗ)	**101ff**
Case-bound particle (CbP)	Fallgebundene Partikel (FgP)	Тийн ялгалтай холбогдох сул үг (ТЯС)	**106ff**, 140, 372
Case suffix (CS)	Fallsuffix (FS)	Тийн ялгалын нөхцөл (ТЯН)	**78ff**, 411f
Causal adverbial	Kausale Adverbialbestimmung	Шалтгааны байц	**381**
Causal clause	Kausalsatz	Шалтгааны гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**311f**, 397
Causative voice	Kausale Zustandsart	Үйлдүүлэх хэв	**117f**
Classical Mongolian Script	Klassisch- Mongolische Schrift, Altmongolisch	Сонгодог монгол бичиг	**3f**, 401f
Clause	Teilsatz	Өгүүлэхүүн хэсэг	**389ff**, 141f
Collective CbS	Kollektives FgS	Хамт олныг заах ТЯЗ	**103**
Collective numeral	Kollektiva, Sammlungszahl	Хам тооны үг	**244ff**
Collective aspect	Kollektive Zustandsart	Олноор үйлдэх байдал	**134**
Colon	Doppelpunkt	Тодорхойлох цэг	**401, 404**
Combined sentence	Zusammengesetzter Satz	Нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	**366ff**
Comitative case	Komitativ Fall	Хамтрахын тийн ялгал	**97ff**, 295
Comma	Komma	Таслал	372, **401, 403ff**
Command-PTS	Befehls-PSS	Захиран хүсэх БТөН	**177**
Communal voice	Kopulative Handlungsart	Үйлдэлцэх хэв	**126**
Comparative degree	Komparativ	Харьцуулах зэрэг	**215ff**
Complement	Ergänzung	Тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн	**214, 372**, 374
Complete sentence	Vollständiger Satz	Төгс өгүүлбэр	**365**
Completed aspect	Abgeschlossene Zustandsart	Төгс байдал	**133**, 137, **422**
Complex sentence	Satzgefüge	Хавсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	141, 156, **390ff**
Component	Teil	Бүрэлдэхүүн	**363f**
Compound sentence	Satzverbindung, Satzreihe	Энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр	156, **389ff**
Compound predicate	Zusammengesetztes Prädikat	Нийлмэл өгүүлэхүүн	195, 198, **374ff**
Compound vowel	Zusammengesetzter Vokal	Нийлмэл эгшиг	**10**
Concessive adverbial	Konzessive Adverbialbestimmung	Дутагдах байц	**382**
Concessive clause	Konzessivsatz	Дутагдах гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**318**, 397
Concessive-VDS	VbS des Widerspruchs	Дутагдах ҮТоН	**162**, 318
Concrete part of speech	Konkrete Wortart	Бодит үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**

Conditional adverbial	Konditionale Adverbialbestimmung	Болзох байц	**381**
Conditional clause	Konditionalsatz	Болзох гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**317f**, 397
Conditional-VDS	VbS der Bedingung	Болзох ҮТоН	**161**, 317
Conjugation	Konjugation	Үйл үгийн хувилгал	**113ff**
Conjunction	Konjunktion	Холбоос үг	237, **297ff**, 367, 390
Conjunction verb	Konjunktionsverb	Холбоос үйл үг	**210**, 309f
Consonant	Konsonant	Гийгүүлэгч	**13f, 21f**
Coordinate adverbials	Adverbial-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон байц	**386**
Coordinate attributes	Attribut-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон тодотгол	**386**, 214
Coordinate objects	Objekt-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон тусагдахуун	**386**
Coordinate parts of a sentence	Satzglied-Reihe	Өгүүлбэрийн зэрэгцэн холбогдсон гишүүд	**384**
Coordinate predicates	Prädikat-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон өгүүлэхүүн	**385**
Coordinate subjects	Subjekt-Reihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**385**
Coordinate words	Wortreihe	Зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**57**
Coordinating conjunction	Anreihende Konjunktion	Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос үг	**297ff**
Coordinating VDS (cVDS)	Koordinierendes (Einfaches) VbS	Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох ҮТоН (ЗэҮТоН)	**157ff**, 208
Copula	Kopula	Холбогч	**194, 197**, 337f
Correlate	Korrelat, Platzhalter	Орлуулагч	**363**
D D D D D D D D D D D D D			
Dash	Gedankenstrich	Урт зураас	**402, 405**
Dative-locative case	Dativ-Lokativ Fall	Өгөх оршихын тийн ялгал	**83ff**, 123, 293
Dead root ---> Passive root	Passive Wurzel	Үхмэл язгуур	**35f, 407ff**
Decimal	Dezimalzahl	Аравтын бутархай	**252**
Decision-PTS	Beschlussfassungs-PSS	Даалган хүсэх БТөН	**176**
Declarative sentence	Aussagesatz	Хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр	**360**
Declension	Deklination	Нэр ба тэмдэг үгийн хувилгал	**23**,72,78,108,140,218,223,234,239, 245,248,**257**,261
Defective auxiliary verb	Defektes Hilfsverb	Дутмаг туслах үйл үг	**200**, 338ff
Definite article	Bestimmter Artikel	Тодорхой ялгац гишүүн	**88f**
Degree of adjective	Komparativ, Steigerungsformd. Adjektives	Тэмдэг нэрийн зэрэг	**215ff**
Demand-PTS	Forderungs-PSS	Сануулан хүсэх БТөН	**179**
Demonstrative proword	Demonstratives Fürwort	Заах төлөөний үг	**264ff**
Derivational suffix	Wortbildungssuffix	Үг бүтээх залгавар (дагавар)	37, **42ff**
Determining suffix (DS)	Bestimmendes Suffix (bS)	Тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (ТоН)	**139f**, 421
Dialect synonym	Dialekt Synonym	Нутгийн аялгууны ойролцоо үгс	**64**

Diminutive suffix	Diminutivsuffix (Verkleinerungssuffix)	Тэмдэг үгийн үүсэх бууруулах залгавар	**218**
Diminutive numeral	Diminutiva, Verkleinerungszahl	Хязгаарлах тооны үг	**250f**
Diphthong	Diphthong, Doppellaut	Хос эгшиг	**10f**, 20
Direct object	Direktes Objekt	Шууд түсгадахуун	**122, 376**
Direct speech	Direkte Rede	Шууд хөндлөнгийн үг	309, **398ff**
Direction-AwS	Richtungs-BS	Чиг заах ТҮЗ	**223f**, 294
Directive case	Direktiv Fall	Чиглэхийн тийн ялгал	**99**
Distributive numeral	Distributiva, Verteilungszahl	Түгээл тооны үг	**251ff**
Dropping vowel	Ausfallvokal	Гээгдэх эгшиг	**12, 24ff**
E E E E E E E E E E E E E			
Ellipsis	Ellipse, Auslassung	Орхилт	**363**
Epenthesized --> Inserted			
Euphemism --> Taboo Synonym	Euphemismus —>Tabu Synonym		
Exclamation mark	Ausrufezeichen	Анхаарлын тэмдэг	361f, **402f**
Exclamatory sentence	Ausrufesatz	Анхааруулах өгүүлбэр	**362**
Excluding-VDS	VbS der Ausschliesslichkeit	Болзох ҮГоН	**172**
Extended combined sentence	Erweiterter zusammengesetzter Satz	Холимог өгүүлбэр	**398**
Extended sentence	Erweiterter Satz	Дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр	**365**
F F F F F F F F F F F F F			
Final adverbial	Finale Adverbialbestimmung	Зорилгын байц	**381**
Final clause	Finalsatz	Зорилгын гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**312f**, 397
Final consonant	Endkonsonant	Дэвсгэрлэх гийгүүлэгч	**14**
Focus particle	Fokus Partikel	Тэвлэрүүлэх сул үг	**345ff**, 372
Fraction	Bruchzahl	Энгийн бутархай	**252**
Free coordinate words	Freie Wortreihe	Чөлөөт зэрэгцэн холбогдсон үгс	**367**
Full stop (Brit.) --> Period (Am.)			
Full verb	Vollverb	Гол үйл үг	**192ff**
Functional classification of verb	Funktionsklassen des Verbes	Үйл үгийг үүргээр ангилах нь	**192ff**
Functional vowel	Funktionsvokal	Үүрэгтэй эгшиг	**23ff**
Future tense	Zukunft, Futur	Ирээдүй цаг	**147, 191, 422**
G G G G G G G G G G G G G			
Genitive case	Genitiv Fall	Харьяалахын тийн ялгал	**79ff**, 287, 392
H H H H H H H H H H H H H			
Hard sign	Härtezeichen	Хатуугийн тэмдэг	**21**, 175
Hidden "n"/"g"	Verstecktes "n"/"g"	Нууц "н"/"г"	49, 78, 235
Hierarchy list of the accusative case	Hierarchieliste des Akkus. Falls	Заахын тийн ялгалын шатлал	**89**, 393

Homonym	Homonym	Ижил үг	**62ff**
Hope-PTS	Hoffnungs-PSS	Гүнзэ хүсэх БТоН	**182**
Hyphen	Bindestrich	Богино зураас	**402, 405**
I I I I I I I I I I I I I I			
Idiom	Redewendung	Өвөрмөц хэллэг	**60**
Immediately succeeding-VDS	VbS der Unmittelbarkeit	Бэлтгэх УТоН	**164**, 173
Imperative	Imperativ, Befehlsform	Захирах хүсэх төлөв	**175ff**
Imperative sentence	Befehlssatz	Захирах өгүүлбэр	**361**, 402f
Incomplete sentence	Unvollständiger Satz	Төгс бус өгүүлбэр	**365**
Indefinite present tense	Indefinite Gegenwart	Тодорхойгүй одоо цаг	**144, 161, 188, 422**
Indefinite proword	Indefinites Fürwort	Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг	**276ff**
Independent part of a sentence	Ungebundenes Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрт хамаүйн холбогдолгүй үг	**387f**
Indigenous Mongolian vocabulary	Mongolisches Sondervokabular	Реал	**65**
Indirect object	Indirektes Objekt	Шууд бус тусагдахуун	**377**
Indirect speech	Indirekte Rede	Шууд бус хөндлөнгийн үг	309, **399**
Infinitive	Infinitiv	Тодорхойгүй төлөв	**26**
Inflectional suffix	Wortveränderungssuffix	Үг хувилгах залгавар (нөхцөл)	**38, 437ff**
Inserted consonant	Verbindungskons./Einfügekonsonant	Жийрэглэх гийгүүлэгч	**105**, 437
Inserted part	Einfügewort	Оруулсан үг	**387**
Inserted vowel	Verbindungsvokal / Einfügevokal	Жийрэглэх эгшиг	**17**, 115
Instrumental case	Instrumental Fall	Үйлдэхийн тийн ялгал	**93ff**, 123, 237
Intending-VDS	VbS der Absicht	Зорилгын УТоН	**166**
Intensifying AwS	Verstärkungs-BS	Уттыг эрчимжүүлэх ТҮЗ	**219**
Intention-PTS	Absichts-PSS	Шууд хүсэх БТоН	**175**
Interjection	Interjektion	Аялга үг	**350ff**, 388
Interrogative particle	Interrogativpartikel, Fragepartikel	Асуух сул үг	**327f**, 361
Interrogative proword	Fragendes Fürwort	Асуух төлөөний үг	**268ff**, 371, 373
Interrogative sentence	Interrogativsatz, Fragesatz	Асуух өгүүлбэр	**361**, 402f
Intonation	Betonung	Аялга	362, 389
Intransitive	Intransitiv	Эс тусах	**122**, 221
Inverted commas (Br.) ->Quotation marks (Am.)			
K K K K K K K K K K K K			
Kind of sentence	Satzart	Өгүүлбэрийн төрөл	**360ff**

L L L L L L L L L L L L L			
Lateral fricative	Lateral frikativ	Шүдний	**4f, 19**
Lexical Homonym	Lexikalisches Homonym	Үгсийн сангийн ижил үг	**62**
Lexicology	Lexikologie	Үгсийн сангийн судлал	**41ff**
Limiting-VDS	VbS der Begrenzung	Үгтүүлэх ҮТоН	**167**, 295
Listing word	Listenwort	Хураах үг	**367**
Living root ---> Active root	Aktive Wurzel	Амьд язгуур	**33f**
Loan word	Fremdwort	Зээлдсэн үг	64, **66ff**
Local adverb	Lokal Adverb	Орны дайвар үг	**228f**
Local adverbial	Lokale Adverbialbestimmung	Орны байц	193, **378f**
Local CbS	Lokales FgS	Орны ТЯЗ	**102**
Locative case ---> Dative-Locative			
Logical subject	Logisches Subjekt	Зэзн бие	**116, 123**
Logically succeeding-VDS	VbS der Logischen Folge	Дагалдах ҮТоН	**165**, 173
Long vowel	Langer Vokal	Урт эгшиг	**9f, 20**
M M M M M M M M M M M M			
Main clause	Hauptsatz	Гол өгүүлбэр	307, **390**
Main part of a sentence	Haupt-Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн гол гишүүн	**371ff**
Modal adverb	Modales Adverb	Баймж дайвар үг	**223ff**
Modal adverbial	Modale Adverbialbestimmung	Баймж байц	**380**
Modal clause	Modalsatz	Баймж гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**311ff**, 397
Modal construction	Modale Konstruktion	Баймж бүтэц	**201ff**
Modal particle	Modalpartikel	Баймж сул үг	**335ff**
Modal verb	Modalverb	Баймж үйл үг	**201**
Modification	Modifikation	Тодотгол	**208, 218ff, 223ff**
Modifying verb	Modifizierendes Verb	Тодотгогч үйл үг	**208ff**
Monophonetic	Monophonetisch	Ганц дуудлагат	**5**
Mood of verb	Modus des Verbes, Verbform	Үйл үгийн төлөв	**139ff**
Morpheme	Morphem	Бүтэвэр	**71**
Morphological Homonym	Morphologisches Homonym	Үгзүйн ижил үг	**63**
Morphology	Morphologie	Үгзүй	**70ff**
Movement-AwS	Bewegungs-BS	Хөдлөл заах ТҮЗ	**224**, 291
Multiplying numeral	Multiplikativa, Vervielfältig.zahl	Давтах тооны үг	**249ff**
N N N N N N N N N N N N N			
Namilang (code-word)	Namilang (Kennwort)	Намиланг (түлхүүр үг)	**13, 17**
Necessity-AwDS	Notwendigkeits-BbS	Санал болгох ТТоН	**154**

Negative particle	Negationspartikeln, Verneinungspartikeln	Үгүйсгэх сул үг	**328ff**
Nominative case	Nominativ Fall	Нэрлэхийн тийн ялгал	**78**, 394
Nominative complement	Gleichsetzungsnominativ	Нэр өгүүлэхүүн	**372**
Non-vocalized consonants (C9)	Nicht vokalisierte Konsonanten (K9)	Заримдаг гийгүүлэгч	**21**
Noun	Substantiv, Nomen	Нэр үг	**72ff**
Noun determining suffix (NDS)	Substantivbestimmendes Suffix (SbS)	Нэрүүдийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (НТоН)	**139ff**, **184**, 295
Noun-building	Substantivbildung	Нэр үг бүтэх ёс	**42**
Numeral suffix (NuS)	Numeralsuffix (NS)	Тооны үгийн нөхцөл (ТҮН)	**234ff**
Numeral	Zahlwort, Numerale	Тооны үг	76, **234ff**
O O O O	**O O O O O O O O O**		
Object	Objekt	Тусгадахуун	**375ff**
Object clause	Objektsatz	Тусгадахуун гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**309**, **396**
Omission dots	Auslassungszeichen	Цуваа цэг	**401**, **405**
Omission of subject	Subjektausfall	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн орхигдох нь	**371**
Ordinal numeral	Ordinale, Ordnungszahl	Дэс тооны үг	**240ff**
Original adverb	Ursprüngliches Adverb	Анхдагч дайвар үг	**221**
Original postposition	Ursprüngliche Postposition	Жинхэнэ дагавар үг	**282**
P P P P	**P P P P P P P P P**		
Parentheses (Am.)	Klammer	Хаалт	**402**, **405**
Part of a sentence	Satzglied	Өгүүлбэрийн гишүүн	**371f**, 384f, 387f
Part of speech	Wortart	Үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**, 255, 282
Participle	Partizip	Үйлт нэр	**139**, **144f**
Particle	Partikel	Сул үг	**326ff**
Passive root	Passive Wurzel	Идэвхгүй язгуур	**35**, **407ff**
Passive-root adverb	Passive Wurzel-Adverb	Идэвхгүй язгуур дайвар үг болох нь	**221ff**
Passive voice	Passive Handlungsart	Идэвхгүй хэв	**124ff**
Past tense	Vergangenheit	Өнгөрсөн цаг	**143**, **184ff**
Percentage	Prozentzahl	Хувь	**253**
Perfect aspect	Perfektive Zustandsart	Төгс байдал	**137**, **422**
Period (Am.)	Punkt	Цэг	360, **401**, **402**
Permission-PTS	Erlaubnis-PSS	Тушаах зөвшөөх БТөН	**181**, 310
Person-bound terminating suffix (PTS)	Personengebundenes Satzend-suffix (PSS)	Биеэр төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (БТөН)	**175ff**
Personal proword	Pers. Fürwort, Pers.pronomen	Биеийн төлөөний үг	**256ff**
Phrasal verb	Phrase	Үйлийн захирах хэллэг	**411f**

Plural	Plural, Mehrzahl	Олон тоо	**72ff**, 276
Plural suffix (PS)	Pluralsuffix (PS)	Олон тооны нөхцөл (ОТН)	**72ff**
Polyphonetic	Polyphonetisch	Олон дуудлагат	**5**
Positive degree	Positiv	Ерийн зэрэг	**215**
Possessive CbS	Possessives FgS	Хамаатуулах ТЯЗ	**101**
Possessive proword	Possessives Fürwort	Хамаатуулах төлөөний үг	**260**
Possibility-AwDS	Ermöglichungs-BbS	Чадавхи заах ТТоН	**153**
Postposition	Postposition, Nachstellungswort	Дагавар үг	247, **282ff**
Predicate	Prädikat, Satzaussage	Өгүүлэхүүн	**360, 373f**, 391
Predicate clause	Prädikatsatz	Өгүүлэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**395**
Predicative adjective (=complement)	Prädikatives Adjektiv	Тэмдэг өгүүлэхүүн	**214**
Present tense	Gegenwart	Одоо цаг	**136, 144, 145, 188ff, 422**
Progressive aspect	Progressive Zustandsart	Үргэлжлэх байдал	**136, 422**
Progressive-perfect aspect	Progressiv-perfektive Zustandsart	Төгс үргэлжлэх байдал	**137, 422**
Progressive present tense	Progressive Gegenwart	Одоо үргэлжлэх цаг	**145, 147, 189, 422**
Progressive-VDS	VbS der Dauer	Үргэлжлэх УТоН	**168**
Pronunciation rule	Ausspracheregel	Дуудлагын дүрэм	**22**
Proword	Fürwort, Pronomen	Төлөөний үг	**255ff**
Proword-conjunction	Fürwort-Konjunktion	Төлөөний үгээс гаралтай холбоос үг	**319ff**
Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q Q			
Question mark	Fragezeichen	Асуултын тэмдэг	**402f**
Quick aspect	Schnelle Zustandsart	Хоромхон үйлдэх байдал	**131**
Quotation marks(Am.)	Anführungszeichen	Хашилт	**402, 405**
R R R R R R R R R R R R R			
Real part of speech	Echte Wortart	Жинхэнэ үгсийн аймаг	**72ff**
Reduced vowel (unstressed vowel)	Reduzierter Vokal	Балархай эгшиг	**12, 23ff**
Reflexive proword	Rückbezügliches Fürwort, Reflexivpronomen	Эгэх төлөөний үг	**261ff**
Reflexive suffix (RS)	Reflexives Suffix (RS)	Эгэх нөхцөл (ЭН)	**108ff**, 171, 173, 244, 261, 392
Reflexive word	Reflexives Wort	Эгэх үг	**263**
Relational-suffix system	Beziehungssuffix-System	Харьцааны бүтээврийн тогтолцоо	**418ff**
Repetitive aspect	Wiederholte Zustandsart	Давтан үйлдэх байдал	**135**
Representative part of speech	Stellvertretende Wortart	Төлөөний үгсийн аймаг	**255ff**
Request-PTS	Bitte-PSS	Гуйн хүсэх БТеН	**178**
Response part	Antwort-Wort	Хариулт үг	**388**

Restrictive focus particle	Restriktive Fokus Partikel	Салган төвлөрүүлэх сул үг	132, 168ff, **348ff**, 372
S S S S	**S S S S**	**S S S S S**	**S**
Seizing an opportunity-VDS	VbS der Gelegenheit	Лацрамдах УТоН	**171**
Semantic classification	Semantische Gruppierung	Утгазүйн ангилал	228ff,234ff,256ff,350,378,384
Semi-colon	Strichpunkt, Semikolon	Цэгтэй таслал	**401, 404**
Sentence	Satz	Өгүүлбэр	**360ff**
Short vowel	Kurzer Vokal	Богино эгшиг	**10, 20**
Short sentence	Kurzer Satz	Хураангуй өгүүлбэр	**365**
Shortened form	Kurzform	Хураангуй хэлбэр	155, 185ff, 330f, 338ff
Simple sentence	Einfacher Satz	Энгийн өгүүлбэр	**366**
Simultaneous-VDS	VbS der Gleichzeitigkeit	Зэрэгцэх УТоН	136, **157, 208**
Soft sign	Weichheitszeichen	Зөөлний тэмдэг	**22, 27ff**
Sound complex	Lautkomplex (Verlängerungssilbe)	Авианы нийлэмж	**9**
Spelling rule	Orthographieregel, Rechtschreibregel	Зөв бичгийн дүрэм	**17, 23ff**
Strong consonant	Starker Konsonant	Хүчтэй гийгүүлэгч	**13**
Stylistic Synonym	Stilistisches Synonym	Найруулгын ойролцоо үг	**63**
Subject	Subjekt, Satzgegenstand	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**371ff**
Subject clause	Subjektsatz	Өгүүлэгдэхүүн гишүүн өгүүлбэр	**310, 395**
Subject indicator/marker	Subjektanzeiger	Өгүүлэгдэхүүний илтгэгч	**345, 372**
Subjunctive	Konjunktiv	Хүсэх төлөв	**196, 342**
Subordinate clause	Nebensatz, Gliedsatz	Гишүүн өгүүлбэр	142, 307, **391ff**
Subordinate words	Phrase	Захируулан холбогдсон үгс	**368ff**
Subordinating conjunction	unterordnende Konjunktion	Захируулан холбох холбоос үг	**307ff**
Subordinating VDS (sVDS)	Subordinierende Verbbestimmende Suffixe (Umstandanzeig.Verbbest.Suff.)	Захируулан холбох УТоН (ЗаУТоН)	**161ff**
Succeeding-VDS	VbS der zeitl. Ablösung	Далимдах УТоН	**170**, 173
Suffix	Suffix	Залгавар	**37ff, 413ff, 418ff**
Superlative degree	Superlativ	Давуу зэрэг	**217ff**
Syllable	Silbe	Үе	**15, 22**
Synonym	Synonym	Ойролцоо үг	**63ff**
Syntagma	Syntagma	Нийлц	**108, 418ff**
Syntax	Syntax, Satzlehre	Өгүүлбэрзүй	**359ff**
Syntactic subject	Syntax-Subjekt	Өгүүлбэрзүйн өгүүлэгдэхүүн	**116, 123**
Synthetically expressed aspect	Synthetische Zustandsart	Байдлыг нийлэг аргаар илэрхийлэх нь	**131ff**
T T T T	**T T T T**	**T T T T T**	
Taboo synonym (Euphemism)	Tabu Synonym	Цээрлэсэн ойролцоо үг	**65**

Temporal adverb	Temporal Adverb	Цагийн дайвар үг	229ff
Temporal adverbial	Temporale Adverbialbestimmung	Цагийн байц	379
Temporal clause	Temporalsatz	Цагийн байц гишүүн өгүүлбэр	313-117, 397
Temporary aspect	Provisorische Zustandsart	Түр үйлдэх байдал	132
Tense-bound terminating suffix (TTS)	Zeitgebundenes Satzendsuffix (ZSS)	Цагаар төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ЦТөН)	184ff, 418ff
Tense	Tempus, Zeitform	Цаг	184ff, 391, 418ff
Terminating suffix (TS)	Satzendsuffix (SS)	Төгсгөн холбох нөхцөл (ТөН)	175ff
Transcription	Umschrift	Авианы галиг	4ff
Transformation	Umwandlung	Хувиргал	122ff, 400
Transitive	Transitiv	Тусах	122ff, 221
Type of sentence	Satzform	Өгүүлбэрийн хэв шинж	363ff
V V V V	**V V V V**	**V V V V V**	
Verb	Verb	Үйл үг	113ff
Verb determining suffix (VDS)	Verbbestimmendes Suffix (VbS)	Үйлийг тодотгон холбох нөхцөл (УТоН)	156ff, 418ff
Verb-building	Verbbildung	Үйл үг бүтэх ёс	54f
Vocalized consonants (C7)	Vokalisierte Konsonanten (K7)	Эгшигт гийгүүлэгч	21ff
Voice suffix (VoS)	Handlungsartsuffix (HS)	Хэвийн нөхцөл (ХэН)	115ff
Vowel	Vokal	Эгшиг	7ff, 20ff
Vowel harmony	Vokalharmonie	Эгшгийн зохицол	7, 20
Vowel weakness	Vokalschwäche	Эгшгийн сулрал	12, 23ff
W W W W	**W W W W**	**W W W W**	
Weak consonant	Schwacher Konsonant	Сул гийгүүлэгч	13
Will-PTS	Willens-PSS (Vokativ)	Шүүд хүсэх БТөН	175
Wish-AwDS	Wunsch-BbS	Хүсэх ТТоН	151
Word-building	Wortbildung	Үг бүтэх	41ff
Word class —> Part of Speech	Wortart	Үгсийн аймаг	72ff
Word combination	Wortzusammensetzung	Нийлэмж үг	57ff
Word root	Wortwurzel	Үгийн язгуур	33ff
Word stem	Wortstamm	Үгийн үндэс	36
Word structure	Wortstruktur	Үгийн бүтэц	33ff
Word-sentence	Ein-Wort-Satz	Өгүүлбэр үг	364
Z Z Z Z	**Z Z Z Z**	**Z Z Z Z Z**	
Zero-suffix (–ø)	Nullsuffix (–ø)	Тэг нөхцөл (–ø)	87,116,131,177,369,418ff,437ff

Price: 25$+5$

A complete grammar

of the Mongolian language,
written with a new, indigenous approach,
featuring

Cyrillic Script
Classical Mongolian Script
English Explanations

Very Detailed Table of Contents, Both in English and Mongolian
Necessary Linguistic Terms Explained Throughout the Book
Literal Translation for Analytical Understanding
Extensive Appendix (Suffix List, Index, etc.)
Many Examples Sentences of Everyday Life
Helpful Comparison and Overview Tables
Insights in Mongolian Cultural Heritage
Hints for Using Colloquial Language
Necessary Rules

This Grammar is relevant and recommended for both learners and researchers of the Mongolian language.

First publishing in Hong Kong, 1996.
Second publishing in Hong Kong, 2001.
Third publishing in Ulaanbaatar, 2005.

Printed in Mongolia

ISBN 99929-0-445-3